DocAve® Version 5.8.0.0

User Guide

For the latest copy of this and other guides,
please visit the link provided:

http://www.avepoint.com/support/user-guides/

AvePoint™

Copyright
© 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written consent of AvePoint, 3 Second Street, Jersey City, NJ 07311

Trademarks
AvePoint, DocAve and the AvePoint logo are trademarks of AvePoint, Inc. Microsoft, MS-DOS, Internet Explorer, SharePoint Portal Server 2003, Windows SharePoint Services, Windows SQL server, and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Adobe Acrobat and Acrobat Reader are trademarks of Adobe Systems, Inc. All other trademarks are property of their respective owners.

Changes
The material in this document is for information only and is subject to change without notice. While reasonable efforts have been made in the preparation of this document to assure its accuracy, AvePoint makes no representation or warranty, expressed or implied, as to its completeness, accuracy, or suitability, and assumes no liability resulting from errors or omissions in this document or from the use of the information contained herein. AvePoint reserves the right to make changes in the product design without reservation and without notification to its users.

AvePoint
3 Second Street
Jersey City, NJ 07311

For Technical Support, visit http://www.avepoint.com/support

For Products Information, visit http://www.avepoint.com/products

For Sales Contact Information, visit http://www.avepoint.com/about-us/contact-us

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Table Of Contents

1. Preface . . . 16

2. Installation . . . 19
2.1 Overview . . . 19
2.2 Supported Platforms . . . 20
2.3 System Requirements . . . 21
2.3.1 DocAve Manager . . . 21
2.3.1.1 All-In-One Installation . . . 21
2.3.1.2 Control Service . . . 22
2.3.1.3 Web Service . . . 22
2.3.1.4 Media Service . . . 23
2.3.1.5 Auditing Service . . . 23
2.3.1.6 Search Service . . . 24
2.3.1.7 Report Service . . . 24
2.3.2 DocAve Agent . . . 24
2.4 DocAve Manager Installation . . . 25
2.4.1 Setup Instructions for SSL Communication . . . 34
2.4.2 Setup Instructions for HTTPS Access . . . 36
2.4.2.1 Enable HTTPS in the DocAve Manager Configuration Tool . . . 37
2.4.2.2 Internet Explorer Setup . . . 37
2.4.3 Change Database Location . . . 40
2.5 DocAve SharePoint Agent Installation . . . 40
2.5.1 Enabling Web Service in the Installation Wizard . . . 45
2.5.2 Required Permissions for the DocAve Software Agents . . . 46
2.6 Verifying the Installation . . . 65
2.7 Accessing the DocAve GUI . . . 66
2.8 Uninstallation Instructions . . . 66
2.8.1 Adding and Removing Features . . . 67
2.8.2 Removing DocAve Manager/Agent . . . 67

3. Control Panel . . . 71
3.1 Agent Services . . . 72
3.1.1 Agent Monitor . . . 72
3.1.2 Agent Groups . . . 75
3.1.2.1 Adding Agents to Group . . . 76
3.1.2.2 Modifying a Group . . . 76
3.1.2.3 Deleting a Group . . . 77
3.1.3 Remote Installation . . . 77
3.1.4 Cache Settings . . . 81
3.1.5 Export Location . . . 82
3.2 Manager Services . . . 82
3.2.1 Manager Monitor . . . 83
3.2.2 System Performance . . . 83
3.3 Data Management . . . 84
3.3.1 Data Manager . . . 84
3.3.1.1 Data Pruning . . . 84
3.3.1.2 Job Pruning . . . 89
3.3.1.3 Data Coalescing . . . 90
3.3.1.4 Data Import . . . 91
3.3.1.5 Data Export . . . 93
3.3.2 Filter Policy . . . 95

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.3.3 Retention Policy . . . 97
3.3.4 Device Manager . . . 97
3.3.4.1 Physical Device . . . 98
3.3.4.2 Logical Device . . . 109
3.3.5 Security Manager . . . 113
3.3.6 Language Mapping . . . 115
3.4 DocAve System . . . 116
3.4.1 Account Manager . . . 116
3.4.1.1 Groups . . . 117
3.4.1.2 Users . . . 117
3.4.1.3 Login Modes . . . 118
3.4.1.4 Enable Active Directory Integration . . . 120
3.4.1.5 Creating a New Group or User . . . 120
3.4.1.6 Assigning Permissions to a Group . . . 126
3.4.1.7 Editing a User . . . 130
3.4.1.8 Editing a Group . . . 132
3.4.1.9 Deleting a User or Group . . . 133
3.4.1.10 Exporting the DocAve User Permissions . . . 134
3.4.2 DocAve Solution Manager . . . 134
3.4.3 System Recovery . . . 136
3.4.3.1 System Backup . . . 137
3.4.3.2 System Restore . . . 139
3.4.4 System Settings . . . 141
3.4.5 User Data . . . 145
3.5 Reporting . . . 146
3.5.1 Email Notification . . . 146
3.5.1.1 Configuring a General Email Notification . . . 146
3.5.1.2 Configuring a Replicator Email Notification . . . 148
3.5.1.3 Configuring a Service Status Email Notification . . . 150
3.5.1.4 Configuring a SiteBin Email Notification . . . 151
3.5.2 Log Manager . . . 153
3.5.2.1 CIID . . . 153
3.5.2.2 Log Data Download . . . 154
3.5.2.3 Log Level Settings . . . 154
3.5.2.4 Log Email Notification . . . 155
3.5.3 Log Viewer . . . 156
3.5.4 MOM Logging Settings . . . 156
3.5.4.1 Enable MOM Integration from DocAve . . . 156
3.5.4.2 Viewing the logs from MOM . . . 156
3.5.5 SCOM Logging Settings . . . 157
3.5.5.1 Enable SCOM Integration from DocAve . . . 157
3.5.5.2 Viewing the logs from SCOM . . . 158
3.6 License Management . . . 159
3.6.1 License Manager . . . 159
3.6.1.1 Viewing Current License Information . . . 162
3.6.1.2 Applying a License . . . 162
3.6.1.3 Configuring Expiration Notification . . . 162
3.6.2 DocAve Update Manager . . . 163
3.6.2.1 How to Update the Manager or Agent . . . 163
3.6.2.2 Automatic Update Setting . . . 164
3.6.2.3 Proxy Server Setting . . . 165
3.6.3 DocAve Update Report . . . 165
3.7 Job Monitor . . . 166
3.7.1 Job Monitor . . . 166

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.7.2 Scheduled Job Monitor . . . 172

4. Report Center . . . 174

4.1 Configuring the Report Center . . . 174
4.1.1 Installation . . . 174
4.1.1.1 Installation . . . 175
4.1.1.2 Uninstallation . . . 176
4.1.2 Collectors . . . 177
4.1.2.1 SharePoint Collector . . . 177
4.1.2.2 Performance Collector . . . 180
4.1.3 Pruning . . . 182
4.1.3.1 Activity History Pruning . . . 182
4.1.3.2 Monitoring Pruning . . . 185
4.1.4 E-mail Notification . . . 186
4.1.4.1 E-mail Notification Rules . . . 186
4.1.5 Controller . . . 187
4.1.5.1 Web Part Controller . . . 188
4.1.6 Node Limit Configuration . . . 188
4.2 SharePoint Infrastructure . . . 189
4.2.1 Real-Time Monitoring . . . 189
4.2.1.1 SharePoint Topology . . . 189
4.2.1.2 SharePoint Services . . . 189
4.2.1.3 CPU/Memory Usage . . . 190
4.2.1.4 Networking . . . 190
4.2.1.5 SharePoint Search Service . . . 190
4.2.1.6 Farm Explorer . . . 191
4.2.1.7 Environment Search . . . 193
4.2.2 Infrastructure Reports . . . 196
4.2.2.1 Difference Reports . . . 196
4.2.2.2 Storage Trends . . . 196
4.2.2.3 SharePoint Alerts . . . 197
4.2.2.4 Load Times for Site Collections . . . 198
4.2.2.5 Check Out Documents . . . 198
4.2.2.6 Last Accessed Time . . . 199
4.3 Usage Analytics . . . 199
4.3.1 System Usage . . . 199
4.3.1.1 Site Usage . . . 199
4.3.1.2 Search Usage . . . 200
4.3.1.3 Site Activity and Usage . . . 201
4.3.1.4 Page Traffic . . . 201
4.3.1.5 Site Referrers . . . 202
4.3.2 User Usage . . . 205
4.3.2.1 Most Active Users . . . 205
4.3.2.2 User Storage Size . . . 205
4.3.2.3 Workflow Status . . . 206
4.3.2.4 Download Ranking . . . 207
4.3.2.5 Failed Login Attempts . . . 207
4.4 DocAve Reports . . . 207
4.4.1 System Monitor . . . 208
4.4.1.1 Topology . . . 208
4.4.1.2 Performance Monitoring . . . 208
4.4.1.3 Disk Space Monitoring . . . 208
4.4.1.4 Job Performance Monitoring . . . 209
4.4.2 Activity History . . . 209

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.4.2.1 DocAve System . . . 209
4.4.3 License Usage Report . . . 209
4.4.3.1 Migration Usage Report . . . 209
4.5 Installing the SharePoint Webpart . . . 210
4.6 Supported and Unsupported List of SharePoint 2010 . . . 210

5. Data Protection . . . 212
5.1 Automation Center . . . 212
5.1.1 About the Criticality Matrix . . . 212
5.1.1.1 Overview of the Criticality Matrix Concept . . . 212
5.1.1.2 Overview of the Criticality Matrix Interface . . . 213
5.1.1.3 Viewing the Contents of a Matrix Cell . . . 214
5.1.1.4 Viewing the Plan Details of a Matrix Cell . . . 214
5.1.1.5 Viewing SharePoint Coverage . . . 214
5.1.2 Configuring Content for Automation . . . 215
5.1.2.1 Setting the Business Importance in SharePoint . . . 215
5.1.2.2 Setting the Business Importance in DocAve . . . 217
5.1.3 Configuring the Matrix Settings . . . 220
5.1.3.1 Business Rule Engine . . . 221
5.1.3.2 Editing Axis Values . . . 223
5.1.3.3 Modification Frequency Settings . . . 225
5.1.3.4 Business Importance Settings . . . 226
5.1.3.5 Report Settings . . . 226
5.1.4 Using the Sandbox-Matrix . . . 227
5.1.4.1 Configuring the General Options . . . 227
5.1.4.2 Applying templates in the Matrix . . . 228
5.1.4.3 Moving a Matrix Profile to Production . . . 229
5.1.5 Best Practices for Configuring the Criticality Matrix . . . 230
5.2 Template Builder . . . 231
5.2.1 Basic Options . . . 231
5.2.2 Difference between active / inactive templates . . . 233
5.2.3 Significance of assigning colors . . . 233
5.2.4 Setting up the Schedule . . . 233
5.3 Custom Backup Builder . . . 235
5.3.1 Granular Backup . . . 236
5.3.1.1 Basic Options . . . 236
5.3.1.2 Choosing Content . . . 238
5.3.1.3 Choosing Content by Filter Mode . . . 240
5.3.1.4 Searching for Content . . . 242
5.3.1.5 Setting up the Schedule . . . 243
5.3.1.6 Loading from Templates . . . 246
5.3.1.7 Back Up Workflow Instance at Item Level . . . 246
5.3.1.8 Fast Backup Configuration . . . 247
5.3.1.9 Back up Content Basing on Filter for One Column . . . 249
5.3.1.10 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Backup . . . 250
5.3.2 Platform Backup . . . 251
5.3.2.1 Installation . . . 252
5.3.2.2 Basic options . . . 254
5.3.2.3 Choosing Content . . . 256
5.3.2.4 Setting up a Schedule . . . 264
5.3.2.5 Supported In-place and Out-of-place Features for SharePoint 2007 Environment . . . 267
5.3.2.6 Currently Supported and Unsupported Service Applications for SharePoint 2010 Environment . . . 269
5.3.2.7 Supported and Unsupported Feature for Virtual Database . . . 272
5.3.3 Custom Backup CLI . . . 272

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5.4 Restore Controller . . . 273
5.4.1 Settings . . . 274
5.4.1.1 Staging SQL Server Info . . . 274
5.4.1.2 Restore to File System . . . 275
5.4.1.3 End User Restore . . . 275
5.4.2 Granular Restore . . . 276
5.4.2.1 Finding a date range . . . 276
5.4.2.2 Historic View vs. Single Point View . . . 278
5.4.2.3 The tree browser / search results . . . 278
5.4.2.4 How to view individual documents . . . 280
5.4.2.5 Restore Options . . . 281
5.4.2.6 How to perform a restore . . . 282
5.4.3 Platform Restore . . . 287
5.4.3.1 Finding a date range . . . 287
5.4.3.2 The tree browser / search results . . . 288
5.4.3.3 Restore Options . . . 290
5.4.3.4 Advanced Options . . . 291
5.4.3.5 Point-in-time Restore . . . 292
5.4.3.6 How to perform restore . . . 293
5.4.3.7 Out of Place Restore . . . 307
5.4.3.8 Helpful Notes for Platform Level Backup and Restore . . . 318
5.4.4 Restore from SQL Backup . . . 319
5.4.4.1 Restore From Live Database . . . 320
5.4.4.2 Staging SQL Server for SQL Backup Restore . . . 323
5.4.4.3 Analyze SQL Backup . . . 329
5.4.4.4 Restore from SQL Backup . . . 336
5.4.4.5 Restoring contents from a third party SQL backup . . . 338
5.5 High Availability . . . 338
5.5.1 Installation . . . 339
5.5.2 Stand-By Farm Failover . . . 341
5.5.2.1 Rule Builder . . . 341
5.5.2.2 Failover Controller . . . 346
5.5.3 Single Farm Failover . . . 354
5.5.3.1 Rule Builder . . . 354
5.5.3.2 Failover Controller . . . 359
5.5.4 Settings . . . 362
5.5.4.1 Throttle Control . . . 363
5.5.4.2 Export Location . . . 363
5.5.4.3 Cache Settings . . . 364
5.5.4.4 SQL Instance Settings . . . 365
5.5.5 Offline Sync . . . 366
5.5.5.1 Export . . . 366
5.5.5.2 Import . . . 368
5.5.6 Dashboard . . . 369
5.5.7 Helpful Notes on High Availability . . . 370
5.5.7.1 Replicating SSO databases . . . 370
5.5.7.2 High Availability module and differing SQL versions . . . 370
5.5.7.3 Setting up for High Availability Mirroring . . . 371
5.5.7.4 Log Shipping Versus SQL Mirroring . . . 371
5.5.8 Troubleshooting High Availability . . . 371
5.5.8.1 General Information . . . 371
5.5.8.2 Failure in loading the nodes on the High Availability module . . . 372
5.5.8.3 If there are errors in the DocAve Agent Event Viewer . . . 372
5.5.8.4 Log Shipping . . . 373

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5.5.8.5 SQL Mirroring . . . 373
5.5.8.6 Bring Online Issues . . . 374
5.5.8.7 Prior to running first job check the following: . . . 374
5.5.9 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for High Availability . . . 376
5.6 SiteBin . . . 377
5.6.1 Settings . . . 377
5.6.1.1 Deletion Tracking Settings . . . 377
5.6.1.2 Export Location . . . 381
5.6.2 Restore Controller . . . 381
5.7 Supported and unsupported List for SharePoint 2010 . . . 383

6. Administration . . . 385
6.1 SharePoint Administrator . . . 385
6.1.1 Central Admin . . . 385
6.1.1.1 Tree Filter . . . 385
6.1.1.2 Search Mode . . . 388
6.1.1.3 Batch Setting Instructions . . . 405
6.1.1.4 Central Administration Operations . . . 407
6.1.1.5 Security Center . . . 417
6.1.1.6 Operations Specific to DocAve . . . 421
6.1.2 STSADM . . . 438
6.1.2.1 STSADM Settings . . . 438
6.1.2.2 STSADM Interface . . . 440
6.1.3 Admin Reports . . . 442
6.1.3.1 Export Location . . . 442
6.1.3.2 Report Builder . . . 442
6.2 Content Manager . . . 447
6.2.1 Installation . . . 447
6.2.2 Un-installation . . . 448
6.2.3 Layout, Features, and Options . . . 448
6.2.4 Settings . . . 448
6.2.4.1 Export Location . . . 448
6.2.4.2 User Mapping . . . 449
6.2.4.3 Content Selection Rule . . . 450
6.2.4.4 Version Filter . . . 452
6.2.4.5 Site Template mapping and List Template mapping . . . 454
6.2.5 Plan Builder . . . 456
6.2.5.1 Plan Builder - Native Mode . . . 456
6.2.6 Advanced Mode . . . 459
6.2.6.1 Basic Options . . . 459
6.2.6.2 Live Mode . . . 464
6.2.6.3 Stage Mode . . . 466
6.2.6.4 Promote Multiple Site to Site Collections by using Configuration File . . . 469
6.2.7 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Content Manager . . . 474
6.3 Deployment Manager . . . 476
6.3.1 Front-End Deployment . . . 477
6.3.1.1 Front-End Deployment Setting . . . 477
6.3.1.2 Front-End Deployment . . . 481
6.3.1.3 Stage Mode . . . 486
6.3.1.4 Rollback Center . . . 491
6.3.2 Design Manager . . . 492
6.3.2.1 Settings . . . 492
6.3.2.2 Basic Options . . . 494
6.3.2.3 Live Mode . . . 496

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

6.3.2.4 Stage Mode . . . 499
6.3.2.5 Design Manager CLI . . . 502
6.3.2.6 Workflow Replication in Design Manager . . . 504
6.3.2.7 Currently Supported and Unsupported Design Elements for Deployment Manager . . . 505
6.3.3 Solution Center . . . 506
6.3.3.1 Solution Center Setting . . . 506
6.3.3.2 Deploy From Farm . . . 508
6.3.3.3 Deploy from File System . . . 510
6.3.3.4 Deploy from Solution Store . . . 512
6.4 Replicator . . . 513
6.4.1 Replicator Installation . . . 514
6.4.2 Layout, Features, and Options . . . 514
6.4.3 Settings . . . 514
6.4.3.1 Global Settings . . . 514
6.4.3.2 Plan Settings . . . 516
6.4.3.3 Mapping Settings . . . 517
6.4.4 Plan Builder . . . 523
6.4.4.1 Basic Options. . . . 523
6.4.4.2 Setting up a Mapping Table . . . 526
6.4.5 Helpful Notes on Replicator . . . 532
6.4.6 Dashboard . . . 534
6.4.7 Offline Replicator . . . 535
6.4.7.1 Export . . . 536
6.4.7.2 Import . . . 537
6.4.7.3 Two Way Offline Replication. . . . 538
6.4.8 Replicate through DocAve Web Service . . . 539
6.4.8.1 Enable Web Service. . . . 540
6.4.9 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Replication . . . 546
6.4.9.1 Currently Supported and Unsupported Function for Offline Replication . . . 549

7. Migration . . . 550
7.1 File System Migration . . . 550
7.1.1 Installation . . . 550
7.1.2 Uninstallation . . . 551
7.1.3 Basic Settings . . . 551
7.1.3.1 File System Settings . . . 551
7.1.3.2 Stellent Settings . . . 563
7.1.3.3 Vignette Settings . . . 567
7.1.4 Live Mode . . . 572
7.1.5 Plan Builder . . . 576
7.1.5.1 Basic Options. . . . 576
7.1.5.2 Standard Mode . . . 579
7.1.5.3 Stellent Migration Mode . . . 582
7.1.5.4 Vignette Migration Mode . . . 583
7.1.6 Excel File Migration . . . 584
7.1.7 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for File Migration . . . 589
7.2 SharePoint Migration . . . 589
7.2.1 SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migrator . . . 590
7.2.1.1 Installation . . . 590
7.2.1.2 Un-installation . . . 590
7.2.1.3 Basic Settings . . . 591
7.2.1.4 Live Mode . . . 616
7.2.1.5 Plan Mode . . . 622
7.2.1.6 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 2003 to 2007 . . . 639

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.2.2 SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migrator . . . 641
7.2.2.1 Installation . . . 642
7.2.2.2 Un-installation . . . 642
7.2.2.3 Basic Settings . . . 643
7.2.2.4 Live Mode . . . 665
7.2.2.5 Plan Mode . . . 671
7.2.2.6 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 2003 to 2010 . . . 678
7.2.3 SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migrator . . . 680
7.2.3.1 Installation . . . 680
7.2.3.2 Un-installation . . . 681
7.2.3.3 Basic Settings . . . 681
7.2.3.4 Live Mode . . . 693
7.2.3.5 Plan Mode . . . 703
7.2.3.6 Helpful Notes on SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration . . . 714
7.2.3.7 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 2007 to 2010 . . . 717
7.2.4 Helpful Notes on SharePoint Migration . . . 721
7.3 Lotus Notes Migration . . . 722
7.3.1 Installation . . . 722
7.3.2 Uninstallation . . . 723
7.3.3 Using Lotus Notes Migration . . . 723
7.3.3.1 Basic Settings . . . 724
7.3.3.2 Live Mode . . . 737
7.3.3.3 Plan Builder . . . 741
7.3.3.4 QuickPlace Live Mode . . . 752
7.3.3.5 QuickPlace Plan Builder . . . 754
7.3.4 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Lotus Notes . . . 759
7.4 eRoom Migrator . . . 763
7.4.1 Installation . . . 763
7.4.2 Uninstallation . . . 765
7.4.3 Using eRoom Migrator . . . 765
7.4.3.1 Basic Settings . . . 766
7.4.3.2 Security Restore . . . 780
7.4.3.3 eRoom Live Mode . . . 781
7.4.3.4 Normal Mode Migration . . . 784
7.4.3.5 Pre-Scan Users . . . 792
7.4.3.6 Creating and Using metadata.xml . . . 792
7.4.3.7 Stage Mode Migration . . . 794
7.4.3.8 Restore Mode Migration . . . 798
7.4.3.9 ERM Live Mode . . . 804
7.4.3.10 ERM Plan Builder . . . 806
7.4.4 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for eRoom . . . 809
7.5 Exchange Public Folder . . . 811
7.5.1 Installation . . . 811
7.5.2 Uninstallation . . . 811
7.5.3 Using Exchange Public Folder Migrator . . . 812
7.5.3.1 Basic Settings . . . 813
7.5.3.2 Plan Builder . . . 824
7.5.4 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Public Folder Migration . . . 830
7.6 Livelink Migration . . . 832
7.6.1 Installation . . . 832
7.6.2 Uninstallation . . . 834
7.6.3 Settings . . . 834
7.6.3.1 Livelink Connection . . . 835
7.6.3.2 Common Configuration . . . 838

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.6.3.3 Export Location. . . . 845
7.6.3.4 Filter. . . . 845
7.6.4 Live Mode . . . 848
7.6.5 Standard Mode Migration . . . 851
7.6.6 Export Mode Migration . . . 856
7.6.7 Import Mode Migration . . . 859
7.6.8 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Livelink . . . 863
7.7 EMC Documentum . . . 865
7.7.1 Installation . . . 865
7.7.2 Uninstallation . . . 866
7.7.3 Settings . . . 867
7.7.3.1 EMC Documentum Connection. . . . 867
7.7.3.2 Common Configuration . . . 868
7.7.3.3 Filter. . . . 874
7.7.4 Live Mode . . . 875
7.7.5 Plan Mode Migration . . . 878
7.7.6 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for EMC Documentum . . . 882
7.8 Supported and Unsupported List for SharePoint 2010 . . . 884

8. Compliance . . . 886
8.1 Vault . . . 886
8.1.1 Vault Controller . . . 886
8.1.1.1 Choosing Content. . . . 886
8.1.1.2 Basic Options. . . . 887
8.1.1.3 Setting up the Schedule. . . . 889
8.1.2 Vault Browser . . . 890
8.1.2.1 Search Setting . . . 892
8.1.3 Report . . . 896
8.1.3.1 Offline Search Report . . . 896
8.1.3.2 Offline Download Report . . . 897
8.1.4 Settings . . . 898
8.1.4.1 Download Location . . . 898
8.1.4.2 Password Setting . . . 899
8.1.4.3 User Filter . . . 899
8.1.4.4 Index Location . . . 900
8.1.5 The Expiration of Vault License . . . 900
8.2 Auditor . . . 901
8.2.1 Audit Controller . . . 901
8.2.1.1 Choosing Content. . . . 901
8.2.1.2 Basic Options. . . . 903
8.2.1.3 Setting up the Schedule. . . . 904
8.2.1.4 Auditing Site Deletion . . . 906
8.2.2 Audit Report . . . 907
8.2.3 Settings . . . 909
8.2.3.1 Download Location . . . 909
8.2.3.2 Auditor Pruning. . . . 910
8.3 eDiscovery . . . 913
8.3.1 Settings . . . 913
8.3.2 Search . . . 916
8.3.2.1 Advanced Search . . . 920
8.3.3 Offline Export Report . . . 922
8.3.4 The Expiration of eDiscovery License . . . 923
8.4 Hold Manager . . . 923
8.4.1 Settings . . . 924

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

8.4.2 Data Browser . . . 924
8.4.3 Offline Export Report . . . 927
8.4.4 The Expiration of Hold Manager License . . . 927
8.5 The Supported and Unsupported List of SharePoint 2010 . . . 928

9. Storage Optimization . . . 929
9.1 Settings . . . 929
9.1.1 External Blob Storage Provider Settings . . . 929
9.1.1.1 Remote Blob Storage Provider Settings . . . 931
9.1.2 Stub Retention Policy . . . 934
9.1.3 Cache Settings . . . 938
9.1.4 Device Settings . . . 939
9.1.4.1 Supported Logical Device Types for Storage Optimization Module . . . 939
9.2 Archiver . . . 940
9.2.1 Installation . . . 941
9.2.1.1 Enabling Archiver on DocAve Agent Host . . . 941
9.2.2 Settings . . . 942
9.2.3 Archiver Plan Builder - Rule Based . . . 943
9.2.3.1 Setting the scope . . . 943
9.2.3.2 Basic Settings . . . 944
9.2.3.3 Archiver Rules . . . 947
9.2.3.4 Setting Archiving Plan Filters . . . 952
9.2.3.5 Running an Archiving plan . . . 953
9.2.4 Archiver Plan Builder - URL Based . . . 954
9.2.5 Restoring the content . . . 956
9.2.5.1 Restoring the Archived Content by Specifying the Number of Items Per Page . . . 958
9.2.5.2 Searching and Downloading for Archived Content . . . 959
9.2.6 Convert Stubs to Content . . . 962
9.2.7 End User Archiving . . . 963
9.2.8 Archive Browser Web Part . . . 966
9.2.8.1 Installing the Web Part . . . 966
9.2.8.2 Using the Data Browser . . . 967
9.2.8.3 Using the Data Search . . . 969
9.2.9 Federated Search Web Part . . . 971
9.3 Extender . . . 972
9.3.1 Extender Settings . . . 972
9.3.2 Convert Stubs to Content . . . 975
9.3.3 Policy Settings . . . 976
9.4 Helpful Notes on Archiver and Extender . . . 976
9.5 Connector . . . 980
9.5.1 Content Library . . . 981
9.5.1.1 Settings . . . 981
9.5.1.2 Installer . . . 993
9.5.2 Media Library . . . 994
9.5.2.1 Settings . . . 994
9.5.2.2 Installer . . . 1007
9.5.2.3 Videos/Audios/Pictures in Media Library . . . 1008
9.5.3 Creating the Connector Library in SharePoint . . . 1010
9.5.4 Using the Library . . . 1014
9.6 Upgrade SharePoint 2007 Stubs to SharePoint 2010 Stubs . . . 1025
9.6.1 Upgrade SharePoint 2007 EBS Stubs to SharePoint 2010 EBS Stubs . . . 1025
9.6.2 Upgrade SharePoint 2007 EBS Stubs to SharePoint 2010 RBS Stubs . . . 1028
9.6.3 Upgrade SharePoint 2010 EBS Stubs to SharePoint 2010 RBS Stubs . . . 1033
9.7 Supported and Unsupported List for SharePoint 2010 . . . 1036

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10. Appendix . . . 1038
10.1 FDCC Compatibility . . . 1038
10.1.1 Configuring the DocAve Manager for FDCC . . . 1038
10.1.2 For End-User Access Using HTTPS . . . 1039
10.2 Compatibility with 3rd-Party SQL Tools . . . 1041
10.2.1 Background . . . 1041
10.2.1.1 Possible Conflicts . . . 1041
10.2.1.2 HA Standby Environment . . . 1041
10.2.2 Coexistence Considerations . . . 1042
10.2.2.1 Platform Level Backup . . . 1042
10.2.2.2 High Availability . . . 1042
10.3 Farm-level Backup & Restore . . . 1043
10.3.1 Full Farm . . . 1045
10.3.1.1 Full Farm Backup . . . 1045
10.3.1.2 Full Farm Restore . . . 1045
10.3.1.3 FEW Restore Settings . . . 1048
10.3.2 Troubleshooting Tips . . . 1049
10.3.2.1 SharePoint Central Admin cannot be accessed after restore . . . 1049
10.3.2.2 If Index data is not accurate or corrupted. . . . 1049
10.3.2.3 If a Web Application cannot be accessed after restore . . . 1049
10.3.2.4 If there are problems with user profiles and properties or search settings in SSP . . . 1050
10.4 Antivirus and Content Shield Database Backup & Restore . . . 1050
10.4.1 Backup Antivirus and Content Shield Database . . . 1050
10.4.2 Restore Antivirus and Content Shield Database . . . 1051
10.5 DocAve Solution for Microsoft Office Project Server 2007 . . . 1052
10.5.1 About Project Server 2007 . . . 1052
10.5.1.1 Databases . . . 1053
10.5.1.2 Item in Project Server and Project Web Access . . . 1053
10.5.1.3 Description of Item Level Objects . . . 1054
10.5.2 Backup and Restore for Project Server 2007 . . . 1054
10.6 The template name/ID for common sites . . . 1055
10.7 Relationship Between SharePoint Actions and Auditor Actions . . . 1057
10.8 DocAve System High Availability . . . 1059
10.9 Migration Pre-scan Tool . . . 1060
10.9.1 File Migration . . . 1060
10.9.2 SharePoint 2003 Migration . . . 1065
10.9.3 Lotus Notes Migration . . . 1069
10.9.3.1 Net Share Test . . . 1070
10.9.3.2 Lotus Notes . . . 1070
10.9.3.3 QuickPlace . . . 1078
10.9.4 eRoom Migration . . . 1081
10.9.5 Livelink Migration . . . 1085
10.9.6 Public Folder Migration . . . 1089
10.9.7 EMC Documentum Migration . . . 1091
10.10 DocAve CLI . . . 1096
10.10.1 Helpful Notes on Migration CLI . . . 1096
10.10.2 File System Migration CLI . . . 1097
10.10.2.1 Creating a Migration plan . . . 1097
10.10.2.2 Running the Migration Plan . . . 1101
10.10.2.3 Getting the Job Status . . . 1102
10.10.2.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1103
10.10.2.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1104
10.10.2.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1105
10.10.3 Exchange Public Folder Migration CLI . . . 1107

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.3.1 Creating a Exchange Public Folder Migration plan . . . 1107
10.10.3.2 Running the DocAve Plan . . . 1109
10.10.3.3 Getting the Job Status . . . 1111
10.10.3.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1112
10.10.3.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1113
10.10.3.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1114
10.10.4 Livelink Migration CLI . . . 1115
10.10.4.1 Creating a Livelink Migration plan . . . 1115
10.10.4.2 Running the DocAve Plan . . . 1119
10.10.4.3 Getting the Job Status . . . 1120
10.10.4.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1121
10.10.4.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1122
10.10.4.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1124
10.10.5 EMC Documentum Migration CLI . . . 1125
10.10.5.1 Creating a EMC Documentum Migration plan . . . 1125
10.10.5.2 Running the DocAve Plan . . . 1128
10.10.5.3 Getting the Job Status . . . 1130
10.10.5.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1131
10.10.5.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1132
10.10.5.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1133
10.10.6 eRoom Migration CLI . . . 1134
10.10.6.1 Creating a eRoom Migration plan . . . 1135
10.10.6.2 Running the DocAve Plan . . . 1138
10.10.6.3 Getting the Job Status . . . 1140
10.10.6.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1141
10.10.6.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1142
10.10.6.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1143
10.10.7 ERM Migration CLI . . . 1144
10.10.7.1 Running the DocAve Plan . . . 1145
10.10.7.2 Getting the Job Status . . . 1146
10.10.7.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1147
10.10.8 SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration CLI . . . 1148
10.10.8.1 Create a migration Plan . . . 1148
10.10.8.2 Running the Migration Plan . . . 1156
10.10.8.3 Getting the Job Status . . . 1158
10.10.8.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1160
10.10.8.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1161
10.10.8.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1163
10.10.9 SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration CLI . . . 1164
10.10.9.1 Create a migration Plan . . . 1164
10.10.9.2 Running the Migration Plan . . . 1171
10.10.9.3 Getting the Job Status . . . 1174
10.10.9.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1175
10.10.9.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1177
10.10.9.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1179
10.10.10 Lotus Notes Migration CLI . . . 1180
10.10.10.1 Running the Migration Plan . . . 1180
10.10.10.2 Getting the Job Status . . . 1182
10.10.10.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1183
10.10.11 Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration CLI . . . 1184
10.10.11.1 Running the Migration Plan . . . 1184
10.10.11.2 Getting the Job Status . . . 1186
10.10.11.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1187
10.10.12 Platform Backup CLI . . . 1188

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.12.1 Creating a Backup plan . . . 1189
10.10.12.2 Running the Backup Plan . . . 1192
10.10.12.3 Getting the Job Status. . . . 1194
10.10.12.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1195
10.10.12.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1196
10.10.12.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1197
10.10.13 Granular Backup CLI . . . 1198
10.10.13.1 Running the Granular Backup Plan . . . 1199
10.10.13.2 Getting the Job Status. . . . 1200
10.10.13.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1201
10.10.14 Replicator CLI . . . 1202
10.10.14.1 Creating a Replicator plan . . . 1203
10.10.14.2 Running the Replicator Plan . . . 1208
10.10.14.3 Getting the Job Status. . . . 1210
10.10.14.4 Getting the Job Report . . . 1211
10.10.14.5 Getting the Plan . . . 1212
10.10.14.6 Deleting the Plan . . . 1213
10.10.15 Front-End Deployment CLI . . . 1214
10.10.15.1 Running the Front-End Deployment Plan . . . 1214
10.10.15.2 Getting the Job Status. . . . 1215
10.10.15.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1216
10.10.16 Archiver Backup CLI . . . 1217
10.10.16.1 Running the Archiver Backup Plan . . . 1218
10.10.16.2 Getting the Job Status. . . . 1219
10.10.16.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1220
10.10.17 Content Manager CLI . . . 1221
10.10.17.1 Running the Content Manager Plan. . . . 1221
10.10.17.2 Getting the Job Status. . . . 1223
10.10.17.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1224
10.10.18 Design Manager CLI . . . 1225
10.10.18.1 Running the Design Manager Plan . . . 1226
10.10.18.2 Getting the Job Status. . . . 1227
10.10.18.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1228
10.10.19 Solution Center CLI . . . 1229
10.10.19.1 Running the Solution Center Plan . . . 1229
10.10.19.2 Getting the Job Status. . . . 1231
10.10.19.3 Getting the Job Report . . . 1232
10.10.20 Batch Mode for Migration CLI . . . 1233
10.10.21 Getting the Template for Creating Plan . . . 1306

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

1. Preface

About This Guide

This guide describes how to install DocAve Version 5.7 for Microsoft SharePoint , how to configure the DocAve platform for the needs of your environment, how to pre-configure Control Panel options, and how to use the features found in the Report Center, Data Protection, Administration, Migration, Compliance, and Storage Optimization modules.

This guide does not explain how to install, configure, or use Microsoft SharePoint, SQL Server, or Windows Server. Nor does it cover standard system or network administration topics (such as IP addressing, routing, and other network topology) that are necessary for DocAve functionality.

Audience

This guide is for system and SharePoint administrators who possess a working knowledge of Microsoft SharePoint, SQL Server, and Windows Server. The audience must be familiar with the following topics:

- Microsoft SharePoint Server administration
- Network Architecture functions and operations
- Operating system usage, intermediate network configuration, and advanced storage system configuration.

Technical Support

Before contacting AvePoint Support, be sure you have taken the following steps to resolve any issues:

- Ensure that you are referencing the latest copy of this user guide, updates to this guide can be found at: http://www.avepoint.com/support/user-guides
- Search the AvePoint Knowledge Base found at http://www.avepoint.com/kb. The knowledgebase is composed of more solution-based information which can be helpful when troubleshooting.

If you have searched our reference materials and the issue still persists, contact AvePoint Support by either:

- Entering a Support Ticket (http://www.avepoint.com/support/contact-support)
- Contact the AvePoint Support Hotline 1-800-661-6588 (or 201-793-1111, press “2” for support)

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Comments

Your feedback is important to us and will help us to provide the most accurate and high quality information possible in our documentation. Send us comments or suggestions by e-mail to support@avepoint.com. Be sure to include as much of the following as possible:

- The document title
- The location that the document was accessed from (either downloaded from AvePoint's web site or the DocAve Guide accessed by pressing **F1** from the DocAve GUI)
- The section or chapter number and the original text found in the document

***Note:** When you send information to AvePoint, you grant AvePoint a non-exclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

2. Installation

The following sections describe the steps required to install DocAve v5 for your SharePoint environment. The installation process requires the setup and configuration of two components: the DocAve Manager and the DocAve Agents. The DocAve Manager is comprised of several services which can be installed across multiple machines; however, certain Manager components (specifically the Control Service) must be installed first. The DocAve Agent Package is comprised of multiple agent services which can be installed on different machines according to the role of the machine and the necessary DocAve services you wish to install.

2.1 Overview

DocAve v5 consists of two basic modules: the DocAve Manager and the DocAve Agent.

DocAve Manager

The DocAve Manager consists of several components which can either be run on the same environment as your DocAve Agents, or split across several servers. Using the DocAve Manager Installation Package, users can install:

- *Web Service* : Represents the access point to the DocAve GUI, allowing users to interact with the software. The web service can be installed on multiple machines and allows administrators to access the DocAve GUI using a web browser (such as Internet Explorer 9). If the web service is installed on multiple machines, this will ensure high availability of the DocAve GUI, in the case that one web service fails.
- *Auditing Service* : Monitors SharePoint activities and return the data to the Control Services for processing. This service is critical for using the DocAve Compliance module.
- *Control Service* : Manages all DocAve operations. All agent machines will use the control service port and address to communicate with the manager, so it is imperative that the machine you install the control service on is accessible by all agent machines. This service can be run on a server cluster to ensure high availability; if the control service were to go down, a standby service in the cluster would be enabled by an administrator.
- *Media Service* : Manages all data storage for the DocAve platform. These services can be installed on multiple machines and can manage multiple Logical Drives. Using multiple media agents will allow for high availability and load-balanced access to the data storage locations.
- *Search Service* : Manages all data by generating a full text index. This service is critical for using the DocAve Item-level backup and Compliance Vault.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Report Service* : Manages all SharePoint data collection and management for the DocAve Report Center. This must be configured with the associated SQL databases and SQL Report Services.

Although it is possible to deploy both the DocAve Manager and DocAve Agents on a single server, this is not a recommended configuration. For the best performance, install the Manager's services across multiple servers and install only the necessary Agents on each Agent machine.

DocAve Agent

DocAve Agents can be installed on any Microsoft Office SharePoint Server (MOSS) 2007, Windows SharePoint Server (WSS) Version 3 environment (with Service Pack 1 installed)*, Windows SharePoint Server 2010, or Windows SharePoint Foundation 2010 that meets the system requirements specified in the next section. There are several types of agents that must be installed to run the various DocAve modules. A description of each module's agent type and specific permissions required for each are listed in greater detail below.

***Note:** SharePoint Service Pack 1 is only required for users who plan on installing and using the Storage Optimization module.

***Note:** The SharePoint Front End Web Server installed the DocAve Agent should have enabled the SharePoint Web Application Service since the service is required for the DocAve Jobs. If the service is not enabled, for example, the SharePoint Web Application Service of the Central Admin Server(which installed the DocAve Agent) is not enabled, all the Web Parts will be missing in the destination site after the job completes.

2.2 Supported Platforms

DocAve supports the following platforms:

- Windows Server 2003 (x86 and x64)
- Windows Server 2008 (x86 and x64)
- Windows Server 2008 R2 (x86 and x64)
- Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64)
- SQL Server 2000 (x86 and x64)
- SQL Server 2005 (x86 and x64)
- SQL Server 2008 (x86 and x64)

***Note:** SQL Embedded Edition is not supported, SQL Express is supported except for High Availability and Platform level incremental backups.

***Note:** Since the development of custom web parts varies from each other, and the web part customization is specifically designed to realize the customers' requirements, after being processed by DocAve, they may not be opened, viewed or displayed correctly in the target site.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** For SharePoint 2007 environment, the **Import From Staging** function of Content Manager is not available if you are importing data from a server which installs the Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64) operating system.

DocAve can run on the following versions of Microsoft SharePoint:

- Microsoft Office SharePoint Server (MOSS) 2007 (x86 and x64)

  ***Note:** Microsoft Office SharePoint Server (MOSS) 2007 (x86 and x64) Service Pack 1 is required for Storage Optimization module.

  ***Note:** Microsoft Office SharePoint Server (MOSS) 2007 (x86 and x64) Service Pack 2 is supported from DocAve 5.8.

- Windows SharePoint Services (WSS) v3 (x86 and x64)

  ***Note:** Windows SharePoint Service Pack 1 is required for Storage Optimization module.

- Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010
- Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010

***Note:** It is not supported to import data between different platforms.

Certain modules and features may not be supported for Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010 or for Microsoft SharePoint Foundation 2010. A list of which modules are supported and not supported can be found in the supported and unsupported list for SharePoint 2010 in the corresponding section of each module.

2.3 System Requirements

To ensure that your system is compatible with DocAve, please refer to the requirements below. Note that the minimum system requirements for the DocAve Manager and the DocAve Agent are slightly different.

2.3.1 DocAve Manager

In order to install the DocAve Manager, all services listed below must be present. The requirements for each are specified in the following sections.

2.3.1.1 All-In-One Installation

Requirements for an "all-in-one" installation (with all manager services on a single server):

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Computer and Processor* : PC with an Intel Pentium III-compatible 1000-MHz processor minimum, Intel Pentium 4-compatible processor recommended.
- *Memory* : 2GB of RAM minimum, 4GB recommended.
- *Hard Disk* : 1GB of available space minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *OS* : Requires one of the following: Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64), Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition, Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition, or Windows Server 2003 Web Edition (includes x64 editions).
- *Framework* : .NET Framework v2.0 and higher.

***Note:** To configure SCOM in *Control Panel* > *Reporting* > *SCOM Logging Settings*, .NET Framework must be v3.0 or higher.

2.3.1.2 Control Service

Requirements for installation:

- *Computer and Processor* : PC with an Intel Pentium III-compatible 1000-MHz processor minimum, Intel Pentium 4-compatible processor recommended.
- *Memory* : 1.5GB of RAM minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *Hard Disk* : 1GB of available space minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *OS* : Requires one of the following: Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64), Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition, Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition, or Windows Server 2003 Web Edition (includes x64 editions).
- *Framework* : .NET Framework v2.0 and higher.

2.3.1.3 Web Service

Requirements for installation:

- *Computer and Processor* : PC with an Intel Pentium III-compatible 1000-MHz processor minimum, Intel Pentium 4-compatible processor recommended.
- *Memory* : 1.5GB of RAM minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *Hard Disk* : 1GB of available space minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *OS* : Requires one of the following: Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64),

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition, Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition, or Windows Server 2003 Web Edition (includes x64 editions).

- *Framework* : .NET Framework v2.0 and higher.

2.3.1.4 Media Service

Requirements for installation:

- *Computer and Processor* : PC with an Intel Pentium III-compatible 1000-MHz processor minimum, Intel Pentium 4-compatible processor recommended.
- *Memory* : 1.5GB of RAM minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *Hard Disk* : 1GB of available space minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *OS* : Requires one of the following: Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64), Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition, Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition, or Windows Server 2003 Web Edition (includes x64 editions).
- *Framework* : .NET Framework v2.0 and higher.

***Note:** Since the media agent will be managing the backup data, it is recommended that it is placed on a machine with high availability. The logical drives responsible for storing the data should have high reliability and a large capacity.

2.3.1.5 Auditing Service

Requirements for installation:

- *Computer and Processor* : PC with an Intel Pentium III-compatible 1000-MHz processor minimum, Intel Pentium 4-compatible processor recommended.
- *Memory* : 1.5GB of RAM minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *Hard Disk* : 1GB of available space minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *OS* : Requires one of the following: Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64), Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition, Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition, or Windows Server 2003 Web Edition (includes x64 editions).
- *Framework* : .NET Framework v2.0 and higher.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

2.3.1.6 Search Service

Requirements for installation:

- *Computer and Processor* : PC with an Intel Pentium III-compatible 1000-MHz processor minimum, Intel Pentium 4-compatible processor recommended.
- *Memory* : 1.5GB of RAM minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *Hard Disk* : 1GB of available space minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *OS* : Requires one of the following: Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64), Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition, Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition, or Windows Server 2003 Web Edition (includes x64 editions).
- *Framework* : .NET Framework v2.0 and higher.

2.3.1.7 Report Service

Requirements for installation:

- *Computer and Processor* : PC with an Intel Pentium III-compatible 1000-MHz processor minimum, Intel Pentium 4-compatible processor recommended.
- *Memory* : 1.5GB of RAM minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *Hard Disk* : 1GB of available space minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *OS* : Requires one of the following: Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64), Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition, Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition, or Windows Server 2003 Web Edition (includes x64 editions).
- *Framework* : .NET Framework v2.0 and higher.

2.3.2 DocAve Agent

In order to install the DocAve Agent, the desired server must meet the requirements specified below:

- *Computer and Processor* : PC with an Intel Pentium III-compatible 1000-MHz processor (dual Intel Xeon 3.0 GHz or faster recommended).
- *Memory* : 1.5 GB of RAM minimum, 3GB recommended.
- *Hard Disk* : 1GB of available space minimum, 3GB recommended.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *OS* : Requires one of the following servers: Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64), Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition, Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition, Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition, or Windows Server 2003 Web Edition.
- *SharePoint* : Front-End Web Server for SharePoint: MOSS2007/WSS3.0 or SharePoint 2010.
- *Framework* : .NET Framework v2.0 and higher.
- *Hotfix* : For x64 Machine: Office_Server_2007_SP1_x64_en_us.exe and WSS 3-sp1-kb936988-x64-fullfile-en-us.exe;
  For x86 Machine: Office_Server_2007_SP1_x86_en_us.exe and WSS 3-sp1-kb936988-x86-fullfile-en-us.exe

***Note:** SharePoint Service Pack 1 is only required for the environment where install the agent type of Storage Optimization module.

2.4 DocAve Manager Installation

To install the DocAve Manager components, follow the installation steps below.

Please note that the account performing the installation must have local administrative rights on the machine where you will be installing the DocAve Manager.

***Note:** If the system installing the server package is running an FDCC environment, please consult the Appendix at the end of this document to ensure that the DocAve system is fully functional in this type of environment.

(2-1) DocAve Manager Installation And Configuration

Step	Action
1	Download the DocAve Manager installation package to the machine that you plan to use as the DocAve Manager (or one of its services) and unzip the package.
2	Open the unpacked DocAve5_Manager directory created in the last step. Run the file `Setup.exe`.
3	After being presented with the welcome screen, click **Next** and review the license agreements presented.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Enter your name and organization in the screen provided. Verify all information, and then click **Next**.
5	Carefully review the Software License Agreement. After you have read the terms in the license agreement, click on the radio button to select **I accept the terms in the license agreement**, then click **Next**.
6	If you have previously installed version of Microsoft SQL Server, you will next be asked to select a database configuration by clicking the corresponding check-box. By default, the Standard option is selected.
7	Choose a directory for the installation. The default path is *C:\Program Files(x86)\AvePoint* You can select a different location by clicking Browse. The Feature Description will let you know the hard drive space requirement for this installation. Click **Next**.
8	Select which DocAve Manager services you wish to install. Please refer to section 2.1 above for detailed descriptions of each service. The options available are: • *Control Service* : Business logic and communication service • *Auditor Service* : Tracks SharePoint data and information • *Media Service* : Manages and coordinates storage devices • *Web Service* : Used to access the DocAve interface • *Search Service* : Generates full text index and performs search • *Report Service* : Manages all data for the DocAve Report Center By default, all services are selected.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">9</td><td colspan="2">In the Advanced Configuration window, select the database that you want to use for the DocAve database, the options being either Built-in Database or MS SQL.

The DocAve database stores DocAve user account information, DocAve settings, saved configuration profiles, and DocAve module plans.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Build-in</td><td>Click Next, proceed to step 10</td></tr>
<tr><td>MS SQL</td><td>If you want to use the MS SQL database, please confirm the following:
The SQL Server Browser services is started and running.
The TCP/IP protocol is enabled.
Click Next, proceed to step 12, you must configure the MS SQL setting in step 10.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">10</td><td colspan="2">In the Configure Report Service window, you must configure a database, either Built-in or MS SQL, that you wish to use for the DocAve Reporting Service. The DocAve reporting database stores the information generated by the DocAve Report Center, such as individual job report data.

If you select the build-in database for the report service, you should specify a data file location to save the data. By default, the location is ...|Program Files|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusReportDB|data.

If you select the MS SQL, you should follow the steps below to configure the database for the report service.

*Note: The Export to datasheet feature in Report Center can only be used in the MS SQL environment.

Once the report service has established connection with control service, you can install additional report services on separate servers.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Database Configuration</td><td>You must specify a database for collecting job information:

1. Enter the MS SQL Server name into the Database Server field. You may also choose to use an alias.

2. Select the type of authentication, and then enter the corresponding username and password.

3. Enter the database name for the reporting service. If the database does not exist, it will be created automatically.

4. Click Test to verify the connection.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Collection Database	You must specify a database for collecting DocAve Auditor information. You may also use the same database server host as the database configuration. 1. Enter the MS SQL Server name into the Database Server Host field, you may also choose to use an alias. 2. Select an authentication type, and enter the corresponding username and password. 3. Enter the database name for the reporting service. If the database does not exist, it will be created automatically. 4. Click **Test** to verify the connection.
	SQL Reporting Service Configuration	If you want to be able to export the report files (PDF, Excel, XML), you must configure this option. 1. Enter the document library URL to save the SQL Reporting Service Templates. 2. Enter the web service URL into the provided field. 3. Enter the username and corresponding password to configure access to the SQL reporting service. If you want to use the same server as Collection Database Server, check the corresponding checkbox, and then enter the username and password. 4. Click **Test** to verify the connection.
11	Review the options selected in the previous steps. If any changes must be made, click **Back**; otherwise, click **Install** to proceed with the installation.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	If the MS SQL option was selected, the DocAve Database Configuration screen will appear: • *Database Server Host* : MS SQL Server name • *Database* : Type in any name (for example **DocAveDB**). Click **Test** and the database will be created in the MS SQL Server Host provided. • *Failover Database Server* : You can choose to associate the DocAve databases with a specific failover server that is used in conjunction with SQL Server database mirroring. ***Note:** If there is only one Principal Server and one Mirror Server, you must change the parameter *Zeus.JdbcUrl.Config=jdbc|:sqlserver|://PrincipalSQL* to *failoverPartner|=MirrorSQL* when doing the failover job. The configuration file zeus-job.properties is in the installation path of DocAve Manager, which is *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|etc* by default. ***Note:** If there is one Principal Server, one Witness Server and one Mirror Server, the failover job can be done automatically. • *Use the same Database Server Host* : This option will load the MS SQL Server name as you entered. • *Audit Database* : Type in any name (for example **DocAve-Auditor**). Click **Test** and the database will be created in the MS SQL Server Host provided. Click **Next**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">13</td><td colspan="2">Once the installation has completed, you will be presented with several port and account configuration options. These can also be set at a later time from the Manager Configuration Tool, located in the DocAve installation directory or in the DocAve Manager Tools folder in the Start menu.

Please refer to the following table for more details on these settings.

*Note: It is recommended to use the default settings unless a known conflict with an existing port exists.

*Note: If you are installing these services on separate machines, the Control Service must be installed before any other services on other machines are installed. All other services will require you to input the Control Service Host Name and Port number in order to communicate within the Manager network. Also make note of any SSL or HTTPS settings when installing these components, as these must be consistent throughout your environment</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Control Service	• *Control Service Host name* : Current machine's host name or IP address. • *Control Service Port* : The default port number is *12000*. • *Manager Web Service* : This port is used to access the CLI from other servers. The default port is *12011*. Additional Server Settings (must be consistent across all DocAve Manager servers in order to properly function): • *Enable HTTPS* : By default, https is disabled. If checked, allows users to access the DocAve GUI securely using https. See section 2.4.2 for additional details • *Enable SSL Communication* : By default, SSL is disabled. See section 2.4.1 for additional details. • *Enable IPv6* : By default, IPv6 is disabled. The IP address of the machines installed the manager services must be in IPv6 protocol.
	Web Service	• *Web Services Host Name* : Current machine's host name or IP address. • *Web Services Port* : The default port number is *8080/8443*. • *Web Network Port* : The default port number is *12002*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Media Service	• *Media Service Host Name* : Current machine's host name or IP address. • *Media Service Control Port* : The default port number is *12001*. ***Note:** If SSL Communication is enabled, Media service and the agent will communicate through port 12012.
	Auditor Service	• *Auditor Service Host name* : Current machine's host name or IP address. • *Auditor Service Port* : The default port number is *12003*.
	Search Service	• *Search Service Host Name* : Current machine's host name or IP address. • *Search Service Port* : The default port number is *12004*.
	Report Service	• *Report Service Host Name* : Current machine's host name or IP address. • *Report Service Port* : The default port number is *12005*.
	Report Database Service	• *Report Database Service Host Name* : Current machine's host name or IP address. • *Report Database Service Port* : The default port number is *12006*.
	Report DB Service Network Port	The default port number is *12007*.
	Virtual Database Service Port	The default port number is *12013*. Click **Advanced** button and you can change the port number in the pop-up.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">14</td><td colspan="2">Click Next. The Installation wizard will perform a brief pre-scan of your environment to ensure that all ports are available, and will then install the selected services. After the installation is complete, click Finish to complete the installation.

During the installation process, if some file could not be installed or some GAC file could not be registered, it will prompt you to select one operation on the pop-up window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Retry</td><td>The process will retry the operation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ignore</td><td>The process will skip the file which could not be installed or registered and continue the installation. The installation result will be completed with exceptions. Click View installation log to get more detailed information about the exception in the log file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cancel</td><td>The installation will fail and all the files will be rolled back. Click View error log to get more detailed information about the error in the log file.</td></tr>
</table>

***Note:** You can check the installation information in Control Panel.

- *In Windows server 2003 environment* : Navigate to *Start* > *Control Panel* > *Add or Remove Programs*. The product name is displayed in the list, like DocAve v5 Manager.
- In Windows server 2008 or 2008 R2 or 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64) environment : Navigate to *Start* > *Control Panel* > *Uninstall a program*. The product name is displayed in the name column, like DocAve v5.8 Manager. DocAve version is displayed in the version column, like 5.6.0.0.

2.4.1 Setup Instructions for SSL Communication

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocAve supports data transmission over SSL to protect data transmission during the communication process. These settings must be configured for all Manager services and all corresponding Agent machines.

SSL may be either be configured during the installation as specified above, or after the installation by following the steps below:

(2-2) Setup Instructions For Security Communication

Step	Action
1	Open the Manager/Agent Configuration Tool. Go to *Start > All Programs > Avepoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Manager/Agent Tools > Manager/Agent Configuration Tool*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">2</td><td colspan="2">Check the Enable SSL Communication checkbox, and select a certificate option: Built-In Certificate or User Defined Certificate (details listed below).

*Note: The certificate option selected must be consistent among all Manager and Agent servers in your environment.

*Note: If SSL communication is enabled, the additional media port 12012 will be opened to improve SSL data transfer performance. If this port is used by another service, please follow the steps below to change it:
1. Go to the Manager installation directory, the default path is ..\AvePoint\Manager\ZeusMedia\etc and open zeus-media.properties file.
2. Change the value of Zeus.NonSSLPort to another available port.
3. Navigate to Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Manager Tools > DocAve Services and restart AvePoint DocAve5 Media Service to apply the changes.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Built-In Certificate</td><td>Uses the certificate provided by DocAve. No additional configuration is necessary.</td></tr>
<tr><td>User-Defined Certificate</td><td>Allows you to provide a customized certificate. You may apply two types of certificates: Subordinate Certification Authority for the Manager, and Web Server for the Agents. The certificate name must be the same as the local machine's name

*Note: If you install the Manager and Agents on different machines, the machines must either be bound to the same domain or the domains must have a trusted relationship configured.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Click Confirm to save any changes to the Manager Configuration tool.</td></tr>
</table>

2.4.2 Setup Instructions for HTTPS Access

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

For those administrators wishing to do so, DocAve supports accessing the DocAve GUI using the HTTPS protocol. This will encrypt the page requests and page information between the DocAve Browser Interface and the DocAve Web Service.

***Note:** The HTTPS settings within DocAve can also be configured to support FDCC (Federal Desktop Core Configuration). Please perform the additional steps in section 10.1.1 of the Appendix first in order to ensure full functionality.

2.4.2.1 Enable HTTPS in the DocAve Manager Configuration Tool

This section describes how to enable HTTPS communication in DocAve between the Manager components. This option can be configured either during installation or from the Manager Configuration Tool.

(2-3) Enable HTTPS

Step	Action
1	Open the Manager Configuration tool. Go to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Manager Tools*.
2	Check the **Enable https** option and select a corresponding certificate. For a description of these, please refer to the SSL Configuration section above in figure (2-2), step 2.
3	Click **Confirm**.

2.4.2.2 Internet Explorer Setup

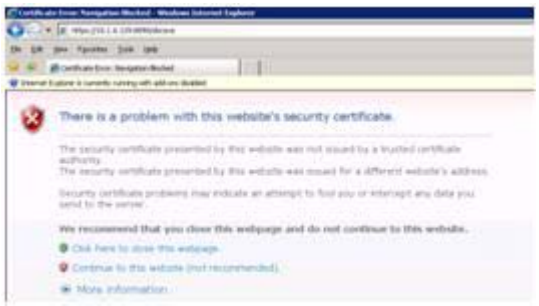
After you have enabled HTTPS in the Manager configuration tool, you must next follow the steps below to enable https access in Internet Explorer:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(2-4) Internet Explorer Setup

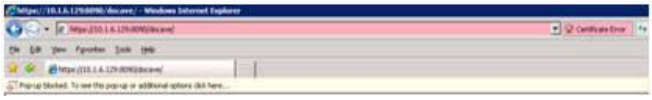
<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">When first accessing DocAve using Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE), certain initial security settings must be configured. Access the DocAve browser interface, and follow the steps below.

***Note:** In order to be sure that Internet Explorer https access is available for FDCC environments, navigate to *Internet Explorer* > *Internet Options* > *Advanced*. Under this tab, enable the **Use TLS 1.0** line under Security options.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td colspan="2">When first accessing DocAve using Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE), certain initial security settings must be configured. Run DocAve's server application found in the start menu, and follow the steps below.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>IE6</td><td>A message will appear. Click OK.</td></tr>
<tr><td>IE7/IE8</td><td>The Browser will display a security certificate prompt:

Select the option Continue to this website listed by the red bullet.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Select the corresponding security alert depending on your version of IE.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>IE6</td><td>Click OK in the Security Alert pop-up.</td></tr>
<tr><td>IE7/IE8</td><td>Click Certificate Error next to the Address URL:
  </td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Click View Certificates on the pop-up.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click Install Certificate... at the bottom of the window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click Next to continue with the Certificate Import.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Select the Automatically select the certificate store based on the type of certificate option and click Next.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Click Finish to complete the certificate import.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Click Yes to install the certificate in the pop-up.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Click OK in the prompt acknowledging the successful import.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">Click Yes in the security alert window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Click Yes to allow pop-ups on the DocAve site if you are using IE 6:
</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	You can now log into DocAve from Internet Explorer. If you are using IE 6, you must click **Yes** in the security prompt before using the DocAve GUI.

2.4.3 Change Database Location

If after you have completed your installation, your environment changes to the effect that you must change the locations of your Control Service and Reporting Database, follow the steps below:

(2-5) Changing Database Location

Step	Action
1	Open the **Change Database Location Tool.** Go to *Start > All Program > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Manager Tools > Change Database Location Tool*.
2	Click **Browse** after the path for each file.
3	Select the location you want to save the files, and click **Confirm**.
4	Click **Yes** in the Restart Manager Services to make sure the changes take effect.

2.5 DocAve SharePoint Agent Installation

The DocAve SharePoint Agent must be installed on a SharePoint Front-End Web Server. In order to install it, follow the steps below:

***Note:** The installation user must have administrative rights to the SharePoint and SQL machines in order to install DocAve Agents.

***Note:** For Connector and End User Archiving functions, you must install DocAve Agent on all the front-end web servers whose Web Application Service is started, otherwise the solution can only be deployed on the front-end web server which installed DocAve Agent, thus the functions cannot be used.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(2-6) SharePoint Agent Installation And Configuration

Step	Action
1	Download the DocAve Agent installation package to the SharePoint Front-End Web (FEW) and unzip the content.
2	Open the DocAve5 Agent directory created in the last step and run the file *Setup.exe*.
3	After being presented with the Welcome screen, click **Next** and review the license agreement.
4	Enter your name and organization in the screen provided. Verify all information. Click **Next**.
5	Review the license agreements and click **I accept the terms in the license agreement**. Click **Next**.
6	Choose a directory for the installation. The default path is *C:| Program Files|AvePoint*. You can change this location by clicking **Browse**. The Feature Description will give you the hard drive size requirement for this installation. Click **Next**.
7	If you have installed the DocAve agent on the environment without SharePoint, please select the SharePoint version you want to use. This is only used for certain Migrator modules.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">8</td><td colspan="2">Choose Next and review the options selected in the previous steps. If any changes must be made, click Back; otherwise, click Install to proceed with the installation.

During the installation process, if some files cannot be copied, it will prompt you to select one operation on the pop-up window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Retry</td><td>The process will retry the operation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ignore</td><td>The process will skip the file which cannot be copied and continue the installation. The installation result will be completed with exceptions. Click View installation log to get more detailed information about the exception in the log file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cancel</td><td>The installation will fail and all the files will be rolled back. Click View error log to get more detailed information about the error in the log file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Once the installation is complete, you will be presented with several port and account configuration options. These can be set at a later time from the Agent Configuration Tool, located in the DocAve installation directory or in the DocAve Agent folder accessed in the start menu.

It is recommended to use the default settings unless a known conflict with an existing port exists, further explanation of these ports is provided below.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	The following configuration options are available in Agent Configuration Tool. • *DocAve Control Service Name* : The computer's host name or IP address for the machine in which the DocAve Server is installed • *DocAve Control Service Port* : The default port number is *12000* • *Manager Web Service* : The default port is *12011* • *DocAve Agent Name* : Current machine's host name or IP address • *DocAve Agent Address* : Current machine's host name or IP address • *DocAve Agent Port* : The default port number is *10103* • *Archiver Port* : The default port number is *10107* • *User Account / Password* : An account which has administrative access to both the SharePoint Front-End Web Server and your SQL Server MUST be used. A SharePoint service account is recommended. • *Enable SSL Communication* : This option should be configured to match the Manager configuration. • *Enable IPv6* : This option should be configured to match the Manager configuration. The IP address of the machines installed the agent service must be in IPv6 protocol. • *Enable Web Service* : This option is used to enable the web service for the Replicator module. For more information, please refer to Enabling Web Service in the Installation Wizard. • *AgentType* : Check the box in front of the agent function. These will be explained in detail in the following sections.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	***Note:** When clicking **Test** or **Next** button, DocAve will check the farm name of this server. If there is anther Agent with the same farm name as this installing agent for one manager, it will prompt you to rename the farm name. You need to go to *..\AvePoint\DocAve5 \Agent \data* and open *VCEnv.cfg* to change the value of *FarmName*, and then continue to install this Agent. For the farm with several Front-End Web, the values of FarmName for all the Front-End Web must be the same one. If the agent is reinstalled in the future, the value of Farm-Name must be the same as the changed one to ensure all the previous data can be loaded. ***Note:** The following ports will also be used by DocAve. • The port 13213 is only used for HA to transfer files from source SQL to HA SQL servers. • 10110 is used by DocAve Replicator Listener. • 10105 is used by 03ItemBrewse. • For HA, if there is one more SQL instance DB mirror, one more port will be used and the port number is increased by degrees based on 5022, e.g. 5023, 5024...
12	After you configure the Agent Type, it will prompt you to restart IIS. ***Note:** The IIS reset performed does not restart the IIS service, but performs a no-force reset of the IIS processes. Any processes currently running will be allowed to finish before this reset takes place. If you choose to reset IIS at a later time, any pre-existing web parts or features installed by this platform will not be upgraded.
13	The agent types are defined in the installation sections of the modules below.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">14</td><td colspan="2">Click Next, followed by Finish to complete the installation.

If some service cannot be installed, it will prompt you to select one operation on the pop-up window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Retry</td><td>The process will retry the operation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ignore</td><td>The process will skip this service which cannot be installed and continue the installation. The installation result will be completed with exceptions. Click View installation log to get more detailed information about the exception in the log file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cancel</td><td>The installation will fail and all the files will be rolled back. Click View error log to get more detailed information about the error in the log file.</td></tr>
</table>

***Note:** You can check the installation information in Control Panel.

- In Windows server 2003 environment : Navigate to *Start* > *Control Panel* > *Add or Remove Programs*. The program name is displayed as product for SharePoint platform information, like DocAve v5.8 Agent for SharePoint 2007.
- In Windows server 2008 or 2008 R2 environment or 2008 R2 Datacenter (x64) : Navigate to *Start* > *Control Panel* > *Uninstall a program*. The name column is displayed as product for SharePoint platform information as DocAve v5 Agent for SharePoint 2007. DocAve version is displayed in the version column, for example 5.6.0.0.

2.5.1 Enabling Web Service in the Installation Wizard

To enable the web service based agents, such as for Replication over HTTP/HTTPs, please follow the steps below on the remote agent.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(2-7) Enabling Web Service in the Installation Wizard

Step	Action
1	Check the **Enable Web Service** option in the Agent Configuration page after installation. The **Configure** button will appear next to the option.
2	Click **Configure**. The Web Service Setting window will pop-up.
3	Enter the Web Service URL for the corresponding agent. The URL must be provided in the format: *http://server:port/_vti_bin/DocAveWebService.asmx*.
4	Input the host, username, and password to set up access to the Web Service, then click **Test** for verification.
5	Click **OK** to save the configuration.

2.5.2 Required Permissions for the DocAve Software Agents

When installing the DocAve Agents to interface with your SharePoint deployment, you must configure these with a service account (only one is accepted in the installation package) for initiating all jobs and performing all actions within SharePoint.

To keep the communication between the agent and manager, the account should have the following basic permissions: Act as part of the operation system, Log on as a batch job, Replace a process level token and Log on as a service. To add these permissions, please follow the steps below:

(2-8) Add the basic permissions for Agent account

Step	Action
1	Go to *Start* > *Run*, enter **gpedit.msc** in the pop-up window.
2	Navigate to *Computer Configuration* > *Windows Settings* > *Security Settings* > *Local Policies* > *User Rights Assignment*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Add the corresponding user to the four policies named Act as part of the operation system, Log on as a batch job, Replace a process level token and Log on as a service on the right of the window.

Below is a summary of the minimum local system, SharePoint, and SQL permissions for the accounts provided, grouped by DocAve Module and Agent type. In all cases, the recommended permissions are presented first.

(2-9) Permissions for the DocAve Software Agents

DocAve Module / Agent Type (Installation Location)	Permission		
	Local System	**SQL Server**	**SharePoint**
Administration			
Administration - SharePoint Administrator(Admin Report) SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	Local Administrator	DBOwner for SharePoint Content database	Farm Administrator
Administration - SharePoint Administrator(Central Admin) SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	Local Administrator	DBOwner for: SharePoint Content database • Server Role of # DBCreator	Farm Administrator
Administration - SharePoint Administrator(STSADM) SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	Local Administrator	DBOwner for all SharePoint databases	Farm Administrator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Administration - Content Manager SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	For windows 2003: 1. Modify permission and its incidental permissions in Agent directory. 2. Permission that could create Log Entry in registry. 3. WSS_ADMIN_WPG group permission (this permission will be added automatically while performing operation of Policy for Web Application) ***Note:** Please use permission" Local Admin" if the above permission does not work. For Windows 2008: 1. Modify permission and its incidental permissions in Agent directory. 2. Permission that could create Log Entry in registry. 3. WSS_ADMIN_WPG group permission (this permission will be added automatically while performing operation of Policy for Web Application)	For SharePoint 2007 DB Server: Server Role or DB Creator or Security Admin for all the content DB or DBOwner. For SharePoint 2010 DB Server: Server Role or DB Creator or Security Admin for all the content DB or DBOwner for SharePoint_Config DB & CA's Content DB or WSS_Content_Application_Pools (this permission will be added automatically after performing operation of Policy for Web Application) or db_datareader	Farm Administrator for all Web application, add agent user to allzone in policy for web application, the minimum permission is Full Control. For the operation of metadata, Agent Account should be added into Term Store Administrators. For the operation of user profile, Agent Account should be added into User profile Administrators and Connection Permissions.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

	4. Need to add permission to agent account: Local Security Policy> Local Policy> User rights assignment > logon as a batch job. ***Note:** Please use permission" Local Admin" if the above permission does not work.		
Administration - Deployment Manager (Solution Center) SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	Full Control to DocAve folder Full control to solution folder Windows SharePoint Services Administration service control	N/A	Farm Administrator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Administration - Deployment Manager (Design Manager) SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	For Windows 2003: 1. Modify permission and its incidental permissions in Agent directory. 2. Permission that could creates Log Entry in registry. 3. WSS_ADMIN_WPG group permission (this permission will be added automatically while performing operation of Policy for Web Application) For Windows 2008: 1. Modify permission and its incidental permissions in Agent directory. 2. Permission that could creates Log Entry in registry. 3. WSS_ADMIN_WPG group permission (this permission will be added automatically while performing operation of Policy for Web Application)	Administrator For SQL Server 2005: Server Role or DB creator or Security Admin for all the content db or DBOwner. For SQL Server 2008: Server Role or DB creator or Security Admin for all the content db or DBOwner for SharePoint_Config DB & CA's Content DB or WSS_Content_Application_Pools (this permission will be added automatically after performing operation of Policy for Web Application)	Farm Administrator for all Web application, add agent user to allzone in policy for web application, the minimum permission is Full Control. For the operation of metadata, Agent Account should be added into Term Store Administrators. For the operation of user profile, Agent Account should be added into User profile Administrators and Connection Permissions.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

	4. Need to add permission to agent account: Local Security Policy--->Local Policy-->User rights assignment-> logon as a batch job. ***Note:** Please use permission" Local Admin" if the above permission does not work.		
Administration - Replicator SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	Permission of reading and writing of installation path (C:\Program Files\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent) Full control for AvePoint log in registry	DBOwner for: SharePoint Content Databases • Server Role of # DBCreator Security Administrator	Farm Administrator Policy for Web application, the minimum permission is Full Control. For the operation of metadata, Agent Account should be added into Term Store Administrators. For the operation of user profile, Agent Account should be added into User profile Administrators and Connection Permissions.
Compliance			
Compliance - Compliance Vault SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	Local Administrator or Full Control to the DocAve root folder (HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint)	Local Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases ***Note:** If an SSO is present in SharePoint, an account with local Administrator rights must be provided.	Farm Administrator To backup MySites, the account used also requires permissions to the "Personalization Services" with all granular permissions beneath in the SSP/admin site collection.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Compliance - Compliance Auditor SharePoint Front-end Web(FEW)	Local Administrator or Full Control to the DocAve root folder (HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint)	Local Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases ***Note:** If an SSO is present in SharePoint, an account with local Administrator rights must be provided.	Farm Administrator
Compliance - eDiscovery	Windows 2003: Local Administrator or Full Control to the DocAve root folder (HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint) Windows 2008: Local Administrator	Local Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases. Note: If an SSO in present in SharePoint, the local administrator account must be provided	Farm Administrator
Compliance - Hold Manager			
Data Protection			

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Data Protection - Granular Backup (includes Criticality Matrix) (with Item-Level Restore Granularity) SharePoint Front-End Web (FEW)	Local Administrator or Full Control to the DocAve root folder	Local Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases (WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for SharePoint_Config DB, WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for Central Admin DB, and WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for SSP DB) ***Note:** If an SSO is present in SharePoint, an account with local Administrator rights must be provided.	Farm Administrator ***Note:** To granularly backup and restore MySites, the account used also requires permissions to the "Personalization Services" with all granular permissions beneath in the SSP/admin site collection.
Data Protection - Platform Backup Control Agent ***Note:** The Member Agent roles can be combined depending on the deployment of SharePoint's Index, SQL, and Front-End Web servers (i.e., "all-in-one" installations require all permissions listed).	Local Administrator or • Full Control to the DocAve root folder • Member of the IIS Administrator group ***Note:** If an SSO is present in SharePoint, an account with local Administrator rights must be provided.	• View Server State permission • DBOwner for all SharePoint databases • Server Role of: # DBCreator # Security Administrator	Farm Administrator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Data Protection - Platform Backup Member Agent (SQL)	Local Administrator or • 'Full Control' to the DocAve root folder • 'Full Control' to the SQL server database file and log folder ***Note:** If VSS is to be used as a backup method, the account must also have the rights to start Windows Services for Volume Shadow Copy Service and SQL Server VSS Write Service, as well as to the vssapi.dll file located in c:\Windows\System32\.	Server Role of Sysadmin for VDI Server Role of Security Administrator and DBOwner for VSS	N/A
Data Protection - Platform Backup Member Agent (Index)	Local Administrator or • 'Full Control' to the index files • Permission to start the following Windows Services: # Office SharePoint Server Search Windows # SharePoint Services Search	Server Role of DBOwner for: • SSP Database • SSP Web Application • Search Database	Farm Administrator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Data Protection - Platform Backup Member Agent (FEW)	Local Administrator or 'Read/Write' access to: • DocAve root folder • Microsoft Share-Point .DLLs/GAC • All file system folders intended for backup • IIS • Custom settings folder	N/A	Farm Administrator
Data Protection - Restore from SQL Backup Control Agent	Local Administrator	N/A	Farm Administrator
Data Protection - Restore from SQL Backup Member Agent	• 'Read' to the SQL backup files' directory • 'Full Control' to SQL backup files • 'Full Control' to the temp DBs' root folder	System Administrator	Farm Administrator
Data Protection - High Availability HA Sync Agent SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator	• DBOwner for all SharePoint data-bases • Server Role of: # DBCreator # Security Administrator • Server Role of Sysadmin	Farm Administrator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Data Protection - High Availability HA SQL Agent SQL Back end	Local Administrator or Full Control to the HA Cache Setting path Full Control to the SQL server database file and log fold	• DBOwner for all SharePoint data-bases • Server Role of: # DBCreator # Security Administrator • Server Role of Sysadmin	N/A

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Data Protection - SiteBin SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	The users that register agent: Local Administrator The users that use web part: N/A	The users that use web part: N/A The users that register agent: Local Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for SharePoint_Config DB WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for Central Admin DB WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for SSP DB ***Note:** If an SSO is present in SharePoint, an account with local Administrator rights must be provided.	The users that use web part: Site Administrator The users that register agent: Farm Administrator
Migration			
Migration - File System Migration SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator	DBOwner for all SharePoint databases	Farm Administrator
Migration - File System Migration File System Reader	Local Administrator	N/A	N/A

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Migration - SharePoint 2003 to 2007 (SharePoint Standard & Advanced Migration) SharePoint 2003 Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator	System Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases (Including the _SITE, _SERV, _PROF databases).	SharePoint Administrator
Migration - SharePoint 2003 to 2007 (SharePoint Standard & Advanced Migration) SharePoint 2007 Front-end Web (FEW)	For Windows 2003: Local Administrator or 'Full Control' to the DocAve root folder and Member of the IIS Admin group For Windows 2008: Local Administrator or 'Full Control' to the DocAve root folder, Member of the IIS Admin group and Local Security Policy--->Local Policy-->User rights assignment-> logon as a batch job ***Note:** If perform Migration job for the first time, Local Admin permission is needed.	System Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases	Farm Administrator ***Note:** To migrate MySites, the account used also requires permissions to the "Personalization Services" with all granular permissions beneath in the SSP/admin site collection.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Migration - SharePoint 2003 to 2007 (Database Migration) SharePoint 2003 Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator or 'Full Control' to the DocAve root folder and Member of the IIS Admin group	System Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases If use SQL Default in Database Info of SharePoint Migration Settings, you must have read data permission of specified content database of SharePoint 2003.	Farm Administrator ***Note:** To migrate MySites, the account used also requires permissions to the "Personalization Services" with all granular permissions beneath in the SSP/admin site collection.
Migration - Lotus Notes Migration Lotus Notes Agent	Local Administrator	Reader: Notes Database	N/A
Migration - Lotus Notes Migration SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator	DBOwner for SharePoint Content Database	Farm Administrator
Migration - eRoom (ERM Plan Builder/ Live Mode) SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator or 'Read/Write' access to DocAve root folder.	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator
Migration - eRoom (Plan Builder/Live Mode) SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator or 'Read/Write' access to DocAve root folder.	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator
Migration - eRoom (Plan Builder/Live Mode) eRoom Server	Local Administrator	N/A	N/A

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Migration - LiveLink (Plan Builder/Live Mode) Connect to LiveLink Server	Local Administrator	N/A	N/A
Migration - LiveLink (Plan Builder/Live Mode) SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator or 'Read/Write' access to DocAve root folder.	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator
Migration - Quick-Place QuickPlace Client	Local Administrator	Editor: QuickPlace Room	
Migration - Quick-Place SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator	DBOwner for Share-Point Content Data-bases	Farm Administrator
Migration - Exchange Public Folder SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Permission of read-ing and writing of installation path (C:\Program Files\Ave-Point\DocAve5\Agen t)	• DBOwner for all SharePoint data-bases • Server Role of: # DBCreator # Security Administrator	Farm Administrator The user must has the Public Folder Owner per-mission
Migration - EMC Doc-umentum SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator (for Windows 2008) or 'Read / Write' access to: DocAve root folder (for Win-dows 2003)	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator
Migration - EMC Doc-umentum EMC Document Administration	Local Administrator	N/A	N/A

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Migration - SharePoint 2003 to 2010 SharePoint 2003 Front-end Web	Local Administrator	System Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases (Including the _SITE, _SERV, _PROF databases)	SharePoint Administrator
Migration - SharePoint 2003 to 2010 SharePoint 2010 Front-end Web	Local Administrator or Full Control to the DocAve root folder, Member of the IIS Administrator group and Local Security Policy > Local policy > User rights assignment > logon as a batch job ***Note:** If perform Migration job for the first time, Local Admin permission is needed.	System Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases	Farm Administrator Note: 1. If migrate personal site (1). User Profile Service Application > Permissions > Full Control (2). User Profile Service Application > Manage User Permissions > Use Personal Features & Create Personal Site & Use Social Features 2. If migrate area to existed site collection, Site Collection Owner. For the operation of metadata, Agent Account should be added into Term Store Administrators

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Migration - SharePoint 2007 to 2010 SharePoint 2007 Front-end Web	for Windows 2003: Local Administrator or Full Control to the DocAve root folder and Member of the IIS Admin group for Windows 2008: Local Administrator or Full Control to the DocAve root folder, Member of the IIS Admin group and Local Security Policy-->Local Policy-->User rights assignment-> logon as a batch job ***Note:** If perform Migration job for the first time, Local Admin permission is needed.	Local Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases, WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for SharePoint_Config DB, WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for Central Admin DB and WSS_Content_Application_Pools or DBOwner for SSP DB ***Note:** Local Administrator: If an SSO is present in SharePoint, the local admin account must be provided.	Farm Administrator Policy for Web application, the minimum permission is Full Control. ***Note:** To granularly backup, the account used also requires permissions to the "Personalization Services" with all granular permissions beneath in the SSP/admin site collection.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Migration - SharePoint 2007 to 2010 SharePoint 2010 Front-end Web	Local Administrator Full Control to the DocAve root folder, Member of the IIS Admin group Local Security Policy->Local Policy->User rights assignment-> logon as a batch job ***Note:** If perform Migration job for the first time, Local Admin permission is needed.	System Administrator or DBOwner for all SharePoint databases	Farm Administrator ***Note:** 1.If migrate personal site (1).User Profile Service Application->Permissions->Full Control (2).User Profile Service Application->Manage User Permissions->Use Personal Features& Create Personal Site & Use Social Features 2.If migrate area to existed site collection, Site Collection Owner. For the operation of metadata, Agent Account should be added into Term Store Administrators
Report Center			
Report Center - SharePoint Infrastructure SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator
Report Center - Usage Analytics SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator
Report Center - DocAve Report			

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Report Center - Report Manager SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator Application Pool User Should have Local Admin Permission in Creating DocAve Report Center Template Site Collection and Sites
Storage Optimization			
Storage Optimization - Archiver SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	For Windows 2003: Local Administrator - Full Control to the DocAve root folder Full Control for HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint For Windows 2008: Local Administrator Full Control for HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint Local Security Policy->Local Policy->User rights assignment-> logon as a batch job	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator Full Control for Web Application
Storage Optimization - Extender SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator or 'Read/Write' access to DocAve root folder. HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Eventlog\AvePoint	Local Administration DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Storage Optimization - Connector SharePoint Front-end Web (FEW)	Local Administrator	DBOwner for all SharePoint Content Databases	Farm Administrator

2.6 Verifying the Installation

In order to verify that DocAve has installed correctly, you will check for the presence of the services listed below. Also, you can check any firewall or port settings for data transfer.

(2-10) Verify The Installation

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Under the Administrative Tools menu in Windows, open the Services running on the machine where any DocAve component, Manager or Agent, is installed.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">2</td><td colspan="2">In the services listing, multiple services are listed for the DocAve Manager and Agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Agent Service</td><td>DocAve Communication Service.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Manager Services</td><td>Check for the DocAve Control Service, DocAve Media Service, DocAve Search Service, DocAve Web Service, and DocAve Audit Service.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">To ensure proper communication between the DocAve Manager and Agent, the following ports must be open and available if a firewall is in place.

The DocAve Manager uses the following TCP ports:

12000, 12001, 12002, 12003, 12004, 12005, 12006, 12007, 12011, 12012, 12013, 8080, 8443

The DocAve Agent uses TCP port 10103, 10107, 13213, 10110, 10105, 5022.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

2.7 Accessing the DocAve GUI

The DocAve GUI can be launched from any web browser within the same network as the DocAve Manager. In order to connect to the interface, you must record the IP/Host Name for the DocAve Manager - Web Service, as well as the Web Service Port if it was changed.

***Note:** All pop-up blockers: browser-based or in third party toolbars and LAN firewalls must be disabled.

***Note:** For DocAve 5.~~7~~8, to ensure you can properly access the GUI in IE 9, you must clear the IE cache. When clearing the IE cache, do not select *Preserve Favorites Website Data* option.

(2-11) Accessing DocAve v5

Step	Action
1	Open an Internet Explorer window and enter: *http://<machine>:8080/docave* Where *<machine>* is the host name or IP address of the machine running the DocAve Web Service. If the default port number has been changed from *8080*, enter the new port number. ***Note:** If you enabled HTTPS during installation or from the configuration tool, you must enter: *https://<machine>:8443/docave*
2	The DocAve login screen will pop-up. Select **Local System** and enter the default login account information: • *Login ID* : *admin* • *Password* : *admin* Click **Login**.

You can configure DocAve to work with Active Directory and with additional users and groups after the initial setup. Please refer to section 3.4.1.4 in the Control Panel chapter for more details.

2.8 Uninstallation Instructions

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Uninstallation can be used to either to remove individual features of DocAve, or the entire Manager/Agent configuration.

2.8.1 Adding and Removing Features

The DocAve modules, Data Protection, Platform Level Backup, SharePoint Administrator, etc., are controlled by a license. However, if you wish to configure your Agents to only run Backup and Recovery, or only SharePoint Administrator, this can be done from each SharePoint Agent individually.

(2-12) Enabling and Disabling Features from DocAve SharePoint Agent

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the SharePoint Web Front End where the DocAve SharePoint Agent is installed.
2	Open the Start menu and navigate to *All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Agent Tools > Agent Configuration Tool*.
3	From the Agent Configuration Tool, navigate to the appropriate tab for the module you would like to enable or disable features for. These will be listed under the **Agent Type** section at the bottom. From here you can either check or uncheck DocAve features according to your needs.
4	Click **Confirm** to save these changes.

***Note:** Enabling Extension Archiver will require an IIS Reset. You can choose to perform this reset later, but not all features will be enabled if this step is skipped.

2.8.2 Removing DocAve Manager / Agent

In order to uninstall the DocAve Manager or Agent from your system, please make sure there are no current restore jobs running on the Agent, or that the Manager service being removed is not currently in use by another process.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(2-13) Uninstalling DocAve Services /Agents

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Open the Start Menu in Windows on either the DocAve Manager or Agent server and navigate to All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td colspan="2">Choose to uninstall one of the following:</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Agent</td><td>In order to uninstall the SharePoint Agent:
1. Open the DocAve v5 Agent Tools Folder.
2. Select the Agent Uninstall tool.
3. Select the Disable EBS/RBS settings in SharePoint farm option to disable the EBS/RBS settings in SharePoint farm.
*Note: This option is selected by default and the EBS/RBS settings will be disabled after uninstallation. For some usage reason, it is recommended selecting this option.
4. Click Uninstall to remove the agent. If there are running job processes during the uninstallation, it will prompt a message, you can select to continue the uninstallation or cancel the uninstallation.
5. If some files cannot be uninstalled, it will prompt you to select the operation in the pop-up window.
• Retry : The process will retry the uninstallation operation.
• Ignore : The process will skip the file which cannot be uninstalled.The uninstallation result will be completed with exceptions. Click View uninstallation log to get more detailed information about the exception in the log file.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
		6. Check the checkbox next to **Remove configuration data** if you wish to do a clean uninstallation. ***Note:** Selecting the **Remove configuration data** option, all the files which are not being used under the installation path will be deleted. However, it is recommended deleting the installation path to remove any remaining data after the uninstallation. 7. Click **Finish**. 8. Proceed to ...|*Program Files*|*AvepPoint*|*DocAve5*, delete the Agent directory. ***Note:** This step will remove any remaining configuration data.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Manager	In order to uninstall the SharePoint Manager: 1. Open the DocAve v5 Manager Tools Folder. 2. Select the **Manager Uninstall** tool. 3. Select the **Remove** radio button, and click **Next**. 4. Select the service you want to uninstall. 5. Click **Next** to remove the Service. 6. If some files cannot be uninstalled, it will prompt you to select the operation in the pop-up window. • *Retry* : The process will retry the uninstallation operation. • *Ignore* : The process will ignore the file which cannot be uninstalled.The uninstallation result will be *completed with exceptions*. Click *View uninstallation log* to get more detailed information about the exception in the log file. 7. Check the checkbox next to Remove configuration data if you wish to perform a clean uninstallation. ***Note:** Selecting the **Remove configuration data** option, all the files which are not being used under the installation path will be deleted. However, it is recommended deleting the installation path to remove any remaining data after the uninstallation. 8. Click **Finish**. 9. Proceed to *...|Program Files|AvePoint|DocAve5*, delete the Manager directory. ***Note:** This step will remove any configuration data, as well as plan and job details.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3. Control Panel

The DocAve Control Panel offers the following general administrative services:

Agent Services

- *Agent Monitor* : Monitor and restart DocAve software agents, set up DocAve agent work areas for temporary work files, and control access rights to agent hosts.
- *Agent Groups* : Monitor agent groups.
- *Remote Installation* : Install agent packages on remote machines from a central interface.
- *Cache Settings* : View the cache settings of different modules and make modifications if necessary.
- *Export Location* : View detailed information of the export locations used by various agents.

Manager Services

- *Manager Monitor* : Monitor, delete, and restart DocAve services.
- *System Performance* : Monitor the CPU usage and memory usage for all managers.

Data Management

- *Data Manager* : Configure data pruning profiles, job pruning profiles and data coalescing profiles. You may also import or export backup data.
- *Filter Policy* : Set filter profiles for backups at multiple levels.
- *Retention Policy* : Set the retention policy for Archiver and Auditor modules.
- *Device Manager* : Add physical storage devices and configure logical drives for data storage with various DocAve Media Services.
- *Security Manager* : Configure the security profiles for DocAve modules.
- *Language Mapping* : Set up custom language mappings for internationalized configurations.

DocAve System

- *Account Manager* : Control group permissions and user access to DocAve.
- *DocAve Solution Manager* : Manage all the solutions for DocAve.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *System Recovery* : Set up and schedule backup and restore plans for DocAve Databases.
- *System Settings* : Specify basic system settings such as language or time format for DocAve.
- *User Data* : Specify the location to save the Control Agent Administrative search results and the upgrade patches.

Reporting

- *Email Notification* : Set up e-mail notification profiles for different services at different log levels for reporting.
- *Log Manager* : Set up and manage DocAve log quotas and notifications.
- *Log Viewer* : View the logs generated by the DocAve Server.
- *MOM Logging Settings* : View the logs generated by the DocAve Server in the MOM server.
- *SCOM Logging Settings* : View the logs generated by the DocAve Server in the SCOM server.

License Management

- *License Manager* : Manage licenses for all DocAve solutions.
- *DocAve Update manager* : Manage software upgrades for all DocAve solutions.
- *DocAve Update Report* : View details of DocAve updates.

***Note:** The ability to access the DocAve control panel should be limited to users with the highest level of administrative privileges.

3.1 Agent Services

All general administrative services contained within the Agent Services section are described in further detail in the following sections.

3.1.1 Agent Monitor

The DocAve Agent Monitor provides a central interface to add remote agents, and monitor, restart, disable and remove all registered DocAve Agents.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Agent Monitor displays the following information: Agent Name, Status, Mode, Agent Address, Version, Agent Type, SP Version, Registration Time, Message and Control. By hovering over the content under Agent Type column, you will be able to view all the agent types enabled for the specified agent.

By clicking the corresponding buttons, you can perform the following functions:

- *Add Remote Agent* : Set up a remote agent for the Manager, it is used for the Replicator module. Please refer to Section Adding a Remote Agent for more information.

For the columns in the Agent Monitor, please refer to the detailed information below:

- *Agent Name* : Shows the name of the Agent Host machine.
- *Status:* : Shows the status of the agent, the red arrow means the agent status is down and cannot work, if the arrow is green and the Message column is blank, it means the agent is available.

  ***Note:** If you click in the Control column, the Agent Status in the Status column will not be changed. You can only know whether the Agent is disabled or not by checking the control over it in the Control column.
- *Mode* : There are two modes for the agent.
  Regular: the agent is a regular agent.
  Remote: the agent is a remote agent for the Replicator Web Service.
- *Agent Address* : Shows the name or IP address of the Agent Host machine.
- *Version* : Shows the version of the agent.
- *Agent Type* : Shows all the Agent Types selected for the agent.
- *SP Version* : Shows the version of the SharePoint environment. The values of this column could be one of the followings: SPS 2003 SP1, WSS v2 SP1, MOSS 2007 SP1, WSS v3 SP1, MOSS 2010 SP1 and WSS v4 SP1.
- *Registration Time* : Shows the registration time of the agent.
- *Message* : When the status of the agent is available, this column will be blank. If there are any issue with the agent, there will be a red hyperlink *Message…* in the column. Clicking this link, a pop-up window will appear and the corresponding information will be shown in it. For example, if you see the message *The version number for this agent does not match the manager version number*, please check the version of the manager and the agent.

Under the Control column:

- *Restart* : Restarts any DocAve Agent service (DocAve Communication Service) on the Agent machine. This does not reset all services, only those pertaining to this platform.
- *Disable* : Suspends all backup or restore jobs corresponding to this Agent. All plans that were scheduled are skipped if an agent is disabled, but they will still be visible from all the modules.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Remove* : Removes the specific Agent from the DocAve Manager. However, the register information of the Agent will be kept in the Agent Monitor interface for reviewing. The plans for this Agent no longer run, and this Agent is not available from all the DocAve modules. This option should be used when you want to delete the plans or/and data associated with the agent after uninstalling the Agent. And you can check the corresponding check box in the pop-up to remove all backup data associated with this agent or/and remove all plans associated with this agent.

  ***Note:** The related backup data or plans will be removed when all the agents in the Agent Group are uninstalled.

- *Configure* : Configures Agent information, follow the steps below for an explanation of the configurable options:

(3-1) Agent Configuration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Agent Services > Agent Monitor.*
2	Click **Configure**. A dialog box will open that allows you to configure the Agent account, specify its data location, select the agent type, and enable the web service. ***Note:** The Web Service Tab could only be seen after the Replicator Agent Type is selected.
3	On top of the dialog box, you can select the log level from the drop-down box. There are five options: **Error, Warning, Info, Debug and Log to file**. For troubleshooting, we recommend setting the level to Debug.
4	Click the *Account Configuration* tab. Enter the SharePoint Domain\Username and the corresponding SharePoint password. Please make sure that the SharePoint account has the required permissions for the modules enabled (see section Required Permissions for the DocAve Software Agents).

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Click the *Data Location Settings* tab. Set the location where you wish to store temporary data generated by this agent. The default location is on the DocAve software agent' s host machine: *<DocAve v5 Install Directory>\Agent\temp* To customize the location specified for saving the temporary data, please enter the path in ether local path or UNC path. Temporary data is typically small in size, but varies based on deployment.
6	Click the *Agent Type* tab. Enable the agent functions by checking the corresponding checkboxes. After making any changes to the Agent Type, DocAve will prompt you to restart the Agent Service. ***Note:** If the changes you made requires an IIS reset, please note that the IIS reset performed does not restart the IIS service, but performs a non-force reset of IIS processes. Any currently running progress will be allowed to finish before this reset takes place. If you choose to reset IIS at a later time, any pre-existing web parts or features installed by this platform will not be upgraded.
7	Click the *Web Service* tab. Check the Enable Web Service option, and then enter the Web Service URL, Username, and the corresponding Password. Then click **Test** to test the configurations. This option is used for the Replicator module, please refer to Section Enable Web Service for detailed information.

3.1.2 Agent Groups

Agent Groups provides a central interface to monitor farm and agent configurations. It also allows you to group agents for load balancing. When an agent group is specified, DocAve will execute its commands using the Agent which has the most available resources in the agent group. Furthermore, in this section, you can view each default agent group which contains the agent(s) under the corresponding farm. On the whole, the Agent Group configuration is a prerequisite to certain modules.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.1.2.1 Adding Agents to Group

To add agents to one group, complete the following steps.

(3-2) Adding Agents to Group

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Agent Services > Agent Group.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Select a farm under the Farm drop-down box. This will allow you to see all available agents under this farm.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">You can add the agent to a new group or to an existing group.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Adding an agent to a new group.</td><td>Click the New button and input the group name into the Group Name field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Adding an agent to an existing group</td><td>Click the group name in the Agent Group area.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Drag the agent icon from the Available Agents field to the Agents In Group field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click Save. After the group has been saved successfully, it will be displayed under the Agent Group column on the right. By default, All is selected in the Farm drop-down box, and all the farms specific to this manager is listed underneath. You can select one specific farm from the drop-down list, and all the related agent groups for this farm will be shown.</td></tr>
</table>

3.1.2.2 Modifying a Group

You can modify a group after clicking the corresponding Group Name in the Agent Group list on the right. You can also modify the Group's name by using the **Group Name** box. Once all modifications are completed, click **Save** to save the changes. By clicking **Save As**, if the group name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/...** will be automatically added to the original name of the

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

agent group. You may then edit the group name by opening that group, changing the name, and clicking save.

***Note:** The default group cannot be modified.

3.1.2.3 Deleting a Group

You can delete a group by clicking the corresponding delete button in the Agent Group list.

***Note:** The default group cannot be deleted.

3.1.3 Remote Installation

Remote Installation provides a central interface to remotely install or uninstall agents on other machines. It can scan for available servers with three scanning modes (Domain Mode, IPv4 Range, and Manual Mode) to gather information about remote machines. To perform a sample remote installation, perform the steps below.

(3-3) Remote Installation

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Agent Services > Remote Installation.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td colspan="2">Select the Domain Mode, IPv4 Range, or Manual Mode tab to search for available servers.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Domain Mode	This mode enables the user to perform remote installation or uninstallation with available agents within a specified domain. In the fields provided you must enter the domain name, and corresponding username and password. You may also enable a Server Filter by checking the corresponding checkbox. This field supports wildcards (*). Click **Search** and the following information will be displayed in the table underneath the search fields: • *Host Name* : The name of the server. • *Username and Password* : Here you may enter more specific username and password information if you have not been granted enough permission to view the agent information in the search results based on the previous entry. • *OS* : This field will display detailed information of the Operating System running on the server. Select the checkbox in front of the machine you wish to choose. Click **Scan**. You can also click **Save** to save the information for your configuration next time. ***Note:** You can search for the machines only when the Manager can get access to the specified domain.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	IPv4 Range	This mode enables the user to perform remote installation or uninstallation of DocAve agents within the valid IP address range. Input a valid IP range, and the corresponding username and password in the fields provided. The table below will be populated with the information you have input. ***Note:** The valid IP range should be from the smaller one to the larger one, and the last segment of the IP address should be located in the following range 1~255 (1 and 255 could also be used). For example, 192.168.1.20~192.168.1.50. Click **Add**. You will see the search criteria displayed underneath the search field. Check the corresponding checkbox(es) for the IP Range(s) you wish to scan in, then click **Scan**.
	Manual Mode	This mode enables the user to perform remote installation or uninstallation of DocAve agents directly and accurately in accordance with the criteria input. Enter the Host Name or IP address of the remote machine, and the corresponding domain\username and password in the fields provided. ***Note:** The DocAve Manager must be able to connect with the machine by host name or IP address to scan for them for setup. To search for multiple servers, repeat entering the criteria above, and click icon to add the item. You can remove an item by clicking the delete icon. Click **Scan** to search for the available servers. You can also click **Save** to save the information for your configuration next time. ***Note:** IPv6 configured servers are only supported in Manual Mode.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Once you have completed a successful scan, the desired target server name, DocAve Agent icon (if there is already an agent installed), SharePoint version, and status will be displayed on the right.

Select the checkbox next to the server where you wish to perform the remote installation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Click Install to proceed with the installation configuration.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">5</td><td colspan="2">Select the component to install in the pop-up window to configure the agent installation in the Configuration window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Install DocAve Agent</td><td>The DocAve Agent will be installed on the specified server. Please enter the Installation Account Username and Password. For other configurations, please refer to Section DocAve SharePoint Agent Installation of this manual.

Once the configuration is complete, click Start Install to start the installation process.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Install Blob Com only</td><td>This will only install the Blob Com component for the Archiver module. Please enter the Installation Account Username and Password. If you would like to change the destination folder for this component, please specify a new path in the Destination Folder text box.

Once the configuration is complete, click OK to start the installation process.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">You can click Go to Job Report to check the process in Job Monitor or click Cancel to stay in the current page.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">When the installation process has finished, navigate to the Agent Monitor to check the agent status. Click Configure in the Control area to enter the Username and Password in the Account Configuration Tab.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Click **Uninstall**, a pop-up window will appear. Select the corresponding check-box of *Remove configuration data* or *Unregister Agent* option if necessary.
9	Click **OK** to start the uninstallation process. You can click **Go to Job Report** to check the process in Job Monitor or click **Cancel** to stay in the current page.

***Note:** After your first scan, all the agents information will be saved to a database. Refresh the information table when necessary by searching again to ensure that you have the latest information.

***Note:** Starting from DocAve 5.5, you can remotely install agents on your SharePoint 2010 environment.

3.1.4 Cache Settings

Cache Settings provides a central interface to view detailed information regarding the Cache Settings that you have configured in DocAve.

(3-4) View the Information for Cache Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *Agent Services* > *Cache Settings*.
2	Select from the available SharePoint farms in the panel on the left.
3	Select the module you want to view from the drop-down list. There are three modules: High Availability, Replicator, and Storage Optimization.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select the agent you want to view in the drop-down list by checking the check-box. Click **Apply** button, and the cache settings for the specified agent will be listed underneath. You can view: Agent, Location, and Usage for the cache settings. If you select the Replicator module, the cache settings will be listed below immediately without any further step. There is no Agent drop-down list as the other two modules.
5	Click **Edit** to edit the settings. DocAve will lead you to the corresponding page for the settings.

3.1.5 Export Location

Export location provides a central interface to view detailed information of the export locations you have configured in DocAve.

(3-5) View the Information for Export Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Agent Services > Export Location*.
2	Select the available DocAve module from the left panel. The configured export location for the selected module will be listed on the right-hand side of the window. You can view: Profile Name, Agent, Location, and Usage for the Export Location.
3	To modify the configuration, hover over the *Profile Name* and click the **Click Here** hyperlink.

3.2 Manager Services

Manager Services is composed of two components: the Manager Monitor and the System Performance monitor. They provide a central interface to monitor the status of all the manager services

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

and of the system performance respectively. You may also configure certain options from the interface.

3.2.1 Manager Monitor

The DocAve Manager Monitor provides a central interface to monitor the status of all of the manager services configured for DocAve and you can configure, restart, and delete certain available services here. The interface displays the service's Service Name, Host, Status, Type, Version, and Port.

***Note:** Please note that the ability to restart services should be limited to users with highest level of administrative privileges.

Configuring the Manager Services

Certain services can be configured by click the Configure button under the Configure column. You can modify the control port and host name for the Media Service, Audit Service, Search Service, Report Service, and Report Database Service.

(3-6) Configuring the Manager Services

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *Manager Service* > *Manager Monitor*.
2	Click **Configure** button of the service you want to update. The control port and host name for the specified service will be listed in the pop-up.
3	Enter the new port you want to use for the service. Click **Save**. ***Note:** The service host name cannot be modified.
4	Click **Refresh** icon to refresh the configuration. The port for the specified service will be changed to the new one.

3.2.2 System Performance

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

System Performance function provides an interface to view your configured hosts, including a list of the services running on this host, status of the host, CPU Usage, and Memory Usage. The data in the information table can be refreshed by clicking the green refresh button on the top left.

***Note:** This data reflects overall CPU and Memory Usage - it is not specific to DocAve processes. High server loads may not be a result of only running DocAve, and could be caused by any other process running on that machine.

3.3 Data Management

DocAve Data Management provides a central interface to set up data processing policies, device locations for data storage, filter and security policies, and language mapping. Many of the DocAve Data Management configurations must be set up before any DocAve modules will operate.

3.3.1 Data Manager

The Data Manager is split into five tabs: Data Pruning, Job Pruning, Data Coalescing, Data Import, Data Export. These five sections will be described in more detail below.

3.3.1.1 Data Pruning

The DocAve Data Manager allows administrators to permanently delete old backup data by defining pruning and expiration policies. A Data Pruning Rule allows you to specify the time period to keep the backup data for or the number of the previous jobs that should retain, and the types of backup processes that trigger Data Pruning. To configure a basic data pruning policy for granular or platform level backups, follow the steps below.

Creating a Pruning Rule for Granular or Platform Level Backups

(3-7) Data Pruning for Granular & Platform Level Backups

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Data Manager > Data Pruning.*

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select **Granular Backup & Platform Backup** from the Module drop-down list. ***Note:** The Pruning policy will only apply to content specified by the chosen module.
3	Select the Backup Types to trigger Data Pruning from the following types: **Full Backup, Incremental Backup, and Differential Backup**. One, two, or all of the available backup types can be selected.
4	Select the options for Trigger Data Pruning when a backup has the following status: **Completed** and **Completed with exception**. One or two of the available backup status can be selected.
5	Select the Trigger Time from: **Before Backup** and **After Backup**. Only one option could be selected.
6	Select the number of full backup cycles to keep before data pruning begins. For example, if the number of the full backup cycles is 2, once a third backup cycle runs and completes, data pruning will begin and the data of the first backup cycle will be removed or moved to a separate tier. However, despite the fact of being removed from the logical device and timeline in Restore Controller, the backup job still exists in Job Monitor unless **Remove Backup Job** is selected. ***Note:** When the *Keep at Least* checkbox is checked, pruning will occur only on backup data older than the time specified, regardless of the number entered in the Full Backup Cycle(s) field.
7	If you select the Keep Backup Data for Failed Jobs check box, the data of the failed jobs will be pruned according to the pruning rule.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	If you select Enable Tiered Storage check box, specify how many cycles you wish to retain in the selected tier and then go on with the lower tier. To add or delete one tier, please click the corresponding icons. ***Note:** When saving the pruning profile, all the Tiered Storage rows will be listed in accordance with the order of the number of the tiered storage ascendingly regardless of your configuration.
9	Select an email notification profile from the corresponding drop-down box. DocAve will send a report based on the profile selected. For more information on adding or editing email notification profiles, please refer to Section Configuring a General Email Notification of this Manual.
10	Click **Save** to save this profile. After the profile has been saved successfully, it will be listed under the Pruning Profiles on the right column and can now be applied when building a backup plan. If you click **Save As** and the profile name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/...** will be automatically added to the original name of the pruning profile.

***Note:** In order to leverage tiered storage pruning, you must assign a tier to the logical devices created in the Device Manager beforehand. Tiered pruning rules will be applied to the data current tier and those below, which means that if you just use a Tier3 logical device for storage, data written directly to tier 3 will skip all pruning rules defined for tiers 1 and 2. In a word, it is the logical device that determines the tiered pruning rules to be used.

Creating a Pruning Rule for SiteBin

(3-8) Data Pruning for SiteBin

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Data Manager > Data Pruning.*
2	Select **SiteBin** in the Module drop-down list.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	There are three pruning triggers which can be selected in any combination: • *Keep at least* : Pruning will occur only on data older than the time specified. • *The size of the SiteBin data reaches* : Prunes the backed-up sites or site collections when the corresponding data has exceeded the limit specified (the unit is MB or GB). • *The storage space remaining reaches* : Prunes the backed-up sites or site collections according to the quota specified. The earliest backup data will be removed to create enough space for the newest backup data.
4	If you select the **Remove Backup Job** checkbox, DocAve will remove the job records of the pruned data from the Job Monitor.
5	Select an email notification profile from the corresponding drop-down box. DocAve will send a report based on the profile specified. For more information on adding or editing email notification profiles, please refer to Section Configuring a General Email Notification of this Manual.
6	Click **Save**. After you save the profile successfully, it will be listed under the Pruning Profiles column on the right. If you click **Save As** and the profile name already exists, a suffix of **(1) / (2) / (3) / ...** will be automatically added to the original name of the pruning profile.

Creating a Pruning Rule for System Recovery

(3-9) Data Pruning for System Recovery

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Data Manager > Data Pruning.*
2	Select **System Recovery** in the Module drop-down list.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Select the Trigger Time from: **Before Backup** and **After Backup**. Only one option could be selected.
4	Specify the number of backup data to keep in the **Select the Latest Backup Data to keep:** text box.
5	If you select the **Remove Backup Job** checkbox, DocAve will remove the job records of the pruned data from the Job Monitor.
6	Select an email notification profile from the corresponding drop-down box. Then DocAve will send a report based on the profile specified. For more information on adding or editing email notification profiles, please refer to Section Configuring a General Email Notification of this Manual.
7	Click **Save**. After you save the profile successfully, it will be listed under the Pruning Profiles column on the right. If you click **Save As** and the profile name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/...** will be automatically added to the original name of the pruning profile.

After saving your data pruning profiles, you will now be able to select one data pruning profile in the Pruning section of the corresponding modules.

***Note:** DocAve does not support the manual removal of backup data directly from the file system, so either a data pruning rule or removal from the Job Monitor must be used. If any data has been removed manually, please make sure that all files and folders are restored to their original location in the file system before using the restore controller.

Removing data from TSM manually

The Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) node for DocAve should have the 'dtBackupID' permission.

If the TSM node has this permission, it will mark the content which can be deleted, and delete it when the deletion operation is performed.

If the TSM node do not have this permission, you can run the following administrative command on the TSM server to assign the 'dtBackupID' permission to the TSM node. To issue this command, you must have system privileges, unrestricted policy privileges, or restricted policy privileges for the policy domain to which the client node belongs:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

update node MyTSMNode backdel=yes

(MyTSMNode is the node used by DocAve)

Or the data will be deleted according to the setting in TSM Policy Domain Properties. You can set up the value of **If client data is deleted** and **Number for days** to **0**, and the data will be deleted when the deletion operation is performed.

Files will not be completely deleted from server storage using client delete operations, so you should run the following administrative command to completely remove them from storage. You can run the command manually or define an administrative schedule to do that. To issue this command, you must have system privileges:

expire inventory

define schedule delete_data type=administrative cmd="expire inventory" active=yes starttime=20:00 period=2
(This command defines a schedule named 'delete_data' which will run 'expire inventory' command at 8 p.m. every two days)

To view the permission of the TSM node, you can run the following command:

query node node_name f=d
(If the value of the Backup Delete Allowed is no, this presents the TSM node does not have the permission.)

See 'IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Windows Administrator's Reference' for more information. http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v1r1/index.jsp?topic=/com.ibm.itsmcw.doc/b_adminref_windows02.htm.

3.3.1.2 Job Pruning

The Job Pruning tab allows you to set up a pruning rule for all job records across your farms. It is highly recommended to configure a Job Pruning policy if you are running backups frequently. This will ensure your databases not be overloaded with job data.

General Job Record Pruning Rule

There are three general job record pruning rule types:

- *No Pruning*: all types of job records will be saved.
- *By Job Life Cycle*: Set the number of days, weeks, or months to keep the job records.
- *By Job Count*: Set the number of job records to keep.

Setting a Pruning Rule for Each Feature

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This allows you to set up a pruning rule for each feature within Data Protection, Administration, Compliance, Migration, and Storage Optimization. By default, all the features will use the General Job Record Pruning Rule until a rule for the individual feature is applied.

***Note:** The **Remove backup data** checkbox will only be available when a job containing Granular Backup data is selected.This option will allow you to remove the backup data with its job record simultaneously.

Defining the Location for Export Report

Job Pruning allows you to specify a location to export a report of **Job Pruning** jobs. Click **Define Location**, and enter the location information (username, password, and path) in the pop-up window. Please notice that the path has to be formatted in UNC path form. Click Test to verify the access, then click **OK**. The URL will be listed in the corresponding text box.

Setting a Schedule for the Pruning Rule

You can setup a schedule for the pruning rule by unchecking the *No schedule* check-box. Using the calendar icon next to the *Start Time* field, select a date and time for the pruning job to run, and then set an interval for recurring rules based on a schedule using the option of **Only Once**, **Day**, **Week** or **Month**.

Apply the Rule or Prune Now

Once a job record pruning rule has been set, click **Save** or **Prune Now**. By clicking **Save**, the rules will be saved and DocAve will prune the job records according to the scheme that you setup. By clicking **Prune Now**, DocAve will remember the rule and will prune the job records at once, the detailed information of the pruned job records will be exported to the path you defined.

You can view the status of pruning jobs in the process bar at the bottom of the window.

3.3.1.3 Data Coalescing

Data Coalescing merges Incremental or Differential data chunks into the previous Full Backup to save disk space. Data Coalescing allows DocAve administrators to effectively stretch out Backup Cycles to Full Backups plus the number of incremental and differential backups until the next Full Backup without any added risk of losing data.

For example, an administrator could set up a monthly backup schedule where a Full Backup is performed on the 1st day of every month, and an Incremental Backup is performed daily. By using Data Coalescing, the resulting data is one set of only Full Backups residing on your local/ network drive or SAN (Storage Area Network) environment.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Within *Manual Coalescing*, you can select a Backup Type, and then click Backup Data to expand the data tree. Select the data you wish to coalesce by checking the corresponding check-box. Click **Coalescing** to run the job.

After the coalescing, the index file as well as the data will be coalesced. There will be only one time point of the Full Backup which is generated by the coalescing operation in Restore Controller.

Within *Auto Coalescing*, you can create an auto coalescing plan. Select a trigger to automatically coalesce backup data: specify a number in **When the number of incremental or differential backups reaches** or specify a start time with an interval. Select an Email notification profile, DocAve will notify the recipients if the auto coalescing plan meets the notification levels specified in the Email notification profile. Click **Save**, the profile will appear on the right. You can view the status of data coalescing jobs in the process bar at the bottom of the window.

3.3.1.4 Data Import

Data Import allows administrators to import backup data copied or pruned from other logical devices to another location on the same server or among different servers.

You may also import backup data from Archiver, which is covered in the next section.

***Note:** Before you import any backup data, ensure that you have already manually copied the backup data to the desired logical device.

***Note:** If the imported data is enciphered, it cannot be restored.

Importing Data for Different Modules (Granular Backup, Platform Backup, Extender or SharePoint Migration)

To import the data from Granular Backup, Platform Backup, Extender or SharePoint Migration, follow the steps below:

(3-10) Importing Data for Different Modules (other than Archiver)

Step	Action
1	Click on *Control Panel* > *Data Management* > *Data Manager* > *Data Import.*
2	Select a module, *Granular Backup*, *Platform Backup*, *SharePoint Migration*, or *Extender*, from the drop-down list.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	*For Granular Backup*, *Platform Backup*, *Extender and SharePoint Migration*, select a logical device containing the appropriate Physical Device from the drop-down box.
4	Click **Devices** to expand the data tree. If you are importing data from an extended location for Extender, you must also select the corresponding Index Logical Device.
5	Select the plan you want to import by checking the corresponding box, and then click **Import**. You can view the status of import jobs in the process bar at the bottom of the window.

Importing Data for Archiver

To import data for the Archiver module, follow the steps below:

(3-11) Import Data For Archiver

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Data Manager > Backup Data Import.*
2	Select *Archiver* from the Module drop-down list.
3	Enter the **Plan Name** into the provided field.
4	Within the *Import Settings* tab, set the retention time of the backup data. By default, the *Reset Retention* check box is not selected, which indicates that the retention time of imported data will remain the same with the one set in its last archive job, otherwise, select *Reset Retention* to choose the retention policy from the corresponding drop-down list. The options in this list are all configured in Retention Policy in the Control Panel.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	To generate the index during the importing job, you can select the **Generate Full Text Index**.
6	Within the *Schedule* tab, you can set up the schedule to enable this import to start from a specified time and to run on a specified interval.
7	Select the Data Logical Device which contains the archived data.
8	Select the Index Logical Device which stores the index file and is connected to the archived data.
9	Click **Browse** to load the index device and expand the farm tree to select the data you want to import by checking the corresponding check box.
10	To import the archiver data to another site collection, you can select the *Import to another site collection* option, and specify the appropriate farm and agent group from the drop-down box.
11	Click the farm name to expand the data tree, select the location where you want to import data by clicking the radio button.
12	Click **Save** to save the settings. If you click **Save As** and the plan name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/…** will be automatically added to the original name of the Import Plan. If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**, otherwise, the job will run at the specified time according to the schedule. You can go to the **Job Monitor** to view the process.

3.3.1.5 Data Export

You may export data immediately or periodically to one logical device at a different tier. Data which are able to be exported includes the data of Granular Backups, Platform Backups, Archiver data, Extender data and SharePoint Migrations. After the export job, the information on the target logical driver will be kept in the source database.

To export data, follow the steps below:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(3-12) Export Data

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Data Management > Data Manager > Data Export.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td colspan="2">Please select the module in the corresponding drop-down list.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Granular Backup, Platform Backup, or SharePoint Migration</td><td>To export the data of such modules, please follow the steps below:
1. Select the source tier whose data you want to move from the drop-down box.
2. If you want to keep the source data after exporting, you should select the Keep the source data option. This will create duplicate data.
3. You can click the icon to refresh the data. Also, you can click the icon to delete the data.
4. Select the destination tier where you want to move the data to, and then click the tier's name to expand the node. Select the logical device you want to move the backup data to.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Archiver or Extender	To export the data of the two modules, please follow the steps below: 1. Select the farm you want to export data from in the corresponding drop-down list. 2. Load the farm tree and select the exact node to be exported. 3. Select the data logical device and index logical device respectively so that the data can be used in the destination farm immediately. 4. Click **Export** to start the process. You can also setup a schedule for the data export of Archiver Module. ***Note:** Please ensure that the target data logical drive does not contain duplicated archive data.
3	Click **Export** to run this export job. The backup data under the source device will be moved to the destination device. You can view the status of the export jobs in the process bar at the bottom of the window.	

3.3.2 Filter Policy

This section provides a central interface for the Filter Policies configured for DocAve's modules. These filters allow you to include or exclude files from SharePoint lists down to item versions. If your environment is exceptionally large, you can speed up your backup process by using Exclusion Filters from this section to ensure that only the content you need to back up is backed up. Likewise, you can leverage Inclusion Filters to broaden the scope of the backup.

***Note:** In DocAve 5.6.0.0, the default *.bak filter which filters out all the .bak files inside all the folders is removed from the Filter Policy. If you have plans created by the former versions of DocAve with this filter rule, the corresponding jobs will fail if you run the filter job by DocAve 5.6.0.0, it is recommended to update the plans setting.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(3-13) Set Up A Filter Policy

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Filter Policy*.
2	Click **New**, and then enter the Filter Name in the provided field.
3	Select the type of the content you want to filter in the corresponding tab. ***Note:** List, User, URL and AD Profile filters are only supported by Compliance Auditor; Content Type is only supported by Compliance Vault; and Version is only supported by Granular Backup.
4	You can select *Case sensitive filtering* to make the filter result matches the case as typed in the filter field.
5	If configuring a version filter, you can either filter major versions only or major and minor versions. ***Note:** If you select to filter Major Versions Only, but the current version is a minor version, this minor version will still be included in the backup. For example, the versions of one file is 1.0, 1.1, 2.0, 2.1, 2.2 and you choose to backup the latest 3 major versions. The versions that will be backed up are: 1.0, 2.0 and 2.2.
6	Click *AD Profile* to configure a AD profile filter: You can select Refresh data from Active Directory every 30 days to refresh the data in cache and you can reset the time. When running Retrieve Auditor Data job in Audit Controller, the data in the cache will be refreshed if the data is expired. It will improve the efficiency of retrieve job. Enter the type you want to filter into Column column and input the corresponding value of the AD user profile you want to exclude. In Condition option, if you choose **Include**, the country in the column will be included in the Filter policy. If you choose **Exclude**, the country in the column will be excluded in the Filter policy. ***Note:** Only the *country* is supported for the filter type, so only the *country* can be specified into the Column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Set the Inclusion Filter and Exclusion Filter rules: Enter either the name of the file or folder, or a full file name such as *.doc to include/exclude all Microsoft Word documents in the job. Click **Add** to include/exclude a new item, and click **Remove** to delete one item. ***Note:** the filter rule can contain illegal characters such as &,%, and $.
8	Click **Save** to save the filter. If you click **Save As** and the filter name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/...** will be automatically added to the original name of the filter. After the filter is successfully saved, it will be displayed in the column under Filter Policies section.

3.3.3 Retention Policy

This feature allows you to create Retention policies for the Archiver and Compliance modules.

For Archiver, you can set up a retention time for the Archived stubs created when the data was archived, together with the content in the Archiver.

For Compliance, you can set up a retention time for the data of Compliance Vault.

Note that the Default Retention profile under the Retention Profiles section has an unlimited retention time, which means the data will not be deleted automatically.

You can also select the *Enable Tiered Storage* option, and then specify the time you want to keep the data in a selected tier.

3.3.4 Device Manager

In the Device Manager, administrators can add physical devices to logical devices and also arrange the order of the physical devices in one logical device. The Physical Device section allows an administrator to define Net Share, FTP, TSM, EMC Centera, Cloud Storage, NetApp ONTAP and Dell DX Storage devices as data storage locations.

There are three types of logical devices: Storage, Search, and Auditor. The Search and Auditor logical devices can only be edited by creating, editing, and deleting their physical devices.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** If a logical device has stored data, the configuration of its physical devices cannot be modified.

3.3.4.1 Physical Device

There are seven types of drives that can be configured as Physical Devices: Net Share, FTP, TSM, EMC Centera, Cloud Storage, NetApp ONTAP and Dell DX Storage.

When creating net share physical devices, you can specify a tier for each physical device, which could be used for data pruning or retention rules. If tiered storage is used, DocAve will move the data to the lower tier instead of deleting it while performing a pruning/retention job. It only deletes the data when the tier is the lowest one and the old data needs to be moved down to another tier.

***Note:** Only UNC and local addressable storage devices, specifically Net Shares, can be assigned with tier values.

Creating a Net Share Device

(3-14) Creating a Net Share Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Device Manager*.
2	Select one logical device type from the *Logical Device Type* drop-down box.
3	Click **Add** next to Physical Device in the right-hand side section. A pop-up window will appear.
4	Enter a name for the new device in the Physical Device text box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select the content you want to store in the device. You can select only to store content data, only to store index data, or to store both data and index by checking the corresponding check-box(es). Please note that an index physical device is used for storing the index data of Granular Backup, Platform Backup and some other modules. ***Note:** A logical device must include at least one physical device for storing data and one for index.
6	Input a valid path in the format in accordance with your selection in step2. • *Load Balanced* : The path must be provided in UNC-for-mat: "\\[network share]\ [network directory path]" • *Dedicated* : The path must be provided in Local format: "[local disk]\ [local disk directory path]". ***Note:** The specified path needs to be an existing path. The device builder will not automatically create such folder. Consequently, the job data will be failed to store under such path though the device appears to be built successfully.
7	Select a tier for this physical device from the drop-down box. There are ten tiers you can select.
8	Input the Domain, Username, and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written and stored to. The data will be failed to get stored if the information entered here is incorrect.
9	Click **Save** to save the profile for the new physical device and it will be listed under Physical Device.

Creating an FTP Device

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(3-15) Creating an FTP Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Device Manager*.
2	Select FTP from the Data Type drop-down box.
3	Click **Add** next to Physical Device in the right-hand section. A pop-up window will appear.
4	Enter a name for the device in the Device Name text box.
5	Input the Host, Port, Username and Password to set up access to the network path that data will be written and stored to.
6	Click **Save** to save the profile for the new physical device and it will be listed under Physical Device.

Creating a TSM Device

(3-16) Creating a TSM Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Device Manager*.
2	Select TSM from the Data Type drop-down box.
3	Click **Add** next to Physical Device in the right-hand section. A pop-up window will appear.
4	Enter a name for the device in the Device Name text box.
5	Select a Communication Method from the corresponding drop-down box, there are four options: TCP IP, V6TCPIP, SHARED MEM, and NAMED PIPES.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Input the TCP Port, TCP Server Address, Node Name, Management Class, and Password to set up access to the network path that data will be written and stored to.
7	Click **Save** to save the profile for the new physical device and it will be listed under Physical Device.

***Note:** If both the TSM server and client have been previously installed, please make sure the TSM client version is higher than or equal to the TSM server version. Now TSM 6.2.1 or lower version is supported.

***Note:** To support Lan-Free of TSM, please add the parameters *Enablelanfree*, *Lanfreecommmethod*, *Lanfreetcpserveraddress* and *Lanfreetcpport* in *dsm.opt* under the path *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusMedia|dsm*. For example,

Enablelanfree YES

Lanfreecommmethod TCPIP

Lanfreetcpserveraddress 10.0.0.1

Lanfreetcpport 1502

Creating an EMC Centera Device

DocAve leverages single-instance storage (SIS) with EMC Centera devices, allowing the Centera system to perform a de-duplication of the content beneath, thus reducing the required storage space for all DocAve backup and extension archiving jobs.

***Note:** Encrypted data cannot be de-duplicated.

(3-17) Creating an EMC Centera Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Device Manager*.
2	Select EMC Centera in the *Data Type* drop-down box.
3	Click **Add** next to Physical Device in the right-hand section. A pop-up window will appear.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Enter a name for the new device in the Device Name text box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Input the machine's IP address into the EMC Server Address. Multiple IP addresses can be added to this text box, separated by a comma ",".</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Select the authentication from the drop-down box, there are two options: Configuration File and EMC Server Authentication.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Configuration File</td><td>After you select this option, a text box will appear underneath. Enter the PEA File Location into the box, then input the Username and Password to set up access to the path of PEA file. The device cannot be built if the information entered here is incorrect.
The path must be provided in UNC-format: \\[net work share]\[net work directory path]*.pea</td></tr>
<tr><td>EMC Server Authentication</td><td>Input the Username and Password to set up access to the EMC Server.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save the profile for the new physical device and it will be listed under Physical Device.</td></tr>
</table>

***Note:** Data pruning and Archiver Stub deletion will require EMC accounts with "delete" permission. If the account does not have this permission, you won't be able to manually proceed the pruning jobs from EMC.

Creating a Cloud Storage Device

DocAve now supports Cloud Storage, which combines millions of various storage devices by network. In this case, the DocAve storage processing capability will be improved greatly.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(3-18) Creating a Cloud Storage Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *Data Management* > *Device Manager*.
2	Select Cloud Storage in the *Data Type* drop-down box
3	Click **Add** next to Physical Device in the right-hand section. A pop-up window will appear.
4	Enter a name for the new device in the Device Name text box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">Select a type of the cloud medias in the corresponding list. Three types are listed for your option: RackSpace Cloud Files, MFST Azure, and Amazon S3. Notice that the cloud media supported in Device Manager depends on your current DocAve license.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>RackSpace Cloud Files</td><td>To complete creating the physical device of this type, please follow the steps below:
Input the ~~u~~Username to set up access to the network path that the data will be written and stored to.
Input your API Key so that you can connect to the Cloud Storage device.
By default, CDN Enabled is checked to reduce the page traffic and improve the processing capability of your server.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MSFT Azure</td><td>To complete creating the physical device of this type, please follow the steps below:
Input the use name to set up access to the network path that the data will be written and stored to.
Input your Blob Endpoints and Primary Access Key so that you can connect to the Cloud Storage device.
Check Advanced Option checkbox to obtain better and specific processing capability. Consequently, two options are available: CDN enabled and Customer Domain.
When selecting CDN Enabled, you will be demanded to enter your GUID number.
When selecting Customer Domain, you will be required to input your domain URL.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Amazon S3	To complete creating the physical device of this type, please follow the steps below: 1. Input your Access Key ID to connect to the Cloud Storage device. 2. Input your Secret Access Key for your identification. 3. Select the storage region from the corresponding drop-down list. Three regions are listed for your option: US Standard, US-West (Northern California), and EU (Ireland).
	EMC Atmos	To complete creating the physical device of this type, please follow the steps below: 1. Input your Full Token ID and the Shared Secret so that you can connect to the Cloud Storage device. 2. You can also select *Online* or Offline after you check the *Advanced Option* option.
	AT&T Synaptic	To complete creating the physical device of this type, please follow the steps below: 1. Input the Subtenant ID, Application ID and Shared Secret to set up access to the network path that the data will be written and stored to.
6	Save or quit the device setting process by clicking the corresponding buttons.	

***Note:** The Cloud Storage Device only supports jobs in Archiver and Extender modules.

Creating a NetApp ONTAP Device

To create a Net App ONTAP device, see the following steps.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(3-19) Creating a NetApp ONTAP Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Device Manager*.
2	Select NetApp ONTAP in the *Data Type* from the drop-down box.
3	You can configure whether the NetApp ONTAP device has a snaplock or not by choosing the corresponding radio button in Snaplock field. By default, No is selected.
4	Click **Add** next to Physical Device in the right-hand section. A pop-up window will appear.
5	Enter the physical device name into the provided field.
6	Enter a UNC path in the format: \\<server>\<share>\<path>.
7	Input the domain, username and password to set up access to the network path.
8	To connect to the storage system properly, you must set up the storage system information. Specify the storage system name or IP address you want to connect to. ***Note:** If you specify a Storage System name, make sure the DocAve Manager can connect to the machine using the specified name.
9	Select the connection type for the Storage System in the Connection Type drop-down list. By default, the connection type is *HTTP*.
10	Enter the port number, username and password to set up access to the storage system. If you want to use the RPC, the username and password should be the username and the password of the Compliance administrator.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Click **Save** to save the profile for the new physical device and it will be listed under Physical Device.

***Note:** The NetApp ONTAP Device only supports jobs in Compliance Vault module.

Creating a Dell DX Storage Device

To create a Dell DX Storage device, see the following steps.

***Note:** When the hostname is used in the configuration, you need to add the corresponding record in the hosts file located in the following path on the DocAve Media Server: *C:|WINDOWS|system32|drivers|etc*. The format of the record: *The IP address of the nodeThe hostname of the node*

(3-20) Creating a Dell DX Storage Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve > Control Panel > Data Management > Device Manager*.
2	Select Dell DX Storage from the *Data Type* drop-down box in the middle of the page.
3	Click **Add** next to Physical Device in the right-hand section. A pop-up window will appear.
4	Enter a name for the new Dell DX Storage physical device in *Device Name* text box.
5	Enter the hostname or IP address of the node in *CSN Private Network IP*. IP address is recommended here. ***Note:** The IP entered here and the DocAve Media Server must be in the same subnet.
6	Enter the port used to access the Cluster in *SCSP Proxy Port*; by default, 80 is used.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Enter the Cluster name.
8	If you want to use the Remote Cluster when the Local Cluster is not available, select the check-box *With Remote D/R Cluster*. Choose one access mode from Remote CSN and Local Proxy. If Remote CSN is selected, you need to configure the following options: • *Remote CSN Host* : The hostname or IP address of the Remote cluster storage node. • *Remote CSN Port* : The port used to access the Cluster, by default, 80 is used. If Local Proxy is selected, you need to configure the following options: • *SCSP Proxy Host* : The hostname or IP address of the SCSP Proxy host configured by the customer. • *SCSP Proxy Port* : The port used to access the SCSP Proxy host, by default, 80 is used. • *Remote Cluster Name* : The name of the Remoter Cluster. ***Note:** Even if the Primary DX Storage Nodes are not available, DocAve can still perform the read and delete operation in the Dell DX Storage through the Remote D/R Cluster Host with the With Remote D/R Cluster option selected.
9	Specify the number of the replicas of the data; by default, the number is 2.
10	You can specify a compression method for the data stored in the Dell DX Storage in *Dx Optimizer Compression*. • By default, *None* is selected and the data stored in the Dell DX Storage will not be compressed. • *Fast* means that the compression time is shorter, but the size of the data will not be reduced too much since the compress rate is low. • *Best* means the size of the data will be reduced to a large content, however, the compression time is longer.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	You can specify the days to defer the compression for in *Compress After*. The integer entered here should be from 0 to 29. ***Note:** This text box will be greyed out when None is selected in Dx Optimizer Compression drop-down box.
12	Click **Save** to save the configuration or click **Cancel** to cancel the configuration.

Editing, Displaying, or Deleting a Physical Device

To edit a physical device, please select a device from the list to the right and click .The configuration window will pop up for editing.

To display the details of one physical device, please select a device from the list to the right and click . It will list all the plans stored in the specified physical device in the pop-up window.

To delete a physical device, select a device from the list to the right and click . If there is no data stored in the selected device, the device will be deleted immediately. If there is backup data or archive data stored in the selected device, there will be a pop-up window to warn you that there is data present.

3.3.4.2 Logical Device

Logical devices, formed by the cooperation of several sequenced Physical devices and media services, is used as the storage device in DocAve modules.

Creating New Logical Device

(3-21) Creating New Logical Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Device Manager.*
2	Input a name for the device in the Logical Device Name field.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Select a Data Type from the drop-down box and the corresponding physical devices will be listed under the Physical Device column on the right-hand side of the screen. You should select the data type according to the type of the physical devices you would like to add to the logical device. If Net Share is selected in Data Type, you have to select a Logical Device Type as well, either Load balanced or Dedicated, as well as a tier from the corresponding drop-down box. Device Manager will only list the appropriate physical devices in the Physical Device column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Click the Physical Device tab and drag the icons of the Physical Drives you wish to be included in the new logical device to the area under the Physical Device tab. If you select FTP,TSM, EMC Centera, Cloud Storage, NetApp ONTAP or Dell DX Storage Data Type, you also need to select a Cache Storage. The Cache Storage is any previously defined Net Share(Load Balanced/ Dedicated) Physical Device. This location is used to consolidate the index data for each plan stored in the storage devices for this logical device at the time of restore. There are two attributes in the *zeus-media.properties* file in the following path: *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusMedia|etc* and you can use them to specify the conditions of deleting the files in the Cache Storage. Please refer to the following instructions to configure the attributes: • *Zeus.CacheDeviceMinSpaceMB* : the minimum space to leave in the Cache Storage. The default value is 2048(the unit is the megabyte). • *Zeus.CacheIndexDBKeepDays* : the attribute's value means the cache file has not been modified for the specified days. The default value of *Zeus.CacheIndexDBKeepDays* is 7(the unit is the day). By default, DocAve will check and clean the Cache Storage according to the settings every 3 hours if DocAve Control Service is not restarted. When DocAve Control Service is restarted, DocAve will also perform the check. When DocAve performs the checking, if there is no enough space in the Cache Storage, all the files in the Cache Storage will be deleted; if there is enough space in the Cache Storage, then DocAve will delete the oldest files according to the *Zeus.CacheIndexDBKeepDays* that you set. ***Note:** Once you have configured a media service with a physical net-share device, this configuration can not be changed in the future. Also, when such logical device is set as the index location of Archiver/ Extender/eDiscovery/Compliance modules, the corresponding data logical device has to share the same media device with it.
5	Select the *Media Service* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Drag the icons of the Media Services you wish to be included in the new logical device to the area under the Media Service tab. ***Note:** You can select multiple media services to manage the physical devices so as to provide continuous access to storage locations should one or more services go down. However, please make sure the media services you selected have access to each of the paths set in the selected physical devices.
7	Click **Save** to save the device settings. By clicking **Save As**, if the logical device name already exists, a suffix of (1)/(2)/(3)/... will be automatically added to the original name of the logical device. The new logical device will be listed under the *Logical Device* column on the left-hand side.

Troubleshooting TSM Logical Device

If some of the configurations of the TSM Logical Device is modified or changed, the media service may need to be restarted. Please refer to the following chart for the actions which require the media service to be restarted.

(3-22) The Actions Requiring the Media Service Reset

Action	Requires Media Service Reset
Modifying Cache Storage	No
Modifying Physical Device Name	No
Adding a Media Service	No
Deleting a Media Service	No
Modifying TCP Server Address	Yes
Modifying Node Name	Yes
Modifying Password	Yes
Modifying TCP Port	Yes
Changing the communication method (TCP IP, V6TCPIP, SHARED MEM, NAMED PIPES)	Yes

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** After restarting the Media Service successfully, you need to save this TSM Logical Device again.

Deleting a Logical Device

To delete a Logical Device, click "✕" on the right of the corresponding device. All the plans associated with this logical device will be listed in the pop-up window, you can choose another logical device for each of the plans from the Change Logical Device drop-down box or delete the plans under the storage path manually. Click OK to proceed with the deletion.

DocAve v5 also helps you delete the backup data together with the logical device from the interface directly. You can click **OK** to ignore the request on changing storage, and then view and select the backup data that you want to delete together with the logical device in the pop-up window later, and finally click **OK** to confirm.

***Note:** When deleting one logical device, the **Change Logical Device** column only updates the information of the original logical device (the one which is going to be deleted) in the plans, which means that the data of the original logical device will be saved where it is if you do not delete them by DocAve or remove them manually.

3.3.5 Security Manager

Security Manager allows you to set up an access control password for Granular Backup, Platform Backup, Inactive Template, Archiver, and Compliance Vault.

To set up a security policy, follow the steps below:

(3-23) Setup a Security Policy

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Security Manager.*
2	Click **New**, and then enter a Security Policy name in the provided text box.
3	Select an Application Type from the drop-down box. There are six options in the drop-down list: All, Granular Backup, Platform Backup, Inactive Template, Archiver and Compliance Vault.
4	Input the Password you want to use and confirm it.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save the security policy. It will be listed in the Security Policy column on the right.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">6</td><td colspan="2">To edit a security policy, first select the policy from the column on the right.
*Note: Security Policy names cannot be modified.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Only change the Application Type</td><td>1. Select the new Application Type.
2. Click Save, a pop-up window will appear.
3. Enter the password you set in the steps above to confirm the modification, and then click OK. If you want to cancel this operation, click Cancel.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Only change Password</td><td>1. Click Change Password.
2. Input the old password, new password, and confirm it.
3. Click Save.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Change the Application Type and the Password</td><td>1. Select the new Application Type.
2. Click Change Password.
3. Input the old password, new password, and confirm it.
4. Click Save.</td></tr>
</table>

To delete a security policy, please click the delete icon following the policy name under the Security Policy column on the right.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.3.6 Language Mapping

Language mapping is used for replicating the content between different SharePoint environments with different languages.

To setup a language mapping, please follow the steps below:

(3-24) Language Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Language Mapping*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name for the language mapping profile.
3	Click **Language Setting** button, you can determine which language(s) is(are) available to be mapped in List/Column tab. ***Note:** By default there are three kind of language: Japanese, German, and English. If you want to map more languages, please navigate to *..\AvePoint\DocAve5\Manager\ZeusJob\etc\languageMappingMessages* and open *languageMappingMessages.properties*. Input the language name and the corresponding Code for the representation names of the language. Navigate to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Manager Tools > DocAve Services*, and then restart AvePoint DocAve5 Control Service and DocAve5 Web Service to apply the changes.
4	Under the List tab, enter the list names you wish to map in different environments with different languages. For example, if the language of the source is English, but the language of the destination is Japanese, you want to map the list named "List Library" to an existing list whose name is in Japanese in the destination, you should enter the "List Library" into the "English" column, and the Japanese name into the "Japanese" column. When you run an out-of-place restore job, DocAve will restore the content under the "List Library" to the specified list in the destination.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Under the Column tab, enter the column name you wish to map in different environments with different languages. ***Note:** You only need to configure the customized column for the mapping, the SharePoint default columns, such as Modified By, Created By, etc., will be mapped according to the List Language Mapping settings.
6	Click **Save**, the saved mapping profile will be listed on the right. If you click **Save As** and the mapping profile name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/…** will be automatically added to the original name of the mapping profile.
7	Click **Upload** and **Download** to upload or download XML file to configure the list and column mapping in it.

To delete the language mapping profile, please click the delete icon following the profile under Language Mappings on the right.

3.4 DocAve System

The DocAve System section is designed for customization of DocAve, and is capable of configuring DocAve system accounts and its settings, backing up\restoring DocAve system, and specifying a location for CA Admin Search results. DocAve System consists of four sections: Account Manager, System Recovery, System Settings, and User Data.

3.4.1 Account Manager

In DocAve v5, you can create groups and add users. You can assign specific permissions to each group, and then add users to groups to assign them the specified permissions. This allows you to easily control and maintain the access permissions to DocAve from a central location.

Please be aware that only the user(s) in a group with the permission to update the Account Manager will have the permission to edit users and groups. The users in the *DocAve Administrators* group will always have this permission.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.4.1.1 Groups

There are two kinds of groups in DocAve: Local Groups and Active Directory (AD) Groups.

Local Groups

You can create local groups in DocAve and assign a series of permissions to the group. You can also add users to a specific DocAve group. **Only by adding the users to a group in DocAve can you assign permissions to them**.

There are three built-in groups, including Administrators, Managers, and Operators. They have pre-defined permission levels and cannot be deleted.

Administrators: owns full and global access permissions to any feature in any module. This group is never editable, which indicates you cannot delete any group permissions or specify this group to any farm.

Managers: editable built-in group with full access to the Control Panel only.

Operators: by default, has no permissions configured.

Active Directory Groups

DocAve can fully integrate with Windows Active Directory. You can assign AD groups a series of permissions, which will then be applied to all users within this group.

Please note:

- The current server must belong to the same domain as the AD.
- Adding a domain user will automatically add its group in DocAve, with all associated permissions during login.

***Note:** If a domain user belongs to many groups, they will be granted random permissions from all groups when logging in.

3.4.1.2 Users

There are two kinds of users in DocAve: Local users and AD users.

Local Users

Both the username and the corresponding password are required to log in and use DocAve. The system only has one default local user and its username and password are "admin" and "admin." The "admin" user has full permissions and this account owns editable password, however, this account cannot be deleted. Logging in as the "admin" will allow you to create other users and assign specific permissions to those new users. New users can also have the same permissions as an "admin" user or they can be restricted from certain actions by limiting their permissions.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

For example, if you create a user named *user1* and assign the permission as *Item Level Backup*, when user1 logs on to the system, it can only perform Item Level Backups rather than other functions (such as Site Level Backup, Item Level Restore, etc.)

AD Users

AD users can also be added to DocAve. It can own full control permission or get restricted from certain modules to the DocAve globally or some farms in DocAve. The differences between AD users and local users mainly lie in the login mode, creation, and modification. For more information on this, please check the following sections: Login Modes, Enable Active Directory Integration, Creating a New Group or User, and Editing a User.

***Note:** You cannot directly assign permissions to a single user as it is its group that determines its permission level. Also, you can add local users and AD users together to the same local group. However, DocAve does not support adding users to AD groups.

3.4.1.3 Login Modes

There are two kinds of login modes: Local User and AD User login.

Local User Login

A local user is also called a DocAve User. It should be created and added to a DocAve group first. To log in to DocAve using a local user account, please check the instance below:

Initially, a DocAve user can only use the local user mode to login, with the initial username and password respectively being admin and admin. This account is restored in the local database since the installation of the system and cannot be deleted.

When logging in as a local user, remember to choose Local System mode on the login page.

***Note:** You will be only provided two more chances to log in DocAve v5 once your password is proved to be incorrect. Once your login fails anyway, please click the hyperlink in the pop-up window to write an email to your DocAve Administrator.

AD User Login

If you want DocAve to support AD user login mode, you need to perform the following steps:

(3-25) Support AD User Login Mode

Step	Action
1	When installing DocAve, both DocAve Manager and Agent, you need to input a Domain Username and a corresponding Password.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	After logging in as a DocAve user of the DocAve Administrator group, or the user that has the permission to manage accounts (initially you will only be able to use the admin account), choose an AD user and add it to a group which has permissions specified in DocAve. The AD user will then be able to log in to DocAve.

When logging in as an AD user, remember to choose the corresponding domain from Log on to drop-down box on the login page.

Login DocAve by domain\username Credentials

If there are many users from multiple domains, it is too difficult to find the corresponding domain from the *Log on to* drop-down box which lists all the integrated domains. DocAve provides you a easy method to hide the *Log on to* drop-down box, and the users can only enter a domain\user-name credentials to login DocAve.

To hide the *Log on to* drop-down box, perform the following steps:

(3-26) Hide Log on to drop-down box

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *..\AvePoint\DocAve5\Manager\WasCE\repository\ave-point\zeus\1.0\zeus-1.0.war\WEB-INF*.
2	Open the file named *zeus-web.properties* and change the value of Zeus, LogOnToFlag to "0" (by default it is "1"). • *0* : DocAve will hide the Log on to drop-down box. • *1* : This is the default value, you need to select the *Log on to* option when logging in DocAve.
3	Navigate to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Manager Tools > DocAve Services* and restart AvePoint DocAve5 Web Service.
4	Reopen the Login page and you will see the Log on to drop-down box is hidden now.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.4.1.4 Enable Active Directory Integration

This option is essential for the AD users to log on to DocAve using domain mode. If you want to add an AD user or group to DocAve, you must enable the active directory integration first to configure the corresponding domains. The domains saved after the configuration will provide the user with possible login methods.

To enable the active directory integration, please follow the steps below.

(3-27) Enable Active Directory Integration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > DocAve System > Account Manager*.
2	Check the *Enable Active Directory Integration* option to enable **Configure** button.
3	Click **Configure**, and enter the domain name, username, and the corresponding password in the pop-up.
4	Click **Test** to verify the access.
5	Click **Save** to save the configuration, and then click **OK** to end the configuration.

3.4.1.5 Creating a New Group or User

The following steps are required for either the creation of a new user or a new group:

(3-28) Creating a New DocAve Group or User

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > DocAve System > Account Manager*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td colspan="2">Configure a new group. User permissions are defined by group, not individually.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Creating a new Local Group</td><td>To add a new local group to the DocAve platform, follow the steps below:
Click the Groups tab on the left side of the window.
Click " ", a window will appear for adding a new group.
By default, the Local radio button is selected.
Input the Group Name and a brief Description of this group. The Description field is optional.
You can add this new group to the three default groups by selecting the corresponding default group from the Member of drop-down box. This new group will have both its own permission and the permissions of the selected default group.
You can also click Save directly and specify the unique permissions for the group later in the Permission Tab to the right of the page.
Click Save to save the group, or click Cancel to quit the configuration.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Adding a AD Group	To add a new group already created in Active Directory, follow the steps below: 1. Click the *Groups* tab on the left side of the window. 2. Clicking , a window will appear for adding a new group. 3. Select the *Active Directory* radio button. 4. Input the Group Name, or click the icon to search for the group. This searching field supports wildcards (*). 5. Click to verify this group. 6. Enter a brief Description of this group. The Description field is optional. 7. You can add this AD group to the three default groups by selecting the corresponding default group from the *Member of* drop-down box. This new group will have both its own permission and the permissions of the selected default group. 8. You can also click **Save** directly and specify the unique permissions for the group later in the *Permission* Tab to the right of the page. 9. Click **Save** to save the group, or click **Cancel** to quit the configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td colspan="2">Once you have defined DocAve user groups, you may add users to these groups following the steps below.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Creating a new Local User</td><td>Add users to previously defined groups by setting the parameters listed below:
Click the Users tab in the left side of the window.
Clicking , a window will appear for adding a new user.
By default, the Local radio button is selected.
Input a Username and the Email address in the text boxes provided. The Email address is optional, however, if you want to input the Email Address, its format must be correct.
Select a Group from the Member of drop-down box.
Click Next to setup the password and confirm it. There are four options that you can choose from, which stand for different password policies and require different operations from the user. When you neglect the four options, by default, your password will be expired after 30 days.
While entering your password, you can view its strength and it is recommended to enhance it in accordance with the tool tips of the password strength for your privacy.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
		8. Click **Finish** to complete the setting or **Cancel** to quit the configuration. 9. Click **Next**, and then check the information of the Local account. 10. Click **Finish** to complete the setting or **Cancel** to quit the configuration. You can also click **Back** to modify the settings. ***Note:** The password policy can be configured, please refer to Password Policy Setting Section.
	Adding a new AD user	Active Directory users can be added to DocAve using the steps below: 1. Click the Users tab on the left side of the window. 2. Clicking , a window will appear for adding a new user. 3. Select the *Active Directory* radio button. 4. Specify a username, or click the icon to search for a user. This searching field supports wildcards (*). 5. Click to verify the user. 6. Select a group in the Member of drop-down box. 7. Click **Save** to save the user, or click **Cancel** to quit the configuration.

Password Policy Setting

To set up the password policy, please follow the instructions below.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(3-29) Password Policy Setting

Step	Action
1	Open the file *password-configuration.properties* in the following path *...|Avepoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|etc*.
2	You can set up the password policy for the LocaL User in DocAve in this file.
3	Please specify the following properties of the password policy: • *PasswordLength* : You can specify the length of the password here. By default, the value is 6, which means that the length of the password is at least 6. • *Character* : You can specify whether a password needs to contain characters or not by setting "Character=y"(needs to contain characters), or "Character=n" (does not need to contain characters). By default, the password needs to contain characters. • *Number* : You can specify whether the password needs to contain numbers or not by setting "Number=y" (needs to contain numbers), or "Number=n"(does not need to contain numbers). By default, the password does not need to contain numbers. • *CapitalLetter* : You can specify whether a password needs to contain both uppercase and lowercase letters or not by setting "CapitalLetter=y" (needs to contain both uppercase and lowercase letters), or "CapitalLetter=n"(does not need to contain uppercase and lowercase letters). By default, the password does not need to contain uppercase and lowercase letters. • *SpecialCharacter* : You can specify whether a password needs to contain special characters or not by setting "SpecialCharacter=y"(needs to contain special characters), or "SpecialCharacter=n"(does not need to contain special characters). By default, the password does not need to contain special characters.
4	Close the file and save the change.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.4.1.6 Assigning Permissions to a Group

After a group is created, you must define its permissions. Permissions are separated into two groups: the permissions to access specific modules for all the farms in DocAve, and the permissions to access or view specific modules of an individual farm.

To assign permissions to a group, please follow the steps below.

(3-30) Assigning Permissions to a group

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *Account Manager*.
2	Select the group you want to assign the permissions to in the left side of the screen. The detailed information of the group permissions will be listed under *Permission* tab on the right side of the screen.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Within the Permission tab, there are two radio buttons: Global and Selected Farms.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Global</td><td>This option allows you to assign the permissions to access specific modules for all the farms, as well as their farm severs, features, SSP, and solutions displayed in DocAve.
Select the module from the corresponding drop-down box. Its features will be listed underneath.
Select the features you want the specific group to visit by checking the corresponding check-boxes.
You can click Select All to select all the features or Clear to clear the selection.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Selected Farms</td><td>This option allows you to assign the permissions for accessing or viewing specific modules of the individual farms as well as their farm severs, features, SSP and solutions in DocAve.
Select one farm.
Select the module from the corresponding drop-down box. Its features will be listed underneath.
Select the features you want to assign to the specific group by checking the corresponding check-boxes.
You can click Select All to select all the features or Clear to clear the selection.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">For the permission of Administration > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin, you can specify the detailed operations of one specific group there.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click Apply to save the settings.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Assign groups with Central Admin Permissions

For the permission of *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*, you can specify whether one group has the permissions to do the specified operations.

(3-31) Assign groups with Central Admin Permissions

Step	Action
1	Under the *Permission* tab, select *Administration* from the Module drop-down box.
2	Select *Central Admin*, and then the **...** button next to it will be enabled.
3	Click **...** button, a pop-up window with all the operations which can be performed in Central Admin will appear.
4	Clicking on one tab on your left hand side, all the operations for the specified level will be listed in the panel on the right. Select the operations you want to assign to the specified group by checking the corresponding check-boxes. You can check/uncheck the *Select All* check-box in the top left corner of the pop-up to select/clear all operations at all levels, and you can select/clear all operations for one level by checking the corresponding check-box before the level name.
5	Click **OK** to save the settings or click **Cancel** to quit the configuration.

Assigning a Group with the Permissions to Control Panel and Job Monitor

For better privacy protection and smarter job scoping, DocAve provides you with the specific permissions (View, Update, and Control) to all operations in Control Panel and all the possible jobs created in the corresponding modules. These permissions formulate a quite accurate scope of the functions:

- *View* : This permission allows you to view the settings for the specified module.
- *Update* : Based on the permission View, you can also create/modify the settings in the specified module.
- *Control* : There would be no limitation on your operations.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Please follow the steps below to assign the detailed permissions of Job Monitor or Control Panel to a group.

(3-32) Assign a Group with the Permissions of Job Monitor or Control Panel

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *Account Manager*.
2	Select the group you want to assign the permissions to in the left side of the screen. The detailed information will be listed under *Permission* tab on the right side of the screen.
3	Select *Job Monitor* or *Control Panel* under this tab. By default, the View Option is checked automatically.
4	Check the corresponding check-box before the feature you would like the group to get access to and then you can specify the permissions for the group.

Integrate with SharePoint Permissions

DocAve allows you to add a group for assigning the permissions to. The AD users in this group should only view the data tree where they have the access permission and they should only view or edit the jobs created by themselves.

Integration with SharePoint permissions will allow site collection administrators to leverage the functionality of the Central Admin module, Content Manager module, Design Manager module, and Replicator module directly from DocAve while only being able to see their own content. Note that the permission required for Active Directory users to leverage this feature is Site Collection Administrator.

***Note:** By selecting this option, only the Farm administrator can create new site collections through manually input job.

(3-33) Integrate with SharePoint Permissions

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *Account Manager*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Add an AD group in DocAve v5 and select it.
3	Within the *Permission* tab select the *Administration* module, and then the *Integrate with SharePoint Permissions* option could be seen under the corresponding feature in the list. Assign this permission to this AD group by checking the corresponding check-box.
4	Click **Apply** to save the configuration. After assigning the permission and checking the option, the AD users in this group can only view the data tree they have the access permission to and the jobs created by themselves.

3.4.1.7 Editing a User

User modification includes four sections: Delete, Edit, Change Password, and Account Options. To edit the configurations of users in DocAve, please refer to the following steps:

(3-34) Editing Configurations of a User

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *Account Manager*.
2	Select a user on the left side of the window under the Users tab. The details of the user will be listed in the window on the right.
3	You can click the **Delete** button or "✕" to delete the user.
4	Click **Edit**, a drop-down box next to the Edit button will appear. You can select the group you wish the user to belong to. ***Note:** The default user *admin* cannot be moved to another group. Only the password of this user can be modified.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Click **Change Password**, and then enter the correct information in the text-boxes following Old Password, New Password and Confirm Password. Click the button again to quit the password configuration and the password will not be changed. ***Note:** The password must contain at least six characters and must include letters. ***Note:** The original password will be memorized by DocAve so that it can never be reused once the password is changed to another one. ***Note:** Only the local users can use **Change Password** and **Account Options**.
6	Click **Account Options**, and then you can modify the settings of this account. • *Unlock account* : If this account is locked, you can select this option to unlock the account. • *Account options* : You can select only one of the options to determine whether the users need to change their passwords after logging in. • *Password expires* : You can setup a time period for the validity of the password by using this option. By default, the password will either never expire or expire after 30 days. • *Time Zone* : You can modify the time zone by using this option. It is only available when you specify a certain expiration date and time for the password of the account. • *Idle timeouts* : Using this option, you can limit the Timeout Time by minute or hour for the idle user. If the user idles longer than the specified time, he/she will need to login DocAve again. ***Note:** Compared with the *Idle Timeout* in System Settings, the Timeout Time for the specific user will be executed in accordance with this one. ***Note:** Only the local users can use **Change Password** and **Account Options**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Enter the email address and its detailed description to the corresponding fields, it will send an alert if there are some changes for your account.
8	To save any change, click **Save**.

3.4.1.8 Editing a Group

Group modification includes two sections: Delete and Edit. To edit a DocAve group. please refer to the following steps:

(3-35) Editing a Group

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *Account Manager*.
2	Select a group on the left side of the window under the *Groups* tab. The details of the group will be listed in the window on the right.
3	To change the DocAve group for this specified group, you can click **Edit** following the *Member of* field.
4	You can change the description of the group in the text box.
5	Click **Add member**. You can select the users or the groups you want to add to the specified group in the drop-down box. You can also delete users listed in the Members field by clicking the corresponding delete icon. ***Note:** The users/groups cannot be added to AD groups in DocAve.
6	After you finish the modification, click **Save** to save the configurations.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Click the Permission tab, you can specify the permissions for the group. After you finish the modification, click **Apply** to save the configuration. For more information, please refer to section Assigning Permissions to a Group.

***Note:** The description of the three default groups, by default, are blank. You can change their descriptions and add members to the default groups.

3.4.1.9 Deleting a User or Group

This section enables you to remove any user or group except for the default ones. Please refer to the steps below.

(3-36) Deleting a User Or a Group

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Control Panel > DocAve System > Account Manager.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td colspan="2">In order to delete a user or a group, follow the corresponding steps below.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Deleting a user</td><td>Please follow the steps below:
Click the Users tab and the users will be listed underneath.
Find the user(s) you wish to delete. Click “✕”.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Deleting a group</td><td>Please follow the steps below:
Click the Groups tab and the groups will be listed underneath.
Find the group(s) you wish to delete. Click ✕.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** The default groups and the user Admin cannot be deleted.

3.4.1.10 Exporting the DocAve User Permissions

DocAve supports you to export the specific DocAve user permission to local disks.

(3-37) Exporting the DocAve User Permissions

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *Account Manager*.
2	Click the DocAve User Permissions button on the top-right corner to go to the DocAve User Permissions section, and all the users' information is listed in this page. You can click the icon to change the displayed columns.
3	Select the DocAve user(s) you want to export by checking the corresponding check-boxes.
4	Click the **Export** button at the bottom right corner of the page, and then you can choose to Include Administration\Central Admin Granular Permissions in the user permission export by selecting the corresponding option in the pop-up.
5	Click **Export** in the pop-up to download the DocAve User Permissions Report to a local path.
6	Click the Account Manager button at the top right corner of the page to return to DocAve Account Manager.

3.4.2 DocAve Solution Manager

DocAve provides in an interface to manage all the web part feature solution. By using this feature, you can deploy, retract, remove or upgrade all DocAve solutions on one page. To manage DocAve solution, please refer to the following steps:

***Note:** If your DocAve is upgraded to 5.6 or above version from an old version, you need to clear IE cache after the upgrading to ensure this module can be seen properly.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(3-38) Managing DocAve Solution

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *DocAve Solution Manager.*
2	Select the desired farm from the drop-down box. You can view the information about current Web Front-end number, DocAve Agent number and deployment method below the farm. ***Note:** The number of Front-end Web cannot be less than the number of DocAve Agent, if the number of Front-end Web is less than the DocAve Agents', please contact your sales to purchase Agent.
3	Click **Retrieve Version** to load all the information about the solution version. If the solution version is lower than the agent version, it will be marked as red.
4	There are several information listed in the solution table: • *Module* : The module that the solution belongs to. • *Solution* : The solution name. • *Version* : The solution version. • *Status* : There are four kind of status: **N/A**: The solution is not installed. **Not Deployed**: The solution is not deployed. **Deployed**: The solution is deployed to all the Agents. **Partially Deployed**: The solution is deployed to some of the Agents. • *Actions* : Checking, deploying or removing the solution. **Deploy**: Click to view the detailed information of the last operation under *General* tab. Click *Settings* tab to deploy or retract the solution for Web Application. Click **Detail** to deploy the solution to Agents or retract it. **Remove**: Click to remove the solution. Before removing the solution, you need to retract the deployment.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select the solution you want to manage, and the button for the specified operations you can do on this solution will be activated. There are Five operations. • *Deploy* : Deploy the select solution to the specific farm. • *Retract* : Retract the solution on the specific farm. • *Remove* : Remove this solution from this specific farm. • *Upgrade* : If the agent version is lower than the manager version, you can click the **Upgrade** button to upgrade the agent, the solution will be upgrade together. • *Refresh* : Update the solution information.
6	After you deploy the solution, it will prompt you to restart IIS. ***Note:** The IIS reset performed does not restart the IIS service, but performs a no-force reset of the IIS processes. Any processes currently running will be allowed to finish before this reset takes place. If you choose to reset IIS at a later time, the solution(s) will not be upgraded.

After deploying *AvePointEndUserItemRestore.wsp* in SharePoint 2007 or *DocAve.SP2010.EndUserRestore.Restore.wsp* in SharePoint 2010, DocAve will install a Restore web part in SharePoint to offload the responsibilities of restoring content from the DocAve Administrator or Farm Administrator to the Site Collection Administrators. This is especially useful when the end users do not have enough permission to access to the DocAve Platform. Users must have site collection admin permissions to view the backup data.

***Note:** For Connector and End User Archiving functions, you must install DocAve Agent on all the front-end web servers which started Web Application Service, otherwise the solution can only be deployed on the front-end web server which installed DocAve Agent, thus the feature cannot be activated and the functions cannot be used.

3.4.3 System Recovery

DocAve System Recovery enables the user to setup a manual or scheduled backup job for the DocAve System and then restores the DocAve System when needed. The saved DocAve System Recovery backup job can also be used on a separate, newly installed DocAve Server, enabling a quicker setup. The System Recovery backup data can be saved to a local drive or a network drive. There are two parts in the System Recovery feature: System Backup and System Restore.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** For the fresh install of DocAve 5.7, when installing DocAve Manager, if you select MS SQL which is used for the DocAve database, the System Recovery will be unavailable, it is recommended you to create regular backups of your DocAve SQL Databases for disaster recovery purposes. If you upgrade DocAve to version 5.7 by applying the upgrade patches, the System Recovery will be available.

3.4.3.1 System Backup

The System Backup includes two parts: Backup Destination and the Backup Schedule.

Setting up the Backup Destination

(3-39) Setting Up The Backup Destination

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Control Panel > DocAve System > System Recovery > System Backup.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Select the database(s) you want to backup, there are two kinds of databases in DocAve: DocAve Database and Report Database.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Select the location where the System Recovery backup job files will be saved to.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Local Drive</td><td>Input a path such as C:|data (By default the path is C:|Program Files|AvePoint |DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|BackupDocAveData).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Network Drive</td><td>Input a path such as ||server|c$|data and fill in the Username and Password for that drive. The account used should have the Write Permission on the drive.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">After the path has been specified, click Test.
*Note: Please ensure the path you specified is an existing one. Otherwise, the Test will fail.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Click **Save** to save the settings**,** and then click **Run now** at the bottom right corner of the page to execute the backup job immediately. You can click **Go to Job Report** to view the job process, or click **Cancel** to close the pop-up window. ***Note:** If a Backup job is running when you click **Run Now**, the latter job will be skipped.

You can view the process of the backup jobs via the Backup Job Report at the bottom of the screen. The report includes the Start Time, Path, User, Status, Data Size, Progress, and Operation fields. You can delete the job record by clicking **Delete**, and view the detailed information by clicking **Detail**. To return to System Backup page, please click " " button to collapse the current page.

Setting up the Backup Schedule

(3-40) Setting up the Backup Schedule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *System Recovery* > *System Backup*.
2	By default, the **No Backup Schedule** option is not selected and the default schedule is set to every 7 days which means the System Backup Job will run every 7 days using the Default Data Pruning Policy. This schedule begins as you finish installing DocAve Manager. This schedule is to ensure the consistent protection of DocAve's databases. ***Note:** You can check the No Backup Schedule option to disable the backup schedule, however, it is not recommended to do that.
3	Click on the calendar icon ( ) next to the *Start Time* field to set a start date and time for your System Backup jobs in the window provided.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">4</td><td colspan="2">Specify the interval at which the backup will occur. The choices are: Only Once, By Hour, By Day, By Week, or By Month.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Only Once</td><td>The backup job will only run once at the specified time.</td></tr>
<tr><td>By Hour</td><td>Either set this plan to run every___hour(s) or set it to run at several specified time point(s).
The time point(s) you specified can be in the morning or in the afternoon, and you can also enter the exact minute(s) past the hour in the text-box provided.</td></tr>
<tr><td>By Day</td><td>Either set the plan to run every___days, or set it to run on weekdays or at weekends.</td></tr>
<tr><td>By Week</td><td>Either set the plan to run every___weeks, or select the day(s) of the week to rerun this plan on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>By Month</td><td>You can choose this plan to run on the specified day of every month(i.e., on the 14th of every month). You can also set this plan to run on the specified day of the week in the specified month(s) of the year.</td></tr>
</table>

3.4.3.2 System Restore

Once a Backup Job completes successfully, the associated information will be listed on the System Restore page along with the Backup Time. Select the backup job you want to restore by clicking the corresponding radio box, and then click **Restore** to start DocAve System Recovery process.

Or you can browse for the backup file location and execute the System Recovery. Just select Backup File radio button and find the location for the backup file after clicking **Browse**, then click **Restore** to start DocAve System Recovery process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** The advantage of the Backup Location Restore method lies in its durability. You can always find the restore job directly under the specified directory as long as you can get access to it. Since the backup data could be pruned, you could manually move the backup data to another location before the automatic deletion and in this case, only the Backup Location Restore method could be used.

While clicking **Restore** button, a pop-up will appear to prompt you with the database (s) to restore. The database to be restored depends on the one you backed up. Select one or both of them to proceed with the restore process.

***Note:** Restoring your DocAve System to an earlier recovery point will stop the Control Service and any jobs is running. In addition, you will lose any index or job data since your last backup.

During this process, you can get a view of the restore job in System Recovery interface, which provides you the following information: Service name, Status, Progress, and Message. The detailed information will be displayed in the panel below.

When the restore job completes, you need to log on again to DocAve in order to see the recovered system.

You can also use the CLI(Command Line Interface) to restore the Control Service. Please refer to the detailed information below:

(3-41) Restore the Control Service Using CLI

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the installation path of DocAve Manager and then go to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusSystemRecovery|bin*.
2	Find the *SystemRecoveryRestore.bat* file, and then double click it.
3	Follow the instructions in the tool and enter **Y** to continue the recovery.
4	Please enter the path that you set to store the data when backing up in the following format: *...|Path|the Exact Backup Job* For example, *C:|Program Files|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|Zeus-Job|BackupDocAveData|FB1288061481699*.
5	The restore process is starting. Once it completes, you can follow the instruction to exit this tool.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

When using System Restore to transport the backup plans and DocAve Control Panel profiles to a new machine, simply copy the System Recovery Backup Job files to the default location on the new machine. You can also change the default path where the System Recovery Backup Job files are located. This can be done by going to the System Backup tab and resetting the Path.

3.4.4 System Settings

In this section you can set some basic settings for DocAve. You will be redirect to your Home Page (which is the Welcome Page by default) automatically after you click **Apply** and the settings are successfully saved.

Language Setting

Language setting allows you to specify the language to use for DocAve v5. There are three options: Default, English and Japanese. If you select the Default option, it will setup the language for DocAve v5 according to your browser's default language. Click **Apply** at the bottom right corner of the page to apply the setting.

***Note:** If you change the language to another one, it is recommended to log on again to DocAve v5 to ensure the language has been changed successfully.

***Note:** The Default option in the language field of DocAve currently only supports simplified Chinese, English and Japanese.

Reset All Warning Dialogs

Clicking this button, you can enable all warning dialogs which have been disabled by selecting *Don't show again* in the warning dialogs.

Time Format

Time Format allows you to specify the location(Locale), the date and time display type. Select the option from the corresponding drop-down box, it will display the time format accordingly.

Farm Name

In this area, you could specify the farm's display name in DocAve. Enter the name you want the specific farm to be displayed in DocAve, and it will change the farm display name accordingly.

Idle Timeout

Idle Timeout enables the user to setup the expiration time of the login session for all the users without their own specific expiration time.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To set the expiration time, please enter a number in the corresponding field and select the corresponding time unit in the drop-down box(Minutes/Hours). Click **Apply** to save the configuration. You can also setup a unique time-out setting for each user in Editing a User section.

Download Report:

The option *Generate the job report details in local file system* is selectd by default. You can specify a local path where you want to generate the report (UNC path is not supported). You can select report format, CSV, XLS and TXT. For special modules, only the supported format can be generated. No matter what you select in GUI, it will generate the report with certain format.

(3-42) Report format and report folder for different modules

Module		Report Format	Job Report Folder	Comment
Report Center	Collector	txt	GranularBackupReport	
Data Protection	Granular Backup	csv, xls, txt	SiteBinRestoreReport	
	Granular Restore	csv, xls, txt	GranularRestoreReport	
	Platform Level Backup	txt	PlatformLevelBackupReport	
	Platform Level Restore	txt	PlatformLevelRestoreReport	
	High Availability	txt	HighAvailabilityReport	
	SiteBin Backup	csv, xls, txt	SiteBinBackupReport	
	SiteBin Restore	csv, xls, txt	SiteBinRestoreReport	
	SiteBin Detailed Report			There is not any report.
	Analyze SQL Backup	txt	AnalyzeSQLBackupReport	
	Restore from SQL Backup	txt	RestoreFromSqlBackupReport	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Module		Report Format	Job Report Folder	Comment
Administration	Replicator	txt	ReplicationReport	
	Admin Search			There is not any report.
	Central Admin			There is not any report.
	Admin Reports	csv, xls, txt	AdminReportsReport	
	STSADM	txt	STSADMReport	
	Design Manager	txt	DesignManagerReport	
	Content Manager	txt	ContentManagerReport	
	Front End Deployment	txt	FrontEndDeploymentReport	
	Front End Rollback	txt	FrontEndRollbackReport	
	Solution Center	xml	SolutionCenterReport	It is special.
	Backup for Replication	csv, xls, txt	GranularBackupReport	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Module		Report Format	Job Report Folder	Comment
Migration	File System Migration	csv, xls, txt	MigrationReport	
	SharePoint 2003 to 2007	csv, xls, txt		
	SharePoint 2003 to 2010	csv, xls, txt		
	SharePoint 2007 to 2010	csv, xls, txt		
	Exchange Public Folder	csv, xls, txt		
	eRoom Migration	csv, xls, txt		
	Livelink Migration	csv, xls, txt		
	Lotus Notes Migration	csv, xls, txt		
	ERM Migration	csv, xls, txt		
	Lotus Notes Quickplace	csv, xls, txt		
	EMC Document Migration	csv, xls, txt		
Compliance	Compliance Vault	txt	ComplianceReport	
	Compliance Auditor	txt		
	Audit Report	txt		
	eDiscovery Search	txt		

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Module		Report Format	Job Report Folder	Comment
Storage Optimization	Archiver Backup	txt	ArchiverBackupReport	
	Archiver Restore	txt	ArchiverRestoreReport	
	Archiver Offline Export Report	txt	ArchiverOfflineExportReport	
	Convert Stubs to Content	txt	ArchiverRestoreReport	
	End User Archiving Backup	txt	EndUserArchivingBackupReport	
	Extender Settings	txt	ExtenderSettingsReport	
	Connector Synchronization	txt	ConnectorSynchronizationReport	
	Stub Retention Policy	txt	StubRetentionPolicyReport	
Control Panel	Remote Install Report			There is not any report.
	Data Pruning	txt	DataPruningReport	
	Job Pruning	txt	JobPruning	
	Data Import	txt	DataImportReport	
	Data Export	txt	DataExportReport	
	Coalescing	txt	CollectorReport	

Custom Logo for Report and E-mail Templates

In this area, you can set the logo for the report and e-mail templates. Click **Browse** to find the logo file, and then click **Apply** to save the modification. After applying the change, you can view the logo in the *Preview* area, you can drag it to change its location and click **Reset** to reset the location of the logo. You can click on the corresponding magnifier to zoom in or zoom out the logo. You can also click **Restore to default** to roll back to the original setting.

3.4.5 User Data

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This feature allows you to change the location which saves the patches for upgrade and keeps Central Admin Admin Search results. The default location is *C:\Program Files\AvePoint\DocAve5\Manager\UserData*. If you want to change the location, the path you specified need to be a network path. You can enter the Username and Password in the corresponding text-boxes.

3.5 Reporting

Reporting section, capable of configuring email notifications, logs, MOM logging, and SCOM logging, is used in each module of DocAve Manager to notify you about the status of services or jobs. Also, it allows the administrators to view and refresh the log status of DocAve services in Log Viewer. It is composed of five subsections: Email Notification, Log Manager, Log Viewer, MOM Logging Settings, and SCOM Logging Settings. Please check the following introductions for your reference.

3.5.1 Email Notification

Reporting includes the Email Notification section, which allows the administrator to create various email profiles containing different mailing lists. All the communication between you and DocAve could then be configured to email to different profiles for different Failure, Success, or Warning conditions.

Email Notification allows the administrator to specify exactly what is reported, from simple summary reports to detailed URL specific reports. There are four Email Notification Types available: General, Replicator, Service Status, and Site Bin.

Follow the steps below to begin configuration of the mailing list profile.

3.5.1.1 Configuring a General Email Notification

General Email Notification is designed to inform the users with the formation on the common jobs, logs, or even the warning about the license expiration. To set up a General Email Notification, please follow the steps below:

(3-43) Configuring A General Email Notification Profile

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Reporting > Email Notification*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select General from the Notification Type drop-down box.
3	Click **New**, and enter an Email Notification Name in the provided box.
4	Enter your Microsoft Exchange Outgoing Mail Server (SMTP) in either the host name or an IP Address format.
5	You need to select the Secure Password Authentication option if you setup this option in your E-mail Account Configuration.
6	Specify a port. The default port is 25.
7	In the *Sender* field, enter the email address you would like the notifications to come from, and then enter Username on SMTP and Password on SMTP in the corresponding fields. Select the SSL Authentication option according to your E-mail settings. Click **Test Account** for verification and DocAve v5 will send you a test email to confirm that the account you input is valid.
8	Enter the email recipients in the text-boxes of the Summary Report Recipient(s) and Detailed Report Recipient(s). Multiple recipients can be added to the recipient(s) text box, separated by a semi-colon ";". The Detailed Report Recipient(s) will receive the notification with an attachment which is the Job Report of the job.
9	Select a notification level from both Summary Report Notification Level(s) and Detailed Report Notification Level(s). The options are: All Levels, Success, Failure and Warning. By default, all the notification levels of the two fields are selected. ***Note:** Notification levels can be customized by profile. For instance, you may want a specific person or group of people to only receive reports for Backups and/or Archives that have failed. Add a new email notification for each person or group.
10	Select the format which the message will be delivered in: HTML or Plain Text.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	If the check-box for Send All Logs To Recipient is selected, it will send logs to the recipient when the backup job failed.
12	You can also click **Configure a custom logo for these reports** to go to System Settings and configure a custom logo. For the detailed information, please refer to the Section System Settings. ***Note:** If you click on the hyperlink to go to System Settings, all the unsaved configurations will be lost, it is recommended you to configure a custom logo beforehand.
13	Click **Save**. All mail notifications profiles will be selectable within DocAve's various plans. If you click **Save As** and the email notification profile name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/…** will be automatically added to the original name of the profile.
14	Later you will receive test messages from DocAve to verify if the email notification profile has been saved successfully.

You should now see the profile you have created listed in the Profile Viewer on your right hand side. To modify a profile, simply click on the profile name in the list and make your modifications. Once you are done, click **Save** to save the changes.

3.5.1.2 Configuring a Replicator Email Notification

Replicator Email Notification is used to send a Conflict Notification email to the specified receiver in the Replicator Module.

To set up a Replicator Email Notification, please follow the steps below:

(3-44) Configuration A Replicator Email Notification

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Reporting > Email Notification*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select Replicator from the Notification Type drop-down box.
3	Click **New**, and enter an Email Notification Name to the provided box.
4	Enter your Microsoft Exchange Outgoing Mail Server (SMTP).
5	You need to select the Secure Password Authentication option if you setup this option in your E-mail Account Configuration.
6	Specify a port. The default port is 25.
7	Under the Sender field, enter the email address you would like the notifications to come from, as well as the login credentials: Username on SMTP, Password on SMTP, and Confirm Password in the following fields. Select the **SSL Authentication** option according to your E-mail setting. Click **Test Account** for verification and DocAve v5 will send you a test email to confirm that the account you input is valid.
8	You can also click **Configure a custom logo for these reports** to go to System Settings and configure a custom logo. For the detailed information, please refer to Section System Settings. ***Note:** If you click on the hyperlink to go to System Settings, all the unsaved configurations will be lost, it is recommended you to configure a custom logo beforehand.
9	Click **Save**, and then it will be listed under the Profile Viewer column on your right hand side. If you click **Save As** and the email notification profile name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/...** will be automatically added to the original name of the profile.
10	Later you will receive test messages from DocAve to verify if the email notification profile has been saved successfully.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.5.1.3 Configuring a Service Status Email Notification

Service Status Email Notification is used to send an Email automatically when any DocAve Service(except DocAve Control Service) is down. To setup a Service Status Email Notification, please follow the steps below:

(3-45) Configuring A Service Status Email Notification Profile

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Reporting > Email Notification*.
2	Select Service Status from the Notification Type drop-down box.
3	Click **New**, and enter an Email Notification Name in the provided box.
4	Enter your Microsoft Exchange Outgoing Mail Server (SMTP).
5	You need to select the Secure Password Authentication option if you setup this option in your E-mail Account Configuration.
6	Specify a port. The default port is 25.
7	Under the Sender field, enter the email address you would like the notifications to come from, as well as the login credentials: Username on SMTP, Password on SMTP, and Confirm Password in the following fields. Select the **SSL Authentication** option according to your E-mail setting. Click **Test Account** for verification and DocAve v5 will send you a test email to confirm that the account you input is valid.
8	Enter the report recipients in the corresponding text box. Multiple recipients can be added to the text box, separated by a semi-colon ";".
9	Select the format which the message will be delivered in: HTML or Plain Text.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	If the check-box for Send All Logs To Recipient is selected, it will send logs to the recipient when any service (except the Control Service) is down.
11	You can also click **Configure a custom logo for these reports** to go to System Settings and configure a custom logo. For the detailed information, please refer to Section System Settings. ***Note:** If you click on the hyperlink to go to System Settings, all the unsaved configurations will be lost, it is recommended you to configure a custom logo beforehand.
12	Click **Save**, and then it will be listed under the Profile Viewer column on your right hand side. If you click **Save As** and the email notification profile name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/...** will be automatically added to the original name of the profile.
13	Later you will receive test messages from DocAve to verify if the email notification profile has been saved successfully.

3.5.1.4 Configuring a SiteBin Email Notification

SiteBin Email Notification is used to send an email automatically when any site in SiteBin has been deleted. To set up a SiteBin Email Notification, please follow the steps below:

(3-46) Configuring A SiteBin Email Notification Profile

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Reporting > Email Notification*.
2	Select SiteBin from the Notification Type drop-down box.
3	Click **New**, and enter an Email Notification Name in the provided box.
4	Enter your Microsoft Exchange Outgoing Mail Server (SMTP).

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	You need to select the option if you setup this option in your E-mail Account Configuration.
6	Specify a port. The default port is 25.
7	Under the Sender field, enter the email address you would like the notifications to come from, as well as the login credentials: Username on SMTP, Password on SMTP, and Confirm Password in the following fields. Select the "**SSL Authentication**" option according to your E-mail setting. Click **Test Account** for verification and DocAve v5 will send you a test email to confirm that the account you input is valid.
8	Enter the email recipients in the text-boxes of the Summary Report Recipient(s) and Detailed Report Recipient(s). Multiple recipients can be added to the recipient(s) text box, separated by a semi-colon ";". ***Note:** Please note that you need to input at least one recipient and the difference between the two kinds of recipients is that the Detailed Report Recipient(s) will receive an attachment which is the Job Report of the job.
9	Select a notification level from both Summary Report Notification Level(s) and Detailed Report Notification Level(s). The options: All Levels, Delete Failed, and Deleted Successfully are available. By default, all the notification levels of the two fields are selected. ***Note:** Notification levels can be customized by profile. For instance, you may want a specific person or group of people to only receive reports for deletions that have failed. Add a new email notification for each person or group.
10	Select the format which the message will be delivered in: HTML or Plain Text.
11	If the check-box for Send All Logs To Recipient is selected, it will send logs to the recipient when the deletion failed.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	You can also click **Configure a custom logo for these reports** to go to System Settings and configure a custom logo. For the detailed information, please refer to Section System Settings. ***Note:** If you just click on the hyperlink to go to System Settings, all the unsaved configurations will be lost, it is recommended you to configure a custom logo beforehand.
13	Click **Save** to save the settings. If you click **Save As** and the email notification profile name already exists, a suffix of **(1)/(2)/(3)/...** will be automatically added to the original name of the profile.
14	Later you will receive test messages from DocAve to verify if the email notification profile has been saved successfully.

You should now see the profile you have created listed to the right. To modify a profile, simply click on the profile's name in the list and make your modifications. Once you are done, click **Save** to save the changes.

3.5.2 Log Manager

The DocAve Log Manager provides several options for managing the logs associated with SharePoint Agent, DocAveWeb, DocAveSearch, DocAveAudit, DocAveControl, DocAveMedia services, Report Service, and Report Database Service. Also, you can find your unique CIID in this section. These DocAve log records show all actions that were performed under the specified service. The amount of logs to record is set via the Log Level Setting panel, and the amount of data to retain is set via the Log Data Download panel. Additionally, you can send these logs via the Log Email Notification panel. With these configurations, you will be able to send the issue logs or CIID string to DocAve for the quickest feedback and the best solution.

3.5.2.1 CIID

CIID, known as the abbreviation for Customer Issue Identification, provides you with a string to identify your installation license. It contains your license type and the characters created at random to keep itself unique. You can copy and send the string to us as an replacement of the logs to obtain the customer service as well as the new license.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Beside the one in Log Manager, you can find the same CIID by clicking " " icon after logging in.

3.5.2.2 Log Data Download

Log Data Download is used to download logs for SharePoint Agent, Media Service, Web Service, Auditor Service, Search Service, Control Service Report Service, or Report Database Service. You can select the logs to be downloaded by checking any of the agents or services from the drop-down box and clicking **Apply**. By default, all the agents and services are selected, you can also uncheck the ones whose logs you do not want to download. Clicking **Download** will create a zip file that will contain all the specified logs. You can select a location for the download from the pop-up.

***Note:** Before downloading the logs in DocAve, make sure the Internet Explorer is properly configured. Please refer to the steps below to configure the Internet Explorer.

(3-47) Configure IE Settings

Step	Action
1	Right click on the icon of Internet Explorer and select Run as administrator.
2	Navigate to Tools > Internet Options and switch to the *Security* tab.
3	Click **Custom Level...** and find **Downloads** item in the *Security Settings - Internet Zone* pop-up window.
4	Select **Enable** for **Automatic prompting for file downloads** item.
5	Click **OK** to save the settings.

3.5.2.3 Log Level Settings

Log Level Settings can be used to set Log Levels for the following services:

- *Agents* : The agents connected to this Manager.
- *Media Service* : Backup data processing and storage management service. Here, administrators can choose different log levels for recording across multiple DocAve media services using the drop-down list.
- *Web Service* : DocAve GUI hosting service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Audit Service* : Monitor SharePoint activities.
- *Search Service* : Search the data after generating full text index.
- *Control Service* : Manage all DocAve operations.
- *Report Service* : Monitor all the SharePoint and DocAve activities.
- *Report Database Service* : Monitor the data collected for Report Center in the report database.

Logs could be configured to generate on each of the following levels:

- *Debug* : Logs of this level record the detailed information which are related to the internal operations such as the communication between DocAve Manager and DocAve Agent, the operations in the database, the output message of the data and so on. Logs of this level are used for finding out all the details of the jobs and we recommend you set the Log Level to Debug before troubleshooting. Debug level logs contain all the logs from Info, Warning, and Error levels.
- *Info* : This is the default Log Level. Logs of this level record the basic information of DocAve, such as the jobs that you have run, the operations you have performed, some important processes of the jobs and so on. Info level logs contain all the logs from Info, Warning and Error levels.
- *Warning* : Logs of this level record some exceptions of the jobs and the logs can be used for troubleshooting. Warning level logs contain all the logs from Warning and Error levels.
- *Error* : Logs of this level record the error messages for the jobs. Not all the errors could lead to the failure of the jobs, some of the errors have already been dealt with and the logs will record the detailed information.
- *Log to File* : This level is only used for the Agent logs. If the option is selected, the Agent logs will be saved in the .log file in the installation path of DocAve Agent, which is *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|logs* by default.

To change the log level, please select the Agent or the host machine of the specified Manager Service in the corresponding drop-down list, choose one level afterwards, and then click **Apply** to save the configuration.

You can click the button **Open Debugger** to troubleshoot GUI related problems. It is not recommended to open the debugger under normal circumstances as any GUI navigation will slow down with the debugger open.

3.5.2.4 Log Email Notification

Log Email Notification is used to send the logs to some specified recipient(s) directly from the GUI. Within the panel you can add a Subject or write a Description to go along with the logs.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** The log email, because of Junk E-mail options in Outlook, will be automatically sent to the Junk E-mail folder. Please move it to the inbox to view the attachment of logs in a zip file.

3.5.3 Log Viewer

Log Viewer is used to view the logs generated in the job process. You can limit the logs to be shown by selecting the Level or Service.

In the Log Viewer, there are four options:

- *Level* : In this drop-down box, you can select to view the logs at all levels, at Error level or at Info Level. By default, Select All is selected.
- *Refresh* : It is used to refresh the view at a regular interval. There are three options available: 10s, 30s, and 120s. By default, the value is set to 120s. You can also refresh the view immediately by clicking **Refresh**.
- *Service* : You can select to view all services or either the: Control Service, Media Service, Web Service, Audit Service, Search Service, Report Service, or Report Database Service. By default, Select All is selected.
- *Per Page* : You can select either 5, 10 or 20 items to list per page from the drop-down box. By default, the value is 20.

You can click **Refresh** to refresh the log viewer immediately.

To view the detailed message of one listed log, please click the ID number under ID column in the log viewer list and then check the log content in the pop-up window. You can also click **Previous** or **Next** to check the former log or the latter one in the pop-up.

3.5.4 MOM Logging Settings

For those users who make use of Microsoft Operations Manager, DocAve's reporting services can be integrated here.

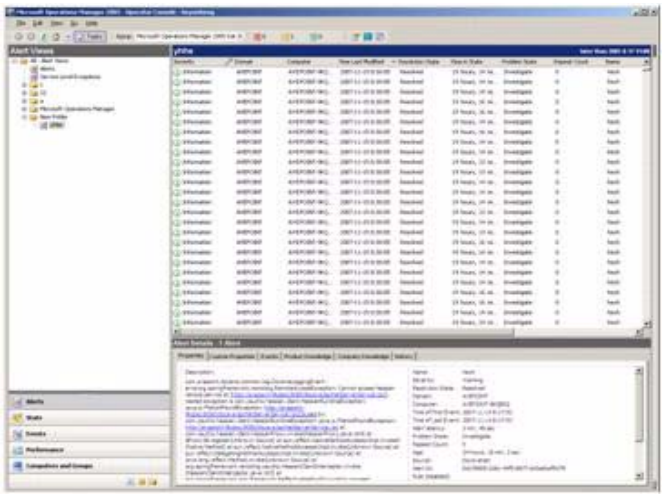
3.5.4.1 Enable MOM Integration from DocAve

You can enable the MOM integration from MOM Logging Settings tab of Reporting section under Control Panel. Check the box in the front of Enable Microsoft Operations Manager Integration and enter the information as required. After entering the configuration information, click **Test** and you will receive a complete message if DocAve can connect to the MOM server successfully.

3.5.4.2 Viewing the logs from MOM

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

The DocAve logs will be displayed in the MOM server. Please see the following picture for details:



3.5.5 SCOM Logging Settings

For those users who make use of System Center Operations Manager, DocAve's reporting services can be integrated here.

The user used in SCOM must have the following permissions:

- Administrator of SCOM Server
- Read and writer permission to the folder named ZeusJob under the path *...|Avepoint|DocAve5|Manager* in DocAve Manager server
- Add the domain of the server where SCOM is installed to *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *Account Manager*. Select *Enable Active Directory Integration* option and click **Configure** button. In *Username* field enter the user used in SCOM. The domain must be the last one added in *Account Manager*.

***Note:** .NET Framework in DocAve Manager server must be v3.0 or higher.

3.5.5.1 Enable SCOM Integration from DocAve

You can enable the SCOM integration according to the following steps:

(3-48) Enable SCOM setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *Reporting* > *SCOM Logging Settings*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	This report concerns your inquiry regarding how to properly setup SCOM reporting in our DocAve software. Following are the instructions: • *Enable System Center Operations Manager* : Yes, you need to check the checkbox to enable it. • *SCOM Server Name* : This is simply the full computer name of the configuration needs to be added to this field. • *Local Host Full Name* : This is the full computer name of the machine that has the DocAve Web server and SCOM client installed, which will communicate with the SCOM server. • *Event Source Name* : In this field, you only need to put the name DocAve or any other name that you desire. It is just an identifier. • *Records Per Sync* : This is up to your discretion. It is the number of records that the SCOM client will wait to collect before it sends them over to the server. This number can range from 10 - 100 and the default number is 25. The lower the number, the slower the performance, as the client will waste resources sending line of log individually to the SCOM server. • *Log Level* : The Log Level can be set to Error, Warning or Info, it is up to your preference. ***Note:** To connect SCOM, you must select **Enable Active Directory Integration** in *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *Account Manager*, this user information must be configured in *Domain* field since this user will also be used to connect SCOM. It should have local admin permission to DocAve Manager server.
3	After entering the configuration information, click **Test**. You will receive a complete message if DocAve can connect to the SCOM server successfully using the configuration.
4	Click **Apply** to save the settings.

3.5.5.2 Viewing the logs from SCOM

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

The DocAve logs will be displayed in the SCOM server.

3.6 License Management

This section provides users with several methods to update and prolong the use of DocAve agent. It is composed of three subsections: License Manager, DocAve Update Manager, and DocAve Update Report.

3.6.1 License Manager

DocAve License Manager provides a centralized location to view license information regarding DocAve's components. License Manager allows SharePoint administrators to view the license type and the DocAve Server Host\IP. It also allows the administrator of AvePoint's web interface to update AvePoint server level licenses with ease by simply clicking on the import button and browsing for a new license file. By default, the duration of a DocAve license is 30 days and you can configure the warning message to change the license in time. Aside from the current license, you can also check your maintenance duration in this interface to obtain better service.

The license models for DocAve v5.7 are as follows:

(3-49) License Model (SharePoint2007)

Feature / Product	Licensing
SharePoint 2007 Backup	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Platform Backup	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 High Availability	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 SiteBin	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Administration	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Replicator	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Deployment Manager	By number of agents

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Feature / Product	Licensing
SharePoint 2007 Content Manager	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Compliance Vault	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Auditor	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 eDiscovery	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 SharePoint Migration	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint 2007 File System	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint 2007 eRoom	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint 2007 Lotus Notes	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint 2007 Public Folder	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint 2007 Livelink	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint 2007 EMC Documentum	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint 2007 Report Center	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Archiver	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Extender	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Media Library	By number of agents
SharePoint 2007 Content Library	By number of agents

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(3-50) License Model (SharePoint2010)

Feature / Product	Licensing
SharePoint2010 Backup	By number of agents
SharePoint2010 Platform Backup	By number of agents
SharePoint2010 Administration	By number of agents
SharePoint2010 Replicator	By number of agents
SharePoint2010 File System	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint2003 to 2010 Migration	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint2010 Lotus Notes	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint2010 eRoom	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint2010 Livelink	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint2010 EMC Documentum	By size of data being migrated (in GB)
SharePoint2010 Archiver	By number of agents
SharePoint2010 Extender	By number of agents

***Note:** From DocAve 5.6.0.0, there are two types licenses of the Migration modules. The Shared license is the same as the former license, while the Not Shared license specifies the quota for each of the Migration modules. For example, if the Not Shared license says there are 3 GBs for the SharePoint 2007 File System module, it means that only the SharePoint 2007 File System module could be used and the quota is 3 GBs.

***Note:** For each of the Migration modules, the quota of the SharePoint 2007 part and the Share-Point 2010 part are all considered as the quota for the whole module, so the quota will not be separated for the two environments in one module. For example, if the quota of the SharePoint 2007 eRoom module is 20 GBs and that of the SharePoint 2010 eRoom module is 10 GBs, it means that 30 GBs can be used for the eRoom migration module.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.6.1.1 Viewing Current License Information

In order to view the permissions granted in the current license, open the *License Manager* under *Control Panel*. By selecting the various features and solutions DocAve provides from the list on the left, you can view the detailed information on the right. Also, in this version, you are able to check the agent information by clicking the Agent Report at the bottom of the page. The expanded panel will display Module, Quantity (Valid Agent), Quantity (Current Agent), Valid Agent Name, Mismatched Agent name and Environment Mismatched Agent Name.

***Note:** The list under License Type symbolizes the Quantity and the Types of the media services allowed by the current license.

3.6.1.2 Applying a License

To apply a license file click **Import** at the top of the page and browse for the license file. You can either click **Apply** to apply the license immediately or click **Preview** to view the details of the license and then click **Apply** in the preview window. In order to validate your installation for automatic patch update and notifications for enhanced technical support, please select a registration option in the pop-up. You can check to ensure every upgrade will be executed. If *Register now online* is selected, click **Continue**, the related registration information will be sent to the CEIP server and you need to restart DocAve GUI to complete the update. If *Register later via Email* is selected, click **Continue**, then the download page will be displayed. Click **Download** to download registration.ceip to your local drive and email it to registration@avepoint.com later. Restart DocAve GUI to complete the update. If the license file is valid, a message will appear indicating that the license update is successful. You will then be prompted to log back into DocAve. You can click **Download License File** to download it or click **Export License Report** to export it.

After applying the license, the information about the license including the License Type, Server Host/IP, Media Quantity, Supported Storage Type, Cloud Type and the Support Status of Virtual Database Function, will be listed in the corresponding fields.

3.6.1.3 Configuring Expiration Notification

This notification is designed to warn you before the license or maintenance hits the expiration, allowing you to set up the prompt message by hour, day, or week beforehand and you can receive a reminder e-mail as well. To configure the prompt message, input the number and select the time unit in the corresponding fields; while for the reminder e-mail, select and apply the Email Notification Profile that you configured in the section Configuring a General Email Notification.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.6.2 DocAve Update Manager

DocAve Update Manager allows you to update the current version of DocAve within the DocAve GUI, which will reduce the time and risk of manual update.

3.6.2.1 How to Update the Manager or Agent

To update the Manager or Agent, please follow the steps below:

(3-51) Update the Manager or Agent

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve Update Manager under the License Management section of the Control Panel.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>You are applying an update to the Manager</td><td>You can browse for the Manager Update(".zip" file), then click Load.</td></tr>
<tr><td>You are applying an update to the Agent</td><td>1. Browse for the Agent Update or Hotfix (".zip" file), then click Load.
2. Select the Agent machine(s) from the drop-down list under Agent Host on which you wish to upgrade the DocAve Agent(s).</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click Apply next to the loaded update. If you have applied update(s) before, it will list all the applied update(s) in the pop-up window. You can force to install the update by checking the agreement option. It will recommend that you contact your AvePoint support representative for more information prior to upgrading your environment.

*Note: To update multiple agents, you can select the Select All check-box or select the corresponding agents in the Agent Host drop-down box.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	The DocAve update page will emerge later with the following information columns: Service Type, Host, Progress, Old version, New version, Patch version, and Status. While updating DocAve Manager, you can check the detailed information on the updating process under the panel Detailed Information. You can view the detailed information of the update process of different services by clicking the corresponding radio button.
4	After the update completes, you have to select the agent by checking the corresponding check-box and reset the IIS service by clicking **Reset**.
5	Click **Finish** to end the update process after IIS service is reset successfully.

***Note:** During the upgrade process, if some file cannot be upgraded, all the files will be rolled back and the upgrade will fail. You can navigate to *DocAve > Control Panel > Patch Report* to view the detailed information.

For more information on the update patch, you can navigate to the corresponding storage folder. By default, the storage path for the update patch is: *C:|Program Files|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|UserData|patches|unzipPatches*.

***Note:** DocAve Manager should be updated in prior to its DocAve Agents, otherwise the agents will be invalid.

3.6.2.2 Automatic Update Setting

Under Automatic Update Setting, you can choose from several options regarding when and how often you would like to check for new updates:

- *Download updates…* : This option will automatically download any product updates from AvePoint and will prompt you upon logging in to perform the installation.
- *Notify me…* : This option will automatically prompt you if an update from AvePoint is ready, but it will wait for you to download and install it.
- *Turn off automatic updates* : This option will disable automatic updates and require you to check for product updates on the AvePoint website independently.

You can click **Update Registration** to update the registration, and then click **Preview Register File** to view the detailed information in the pop-up. Clicking **Save** will save your current

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

selection and profile. Clicking **Check Now** will immediately check to see if there are any new update hotfixes.

The progress of the update process can be monitored here as well.

3.6.2.3 Proxy Server Setting

If you need to download the update through Proxy Server, you can specify the kind of Proxy from the drop-down box, and enter the Proxy Host, Proxy Port, User Name and Password. Click **Apply** to save the configuration.

3.6.3 DocAve Update Report

The DocAve Patch Report offers a centralized interface that allows you to see which patches were applied and when they were applied. In addition, it will display the following detailed information of the patches in a history table format: *Service Type*, *Host*, *Update Type*, *From*, *To*, *CI Hotfix No.*, *Applied Date*, and *Message*.

- *Service Type* : The name of the service which applies the patch.
- *Host* : The name of the host that the service is installed on.
- *UpdateType* : The type of the patch, the values could be: Official Update, Problem Specific Hotfix or Diagnostic Update.
- *From* : The version of the service before applying theupdate or hotfix.
- *To* : The version of the service after applying the update or hotfix.
- *CI Hotfix No.* : The number of the CI Hotfix. The column for the Official Update should be empty.
- *Applied Date* : The date when the update or hotfix is applied.
- *Message* : The status of the installation of the update or hotfix.

For each column except the Applied Date column of the table, you can click down arrow to sort or filter it.

To export the update or hotfix report, click **Export** and it will export all the report with the default sort order to *DocAve_Update_Report.zip*. Click **View Current Version**, it will list all the services versions in the pop-up window.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.7 Job Monitor

This section, providing a central interface, enables the users to monitor, update, and control the jobs in the corresponding modules. Through different permissions, the operations that the users could perform differ from each other. By monitoring, you could only view detailed job information like Plan Name, Progress, Status, Detail, Time Zone, Start Time, Finish Time, and (Source) Agent information in the Default View or all the details in the All Items view. By updating, you can create\modify the views in Job Monitor besides just monitoring. Finally, by controlling, you will be able to access all the functions in each view of Job Monitor without any limitation whatsoever.

Also, Job Monitor provides you with Default View and All Items view, and you can customize them by yourself. The All Items View enables you to access all the details of the jobs in Job Monitor.

3.7.1 Job Monitor

This section is designed for users to monitor, update, and control the running jobs as well as the ones in the past. It contains several views for your preference. Follow the steps below to view the detailed information about the jobs.

(3-52) View the Detailed Information in Job Monitor

Step	Action
1	Go to the Job Monitor interface by clicking next to the Control Panel and then click *Job Monitor*.
2	Click **Jobs** and then a drop-down box will appear. You can then select a module to view specific job information. You can click **Configure** to set up the Job Type Collection in the pop-up by checking the corresponding check-box to select the item to list. If you wish to set a function as the default one to be displayed in Job Monitor, please select its function group and itself in the corresponding check-boxes. Click **Apply** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to exit without saving.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td colspan="2">If you have not made any configuration changes, the job information will appear in Default View. If you want to change the view, click the button next to View to select another view. You can change it to All Items view, Modify This View or Create View.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Modifying a view</td><td>Please follow the steps below:
Select the view you wish to modify.
Click Modify This View, a modification window will appear.
Modify the target items.
Click Apply to save the changes, click Delete to delete the view or click Cancel to quit without saving.
*Note: Default and All Items views cannot be deleted.

*Note: You can choose to Create a Public View or Create a Personal View. The Public view can be seen by all the users and the Personal one could only be seen by the user who create the modifications.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Creating a new view	Please follow the steps below: 1. Click **Create View**, a pop-up window will appear. 2. Input a View Name into the View Name text box. 3. You can check Make this as the default view check-box to make it the default view. 4. Select the radio button to specify the audience (Public View/Personal View) for a specified module. In contrast to Public View, you can create a Personal View for the specified user. This setting is specially designed for your privacy as even DocAve Administrator has no access to your Personal View. 5. Check the corresponding check-box to select the items and their positions to be displayed in the current page. 6. Specify the number of jobs to display per page. 7. Click **Apply** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to exit without saving.
4	To filter the jobs according to the plan name, please click the down arrow icon at the right of **Plan Name** column. Then you can view all the plans in this module. Check the checkbox of the plan you want to filter. Click **OK** button to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to exit without saving.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	To view the detailed information of the jobs, please click **View detail report** under **Detail** column. Then you can view the detailed information and download the job report in three formats: CSV, XLS, and TXT. Also, from the report, you can check the information on the Logical Device, Media Service, as well as the Physical Device of this job. For Livelink Migration module, the job report file is named as PlanName_JobID to ensure you can track all items that have been successfully migrated from Livelink to SharePoint easily.
6	If there are any pending jobs that you do not want to continue running, you can click the **Stop** button in the **Control** column to stop the job completely. You can also click the corresponding button to **Pause** and **Resume** the corresponding jobs in the **Control** column.
7	You can click the icon to refresh the job report. Select a job report by checking the corresponding check-box, then click the icon to delete the job report. Select a job report by checking the corresponding check-box, then click icon to download the job report to your local disk. You can also click icon to change the current time zone. Select the time zone from the drop-down box in the pop-up window. Click **OK** to save the change, or Click **Cancel** to exit without saving. ***Note:** The icon is not available when some job types are selected.

Remove backup data manually

To remove or prune backup data manually, please follow the steps below.

(3-53) Remove The Backup Data

Step	Action
1	To access the Job Monitor interface, click this icon next to the Control Panel.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select the completed job from the granular backup/platform level backup list in the Job Monitor using the checkboxes on the left.
3	Select the check-box in the **Remove Backup Data** column. ***Note:** If your current view does not have this column, you can add this column into your view, or select All Items after clicking the button next to View.
4	Click the trash can icon on the top. This will remove the job record and the data of this job. This will also remove the restore point from the Restore Controller timeline. ***Note:** Manually removing backup data directly from your storage devices is not supported, and may cause errors on restore. If you wish to move data to a different location or import new backup data, refer to the Data Import section and the Data Export section.

Remove export data manually

To remove or prune export data manually, please follow the steps below.

(3-54) Remove The Export Data

Step	Action
1	Go to the Job Monitor interface by clicking next to the Control Panel on the top right corner of the screen.
2	Select the completed export job from SharePoint 2003 to 2007, Share-Point 2003 to 2010 or SharePoint 2007 to 2010 list in the Job Monitor using the checkboxes on the left.
3	Select the check-box in the **Remove Export Data** column. ***Note:** If your current view does not have this column, you can add this column into your view, or select All Items after clicking the button next to View.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Click the trash can icon on the top. This will remove the job record and the data of this job.

Delete Site (Replication) in Job Monitor

This section focuses on the site deletion of the Replication module in Job Monitor. The feature of site deletion is designed for removing the destination sub site once the source is deleted. Please check the following steps to proceed with the site deletion.

(3-55) Delete Site in Job Monitor

Step	Action
1	Remove or delete your source site after running a Replication job.
2	Go to the Job Monitor interface and select the Replication module.
3	Select All Items view or any other customized view that contains Control column.
4	Select the Replication job and click the Site Deletion button in the Control field.
5	A pop-up will emerge, displaying all the deleted source and destination sites with Delete On, Deletion Time, and Status.
6	Check the corresponding check box of the destination site to be deleted and click Delete to proceed.
7	You can also check the corresponding check box before Email Notification and then select one Email Notification Profile.
8	After the deletion is over, you can click **Download** after clicking View detail report in the **Detail** field of the corresponding replication job to download both the job report and the site deletion report.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

3.7.2 Scheduled Job Monitor

You can view, enable, and disable the scheduled jobs in Scheduled Job Monitor to effectively schedule the jobs to be run in the future.

Follow the steps below to view the detailed information of the scheduled jobs.

(3-56) View the Information of Scheduled Jobs

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *Job Monitor* > *Scheduled Job Monitor*.
2	Select the module from the Module drop-down box.
3	Select the time range for the jobs you want to view in the Time Window area. Either *Next* or *From To* is available. • *Next__days* : The scheduled jobs of the next__days will be shown. • *From__To__* : The scheduled jobs of the specified time period will be shown.
4	Select one number from the Per Page drop-down box to specify the number of the jobs to be displayed in each page.
5	Click **Show Results** to load and then display the corresponding jobs. You can view the No., Start Time, Farm, Restore Setting and Status (Provided that you have selected the Granular Restore Module) in the result list.
6	You can click **Disable All Jobs** to disable all the scheduled jobs, or **Enable All Jobs** to enable all the disabled jobs.
7	You can also check the check box of one enabled job and click **Disable Selected Jobs** to disable it or check the check box of one disabled job and click **Enable selected Jobs** to enable it.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	When Granular Restore Module is selected, you will be provided with the column of Restore Setting in the result list. You will be able to view its restore method and click the **Detail** button to view the detailed information about this restore job.

***Note:** If you stop DocAve Control Service after the scheduled job is saved and restart it, if the triggering time of the schedule is passed, the scheduled job will be skipped. You can check the job status in Job Monitor.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4. Report Center

The DocAve Report Center provides valuable Business Intelligence about your SharePoint deployment and your DocAve infrastructure. There are three core areas of information provided by this module:

- *SharePoint Infrastructure* : This area offers real-time monitoring on your SharePoint platform and servers, including your SharePoint topology, index crawl status, CPU and memory usage, and other important aspects relating to your SharePoint deployment's health (which encompasses the features formerly found in Discovery). This also allows you to report on more common administration-based reports such as storage trends or difference reports.
- *Usage Analytics* : This area allows you to analyze how your SharePoint deployment is being utilized. You can use reports in this section to track user activity, behavior, and other common questions found pertaining to the overall success of a SharePoint deployment.
- *DocAve Reports* : Use this section to run a report on DocAve's overall health and use. Track admin user activity, monitor the storage use of your data storage drives, and find out other essential information to keep your DocAve platform running smoothly.

All of these areas leverage the DocAve Reporting Service and all corresponding application databases underneath to run these reports. Please see the first section below regarding installation and configuration of these reports.

4.1 Configuring the Report Center

Once you have installed the DocAve Report Service, you need to configure several settings to leverage the features and alerts available. The sections below provide an overview of the installations and basic settings.

4.1.1 Installation

DocAve Reporting Service must be installed and configured with the manager installation package prior to using the features under Report Center. In addition, SQL Reporting Services is required to export any of the data from the Report Center graphs and tables. For the information about how to install report service, please refer to DocAve Manager Installation section.

In order to leverage real-time monitoring of your SharePoint infrastructure, a report center agent must be installed on all servers that you require data from. For instance, an agent type can be deployed on the SharePoint Index Server to obtain data regarding the SharePoint indexing status.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Also, in this section, DocAve Report Center solution, the one which determines the use of DocAve Report Center site template in SharePoint, is segmented for the customizable deployment in the new feature "DocAve Solution Manager". Such design aims to accelerate your installation and provide you with more flexibility. Please refer to DocAve Solution Manager for the detailed deployment steps.

4.1.1.1 Installation

To ensure the Report Center module is installed, follow the steps below:

(4-1) Installation (By Agent Configuration Tool)

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on the Agent machine.
2	Under the *Report Center* tab verify that the Report Center option is selected. There are two options under the Report Center check-box. • Enable all fields in IIS log for Download Ranking and Failed Login Attempts : If you enable this option, all the fields of Extended logging options in IIS log will be selected automatically. If you disable this option, the settings in IIS log will be flipped back to the state before your last change. • Add Silverlight MIME Type for Report Center web part : If you enable this option, the MIME type will be added automatically. ***Note:** Administrator or Auditor has to be enabled so that user can load the farms in Infrastructure Reports or Usage Analytics. ***Note:** The profiles saved in Infrastructure Reports or Usage Analytics are accessible, updatable, and operable with Administrator or Auditor enabled.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(4-2) Installation (By Agent Monitor)

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5>Agent Monitor>Configure>Agent Type*.
2	Under the *Report Center* tab verify that the Report Center option is selected. ***Note:** Administrator or Auditor has to be enabled so that the user can load the farms in Infrastructure Reports or Usage Analytics. ***Note:** The profiles saved in Infrastructure Reports or Usage Analytics are still accessible, updatable, and operable with Administrator or Auditor deleted.
3	Click **Save** to restart the Agent services.

4.1.1.2 Uninstallation

To uninstall the Report Center module, follow the steps below:

(4-3) Un-installation (By Agent Configuration Tool)

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Report Center* tab, uncheck the Report Center option.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

(4-4) Un-installation (By Agent Monitor)

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5>Agent Monitor>Configure>Agent Type*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Under the *Report Center* tab, uncheck the Report Center option.
3	Click **Save** to restart the Agent services.

This will remove the Report Center capabilities from this agent.

4.1.2 Collectors

DocAve Report Center leverages two basic collectors to extract data for the pre-generated reports. The Performance Collector allows you to pull data regarding your CPU and Memory usage for pre-selected machines, while the SharePoint collector obtains other information regarding usage, audit data, and other settings. These collectors are imperative for many of the Report Center components and must be configured correctly before any data can be gathered.

4.1.2.1 SharePoint Collector

The SharePoint Collector provides the fundamental data for several features in the Report Center. It collects the number of the checked-out documents, loading time data, storage size and data distributed both in the database and the external device for the purpose of information display, report exporting, email notification and even prediction. By default, it collects such information at midnight everyday according to your Control Service's time zone and finishes within one hour afterwards. You can also set up the collection time and interval. To do so, follow the configuration steps below:

(4-5) SharePoint Collector

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Report Center* > *Report Manager* > *Collector* > *SharePoint Collector*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td colspan="2">Setup the collection time, interval, and finish time for the features below.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Storage Trends Collector</td><td>Follow the steps below for the configuration:
Select the time you want to run the SharePoint collector job at from the corresponding drop-down box.
Choose an interval at which you want to run the SharePoint collector job.
Select the finish time of the collection by hour or day. It will automatically stop the data collection duly in case that the collection of the over-sized data takes too much time.
Click Save to keep the configuration and enable the immediate collection.
Click Collect Data Now if you want to collect the data immediately. Note if you collect the data at once, your server will slow down during the collecting.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Load Times for Site Collections Collector</td><td>Follow the steps below for the configuration:
Select an interval you want to run the collector job at.
If you want to set up or change the scopes, you can click Change Scopes and select the site collection you want to collect by checking the corresponding check-box.
Click Save to save the configuration.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Check Out Documents	Follow the steps below for the configuration: 1. Select the time when you want to run the SharePoint collector job from the corresponding drop-down box. 2. Select an interval you want to run the collector job at. 3. Select a finish time for your data collection either by day or hour. It will automatically stop the data collection duly in case that the collection of the over-sized data takes too much time. 4. Select the collection scope by clicking **Change Scopes**. Select the scope profiles in the pop-up emerged afterwards. Notice that the profile has to be pre-configured in Check Out Documents. For the detailed information, please refer to section Check Out Documents. 5. Click **Save** to keep the configuration and enable the immediate collection. 6. Click **Collect Data Now** if you want to collect the data immediately.
3	If you select multiple collection features, you can sequence the priority of the collectors by selecting the number in the corresponding drop-down list. By default, the priorities will be listed in accordance with the sequence of your selection above. Notice that if you run the collection at once, it might slow down your server.	
4	You can also specify the maximum number of the concurrent running collectors in the corresponding field.	
5	After you set up the setting for the SharePoint collector, the collector job will run at the specific time automatically. ***Note:** Three scheduled collectors of Storage Trends, as well as Check Document automatically function by schedule if they didn't collect data within the past 24 hours. Otherwise the schedule will be abandoned.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Navigate to Job Monitor to check on the collector job detail of Storage Trends, and Check Out Documents. Click View detailed report, then Detail and select the farm, its web application, content database, site collection and even the library to view the corresponding results.

4.1.2.2 Performance Collector

The Performance Collector collects your system data by three collectors: CPU & Memory, Logical Disk, and Networking. The collected data are used for the purpose of diagram display, report export, email notification, and even prediction. Notice that collectors of the same kind cannot co-exist. Please check the steps below for the detailed configuration.

(4-6) Performance Collector

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Report Center > Report Manager > Collector > Performance Collector.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click New and enter a profile name into the provided field.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3</td><td colspan="2">Select the object you want to collect in the corresponding drop-down list.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	CPU & Memory	The CPU & Memory is used to collect the usage of the current CPU and memory (RAM) for the machines which installed the DocAve Manager and the Report Center Agent. 1. Select CPU & Memory option from the drop-down box, and then you can select what data, the DocAve or/and Others, you want to collect checking the corresponding check-box. By DocAve, it fixates on the collection of CPU & Memory on the machine that DocAve Manager is installed on; while by others, it indicates that the collector goes for the machine with DocAve Agents. 2. Select the computer whose CPU & Memory usage you want to collect. You can check the Select All option to select all computers. 3. Enter a number into the Sample Rate box, and then select unit--Second, Minute, Hour, or Day from the drop-down box to setup the collection frequency. 4. Its collector profile is used in datasheet export and email notification.
	Logical Disk	The Logical Disk is used to collect the usage of the DocAve Logical Devices. 1. Enter a number into the Sample Rate box, and then select unit: Hour, and Day, from the drop-down box to setup the collection frequency. 2. Its collector profile is used in the email notifications, charts, predication and datasheet export in DocAve Report\Disk Space Monitor.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	NetWorking	The Networking is used to collect the networking usage of the machine installed on the Report Center Agent. 1. Select the Networking option from the drop-down box. 2. Select the computer whose Networking usage you want to collect. You can check the **Select All** option to select all computers. 3. Enter a number into the Sample Rate box, and then select unit: Second, Minute, Hour, and Day from the drop-down box to setup the collection frequency. 4. Its collector profile is especially used in email notifications.
4	Click **Save** to save the profile. The information of the profile is listed in the Performance Counters area. You can click the Edit icon to edit it, and the Delete icon to delete it.	

4.1.3 Pruning

Pruning Policy in Report Center specifies the rules to remove the action/monitoring data on demand or periodically. It provides two pruning modules: Activity History and Monitoring.

4.1.3.1 Activity History Pruning

Activity History Pruning delivers a rule to move the action data from DocAve system to a local/ UNC path or delete it simply and flexibly. It therefore supports restoring the data in the form of log. Follow the steps below to configure an Activity History Pruning rule:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(4-7) Activity History Pruning

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Report Center* > *Report Manager* > *Pruning* > *Activity History Pruning*
2	Click **New** and enter a Rule Name into the corresponding field.
3	Configure the time trigger of data-pruning by selecting the options below Report to Act On. When you run the pruning rule, the job reports will be checked; if the time generating the report is coincident with the time you specified, the corresponding data will be moved or deleted duly. There are three options: All data older than...; All data before...; and...of Data before....
4	Configure a log report under the Advanced Report Selection.
5	Click the *Object* tab. Enter the object name in the corresponding field, and click on the > to add it into Selected Modules field. You can also remove the selected object by clicking <.
6	Click the *User* tab to select the user to get the related report.
7	Enter the Username in Domain\Username format or just by just user-name and click >. The users can also remove the selected one by clicking <.
8	Click the *Action* tab.
9	All of the actions will be displayed in the left area. Select and add the actions by clicking >, or click < to remove the ones you selected.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">Select action(s) to perform on the specific data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Delete Data</td><td>It will delete the corresponding data after running the rule.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Move Data</td><td>It will move the appropriate data to a specific location.

Click Configure, and a pop-up window will appear. There are two types of devices: Local and UNC.

• Local : To specify a path where you want to save the report.
• UNC : To specify a network path where you want to save the report to. You need to input the Username in Domain\Username format and the Password to set up access to the path that data has to be written to and stored to.

Click Save to save the configuration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">Under the Schedule Interval, you can specify an interval running this plan and getting the report. Select a start time by clicking calendar icon, and then enter an integer number in the input field and select an interval. Select an interval from the drop-down box. The choices are: Only Once; Hour; Day; Week; and Month.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save the rule, it will be listed on the right column.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select the plan you want at the right column, and click Apply to activate this plan on schedule or click Run now to run this plan immediately. The progress bar in the bottom right corner visualizes the pruning progress.

Disable button can be clicked on when you decide to cancel the schedule.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Pruning Log

The Pruning Log provides a list of all the pruned log reports based on the criteria set in Activity History pruning. The log provides you with the Log ID, Rule Name, the Result, the number of rows pruned, and the time which the information was pruned. You can restore the data by clicking the corresponding **Restore** button. Also, by clicking the icon, you can delete the pruning logs.

4.1.3.2 Monitoring Pruning

Monitoring Pruning provides a rule to delete the data from the Report database completely on demand or periodically. It therefore does not support the restore of the data. This function impacts the features such as CPU/Memory Usage, Networking, Storage Trends, User Storage Size, Performance Monitoring, Disk Space Monitoring, and Migration Usage Report. Check the following steps to set up one Monitoring Pruning rule:

(4-8) Monitoring Pruning

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Report Center > Report Manager > Pruning > Monitoring Pruning*
2	Click **New** and enter a Rule Name into the corresponding field.
3	Configure the time trigger of data-pruning by selecting the options below Report to Act On When you run the pruning rule, the job reports will be checked; if the time generating the report is coincident with the time you specified, the corresponding data will be deleted duly. There are three options: All data older than...; All data before...; and...of Data before....
4	Under the Schedule Interval, you can specify an interval running this plan and getting the report. Select a start time by clicking calendar icon, and then enter an integer number in the input field and select an interval. Select an interval from the drop-down box. The choices are: Only Once; Hour; Day; Week; and Month.
5	Click **Save** to save the rule, it will list on the right column.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select the plan you want at the right column, and click **Apply** to activate this plan on schedule or click **Run now** to run this plan immediately. **Disable** button can be clicked on when you decide to cancel this schedule.

Pruning Log

The Pruning Log provides a list of all the pruned log reports based on the criteria set in Monitoring pruning. The log provides you with the Log ID, Rule Name, the Result, the number of rows pruned, and the time when the information was pruned.

4.1.4 E-mail Notification

This function monitors various objects as displayed in DocAve Report Center. With specific rules set within, it sends the alert email to the users when the threshold or data trend values in the rules are exceeded.

4.1.4.1 E-mail Notification Rules

There are two types of alerts for an E-mail notification: Common alert and predicted alert. The common alert will send the alert while the collected samples exceed the critical value you set up; the predicted alert will send the alert if DocAve predicts the collected samples displays a trend that will exceed the critical value in the near future.

***Note:** E-mail Notification gathers sample data from the SharePoint Collector. If you do not set up the Collector, email notifications cannot be triggered.

The following is a list of the DocAve features which have the E-mail Notification feature, and the necessary corresponding settings of the E-mail Notification and the Collector.

(4-9) Email Notification Rule

Function	Collector Settings	Common Alert	Predicted Alert
DocAve Reporting			
Topology	Performance Collector\Networking	Network Bandwidth	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Function	Collector Settings	Common Alert	Predicted Alert
Disk Space Monitoring	Performance Collector\Logical Disk	Disk Space Monitoring	Prediction\Disk Space Usage
Performance Monitoring	Performance Collector\CPU & Memory	CPU and Memory Monitoring	
Migration Usage Report	Setup the interval as every day	Migration Usage	Predication\Migration Usage
Infrastructure			
CPU & Memory Usage	Performance Collector\CPU & Memory	CPU and Memory Monitoring	
Networking	Performance Collector\Networking	Networking	
Storage Trends	SharePoint Collector	SharePoint Storage	Predication\Storage Trends
Load Time for Site Collections	SharePoint Collector	Load Time for Site Collections	
Check Out Documents	SharePoint Collector	Check Out Documents	
Usage Analytics			
Page Traffic	Setup the interval as every day	SharePoint Usage\Hits	
Site Activity and Usage	Setup the interval as every day	SharePoint Usage\Site Activity and Usage	
Most Active Users	Setup the interval as every day	SharePoint Usage\Most Active Users	
User Storage Size	Setup the interval as every day	SharePoint Storage\Site Collection Level	
Workflow Status	Setup the interval as every day	Workflow Status	
Failed Login Attempts	Setup the interval as every hour	Failed Login Attempts	

4.1.5 Controller

The Controller works with the DocAve Report Center in generating reports for the front-end users and administrators.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.1.5.1 Web Part Controller

The Web Part Controller, focusing on the user's privacy, determines the scope and the transparency of the profiles you specify in Report Center to the end user in the web part. It includes two display methods: You can either report on the site collection at the parts reside on or limit the report for the profiles with security trimming defined.

For the first method, it is designed to only display the site collection and all the levels beneath. So with this method enabled:

- *Search Usage and Most Active User* : These functions which only support the levels higher than site collection are unavailable in the web part.
- *Storage Trends, Site Usage and User Storage Size* : These functions which support the levels down to the site collection only display the site collection level in the web part.
- *Last Accessed Time, Check Out Document, Site Activity and Usage as well as Page Traffic* : These functions which support the levels up to the site collection display a tree covering the site collection and all the nodes hereunder.
- *SharePoint Topology, SharePoint Services, CPU and Usage, as well as Net Working Usage* : These functions without profiles are displayed in a real-time way in the Web part.

For the second method, it is designed to only display the scope profiles to the end users predefined in DocAve Report Center within the web parts. With this method enabled, a centralized management center incurs to allow the users to enable, disable, or temporally disable the scope profiles set in Site Search, Storage Trends, Site Active and Usage, plus User Storage Trending. This management center also provides the links to the scope profiles.

4.1.6 Node Limit Configuration

If you want to change the number of nodes which can be selected in the Farm tree, you can configure the value of the corresponding attribute in the configuration file zeus-job-report-center.properties (Path: \AvePoint\DocAve5\Manager\ZeusJob\etc\)

Example:

For the features used by the Most Active Users, by default, the value of node limit is 3. If you want to select, for example, 5 nodes on the tree, you can find the attribute Zeus.RC.Node.Count.Limit.Most.Active.User, and change the value from 3 to 5. For the node limitation, the minimum number is 1 and the maximum number is the default number in the product, which is 10.

***Note:** After configuration, you will need to restart any applicable jobs in order for the change to take effect.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.2 SharePoint Infrastructure

Report Center's SharePoint Infrastructure Reporting consists of two categories: Real-time Monitoring and Infrastructure Reports. Real-time monitoring allows you to view live performance data regarding your SharePoint deployment, while Infrastructure Reports assists in management and long-term planning of your data.

4.2.1 Real-Time Monitoring

Real-time Monitoring encompasses many of the products that were introduced in the former DocAve Discovery module. You can use this module to monitor your SharePoint topology, server performance, and other health and status information.

4.2.1.1 SharePoint Topology

The SharePoint Topology is a role-based function that displays all the server names and number in one of your SharePoint farms with an intuitive topology. You can then view more information on a particular server on your farm by clicking the corresponding icons.

To display the SharePoint Topology, you need to first select a farm in the Scope area, and then click **OK**, the SharePoint Topology of the specific farm will be displayed. Click Detail to expand the page at the bottom to check on the service and status on the database server displayed above. Furthermore, the services displayed in the table cover a more comprehensive scope than the one in Central Admin because the corresponding data obtained in this feature is from SharePoint API.

You can also print and save this image by clicking the corresponding icon.

4.2.1.2 SharePoint Services

SharePoint Services allows you to view the most currently active SharePoint Servers and SharePoint services and their status. The obvious difference between Detail in SharePoint Topology and SharePoint Services is that the latter can display the information on multiple farms.

To display the SharePoint Services, you need to select a farm in the Scope area, and click **Add** to add the farm underneath. Click **OK**, the SharePoint Services of the specific farm(s) will be displayed. The farm name in under Services provides the link to SharePoint Topology while the server name in the list enables the user to jump to CPU/Memory Usage.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet (which supports PDF, CSV, MHTML,TIF, XLS, and XML.) by clicking the corresponding icon. Also, you can click the farm name to navigate to SharePoint Topology.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.2.1.3 CPU/Memory Usage

The CPU/Memory Usage provides a real time monitor on the CPU and memory usage of the host machine where DocAve agent locates in.

To display the CPU and Memory usage, you need to select a host machine in the Scope area, and click **Add** to add the farm underneath. Click **OK**, the CPU and Memory usage of the specific host machine(s) will be displayed. Click Detail to open another page to get and sort the detailed information in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information. Also, you can click the corresponding button to select manual mode or automatic mode to fresh the monitoring. By selecting automatic, you have to specify the interval at 5 seconds (default), 10 seconds, 20 seconds, and 30 seconds. However, the automatic update is not recommended as it will slow down the process speed of the host machine.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet (which supports PDF, CSV, MHTML,TIF, XLS, and XML.) by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the update frequency and the email notification in the Settings area. Notice what the datasheet reflects are the values during a period of time, which require the user to set the performance collector in advance.

***Note:** It only monitors the machines which installs the DocAve Agent and enables the Report Center Type.

4.2.1.4 Networking

Networking Real-time Monitoring provides a real time monitor on the networking usage (both wired and wireless) of SharePoint services.

To display the networking usage, you need to select a host machine in the Scope area, and click **Add** to add the farm underneath. Click **OK**, the networking usage of the specific host machine(s) will be displayed. Click **Detail** to open another page to get and sort detailed information in the list.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the update frequency and the email notification in the Settings window. Notice what the report and datasheet reflect are the values during a period of time, which require the user to set the performance collector in advance.

4.2.1.5 SharePoint Search Service

The SharePoint Search Service monitoring provides a real time monitor on the crawling speed of the SharePoint SSP as well as the detailed information about the SSP such as content source status and the crawling settings. You can add several SSPs of different farm to monitor at the same time.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

You can switch the SSP service in the drop-down list under the graph; with the hyperlink clicked in the tables, you can jump to the corresponding page in the Service Administration and edit the corresponding rules.

Clicking the corresponding icon, you can print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet as well as change the update frequency and the email notification in the Settings window.

4.2.1.6 Farm Explorer

The Farm Explorer allows you to check SharePoint components and structures by browsing the site structure in the right panel as well as using Domain, Server Name, IP address, and Site Collection filters. First set your Scope filters as described below and then click **Search** to narrow the explored region of your SharePoint environment. This will display the desired search results in the Farm Browser on the right-hand side of the screen. Also, with the nodes selected, you could click Generate Report below to obtain the site structure and global information. Please refer to the explanation for each option as follows:

Inclusion and Exclusion usage options:

(4-10) Inclusion And Exclusion Usage Options

Step	Action
1	Input the rules for searching in a given scope (e.g. domain), or just search the corresponding content (e.g. Site Collection).
2	When you are performing a basic search, use the logic indicators as follows: • + : This represents a rule for objects to be "included" • - : This represents a rule for objects to be "excluded" You can change these by clicking on the icon.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">After entering a valid rule, you can add additional rules using the Add button. Each rule can be removed using the Delete button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>(+) and (+)</td><td>This serves as an “and” logic, all search results listed will include filter1 or filter2.</td></tr>
<tr><td>(-) and (-)</td><td>This serves as an “and” logic, all search results listed will exclude filter1 and exclude filter2.</td></tr>
<tr><td>(+) and (-)</td><td>This serves as an “and” logic, all search results listed will include filter1 and exclude filter2.</td></tr>
</table>

Domain Search Filter

To search a server or site rules within a certain domain, select the checkbox next to Domain Filter and enter the domain name(s) to search. Inclusion and Exclusion can also be used; Domain Search Filter is an optional field.

***Note:** Wildcard operator * can also be used for searching. This is helpful for finding content let’s say you forgot a word or two, but you remember the gist, as in [*point].

You can also use the wildcard character without searching for anything specific, as in this phrase search: [*].

This character applies to all search options.

Server Name Filter and IP Address Filter

You must select one of the two options as your search criteria.

If you would like to search content using server name as part of the condition, please select the radio box for the Server Name Filter then define rule(s) for the search.

Similarly, select the radio box for the IP Address Filter, then define rule(s) for the IP address search.

Site Collection Filter

This is an optional search field, if you would like to search for Site Collections with specific conditions, you must select the check-box for the Site collection Filter and define rule(s) for your

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

search. You must also set Inclusions and Exclusions in the Site Collection filter. By specifying multiple Inclusions and/or Exclusions in the Site Collection filter, the search results will be more accurate. After specifying the search conditions, click **Search**, the desired results will be displayed in the Farm Browser on the right-hand side of the screen.

4.2.1.7 Environment Search

Environment Search allows you to check on the services and their statuses on the farm that DocAve Agent is installed on. Follow the steps below for the detailed configuration:

(4-11) Setting Up Search Rules

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Report Center > SharePoint Infrastructure -> Real-time Monitoring > Environment Search.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td colspan="2">Select Domain Mode, IPV4 Range, or Manual Mode to search for the available servers.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Domain	In the space provided, enter the Domain Name, Username and Password. You can also enable a Filter using the corresponding check-box. Consequently, you have to specify the type, condition, and the value in the corresponding drop-down list when the pop-up emerges. For multiple filters, you can click the Add icon. Or you can go for the Delete icon for decreasing the filter number. Click **Search**. The following information will be displayed in the table on the right: • *Host Name* : The name of the agent. • *Username and Password* : Here you may enter more specific username and password information if you have not been granted enough permission to view the agent information in the search results based on the previous entry. • *OS* : This field will display detailed information on the Operating System running on the agent. ***Note:** Ensure the domain you searched for and the DocAve server can communicate with each other.
	IPV4 Range	Enter a valid IP Range, Domain Name\User Name, and Password in the fields provided. Click **Add**. The table on the right will be populated with results from your search. ***Note:** Ensure the domain you searched for and the DocAve server can communicate with each other.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Manual Mode	This mode enables the user to perform remote installation or uninstallation of DocAve agents directly and accurately in accordance with the criteria input. Enter Host Name (IP address also supported), Username, and Password in the fields provided. To search for multiple servers, please repeat configuring the mapping in hosts file and entering the criteria mentioned above, and click icon to add. On the contrast, you can delete the targeted server by clicking icon. Click **Scan** to search for the available servers. You can also click **Save** to save the information for your configuration next time. ***Note:** IPV6 is supported in Manual Mode. ***Note:** Ensure the domain you searched for and the DocAve server can communicate with each other.
3	Click icon to populate a new line below.	
4	Click icon to delete the Agent Host from the search scope.	
5	Use the check-box next to each level to include in the agent search plan.	
6	Your current search results will be saved by clicking **Save**. They will remain on the screen when you reopen this layout page.	
7	Click **Scan** to generate a tree of all agents.	
8	The icon indicates that a DocAve agent has been installed on this instance.	
9	Hover over the Server Name and it will highlight this server.Click on Service Status to check on the service status running on this server.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** Once all of the agents have been scanned the information will be saved to a database. Refresh the trees as necessary to ensure the most updated information.

4.2.2 Infrastructure Reports

You can use Infrastructure Reports to monitor your SharePoint deployment's settings, configurations, storage usage, and other information over time. The data can then be used to plan your SharePoint deployments future infrastructure needs.

4.2.2.1 Difference Reports

Difference Reports compares the differences among the site collections you select in the Scope area.

To compare the differences, you must first create a scope profile in the Scope area first. Click the Farm name to expand the tree, and load the tree to the site collection level. Select the site collections you want to compare by checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK** to view the difference report. All the differences will be highlighted by clicking the Show Difference button. Also, you could hide the difference by clicking the corresponding icon in the Action panel. The Copy to Clipboard button allows the user to copy and paste the content in the page to the txt files or word pads.

4.2.2.2 Storage Trends

Storage Trends displays the occupied space size of the selected farms, web applications, content databases, and site collections as specified by the scope selected and the collectors you have configured for your environment. It also analyzes the trend of the occupied space size. You can also view a predictive storage trend graph by click the corresponding icon in Actions to check on the trend by the curve lines. By selecting farms or web applications, you can check their space sizes in the histogram above; while selecting content databases or site collections it provides more details:

- *Site Collection* : In this section, users will view the following statistics directly from GUI: Allocation of the sites, allocation by Type (by Size), allocation of the contents, and the summary. For the allocation of the sites, you can click on the bar to check the detailed information. Finally, to continue to check the information on other site collections you selected, make a switch in the Site Collection drop-down list.
- *Content Database* : In this section, users will view the following statistics directly from GUI: allocation of site collections, allocation by site count, allocation of content database files, allocation by site occupancy and summary. Hoving over the site URL in the charts, you can check its quota of the content database in percentage. Finally, to

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

change the current content database in view, please select the alteration in the corresponding drop-down list.

You can change the display content on Actions window. There are three types of trends you can view: Storage Trends, Allocation of Sites, and Allocation of Contents. Provided that you have enough data (normally it is data of at least three days) to support the predication of the selected data, you can click Predict in the right panel to start the analysis. Click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the libraries under the site collection or the site collections under the database in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information. You can also click **Search** to select the type, input the value and click OK in the pop-up appears afterwards to find out the content you want to view. This search supports multiple criteria and case sensitive.

With the second method in Web Part Controller enabled, the security trimming is available to the end user by the indication of button **Next** at the right bottom after saving the scope profile. Click it and navigate to the Security Trimming Page. Three options are available:

- *Disabled* : This is the default option. With the URL field unavailable to the user, it indicates that the scope file is not accessible in any web parts.
- *Enabled* : As the name suggests, this button enables the user to input the URL(s) of the web part which the scope is visible within. But notice that the URL is limited to the absolute URL, for example, http://server name/sites/test is good enough, but http://server name/sites/test/default/aspx is off limits. Also, the user has to enter the username and check it, or simply give a wildcard symbolizing the all users can have access to this profile.
- *Temporarily Disabled* : When clicking this button, the configuration is saved but not used. When the user wants to use the profiles, he could simply click **Enable** and the configuration is in the field already. While clicking **Disable**, the configurations automatically disappear.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the update frequency, axis rules and the email notification in the Settings area.

***Note:** For the editable starting time as well as the ending time in all the features in Report Center, their default value is 0:00. Also, the scope profiles in Report Center are sequenced alphabetically.

4.2.2.3 SharePoint Alerts

SharePoint Alerts displays the number of the alerts for the specified Farm/ Web Application/ Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library.

To display the SharePoint Alerts number for a specific user, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Select the farm from the drop-down box first, and then click the plus icon to expand the tree, the tree can be loaded to the selected level. Select the content you want to

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

view by checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK**, it will skip to the *User* tab, enter the user(s) whose alert number you want to view, and click **Save** to save the configuration. If you want to view all users' alert, you can select the Include all users option and then click **OK** to finish the settings. Click Detail to open another page to detailed information on the alert such as navigating to the location by clicking on the URL in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information. You can also click **Search** to find out the content you want to view. By default, DocAve v5 will set an average number of the alerts displayed as a dotted line in the histogram for your consideration. You can remove this line by unchecking Show Average in Action. Also, you can sort the bars in the histogram by selecting the value in the corresponding drop-down list of Graph Setting for a change.

You can print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the axis rules in the Settings area.

4.2.2.4 Load Times for Site Collections

Load Times for Site Collections displays the loading latency for the site collections you select in the Scope area, and it also lists the detailed information on the site collections in the Details area.

To display the load time for specific site collections, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Select the site collection(s) you want to view by checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK** to finish the settings.

***Note:** For the site collections listed in the scope, you must configure it in the Report Manager first. Please refer to SharePoint Collector for more information.

You can also click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the users activities in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the update frequency, axis rules and the email notification(it will send an alert when average load time for the scope is over the set value) in the Settings area.

4.2.2.5 Check Out Documents

Check Out Documents Reports reports on the number of the documents checked out, and allows you to select the corresponding scope from the web application level down to the list\library level.

To configure such profile, please navigate to Scope, click **New** to enter the profile name, expand the tree to select the target s, and click **Save**. Then navigate to SharePoint Collector to collect the data. Finally, go back to click **OK** to form the informative bars in the histogram. Only the number of the check out documents is listed here as displaying their name individually may cause the performance problem.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

You can then turn to Action, Settings and Email Notification for the possible detailed edition.

***Note:** You have to collect the data in the scope in SharePoint Collector to update the information. For the detailed collection configuration, please refer to SharePoint Collector.

4.2.2.6 Last Accessed Time

Last Accessed Time Reports provide you with a list of users and their last accessed times at a site or site collection level. You must have Auditor enabled on the selected site or site collection for this report to work.

To configure the corresponding scope, click Scope, click **New** to enter the profile name, expand the tree to select the target nodes (Notice that when a site collection is selected, you cannot uncheck its site whatsoever), and click **Save** as well as **OK** to form the informative list. This list will provide you with such information: Site collection\Site URL, title, last accessed time and last accessed by. Also, along with the site collection selected, the information on its sub sites will be listed below as well.

You can turn to Action and Settings for the possible detailed editions.

4.3 Usage Analytics

You can use SharePoint Audit data to run SharePoint Usage Analytics on your deployment. The Report Center allows you to see how users are actively using SharePoint (site usage and activity) and how users are accessing the data / SharePoint deployment (user activity / content contributions).

***Note:** Some features of this module, such as Site Usage, Site Activity and Usage, Page Traffic, and Most Active Users, cannot work on the environment without the Auditor feature.

4.3.1 System Usage

You can view the SharePoint Usage Analytics in this section.

4.3.1.1 Site Usage

Site Usage Reports analyze the site usage at the site collection level. In a specific site collection, you can view the site which is the top hit site/page/user for a specific time. By default, it will list the top 10 hit sites/pages/users/lists/items. You can click Edit icon to modify the displayed number in the Settings window.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

With the second method in Web Part Controller enabled, the security trimming is available to the end user by the indication of button **Next** at the right bottom after saving the scope profile. Click it and navigate to the Security Trimming Page. Three options are available:

- *Disabled* : This is the default option. With the URL field unavailable to the user, it indicates that the scope file is not accessible in any web parts.
- *Enabled* : As the name suggests, this button enables the user to input the URL(s) of the web part which the scope is visible within. But notice that the URL is limited to the absolute URL (E.g. http://server name/sites/test is good enough, but http://server name/sites/test/default/aspx is off limits). Also, the user has to enter the username and check it, or simply give a wildcard symbolizing the all users can have access to this profile.
- *Temporarily Disabled* : When clicking this button, the configuration is saved but not used. When the user wants to use the profiles, he could simply click **Enable** and the configuration is in the field already. While clicking **Disable**, the configurations automatically disappear.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon.

To display the site usage, you need to set up the scope profile in the Scope area first. Click the Farm name to expand the tree, and load the tree to the site collection level. Select the site collection you want to view checking the corresponding check-box, ensure they have already been audited and the audit data has been retrieved, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK** to view the usage report. When checking the report, you can click on the URL in the table to log on the corresponding site/page/lists/items.

4.3.1.2 Search Usage

This feature is designed to display the terms as well as the times searched by the users within the search scopes. You can view the hits for the search term/scope and search times in the histogram and the other information such as occurrences in the detail list.

To display the search usage, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Select the Farm you want to analyze from the drop-down box, and then click **OK** to view the activity report. By default, what the bars display in the histogram is the number of the searched terms in 10 days. Click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the search terms in the list.To view the search scope, you can click the corresponding radio button in Action and the histogram will be switched automatically. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information. Click **Advanced Search** (only available when Search Terms is selected in Action) to setup a filter rule to filter some specific search scopes for the view.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the axis rules in the Settings area.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.3.1.3 Site Activity and Usage

Site Activity and Usage Reports analyze the activity, usage and number of unique visitors of site collections down to lists/libraries in a specific time range. By collecting the audited data within your specified scope, you can view the number of the corresponding events in a specified time range. By defaults, such events are update, delete and view; you can edit the event rule in the Setting window.

To display the site activities, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Click the Farm name to expand the tree, and load the tree down at the list level. Select the node you want to view checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK** to view the activity or unique visitor report.

Provided you have enormous items, documents, and even versions under certain lists, DocAve also enables you to check on the usage and actions on them accurately and speedily. You can directly input the URL and click Add or Delete icon to target multiple of them, also you can input wildcard in this format:https://www.avepoint.com/sites/site1/list1/*.docx. With the URLs specified, you can click **Save** and then **OK** to check on the histogram. By default, the maximum number of the URL is 6.The corresponding bars symbolize how many actions are taken on or how many unique visitors checks on the item/document/versions.

With the second method in Web Part Controller enabled, the security trimming is available to the end user by the indication of button **Next** at the right bottom after saving the scope profile. Click it and navigate to the Security Trimming Page. Three options are available:

- *Disabled* : This is the default option. With the URL field unavailable to the user, it indicates that the scope file is not accessible in any web parts.
- *Enabled* : As the name suggests, this button enables the user to input the URL(s) of the web part which the scope is visible within. But notice that the URL is limited to the absolute URL, for example, http://server name/sites/test is good enough, but http://server name/sites/test/default/aspx is off limits. Also, the user has to enter the username and check it, or simply give a wildcard symbolizing the all users can have access to this profile.
- *Temporarily Disabled* : When clicking this button, the configuration is saved but not used. When the user wants to use the profiles, he could simply click **Enable** and the configuration is in the field already. While clicking **Disable**, the configurations automatically disappear.

Click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the site activities in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the update frequency, axis rules, Event Rules and the email notification in the Settings area.

4.3.1.4 Page Traffic

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Page Traffic Reports analyzes the traffic level of the page at the site level. In the specific site, you can view the page traffic level, throughputs and the hits within a specific time. Notice that the traffic data has to be retrieved from Auditor first, which otherwise would fail your report.

To display the page traffic, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Click the Farm name to expand the tree, and load the tree to the site level. Select the site you want to view checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK** to view the activity report. Click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the site thoughputs in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the update frequency, axis rules, and the email notification in the Settings area.

4.3.1.5 Site Referrers

Site Referrers is used to record and analyze the referring frequency of hosts or pages within a specified scope to site collections or sites.

The primary data displayed in Site Referrers, different from other features, has to be configured in SharePoint with more complicated steps and specific notes.

***Note:** The site collections or hosts selected have to be limited within the same farm instead of multiple farms.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(4-12) Site Referrers Data Collection

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">1</td><td colspan="2">Enter to your SharePoint 2007/2010 SharePoint environment.</td></tr>
<tr><td>IF...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint 2007</td><td>Navigate to the SharePoint Central Administration--Operation--Log and Report Center--Usage Analysis Processing.

Select Enable Logging and Enable Usage Analysis Processing.

Navigate to an existing SSP--Office SharePoint Usage Reporting--Usage Reporting.

Select Enable Advanced Usage Analysis Processing.

Select the target site collection with its Reporting feature activated. (By default, it is activated.)

Add an link to the site collection in other web pages or farms. Click this link to access the site collection.

*Note: By the definition and limit of SharePoint, we suggest you keep the corresponding machine running in the whole 24 hours.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	SharePoint 2010	Navigate to Central Administration--Monitoring--Configure web analytics and health data Collection. Enable Health Data Collection, click health logging schedule, and set the schedule of each health analysis job as *Daily* ***Note:** You only have to set the schedule preconfigured as *Weekly* or *Monthly*. Select the target site collection with its Reporting feature activated. By default, it is activated. Add an link to the site collection in other web pages or farms. Click this link to access the site collection. ***Note:** By the definition and limit of SharePoint, we suggest you keep the corresponding machine running in the whole 24 hours.
2	Meanwhile, audit the report data in Auditor and retrieve it when checking in the Report Center.	

By collecting the audited data, you can view the referring status according to time or referring host within the specified scope during the period of 30 days.

To display the site referrers, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Enter a **Scope Name** and click the Farm name to expand the tree. Load the tree to the site level. Select the site you want to view by checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK** to view the report. There are two types of display methods for you to select: Total Referrals to Selected Sites and Referral Breakdown by Site. If you select the Total Referrals to Selected Sites, the X-axis can be changed between Time and Referring Page. If you select Referral Breakdown by Site, the X-axis can be changed between Time and Referring Host.

Click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the site referrers in the list. Click the icon next to Detail to customize the view for the detailed information. You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as changing the axis rules in the Settings area.

***Note:** In the SharePoint2010 environment, Referral by Breakdown By Site is not supported.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.3.2 User Usage

You can view the users usage analytics in this section.

4.3.2.1 Most Active Users

It is used to analyze the active users at web application level. You can view the number of each user's activity for a specific scope at a specific time. Notice that the data in this features has to be retrieved from Auditor first, which otherwise fails your report.

To display the users activities, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Click the Farm name to expand the tree, and load the tree to the web application level. Select the web application you want to view checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK,** it will skip to the *User* tab, uncheck the default option of Include all users, enter the user(s) whose activity you want to view, and click **Save** to save the configuration. Click **OK** to finish the settings. Click Detail to open another page to detailed information on the users activities in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information.Also, you can click each bar in the histogram to unfold the detail page.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the update frequency, axis rules, and the email notification in the Settings area.

4.3.2.2 User Storage Size

User Storage Size is designed to display the storage size down at site collection level/site level for certain users as well as the information on the content contributors to certain libraries, lists, and discussion boards.

To display the User Storage Size, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Click the Farm name to expand the tree, and load the tree to the site collection level/site level. Select the site collection or site you want to view, checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK,** it will skip to the *User* tab, enter the user(s) whose activity you want to view, and click **Save** to save the configuration. Click **OK** to finish the settings. If you want to display all the users, you can select the Include all users option and then click **OK** to finish the settings, and use the User to Exclude option to exclude some users.

With the second method in Web Part Controller enabled, the security trimming is available to the end user by the indication of button **Next** at the right bottom after saving the scope profile. Click it and navigate to the Security Trimming Page. Three options are available:

- *Disabled* : This is the default option. With the URL field unavailable to the user, it indicates that the scope file is not accessible in any web parts.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Enabled* : As the name suggests, this button enables the user to input the URL(s) of the web part which the scope is visible within. But notice that the URL is limited to the absolute URL, for example, http://server name/sites/test is good enough, but http://server name/sites/test/default/aspx is off limits. Also, the user has to enter the user-name and check it, or simply give a wildcard symbolizing the all users can have access to this profile.
- *Temporarily Disabled* : When clicking this button, the configuration is saved but not used. When the user wants to use the profiles, he could simply click **Enable** and the configuration is in the field already. While clicking **Disable**, the configurations automatically disappear.

After configuring the scope, you can view the user storage size in the User Storage. You can view the for the user who is contributing the most content to lists, libraries, discussion boards, by selecting the Content Contributor option. You can adjust the number of users displayed in this layout page by editing the number in Settings.

Click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the users activities in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the axis rules, and the email notification in the Settings area.

4.3.2.3 Workflow Status

Workflow Status is used to analyze the status for workflow. You can view each workflow status by workflow template/users/list or library within a specific scope, the average time to complete the workflow, the number of the workflow which is currently open, and the person who the workflow is assigned to.

To display the workflow status, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Click the plus icon to expand the tree, and then select the content you want to view by checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Save** to save the profile on the right. Click **OK**, it will skip to the *User* tab, enter the user(s) whose workflow status you want to view, and click **Save** to save the configuration. If you want to view all users' workflow status, you can select the Include all users option and then click **OK** to finish the settings. To view the average number of completed and in-doing workflow, you can select the corresponding option in Actions.

Click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the workflow in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information. You can also click **Search** to find out the content you want to view by specific column.Also you click on the specified URL to navigate to the corresponding pages.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the axis rules and the email notification(it will send an alert if the number of the open issue is over the set value) in the Settings area.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.3.2.4 Download Ranking

Download Ranking is used to list the most popular download files' information.

To display the download files information, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Click the plus icon to expand the tree down at sites, and then select the content you want to view by checking the corresponding check-box. Click **Save** to save the profile on the right, and then click **OK** to finish the scope setting. After the configuration, it will display the item download information under the specific site collection. Also, it provides an checkbox Top downloads for entire scope for users to check the most frequently downloaded items. To view the details of the files directly from this feature, you can click on the URL for each one directly in the table.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as change the list number and filter the items by changing the time in the Settings area.

***Note:** If some fields in IIS log are not enabled, a dialog box will pop up to prompt you to enable them manually in IIS log or in Agent Monitor.

4.3.2.5 Failed Login Attempts

Failed Login Attempts can be used to monitor failed login/access attempts to SharePoint and where these actions occurred. By using this feature, you can view the failed login attempts for the specified Farm/ Site.

To display the information on the failed login for specific farm/site, you need to setup the scope profile in the Scope area first. Select the granularity level from the drop-down box first, and then click the plus icon to expand the tree, the tree can be loaded to the selected level. Select the content you want to view checking the corresponding check-box. Click **Save** to save the profile on the right, and then click **OK** to finish the settings. All the failed login information will be listed for each Web Front End Server separately and you can select the web front end server in the corresponding drop-down list in Display section. You can filter the result by using the User and IP columns. Also you can click on the specified URL in the table to proceed with the login attempts.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as filter the items by changing the time and the email notification in the Settings area.

***Note:** If some fields in IIS log are not enabled, a dialog box will pop up to prompt you to enable them manually in IIS log or in Agent Monitor.

4.4 DocAve Reports

The DocAve Report Center allows you to view your DocAve system topology, CPU and Memory performance, and even plan for disk storage growth by trending backup data used by plans.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.4.1 System Monitor

This section is used to monitor the DocAve System setup from a System Hardware perspective.

4.4.1.1 Topology

The Topology report displays the Agent names with the service status. Hover over an agent image and click to open another page to get detailed information such as server name, performance monitoring, and memory. In the detailed page, you can view the status on each service in the topology under the *Service Monitor* tab and the average network throughput under the *Network Connection* tab, provided that these services are installed on different computers.

You can also save this image by clicking the corresponding export or print icon.

4.4.1.2 Performance Monitoring

Performance Monitoring monitors the resource usage of DocAve services such as the CPU usage and the Memory usage.

To display the DocAve system performance, you need to select a host machine in the Scope area, and click **Add** to add the farm underneath. Click **OK**, the performance of DocAve system of the specific machine will be displayed. Click Detail to open another page to detailed information of the host machine in the list. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon.

4.4.1.3 Disk Space Monitoring

Disk Space Monitoring monitors the storage usage of DocAve logical devices.

To monitor DocAve logical device usage, you must select a device which was recorded in Performance Collectors by checking the corresponding check-box in the Scope area, and then click **Save**, the profile will be listed on the right. Click **OK**, the usage of DocAve logical device will be displayed. Click Detail to open another page to detailed information on the logical device and its physical devices in the list.

This feature also supports prediction. You can click on the icon in Actions and check on the data trend. Also, you can switch the logical drive you are observing currently.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as the change update frequency, the axis rules, and the email notification in the Settings area.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

4.4.1.4 Job Performance Monitoring

Job Performance Monitoring monitors the job performance efficiency of four types of jobs performed in DocAve: Granular Backup, Granular Restore, Platform Backup and Platform Restore. The Average Backup Speed, Average Media Service/Agent Throughput and Average Media Service/Disk I/O Speed can be viewed by selecting the corresponding checkbox.

There are two types of display method for you to select: Column or Line. Click Detail to open detailed information about certain job performance. Click icon next to Detail to customize the view for the detailed information.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as the change update frequency and the axis rules in the Setting area.

4.4.2 Activity History

This section is used to monitor all the activities in the DocAve system.

4.4.2.1 DocAve System

DocAve System Activity History monitors all the activities except for the ones in Report Center in the DocAve system, such as creating a plan, deleting a profile, and other modifications.

You can click Detail to open another page to detailed information on the activities in the list. You can also search the specified activities by using the search feature. Click the icon next to Detail, you can customize the view for the detailed information.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as the change update frequency, and the axis rules in the Settings area.

4.4.3 License Usage Report

This section is used to display the license usage of DocAve functions.

4.4.3.1 Migration Usage Report

The Migration Usage Report displays your migration license usage and amount of the migration license currently utilized.

You can change the display method on Actions window. There are three types of charts you can select: Column, Line, or Area. Click the corresponding icon, it will be displayed under the Migration Usage area.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

You can also view a predictive migration graph by click the corresponding icon in Actions to check on the trend by the curve lines.

You can also print and export the report to screenshot or datasheet by clicking the corresponding icon as well as the change update frequency, the axis rules and the email notification in the Settings area.

4.5 Installing the SharePoint Webpart

The Report Center can be installed as a SharePoint Webpart.

In SharePoint, navigate to *Central Administration* > *Application Management*, and create a new site collection with the template as **DocAveReportCenter**. After creating the site collection successfully, you can go to the site collection, and monitor on your SharePoint platform and servers by using this site collection.

***Note:** The SharePoint environment you want to install the report center webpart on must have the Report Center DocAve Agent enabled.

4.6 Supported and Unsupported List of SharePoint 2010

The following list explains how Report Center supports SharePoint 2010.

(4-13) Supported and Unsupported List of Report Center (SharePoint 2010)

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
Real-Time Monitoring	SharePoint Topology	Supported	
	SharePoint Services	Supported	
	CPU/Memory Usage	Supported	
	Networking	Supported	
	SharePoint Search Services	Supported	
	Farm Explorer	Supported	
	Environment Search	Supported	

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
Infrastructure Reports	Difference Reports	Supported	
	Storage Trends	Supported	
	SharePoint Alerts	Supported	
	Load Time for Site Collection	Supported	
	Checkout Documents	Supported	
	Last Accessed Time	Supported	
System Usage	Site Usage	Supported	
	Search Usage	Supported	
	Site Activity and Usage	Supported	
	Page Traffic	Supported	
	Site Referrers	Partially Supported	Referral Breakdown by Site does not support SharePoint2010 agent.
User Usage	Most Active User	Supported	
	User Storage Size	Supported	
	Workflow Status	Supported	
	Download Ranking	Supported	
	Failed Login Attempts	Supported	
System Monitor	Topology	Supported	
	Performance Monitoring	Supported	
	Disk Space Monitoring	Supported	
	Job Performance Monitoring	Supported	
Activity History	DocAve System	Supported	
License Usage Report	Migration Usage Report	Supported	
Collector	SharePoint Collector	Supported	
	Performance Collector	Supported	
Pruning	Activity History	Supported	
	Monitoring Pruning	Supported	
Notification	E-mail Notification Rules	Supported	
Controller	Web Part Controller	Supported	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5. Data Protection

The Data Protection module contains the Automation Center, the Custom Backup Builder, High Availability, and the Restore Controller. The sections below will detail the functionality of each feature.

5.1 Automation Center

The Automation Center allows you to perform automated SharePoint backups on sites or site collections while still maintaining item level granularity on restore. It is the intelligent approach to protecting SharePoint content and optimizing storage resources. In order to utilize the Criticality Matrix, you only need to define the business importance of each site or site collection and allow DocAve to automatically track usage activity for the content within that site. By combining these two criteria, each site is automatically associated with its appropriate pre-defined backup template.

5.1.1 About the Criticality Matrix

The sections below will introduce you to the concept of Business Importance and the Criticality Matrix interface.

In order to use this feature, please navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *DocAve Solution Manager* to install the solution. For SharePoint 2007, it is *AvePoint_DefineImportancyArchiver.wsp* and for SharePoint 2010, it is *DocAve.SP2010.DefineImportancy.wsp*. You can refer to section DocAve Solution Manager for the installation steps.

5.1.1.1 Overview of the Criticality Matrix Concept

Each cell of the matrix represents a separate ranking and behind each cell lies your SharePoint content categorized by its appropriate ranking (more on enabling the content later). The ranking is composed of two values: the amount of activity / modifications your SharePoint site receives, and the Business Importance to your organization. This means that the most important content in your organization will be on the right of the matrix (i.e., payroll sites), while the least important sites will be categorized on the left (i.e., my-sites). Likewise, the most actively used content will appear on top of the matrix, while inactive or slightly used content will appear on the bottom.

Once the contents of your SharePoint farm have been categorized, you can then roll out templates to cover each cell of the matrix. This will allow you to concentrate your most frequent backups to only content that is either frequently modified or of high importance, and allows you

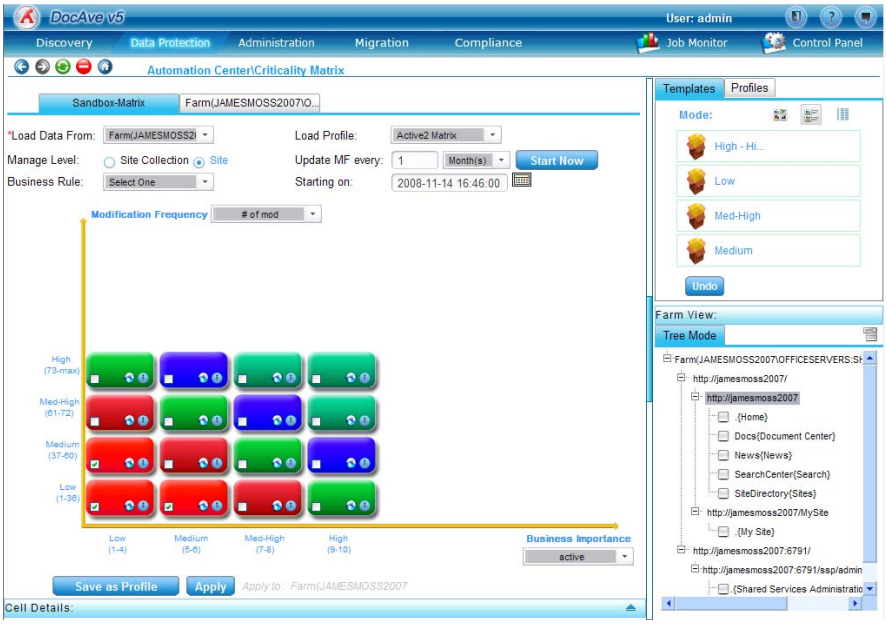
 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

to create infrequent backups for content that you know has very little business importance or activity.

For more information regarding effective SharePoint backup strategies, please read the additional literature available on the AvePoint website.

5.1.1.2 Overview of the Criticality Matrix Interface

The Criticality Matrix is shown in the figure below:



Along the top of the GUI you will notice several tabs. These tabs represent all of the SharePoint farms with registered DocAve Backup Agents installed, as well as an additional Sandbox - Matrix which represents the editable interface for setting up the Matrix of all farms. Using this interface, you can monitor the distribution and backup coverage for each farm and alter your backup strategies accordingly.

The principle areas defined above are as follows:

- *Settings* : The area at the top of the GUI allows you to configure all settings regarding matrix updates and management settings. These will be described further in later sections of this guide.
- *Criticality Matrix* : The center of the GUI shows the Criticality Matrix and all appropriate axis values / settings.
- *Templates / Profiles* : The area at the top right of the GUI represents the available backup templates and profiles available for applying to the matrix. The templates work on the cell-level of the matrix, while profiles represent all matrix settings, including applied templates.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Preview Tree* : The tree shown in the bottom right of the GUI will show the entire SharePoint farm, including details regarding which cell / template each node is covered by.

***Note:** The screenshot and description above represents the Sandbox - Matrix. The matrix for each farm is similar, except it is in read-only format.

5.1.1.3 Viewing the Contents of a Matrix Cell

After you have performed the steps in the sections below regarding activating content for the Criticality Matrix and assigning a Manage Level, DocAve will automatically assign the content to the appropriate cell. Depending on which managed level is used, you will either see a breakdown by site collection or by site.

To view the contents of an individual cell, click the Preview icon on the cell you wish to view. A pop-up window with a tree view of all contents with this ranking will be displayed. The tree will have the granularity level to which your Manage Level is set.

5.1.1.4 Viewing the Plan Details of a Matrix Cell

Each matrix cell can represent an individual backup template. Each template is configured as a backup plan, with drive locations, filter policies, schedules, etc. In order to view details regarding the template applied to a specific cell, click the icon . The Cell Details page provides all relevant information with regard to the activity and status of the Cell and its content. This includes the data configuration, previously run schedules and upcoming ones, and the status of the most recent jobs. To return to the matrix, simply click the title-bar or down-arrow in the window to collapse the Cell Details page.

5.1.1.5 Viewing SharePoint Coverage

On the farm view window in the lower-right corner of the Criticality Matrix screen, you are able to view all the sites / site collections organized as a tree. Click on the farm name to expand the content.

In addition to checkboxes (which will be described later), each site or site collection within the selected farm has a colored box representing its coverage level in the Criticality Matrix. The color of this box corresponds with the color of the template applied to that node's cell. By hovering over this colored box, you will be able to see the exact location in the matrix for this node, represented by coordinates of the form **Business Importance * Modification Frequency**.

***Note:** You must have applied templates and set the business importance for sites in your farm prior to viewing the information above.

If you wish to view a comprehensive table showing sites with their importance setting, last modification frequency, cell location, and template details, you can use the preview tree to select any

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

sites or site collections in your farm. After clicking the icon in the top right of the preview frame, a window with a downloadable report will open.

5.1.2 Configuring Content for Automation

In order to be automated backed up, sites must first be ranked according to their Business Importance. By default, all content within SharePoint is given a business importance of zero (0). This means that the DocAve Criticality Matrix will not include it in its intelligent backup strategy. In order to include any Site or Site Collection into the Criticality Matrix backup routine, you must prescribe it a business criticality above zero within either the DocAve product or a SharePoint web part.

5.1.2.1 Setting the Business Importance in SharePoint

In order to set the importance directly from SharePoint, a web-part must first be installed. This can be installed through the DocAve Central AdminInstallation module. This specific option is always enabled for use, regardless of your license. Other features of Central Admin will be disabled unless licensed. Regardless of your license, please ensure the agent type of Administration is selected in order to use this module.

***Note:** From DocAve version 5.5, DocAve supports the site importance web part for SharePoint 2010.

Installing the Business Importance Feature

This feature only needs to be deployed at the Site Collection level, and will automatically be deployed to all sites beneath.

(5-1) Installing the Importance Feature

Step	Action
1	In the DocAve GUI, navigate to *Administration > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Expand the SharePoint tree by clicking the **Farms** icon on the left. You can continue to expand the tree by clicking on each node. Expand the appropriate web applications to the site collections you wish to deploy this feature to. ***Note:** You can also search for the sites or site collections using the Search Mode or Tree Filter options. These are described in the Central Admin section of this guide.
3	Using the checkbox next to each node, select the site collection(s).
4	Under the *Central Administration* tab to the right, you will see the *Install Importance Feature* option. Click this option to open the pop-up.
5	The pop-up will indicate the status for the feature (either installed or uninstalled). Click **Install** to install this feature.
6	Click **Cancel** to close this window.

Setting the Business Importance

The importance web-part will allow you to set the importance of multiple sites in your deployment. In order to set the Business Importance, follow the steps below:

(5-2) Setting the Importance in SharePoint

Step	Action
1	Open the specific site or site collection in SharePoint using your internet browser.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
2	Launch the importance web part for the appropriate site.	
	If...	**Then...**
	Site Collection	Go to *Site Actions* > *Site Settings* > *Site Collection Administration* > *Define Site Collection Importance.*
	Site	Go to Site Actions > Define Site Importance.
3	Using the slider and text-box, set the importance level between 1 and 10. A value of zero (default) indicates that this site will not be included for automated backup.	
4	Select where you would like to deploy the importance to:	
	If...	**Then...**
	Unique Importance Level	By default, *Set Unique Importance Level* is selected. This will set the importance for this site / site collection only.
	All Sites / Site Collections	To set the importance to all sites in bulk, choose the *Set importance Level In Bulk* option. Select to apply the same importance level to all sites or site collections under the same site collection, web application, or farm.
	Specific Sites / Site Collections	Choosing the third radio button allows you to define site importance by URL. Multiple URLs can be entered by using the **Add** and **Delete** buttons.
5	Click **OK** at the bottom of the web part. This will set the business importance of the specified sites or site collections.	

5.1.2.2 Setting the Business Importance in DocAve

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocAve provides the fastest and easiest way to set the importance level. You can set the business importance in DocAve Central Administration module, which also allows you to define inheritance relationships between sites and their subsites, it is limited to this function only, for other functions of this module, the license is still required. However, you can set the importance in bulk using the Preview tree in the Sandbox - Matrix.

***Note:** Before setting the business importance in DocAve Central Admin, please ensure that the Administrator option in Administration tab in the Agent Configuration tool has been enabled.

Using the SharePoint Administrator Module

The SharePoint Administrator module allows you to set the importance in bulk for site collections and sites, and also allows you to define inheritance relationships between sites and their subsites. In order to define this importance, please follow the steps below:

(5-3) Defining Business Importance In Central Admin

Step	Action
1	In the DocAve GUI, navigate to *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Expand the SharePoint tree by clicking the **Farms** icon on the left. You can continue to expand the tree by clicking on each node. Expand the appropriate web applications to the site collections you wish to deploy this feature to. ***Note:** You can also search for the sites or site collections using the Search Mode or Tree Filter options. These are described in the Central Admin section of this guide.
3	Using the checkbox next to each node, select the site collections or sites you wish to define the importance for. ***Note:** You can only select multiple nodes on the same level (i.e., multiple sites or multiple site collections, but not multiple sites and site collections).
4	Under the Central Administration tab to the right, you will see the *Define Importance* option. Click this option to open the pop-up.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	In the pop-up Define Importance window, you will see a list of URLs to the left. This represents all sites / site collections for which this importance will be defined. To set the business importance, drag the slider to set the appropriate level. The importance value ranges from 1 to 10 with 1 being the lowest and 10 the highest. ***Note:** An importance of 0 (zero) indicates that this site/site collection will be excluded from the Criticality Matrix.
6	Using the *Trickle Down* or *Inherit Parent Settings* options in the site collection and site level pop-up, you can choose to set the inheritance relationships between sites and site collections.
7	Use **OK** to apply the importance settings. This site will now immediately appear in your criticality matrix.

The SharePoint Central Admin module for DocAve also allows you to specify a business importance on new sites. If you choose to create a new site or site collection, the last field of the pop-up window will allow you to set the importance for this site. Please see the Administration section of this guide for more details.

Using the Criticality Matrix Preview Tree

In the Sandbox - Matrix window on the lower-right corner of the GUI, you are able to view all of the contents for your selected farm via the tree view. To set the importance for your sites / site collections, follow the steps below:

(5-4) Defining Business Importance from the Criticality Matrix

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *Data Protection* > *Automation Center* > *Criticality Matrix* and open the Sandbox - Matrix.
2	Select a farm from the *Load Data Form* field on top.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	In the lower right corner of the GUI, click on the farm name underneath the Farm View option. This will expand the tree. You can continue expanding the tree by clicking on the node names to the site or site collection you wish to edit.
4	Next to the nodes you are able to define importance, you will see a checkbox. Use this to select the content you wish to configure. ***Note:** The checkboxes will be available based on the *Manage Level* selected for this farm. If *Site Collection* is selected, checkboxes will only be available on the site collection level.
5	Click on the icon to set the importance. The pop-up will allow you to drag the slider and specify a value between 1 and 10. A setting of 0 (zero) will remove this site from the Matrix.
6	Click **OK** to apply these settings to the site.

5.1.3 Configuring the Matrix Settings

Since each of the templates, axis settings, and manage levels for each matrix (as well as the other options) can affect the backup policy for your farm in significant ways, all editable functions have been placed in the Sandbox - Matrix. This mode allows you to preview how each change will affect your farm's backup coverage before it takes effect.

Before configuring these settings for the matrix, you should be familiar with the definitions below:

- *Criticality Matrix Cell* : Each cell within the Criticality Matrix represents a site or site collection's ranking, determined by its corresponding business importance and modification frequency.
- *Templates* : Backup Templates represent the implementation for your backup strategy, and can be defined and applied to each cell of the matrix.
- *Manage Level* : You may set the Manage Level to either Site Level or Site Collection level. This determines whether content will be analyzed and distributed in the Criticality Matrix cells as individual sites or site collections.
- *Modification Frequency Axis* : The vertical axis of the Criticality Matrix measures the Modification Frequency of content within each site or site collection. This information will be automatically collected for sites with a defined business importance, and will

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

be gathered as frequently as the Matrix Updates are specified. For more information on configuring this axis, see the sections below.

- *Business Importance Axis* : The Horizontal axis measures the pre-defined Business Importance of the site or site collection. For more information on configuring this axis, see the sections below.
- *Business Rule* : The Business Rule option will allow you to define the rate at which sites are upgraded or downgraded in business importance due to activity or inactivity. DocAve can also disregard modification frequencies that occur during pre-selected dates and times.
- *Modification Frequency Report* : You can get the current modification frequency of a specified farm by generating a Modification Frequency Report of the specified farm. The report contains the following columns: Web Application, Site Collection, Web, Number of Modifications, Percent Modified, Business Importance and Manage Level.

In order to perform backups from the Criticality Matrix, you will need to define Active Templates. These are described in the Template Builder section of the User Guide.

All of the settings listed in the section below can be found by navigating to *Data Protection* > *Automation Center* > *Settings*.

5.1.3.1 Business Rule Engine

When users are asked to rank their sites in SharePoint, the natural response will tend to be a higher importance than what may be appropriate for their site. Additionally, project sites may be created with a very high importance, but after the completion date the activity and importance may drop. In these cases, the Business Rule Engine will allow you to specify rules to upgrade and downgrade the importance.

The Rule Engine tab under the Settings page is the interface used to build rules governing the movement of a site along the Business Importance axis. The options are broken into sections to help in creating rules.

***Note:** Because of the customizability of the rules, the options must be set for each farm individually. Although each farm may have multiple profiles defined, one profile cannot work for multiple farms.

Business Importance Update Rules

The general rules can be defined to either upgrade or downgrade importance based on modification times. For information on how to configure this section, see the table below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-5) Configuring the Business Importance Update Rules

Step	Action
1	Select a farm from the Farm drop-down list on top of the interface.
2	To upgrade and downgrade the importance, select the check boxes next to the appropriate line. You must specify a threshold for a site to upgrade and downgrade its importance, which will be set as either a number of modifications or a percent modified based on the current modification frequency axis settings of your farm. ***Note:** To avoid frequent changes of your business importance values, you should monitor the activity of your SharePoint environment and adjust these settings according to your needs. Also, if you change your axis values from number of modifications or percent of content modified to the other one, you should readjust these profiles.
3	Use the *Exclude Modification Frequency Values* section to ignore excessively low or excessively high modification frequency values during a specific date range. Using the checkboxes, select either the days of the week to ignore on a regular basis (such as weekends).
4	You can also specify date-ranges to ignore (such as company holidays or planned maintenance times) by using the calendar icons and the **Add** and **Delete** buttons.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Some users may have an accurate assessment of the Business Importance of their site, and this should be left untouched regardless of modification frequency (for instance, the CEO of an organization). To lock the site according to a specific user, use the checkbox and the fields provided next to the owners and administrators fields. You can enter multiple users by separating them with a semicolon (';'). ***Note:** You can also search the active directory or verify usernames by selecting the icons. To lock the site by selecting the individual site, use the checkbox and click **Browser** to select the site from the farm's tree in the pop-up. If you have a site locked but the user switches to the Site Collection manage level, DocAve will automatically lock the site collection. ***Note:** The setting of *Lock Site Importance* will only take effect when DocAve updates the Business Importance automatically according to the rules set, and you can manually adjust the importance of the site or site collection in Sandbox-Matrix at the same time.
6	Select the *Upgrade* or *Downgrade* of the Business Importance by checking the corresponding check-box, and select a email notification profile from the drop-down box. It will send the email to the recipient when the business importance upgrade or downgrade.
7	Click the calendar icon next to the Update Business Importance at field. In the pop-up calendar/clock window provided, set a date/time you wish the update to execute. Click **OK**.
8	Specify the interval at which the update will occur, following the start date/time. Choices are: every Week(s) and every Month(s). ***Note:** If you set the Update Business Importance frequency to a shorter interval than your matrix is updated, the value will automatically update on every matrix update, not more frequently.
9	Click **Save** to save the profile for use in the matrix.

5.1.3.2 Editing Axis Values

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

The Axis settings tab contains two sub tabs, one for Modification Frequency, the other for Business Importance. The table for editing axis values behaves in the same way for each.

Adding Rows or Columns to an Axis

In order to add an axis value to an axis, follow the steps below:

(5-6) Adding Columns or Rows

Step	Action
1	In the axis values table, click **Add** in the row before the new row to be inserted.
2	In the pop-up window, enter the name you wish to assign to the inserted row or column in the field provided.
3	Specify a maximum value for this column. Inserting an axis value will essentially divide the next row's data range into two: the first range is from the pre-existing minimum value to the new entered value, and the second range is from the new entered value to the pre-existing maximum value.
4	Click **OK** to add the new value.

***Note:** The maximum row-column structure of the Matrix is 6×6.

Editing or Removing Axis Values

In order to change a pre-existing axis value or remove it, follow the steps below:

(5-7) Editing Axis Values

Step	Action
1	Click **Edit** in the table of axis values.
2	Modify the maximum value for this interval. You can only adjust the maximum value for these settings, the minimum must be set from the maximum of the previous value. Click **OK** when you are finished.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Click **Delete**, if you wish to delete the corresponding row or column. The two options provided will allow you to either divide the data range of the column or row into two parts and add the respective values to the neighboring two cells, or allows you to redistribute the values evenly across all other axis values.

5.1.3.3 Modification Frequency Settings

When you configure the modification frequency, you must specify the following settings:

(5-8) Modification Frequency Settings

Step	Action
1	Choose either Percent Modified or Number of Modifications for the modification frequency axis. • *Percent Modified* : This will offer a ratio of the number of modifications averaged over the size of the site in items. This is the default value and the easiest way to break the axis up into a reasonable scale. • *Number of Modifications* : This will allow you to view the number of modifications. This is the most flexible option for the axis settings, but it is necessary to gauge this setting for each environment. For instance, one site may have 5 modifications per day in a small environment, but an large site could have 500. There are advantages and drawbacks to each method. The percent modified setting may be the easiest to scale, but be inaccurate for sites with versioning enabled or infopath sites (where the number of objects increases with each modification). The number of modifications will be the most accurate representation of the activity of the site, but may take a good deal of tracking to pick accurate axis values.
2	Set the Scaling Factor in the space provided. In order to make the axis more meaningful, the percent modified (or the number of modifications) can be represented in percentage (or number) modified per hour(s), day(s), week(s) or month(s).

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Use **Save** to save the axis profile.

5.1.3.4 Business Importance Settings

The business importance settings are very simple to set up, and they represent the range of importance settings from one to ten. You can save multiple axis profiles.

5.1.3.5 Report Settings

The Report Settings is used to generate the modification frequency report(s) of a SharePoint farm covered in the Criticality Matrix module.

(5-9) Configuring Report Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Data Protection* > *Automation Center* > *Settings*, and then switch to the *Report Settings* tab.
2	Select one farm from the Farm drop-down box. If you have already configured the Report Settings of the specified farm, you can click the **Delete** button to delete all the existing settings.
3	Select a start time for generating the modification frequency report(s) by clicking the calendar icon in the corresponding field and then specify a Start Time.
4	You can specify an interval for generating the report(s) by choosing *Only Once* or *Every___Hour/Day /Week/Month* and then entering a number in the corresponding textbox. By default, *Only Once* is selected.
5	You can choose the report format by selecting **CSV** or **TXT** in the Report Format field. By default, the report format is CSV.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	In the *Export Location* field, please configure the following settings: • *Path* : Please specify a path for saving the report(s). The format of the path should be like *||server|c$|data*. • *Username* : Please specify the corresponding user to connect to the path. The format of the user name should be like *Domain\Username*. • *Password* : Please enter the password to connect to the specified path. After you finish configuring the settings above, please click **Test** to test the configuration.
7	Click **Save** to save the settings after the test completes successfully.

5.1.4 Using the Sandbox-Matrix

The Sandbox-Matrix represents the editable version for all farm matrixes. You can configure the settings for farms here by using the sections below.

5.1.4.1 Configuring the General Options

When you first load the Sandbox-Matrix, several general options must be configured:

(5-10) Setting up the Matrix

Step	Action
1	Select a farm in the Load Data From drop-down box. This will fill in the contents of the cells after you have specified the importance levels of the sites or site collections and the preview tree with meaningful data.
2	Load a Profile from the corresponding drop-down box. This is not required, but can be used if you have previously configured a matrix.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Select the Manage Level of the matrix. This will organize the contents of the matrix according to either site level groupings or site collection level groupings.
4	Choose a Business Rule from the drop-down box. This is not a required field, but is used if you wish to upgrade or downgrade the sites or site collections importance automatically.
5	Select the axis profiles for both the modification frequency axis and business importance axis.

5.1.4.2 Applying templates in the Matrix

You can apply a template to individual cell in the Matrix. Please refer to the section Template Builder to learn how to build Templates to be used on the Matrix.

(5-11) Applying The Templates

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Automation Center > Criticality Matrix*.
2	You will see the Matrix on the left of the screen. By default, the display color of the Matrix cells is grey. Grey is the color used when no plans have been associated with the given cell. Check the boxes for the cells you wish to apply a template to.
3	Select the template tab from the window in the upper-right hand of the screen. Simply drag a template icon to the cell you wish to associate with that template. You can also double click the template to apply it. ***Note:** Only the active templates can be applied.
4	If you want to unapply the last template, you can click **Undo**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	To remove the template of a cell, select the corresponding check box and right click on the cell. Use the Remove template option.

5.1.4.3 Moving a Matrix Profile to Production

After configuring the options and templates, follow the directions below to move the settings into production:

(5-12) Applying the Matrix

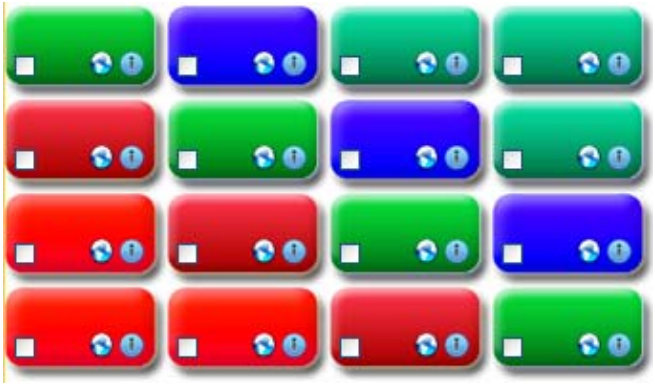
Step	Action
1	Use the Update Matrix Every... field to choose an interval to update the matrix. Since this is only intended to show a trend of data, it is not intended for frequent updates. You must choose between a weekly or monthly interval.
2	Choose a start-time to begin the matrix updates. You can use the calendar icon to choose a date and time.
3	After you are satisfied with your settings, click **Apply**. ***Note:** Since deploying these settings should be done in consideration of its effects on your SharePoint data, you can only apply these settings to the farm selected in the Load Data From field. ***Note:** For a new matrix profile which does not use any of the former templates, you should click **Save as Profile** to activate the **Apply** button.
4	Check the check-box to enter a profile name for this matrix. Although you do not need to save these settings as a profile, it is recommended to save them for quick editing later.
5	Choose from the options of when to apply: Apply Now, Apply at a later time or Apply with next Matrix Update. To avoid changing data coverage frequently, we recommend the setting Apply with Next Matrix Update.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5.1.5 Best Practices for Configuring the Criticality Matrix

Although you can configure your matrix in any order you choose, we recommend the following:

- Analyze the needs of your farm and determine the ideal Manage Level. In order to manage your backup plans and policies with the most discrimination and flexibility between plans, we recommend setting this to the Site level. In general, this will allow you to set importance for individual project sites, meeting sites, and other collaboration spaces. It will also target the most active sites very specifically, allowing you to save backup space with your frequent backups.
- Analyze the size of your environment and the number of backup plans you intend to use. By default, your matrix will be set to 3x3. This will break up your environment into 9 different jobs, and should be sufficient for most cases. However, if you have a larger environment and wish to break your content into smaller jobs with greater discrimination, we recommend increasing the number of axis values. The maximum matrix size is 6x6.
- Have your administrators rank the business importance of their own SharePoint sites or site collections using the Business Importance web part, or submit rankings for you to enter them through the DocAve console. We recommend offering guidelines, such as My-Sites being given a 1 or a 2, and your legal / payroll sites being given a 10. These should be customized according to your organization.
- Configure templates to meet your SLA needs and according to the size of your matrix.



  The most typical configuration appears in this picture, with the templates applied symmetrically on the diagonal. You should count on having one or two templates including frequent (hourly) incremental backups and daily fulls, a template with daily incrementals and weekly fulls, and one with weekly backups and monthly fulls (if not less frequent).
- Decide whether you wish to monitor your modification frequency based on number of modifications or percent modified. Although percent modified may seem to be the simplest implementation in finding appropriate intervals, there are drawbacks. Sites that are constantly generating new items (i.e. document workspaces with versioning, infopath form sites, etc.) without proper pruning in SharePoint will typically dip closer towards the bottom of the matrix over time. For this reason, we recommend auditing your sites to obtain a raw number for average modifications for your environment.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This will help you set the high, medium, and low thresholds during the initial setup and allow them to be the most accurate.

- Set the update frequency of your matrix. It is important to remember that this matrix is intended to only show data trends, not real-time data regarding SharePoint. Changing backup plans as frequently as would be required of real-time or even daily updates is not recommended, which is why the matrix can only be updated on a weekly or a monthly basis.

5.2 Template Builder

Templates are used in the DocAve Criticality Matrix and are required to automate your SharePoint backups.

5.2.1 Basic Options

The first task when constructing a new template is selecting the various options. Options available here must be configured ahead of time in the Control Panel. Please refer to Section 3 of this manual for more clarification.

Each option is displayed as a drop-down box, and these options can be added or modified from the Control Panel. Clicking the blue hyperlink over the feature's description will take you to the appropriate Setting Page.

Data Manager

- *Logical Device* : This contains a list of logical device profiles that will designate where the backup data will be stored. For more information on adding a new location for backup data, please refer to the Section Device Manager of this Manual.

  ***Note:** This module supports the following device types: NetShare, FTP, TSM, EMC, Dell DX Storage and Cloud (RackSpaceCloudFiles/MSFT Azure/AmazonS3/EMC Atmos/AT&T synaptic)

- *Filter Policy* : This drop-down list shows the data filter schemes configured in the Section Filter Policy of this Manual. This feature is optional.

- *Data Pruning* : This is where the administrator can specify the pruning policy for the data generated by this backup plan. By selecting a Pruning Profile, the administrator can specify how long the data generated by this plan is retained. For more information on adding new profiles, please refer to Section Data Pruning of this Manual. This feature is optional.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Data Coalescing* : This is where the administrator can specify the coalescing policy for the data generated by this backup plan. For more information on adding new profiles, please refer to Section Data Coalescing of this Manual. This feature is optional.

Data Configuration

- *Data Configuration* : This is where the administrator can specify whether the encryption and compression will be carried out; and if so whether such activities will be carried out: on the Media Agent or the SharePoint Agent. By default no Compression and Encryption is enabled. If you select the *Encryption* option, the *Security Policy* drop-down box will be activated. It contains a list of Security policy profiles. For more information on adding a new security policy, please refer to Security Manager of this Manual.

Reporting

- *Email Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to the Section Email Notification of this Manual. This feature is optional.

Advanced

- *Workflow Definition* : This option allows you to back up the workflow state of the contents that you have selected. For details concerning the backup of workflows themselves, please see the section below.
- *Generate Full Text Index* : This option will generate a full text index for the content you selected in the backup plan. Then you can use Full Text Type to search for the content when you do the restore.
- *Exclude Orphaned My Site* : If you select this option, it will not backup the orphaned my sites.

Workflow Definition

In order to support backup and restore for most customizations and workflows:

- The backup plan defined by the user must include the site collection (or content database in platform level backup) containing these customizations, as well as the related resources for these customizations on the front-end.
- At the time of the restore, customizations may require front-end resources that do not exist on the destination front-end server(s). These must be searched / restored first. This can either be done through the platform level backup's front-end restore capability, or may need to be re-installed to the front-end directly via a separate installer (if the customization originally came as a part of a separate application).
- Only in-place restore at site collection or database level is supported.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

All customizations and workflows are not guaranteed and will not be covered by this backup due to the flexibility of SharePoint and the lack of unified deployment strategies. As a result, it is impossible to programmatically detect the links to external sources (either application databases or front-end files) that are common in customizations, workflows, and web parts are as follows, such as:

- Front-end resources or separately installed packages
- The SharePoint GUID and/or URL of any objects associated with the customization (list items, images, documents, etc.)
- External SQL databases for management of workflows or states

For issues that depend on the GUID or URL, an in-place restore at the site collection / database level will keep these parameters intact. Other parameters will not be automatically covered. However, you are encouraged to use DocAve to test the backup and restore of your workflows or other customizations.

5.2.2 Difference between active / inactive templates

Active templates are used for both Business Importance mode and Custom Backup mode. When you want to create a new active template, you need to select a color by clicking the box next to Active Template Color. If you have assigned a color for an active template, the color which you have used will no longer appear as a color choice.

Inactive templates are only used for Custom Backup mode. If you want to create a new inactive template, you need to keep the Active Template Color box blank.

5.2.3 Significance of assigning colors

Assigning different colors to active templates lets you distinguish the different templates applied to each importance level more clearly in the Criticality Matrix.

5.2.4 Setting up the Schedule

To setup a schedule, please follow the steps below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-13) Setting up a Schedule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Template Builder*.
2	In the Schedule area, you can set up to six unique schedules associated with that plan. (each represented by one of the Clock icons at the top of the Schedule window) Click on the clock icon and it will become highlighted in yellow.
3	Check the Schedule check-box to activate a Schedule. The clock icon you are setting currently will be highlighted in green. When you configure another schedule, this active clock icon will be highlighted in blue.
4	Select a Backup Type for the selected schedule. • *Full* : A full backup of the selected source. • *Incremental* : A partial backup where only data that has been added since the last incremental or full backup is backed up. • *Differential* : A partial backup where only data that has been added since the last full backup is backed up. ***Note:** Frequent consecutive differential backups have a tendency to backup the same data over and over again and fill server space quickly. For best results when conducting high frequency backups, it is recommended to use incremental backups. Incremental backups save time and storage space by backing up only the differences between incremental backups or an incremental backup and a full backup, instead of backing up the entire source location.
5	Click on the calendar icon located to the right of the Start Time field.
6	Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
7	Select a time zone in the TimeZone drop-down box. By default, it will be selected according to the Browser's.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Specify the interval at which the backup will occur. The basic intervals are: • *Only Once* : This plan will run at the specified time • *Every Hour, Day, Week or Month* : This plan will run over a specified interval. The Advanced intervals are as follows: • *Hourly* : You can set the plan to run during production hours only, specified in the time window(s) provided, or at specific hours set in the *Select Time Below* fields. • *Daily* : This will let you run the plan once a day on week-ends only or weekdays only. • *Weekly* : Specify the days of the week to run the plan on, and after how many weeks to recur. • *Monthly* : This will let you set up a custom monthly plan.
9	Specify a Exclude for this job under the Advanced schedule options. This will allow you to prevent plan from running during scheduled maintenance, holidays, etc.
10	Specify a Plan Duration for this job under the Advanced option. This will allow you to terminate the plan after a number of occurrences, or by an appointed date and time.
11	Repeat these steps to create additional schedules (if necessary).
12	Save the template by clicking **Save Template**. After the template has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the column area on the right.

5.3 Custom Backup Builder

DocAve v5 Custom Backup Builder contains two types of backup function: Granular Backup and Platform Backup. It allows administrators to backup their SharePoint environment on any level, from an entire Farm down to a specific Folder/ List.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

According to Microsoft, STSADM backups are not recommended for sites greater than 15 GB. As a result, the Site/Site Collection backup restore levels, which leverage STSADM, are not recommended to be used in these cases. We recommend using Item Level or Platform Level backups in most instances, both of which offer the ability to restore on the Site/Site Collection level. These modules offer significant advantages in speed and in granularity of backup plans.

5.3.1 Granular Backup

You can set up backup plans on three levels: Item; Site; and Site Collection.

5.3.1.1 Basic Options

In order to configure a new backup plan, you must first configure the following several settings in the Control Panel. Where necessary, links are provided to the Control Panel.

- *Farm* : This contains a list of farms currently connected to SharePoint.
- *Agent Group* : This allows administrators to specify an agent group.

The following tabs are provided in the Granular Backup interface:

Data Manager

- *Filter Policy* : This drop-down list displays the available data exclusion schemes, as configured in Section Filter Policy of this Manual. This feature is optional.
- *Data Pruning* : This is where the administrator can specify the pruning policy for the data generated by each backup plan. By selecting a Pruning Profile, the administrator can specify how long the data generated by this plan is retained. For more information on adding new profiles, please refer to Section Data Pruning of this Manual. This feature is optional.
- *Data Coalescing* : This is where the administrator can specify the coalescing policy for the data generated by this backup plan. For more information on adding new profiles, please refer to Section Data Coalescing of this Manual. This feature is optional.
- *Logical Device* : This contains a list of logical drive profiles that will designate where the backup data will be stored. For more information on adding a new location for backup data, please refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual. This field is required to back up data.

  ***Note:** This module supports the following device types: NetShare, FTP, TSM, EMC, Dell DX Storage and Cloud (RackSpaceCloudFiles/MSFT Azure/AmazonS3/EMC Atmos/AT&T synaptic)

Data configuration

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Data Configuration* : This is where the administrator can specify whether encryption and compression will be carried out; and if so whether such activities will be carried out on the Media Agent or the SharePoint Agent.By default, no Compression and Encryption is enable. Selecting the checkbox of compression will compress the backup data before backup and decompress after backup. This can enhance the transmission speed. If you select the Encryption option, the Security Policy drop-down box will be activated. It contains a list of Security Policy profiles. For more information on adding a new Security Policy, please refer to Section 3.3.5 of this Manual.

Reporting

- *Email Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to the Section Email Notification of this Manual. This feature is optional.

Advanced

For Site Collection Level or Site Level

- *Lock Site Collection* : locks the specified site collection while this particular backup job is running. The site collection will be read only for users accessing the site collection while this job is running. The site will be unlocked once the job completes.
- *Skip Large Site or Site Collection* : skips any site or site collections greater than the specified size. You can view the skipped sites in job report. It is recommended to use this option to skip large sites and use the item level Granular Backup or Platform Backup to back up these large sites.

For Item Level

- *Generate Full Text Index* : This option will generate a full text index for the content you selected in the backup plan. Then you can use Full Text search options to search the content when you perform the restore.
- *Workflow Definition* : This option allows you to back up the workflow state of the contents that you have selected. For details concerning the backup of workflows themselves, please see the section Workflow Definition.
- *Exclude Orphaned My Sites* : If you select this option, it will not backup the orphaned my sites.

  ***Note:** If some users have been removed while the my sites owned by those users still exist. You can choose option *Exclude Orphaned My sites*. That will help to save time for the backup job and avoid some issues.

- *DocAve Archived Data* : You can also select the operation on the archived data by checking the corresponding radio button. Please note this option only works on the item level. By default *Backup the original content* is selected.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** If you select the *Backup links to content only* option for the Archived Data, only the stubs of the real data will be copied to the destination when restoring, and this may result in orphaned stubs in SharePoint (stubs with no corresponding BLOB data). This may happen When the real data is deleted, but the corresponding stubs are still pointing to the original BLOB location. For more details, please refer to section Stub Retention Policy of this manual.

***Note:** For SharePoint 2007, the third party stub based on EBS or RBS is supported. DocAve will back up the real data and it is still real data after the restoration.

***Note:** DocAve backs up the real data of page stub no matter you select *Backup links to content only* or *Backup the original content* to make sure the page can be opened correctly after the restoration.

***Note:** For SharePoint 2007, the *Site Lock Information* and *Site Quota Information* of site collection level will be backed up and restored. But SharePoint 2010 does not support to back up or restore them.

5.3.1.2 Choosing Content

To associate data with the custom backup plan, select content via the data tree on the left section of the screen. Prior to the selection, the Farm, Agent Group, and Restore Level must be chosen.

(5-14) Selecting Content

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Custom Backup Builder* > *Granular Backup*.
2	On the left section of the Custom Backup Builder screen select the desired farm from the drop-down box, and then select an agent group.
3	Select the level from the drop-down box next to Restore Granularity Level. After selecting the desired Restore Level, you may expand the tree to the level you specified.
4	On the data tree, click on the name of the Farm that is currently selected. This will expand the farm node to display all of the SharePoint instances installed within it.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Clicking on the name of the SharePoint instances will expand the tree further to display the Site Collections present within the SharePoint instances.
6	Clicking on the name of a specific Site Collection will expand the tree further to display a "." (also referred to as a dot or root directory), as well as the Sites located underneath that specific Site Collection.
7	Clicking on the dot expands the tree to display Folders/Lists and content located directly on the Site Collection. Clicking on individual Site names expands the tree to display Folders/Lists and content located in those individual Sites. ***Note:** By default, when the Items you browse exceed 10, the tree may split across multiple pages. To browse multiple pages, select the page number below the tree.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	There is a check-box corresponding to each level on the Backup Builder tree which is, by default, unchecked. Check the check-box next to the URL and the entire Site's content will be selected. If you wish to backup only a Site's content, and not backup any of the content within the Site's subsites, click the check-box next to the Site's URL twice, revealing becomes a sideway arrow ( ) in the check-box. When checking a check-box to specify the content to be backed up, the folder icon will include a colored triangle ( ). The triangle indicates that all new data created in those sites or folders/lists will be automatically picked up by the backup plan. This option is turned on by default. To exclude the new SharePoint content, you need to expand the data tree under the specific node. Click the triangle symbol at the bottom right corner of the node icon **once**, all the expanded nodes except the top node will exclude the new SharePoint content. Click the triangle symbol at the bottom right corner of the node **twice**, all the nodes besides the top node will exclude the new SharePoint content. ***Note:** It is recommended you to select the Include New feature (making the folder icon with the triangle) when backing up the entire Site. Also note that if you remove the triangle of the Site Collection node, no new Sites created under this Site Collection could be discovered, however, new Lists/Folders/Items could still be discovered in the selected Sites.

***Note:** You may refresh the data tree by clicking .

***Note:** If you want to backup mysite, please make sure the user who is registered for the corresponding agent in Agent Monitor has the Personalization Services Permissions.

5.3.1.3 Choosing Content by Filter Mode

Filter mode allows searching or filtering of sites, subsites, documents or files. This can be done by typing either the exact URL or using wildcards (*) in the appropriate fields.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-15) Choose Content by Filter Mode

Step	Action
1	Click the *Filter Mode* radio button.
2	By default, the *Case Sensitive* option is unchecked. To turn on the case sensitive, check this option.
3	There are four options: Rule for Web Applications, Rule for Site Collections, Rule for Sites and Rule for Lists. Check the box next to each level to activate the filter function for that level.
4	Underneath each activated Rule, input the desired URL. Wildcards (*) are supported here. For example, if your filter must identify all the lists whose names contain test, then *test* can be typed in the corresponding space. Any Web Application, Site Collection or Site containing a list whose name contains test will either be displayed or removed from the final list according to your choice in Step 5. You can also filter the content by regular expressions. For example, • *http://server:port/sites/[A-Z]** : find all the site collections whose name is begin with capital letter. • *http://server:port/sites/\d** : find all the site collections whose name is begin with number. • *http://server:port/sites/\D** : find all the site collections whose name is not begin with number.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">The check box next to each input represents the negate feature. If you want the filter to:</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Include matches</td><td>Click this box to set as a + to ensure matching results are displayed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remove matches</td><td>Click this box to set as a - to ensure matching results will not be displayed.

On the Rules for Sites, if you input a root site name, all subsites will be removed. For example, http://server:port/sites/a is a root siteand http://server:port/sites/a/b is a sub site. If you input http://server:port/sites/a in the rules for sites, the subsite http://server:port/sites/a/b will also be removed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">To add an additional URL/wildcard for the Rule, click on the Add icon and repeat Step 4. To delete a filter, click the Remove icon.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Click Preview to view the filter result.</td></tr>
</table>

5.3.1.4 Searching for Content

For larger SharePoint environments and those with unknown content (including Web Applications, Site Collections, Sites, Lists, Databases, and Folders), we recommend using the search button for rapid targeting of content.

(5-16) Searching For Content

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Custom Backup Builder > Granular Backup*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Click located to the right of the URL for each object (when the node is moused over) within the data tree. An Advanced Search pop-up window will appear.
3	Input the exact content name or use wildcards in the text box, Click **Add** to add additional criteria. ***Note:** "*" represents a group of unknown characters during a search (such as *.exe, whereas using "?" represents one character. If two documents, ABC and AXC exist, a search on "A?C" will return both results.)
4	For case-sensitive searches, check the *Case Sensitive* box located in the lower-left of the window.
5	Click **OK** to execute the search. The search result will be listed under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the Search and close the Advanced Search pop-up window. ***Note:** If the search does not return any results, please click to refresh the data tree, and then search for the content you want to load again.

5.3.1.5 Setting up the Schedule

In order to run the backup plans on a schedule, you must configure them according to the instructions below.

(5-17) Setting up a Schedule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Custom Backup Builder > Granular Backup*.
2	In the Schedule area, you can set up to six unique schedules associated with that plan(each represented by one of the Clock icons at the top of the Schedule window). Click on the clock icon and it will become highlighted in yellow.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Check the Schedule check-box to activate a Schedule. The clock icon you set currently will be highlighted in green. When you configure other schedules, this active clock icon will be highlighted in blue.
4	Select a Backup Type for the selected schedule. • *Full* : A full backup of the selected source. • *Incremental* : A partial backup where only data that has been added since the last ibackup. • *Differential* : A partial backup where only data that has been added since the last full backup is backed up. ***Note:** Frequent consecutive differential backups have a tendency to backup the same data over and over again and fill server space quickly. For best results when conducting high frequency backups, it is recommended to use incremental backups. Incremental backups save time and storage space by backing up only the differences between incremental backups or an incremental backup and a full backup, instead of backing up the entire source location. ***Note:** If you run a job for the first time. Incremental Backup and Differential Backup will be performed as Full Backup. In Job Monitor, the Backup Type column shows Full Backup.
5	Click on the calendar icon located to the right of the Start Time field.
6	Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
7	Select a time zone in the TimeZone drop-down box. By default, it will be selected according to the Browser's. If the time zone you select is affected by the Daylight Saving Time, the *Automatically adjust clock for Daylight Saving Time* option will appear. It is recommended to select the option.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Specify the interval at which the backup will occur. The basic intervals are: • *Only Once* : This plan will run at the specified time • *Every Hour, Day, Week or Month* : This plan will run over a specified interval. The Advanced intervals are as follows: • *Hourly* : You can set the plan to run during production hours only, specified in the time window(s) provided, or at specific hours set in the Select Time Below fields. • *Daily* : This will let you run the plan once a day on week-ends only or weekdays only. • *Weekly* : Specify the days of the week to run the plan on, and after how many weeks to recur. • *Monthly* : This will let you set up a custom monthly plan.
9	Specify an Exclude for this job under the Advanced schedule options. This will allow you to prevent plan from running during scheduled maintenance, holidays, etc.
10	Specify a Plan Duration for this job under the Advanced option. This will allow you to terminate the plan after a number of occurrences, or by an appointed date and time.
11	Repeat these steps to create additional schedules (if necessary).
12	Save the plan by clicking **Save**. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the column area on the right.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	To run the plan immediately, click **Run now**. A pop-up window will appear, select a backup type and whether include detailed job report for all items if you run a item level backup job, and then click **Run** to run this plan. ***Note:** If you check the *Include detailed job report for all items in this plan* box, the detailed report information of this job you download in Job Monitor will be down to item level, or it will be down to list/library level. You can click **Go to The Job Report** to be redirected to Job Monitor to view the job's process, or click **Close** to return from the pop-up window.

5.3.1.6 Loading from Templates

You can also use an existing template in the Granular Backup. Just select a template from the drop-down box next to Use Template. All settings in this Template will be filled in the corresponding fields. Enter the name you wish to give this plan in the Plan Name field. Click **Save** to save the plan with settings of this applied template.

For more information on creating a new template, refer to the Section Template Builder of this Manual.

5.3.1.7 Back Up Workflow Instance at Item Level

In order to back up the workflow state, history and related tasks using the Item Level Backup, please follow the instructions below:

(5-18) Back Up Workflow Instance at Item Level

Step	Action
1	Go to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2007* and find the XML file *DocAve.Common.LS.SPWorkflow.Configuration.xml.*

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	There are three attributes in the XML file, which are: • *Configuration ProcessAssociation* : There are two values for this attribute, **True** means to back up the definition of the workflow. By default, the value is **False**. • *ProcessInstance* : There are two values for this attribute, **True** means to back up the instance of the workflow. By default, the value is **False**. • *PerformanceMonitor* : This attribute is used to generate a TXT file in the following path *…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\temp* to save the detailed information of the performance. Since the content is used for reviewing, the content under this folder will not be cleaned automatically. Please change the value of *Configuration ProcessAssociation* and *ProcessInstance* to **True** and then run the backup job. ***Note:** If one of the following two conditions is met, DocAve will back up the workflow definition: The *Configuration ProcessAssociation* attribute is **True** or the GUI option *Workflow Definition* is checked.

***Note:** Backing up the Workflow Instances is only supported for the Item Level Backup and Restore of SharePoint 2007 environment. .NET Framework v3.5 or higher must be installed in the environment.

***Note:** By default, after the backup and restoration, the Content type and Field in the destination will be overwritten. If you want to merge them, please go to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2007* and find the file *Env.cfg*. Add the attribute *mergeWebAndListContentType=true*.

5.3.1.8 Fast Backup Configuration

DocAve v5 supports a new backup method for incremental backups, resulting in an order of magnitude increase in backup speed over the original backup. This feature is enabled by default, but the original backup method is still configurable.

***Note:** This setting is configured on the Agent machine.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-19) Configuration for Fast Backup

Step	Action
1	Open the file Env.cfg which is under the directory *...| AvePoint| DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2007*.
2	Change the attribute to "useOriginalBackup"='true'.
3	After configuring the flag, manually run a new full backup of your plans.

***Note:** If you are having trouble with the fast backup, please make sure the retention time of the Change Log in SharePoint Content Database is longer than the interval between an Incremental backup and the last backup, or between a differential backup and the last full backup. If the retention time of change log is too short, please edit it according to the following step.

To configure the *changelog* setting, you need to navigate to *Central Administration -> Application Management -> Web Application General Settings* and select the *Change Log* option.

You can configure the amount of days before the Change log will be deleted. If the interval between an Incremental backup and the last backup(or between an differential backup and the last full backup) is longer than the default days in the Change Log, please change the value of this setting to the greater one.

Changing Backup Method for Agent

For the load balance of backup, if you change the backup method, you need also to configure the *Zeus.BackupMethod* attribute to specify the same backup method for all the agents.

***Note:** This setting is only used for Item level backup.

(5-20) Changing Backup Method for Agents

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the file *zeus-job.properties* under directory *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|etc|*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Change the attribute of the node Zeus.BackupMethod. *Zeus.BackupMethod=1* represents backing up the content by using the Regular backup method; *Zeus.BackupMethod=2* represents backing up the content by using the Fast backup method. ***Note:** The backup method must be the same as the method you set up in the *Env.cfg* file.
3	After saving the modification, you need to restart the control service to apply the configuration.

5.3.1.9 Back up Content Basing on Filter for One Column

For SharePoint 2007 item level backup, DocAve supports backing up content basing on filter for the Date and Time type column. The item or document whose column value is one day later than the date that you run the backup job will be backed up. To enable this feature, please refer to the following steps:

(5-21) Back Up Content Basing on Filter for One Column

Step	Action
1	Go the *...AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2007* and open the file *Env.cfg*.
2	Add the flags *isIncludeDetail="true"* and *expiredColumn-Name="ColumnName"*. It is the name of the Date and Time type column used in the list or library that you want to filter.
3	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Custom Backup Builder > Granular Backup* and save a item level backup plan.
4	Run a full backup job. The item or document whose column value is one day later than the date that you run the backup job will be backed up.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5.3.1.10 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Backup

(5-22) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Backup

Source	Type	Status
Libraries	Document Library	Supported
	Form Library	Supported
	Wiki Page Library	Supported
	Picture Library	Supported
	Translation Management Library	Supported
	Data Connection Library	Supported
	Slide Library	Supported
	Report Library	Supported
	DocAve Content Library	Supported(real content)
	DocAve Media Library	Supported(real content)
Communications List	Announcements	Supported
	Contacts	Supported
	Discussion Board	Supported
Tracking Lists	Links	Supported
	Calendar	Supported
	Tasks	Supported
	Project Tasks	Supported
	Issue Tracking	Supported
	Survey	Supported
Custom Lists	Custom List	Supported
	Custom List in Datasheet View	Supported
	Languages and Translators	Supported
	KPI Lists	Supported
	Import Spreadsheet	Supported

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status
Web Pages	Basic Page	Supported
	Web part Page	Supported
	Sites and Workspaces	Supported
Workflow		Customization required
RSS		Customization required
Alerts		Supported
My Alert	Alerts in SharePoint 2003 Personal Site & My Site	Supported
Metadata	Single line of text	Supported
	Multiple lines of text	Supported
	Choice (menu to choose from)	Supported
	Number	Supported
	Currency	Supported
	Data and Time	Supported
	Lookup	Supported
	Yes/No	Supported
	Person or Group	Supported
	Hyperlink or Picture	Supported
	Calculated	Supported
	Business Data	Supported
Security & Properties	Version settings	Supported
	Column Settings	Supported
	Permissions	Supported
Version Histories	Documents	Supported
	Lists	Supported

5.3.2 Platform Backup

Platform Level Backup is a Farm-level recovery solution which enables SharePoint Administrators to backup Web Applications, Content Databases, KnowledgeLake Imaging, search and index servers, Front-End servers and Fast Search servers. Platform Level Backup can also backup file system resources on Front-End servers.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

For the minimum permissions required, please refer to the Required Permissions for the DocAve Software Agents section of this Manual.

***Note:** If you want to back up and restore KnowledgeLake Imaging, it is recommended to apply the update patch named *KnowledgeLake September 2010 Cumulative Update Utility_Version 2.0.*

***Note:** If you have installed SharePoint Server 2010 cumulative update package (August 30, 2011 http://support.microsoft.com/kb/2553048/ja), the following Agent patch must be installed since MS changed user profile API: http://www.avepoint.net/patches/2011-12-06/DocAve_Agent_Patch_5.7.0.0_CI1476601_20111206.zip

5.3.2.1 Installation

Before the administrator can use SharePoint Platform Level Backup, the Platform Level Backup module needs to be enabled.

***Note:** When you setup the DocAve Agent on a SQL server, please make sure the agent host name is a hostname, and not the IP address. If you setup it as an IP address, it will cause some issues.

To ensure that Platform Level Backup is enabled on the DocAve Agent Host, please proceed as follows:

(5-23) Installation

Step	Action
1	Log onto the server where the DocAve Agent is installed.
2	Click **Start** located on the menu taskbar and navigate to *All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5*.
3	Open the **Agent Configuration Tool** on the Agent machine.
4	Specify all appropriate port and machine configurations.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">Proceed to the Data Protection tab and select the type of DocAve Agent to install.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>The Agent is specified to be a Control Agent.</td><td>This component is required to be installed on the SharePoint Front-end Web server. In a SharePoint farm with multiple Front-end Web servers, only one SharePoint Front-end Web server can be configured as Platform Level Backup Control Agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The Agent is specified to be a Member Agent.</td><td>This component can be installed on any server in the SharePoint Farm. For example, Platform Level Backup Member Agent can be installed on the Database server, Fast Search server, Index server and/or Front-end server.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click Confirm to finish the configuration and restart the DocAve Agent Services.</td></tr>
</table>

DocAve Platform Level Backup loads and browses for the Member Agents through the Control Agent. It also performs backups for both Control and Member Agents.

***Note:** To backup Fast Search servers, you must install Member Agents on all of them.

***Note:** Platform Level Backup supports SQL clustering. But only MSCS is supported. For third party cluster, it doesn't support failover but there is a manual work-around. If cluster failover support is required, a member agent must be installed on each SQL cluster node, otherwise a member agent only needs to be installed on the active node. When configuring the member agent, be sure the 'Agent Name' field matches the cluster virtual node name.

Additionally, the DocAve agent account must have the following permissions:

- View Server State permission on SQL server to query the SQL cluster nodes.

The administrator must have the following general permissions to enable platform-level backup (i.e. not only for SQL clustering):

- Member of the local administrator group
- Granted the following privileges in local security policy: Act as part of the operating system and Replace a process level token. (Log off and log back in to let these changes take effect)

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- For a SharePoint Control Agent User, also needs SharePoint Farm Admin, SQL 'Security Admin' and 'Database Creator' roles, and SQL 'View Server State' permission
- For a SQL Server Member Agent User, need SysAdmin server role

5.3.2.2 Basic options

The first and most important thing when constructing a new backup plan is selecting the various options. Platform Backup option must be configured ahead of time in the Control Panel. Please refer to Section 3 of the manual for further description of Platform Backup-Related options configuration.

Each option is displayed as a drop-down box. Each selection in the drop-down box can be added or modified from the Control Panel.

- *Agent Host* : This allows administrators to specify an Agent Host.

Data Manager:

- *Backup Method* : The Backup Method drop-down box is where the administrator can specify the method for backing up the database. Here DocAve v5 supplies two options. One is VDI, the other one is VSS. The VDI method is selected by default. See the section below for a description both of VDI and VSS.
- *Data Pruning* : This is where the administrator can specify the pruning policy for the data generated by this backup plan. By selecting a Pruning Profile, the administrator can specify how long the data generated by this plan is retained. For more information on adding new profiles, please refer to Data Pruning section of this Manual. This feature is optional.
- *Logical Device* : This contains a list of logical drive profiles that will designate where the backup data will be stored. For more information on adding a new location for backup data, please refer to Device Manager section of this Manual.

  ***Note:** This module supports the following device types: NetShare, FTP, TSM, EMC and Cloud (RackSpaceCloudFiles/MSFT Azure/AmazonS3/EMC Atmos/AT&T synaptic)

***Note:** The NetApp ONTAP data type is not supported by Platform Level Backup and Restore.

Data Configuration:

- *Data Configuration* : This is where the administrator can specify where the encryption and compression will be carried out, whether on the Media Agent or the SharePoint Agent. No Compression and Encryption is the default option.

Reporting:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *E-mail Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to the Email Notification section of this Manual. This feature is optional.

Advanced

- *Perform copy-only full backups* : Copy Only will allow the user to only execute full Platform Level backups. It will backup the database directory without any SQL transaction logs. It will avoid the influence of the database which is backed up by using the SQL backup feature or the third party software when restoring the database.
- *Perform log backup after full backup* : If you select this option, it will backup the log after the full backup job completes. If you select the copy-only option, this option will be disabled. By default, this option is checked.
- *Generate virtual database mappings* : If virtual database is supported in license, this option is selected by default. When you run a backup job, it will create a mapping file which records the relation between the backup data and Database. The mapping file is used to load data when running Granularity level virtual database restore job.

VDI versus VSS

VDI option uses SQL Server Virtual Device Interface (VDI) to protect the SharePoint databases. It is a flexible stream based backup/restore method.

VSS option uses Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS) snapshot technology. A VSS Backup will have less impact on the SQL server because the length of time to perform the snapshot is usually much shorter than a regular backup. In addition, it does not need to pause the SharePoint indexing crawl during backup.

For SharePoint 2007, in order to use the VSS option for the Platform Level Backup module, please make sure that the following SharePoint hotfixes are applied:

- http://support.microsoft.com/kb/940349/ - VSS update for Windows Server 2003
- http://support.microsoft.com/kb/936867/ - Security Update for SPS 3.0
- http://support.microsoft.com/kb/937832/ - Security Update for SPS 2007
- http://support.microsoft.com/kb/941422/ - Security Update for SharePoint

***Note:**

- If the first backup is set torun as a differential or incremental, it will automatically run as a full backup instead.
- After changing the attribute of a plan, such as adding a database, changing it into copy-only, etc, you must save this plan again.
- VSS supports multi-plan parallel running. Although you can create a multi-plan to assign the task, these plans cannot be run at the same time.
- In SharePoint 2007 environment, VSS supports SQL Server Cluster 2000
- In SharePoint 2007 environment, VSS cannot backup SharePoint Learning Kit

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- VSS can backup Alias DB and Full DNS DB
- VSS can backup the DB if its data is stored in mount point volume. (For more information about mount point volume, please refer to http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa365733(v=VS.85).aspx)
- For VSS backup, the log on user of SQL Server VSS Writer service must be the same as the user of SQL Server service, otherwise VSS cannot work because of SQL Server permission Denied.

The following is a comparison chart to help decide which method best fits your needs:

(5-24) VDI versus VSS

Feature	VDI	VSS
Backup's impact on SQL server	Small	Minimal
SQL 2005 support	Full, Diff., Incr.	Full, Diff., Incr.
Out-of-place restore (DB, Index)	Yes	No
Pause index crawl during backup	Yes	Yes
High Availability: Log Shipping from Platform-level Backup	Yes	Incr
Requires SharePoint Hotfix	No	Yes
SSP restore from differential backup (For SharePoint 2007)	Yes	No
SSA restore (For SharePoint 2010)	Yes	Full, Diff
Multiple plans run in parallel	Yes	Yes

5.3.2.3 Choosing Content

After completing the configuration of the basic Platform Backup options listed in the previous section, proceed to selecting the data to be backed up.

To back up a SharePoint 2007 farm, complete the following steps.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-25) Choosing Content in SharePoint 2007 environment

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Custom Backup Builder > Platform Backup*.
2	On the backup tree builder window, name of the Agent Host selected will now be displayed in the area directly underneath. Clicking on the Agent displays the SharePoint Farm topology. ***Note:** When browsing the Farm tree, the Manager will check the Member Agent version. If the Member Agent version is lower than the Manager version, the Member Agent will be considered as an unavailable Agent and the corresponding data cannot be loaded. If it has never connected to the Manager before, it will not be displayed in *Agent Monitor*. If it has connected to the Manager before, it will be displayed in Agent Monitor and its status is *down*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">3</td><td colspan="2">The expanded Farm Browser lists the SharePoint_Config, Windows SharePoint Services Web Application, WSS_Administration, KnowledgeLake Imaging, Shared Services, Global Search Settings, Windows SharePoint Services Help Search, Info Path Form Services, Windows SharePoint Solutions FAST Search Server Farms, SharePoint Front-End Web Servers and Custom Databases.

Excepting the SharePoint Front-End Web Servers, the tree can be expanded to the lowest level. For each selected level:</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint_Config</td><td>It will display the SharePoint configuration database. You can click the Browse Content icon to view all the site collections stored in this database in the pop-up window. The registered user of control agent must have read or higher permission to the corresponding web application of the database besides the required permissions for Agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Windows SharePoint Services Web Application</td><td>It will display the SharePoint Web Application and the web application’s Content Database(s).</td></tr>
<tr><td>WSS_Administration</td><td>It will display the WSS_Administration Database.</td></tr>
<tr><td>KnowledgeLake Imaging</td><td>It will display the following components: Index Component, View Component, Export Component, Search Component, Search Component and print Component</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharedServices1</td><td>It will display the SharePoint Shared Service Provider (SSP) related components, including SSP database, search database and index. If project server is installed, project server databases are also listed under SSP. From DocAve 5.4, you can back up SSP setting properties by selecting the newly added node Shared Search Settings under SharedServices1.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Global Search Settings</td><td>It will display the Global Search Setting database.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	InfoPath Form Services	It will display all the form templates that are installed on the SharePoint Web Front End and Form Services Configuration.
	Windows SharePoint Solutions	It will display the SharePoint solution's installation files.
	Front-End Web Servers	It will display the IIS settings, SharePoint template hive, custom features, GAC (Global Assembly Collection) and custom site definitions. File system folders can also be expanded and included. ***Note:** If you want to select the GAC to restore, please make sure that only SharePoint customization related assemblies are selected for restore. Restoring system assemblies are not recommended. They must be installed using original installer.
	Custom Databases	Click the **Add** button, all available agents will be listed in the pop-up window. Click the agent name to load all additional databases. Select the database and click **OK**, the database will be listed under *Custom Databases*.
4	There is a check-box corresponding to each level on the data tree, the box is unchecked by default. Checking the box indicates that all content on that level and underneath that level will be backed up.	

To back up a SharePoint 2010 farm, complete the following steps.

(5-26) Choosing Content in SharePoint 2010 Environment

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Custom Backup Builder > Platform Backup*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	On the *Backup Tree Builder* window, name of the Agent Host selected will now be displayed in the area directly underneath. Clicking on the Agent displays the SharePoint Farm topology.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">3</td><td colspan="2">The expanded Farm Browser lists the SharePoint_Config, SharePoint Server State Service, Microsoft SharePoint Foundation Web Application, WSS_Administration, KnowledgeLake Imaging, SharePoint Server State Service Proxy, SPUserCodeV4, Microsoft SharePoint Server Diagnostics Service, Global Search Settings, Application Registry Service, Microsoft SharePoint Foundation Diagnostics Service, Shared Services, InfoPath Form Services, Windows SharePoint Solutions, Fast Search Server Farms, NewsGator Social Site Service 2010, Nintex Workflow and SharePoint Front-End Web Servers.

Excepting the SharePoint Front-End Web Servers, the tree can be expanded to the lowest level. For each selected level:</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint_Config</td><td>It will display the SharePoint configuration database.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint Server State Service</td><td>It will display the database of the SharePoint Server State Service.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Microsoft SharePoint Foundation Web Application</td><td>It will display the SharePoint Web Application and the web application’s Content Database(s), and the node named [Time Jobs Group] contains the status of all the Job Definitions defined under the Web Application.

*Note: If you back up the status of a Customized SharePoint Job Definition and then want to restore it to a specific Farm, please ensure that the related Customized Solutions or Features are deployed in the Farm beforehand.</td></tr>
<tr><td>WSS_Administration</td><td>It will display the WSS_Administration Database.</td></tr>
<tr><td>KnowledgeLake Imaging</td><td>It will display KnowledgeLake Imaging DB named kldata, two solutions and the Service Application.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint Server State Service Proxy</td><td>It will display the Proxy of the SharePoint Server State Service.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	SPUserCodeV4	It will display the properties of SharePoint 2010 Sandbox Solution, including [Solution Validators Group], Sandboxed Code Load Balancer Provider using Popularity, [Resource Measures Group] and [Execution Tiers Group].
	Microsoft SharePoint Server Diagnostics Service	The node contains the diagnostic information of Microsoft SharePoint Server.
	Global Search Settings	It will display the Global Search Setting database.
	Application Registry Service	It will display the Application Registry Service and its database.
	Microsoft SharePoint Foundation Diagnostics Service	The node contains the diagnostic information of Microsoft SharePoint Foundation.
	Shared Services	Shared Service Applications will display the Search Service Application and its Administration Database, Crawl Database and Property Database. And some other Service Applications and the corresponding databases. Shared Service Proxies will display the corresponding proxies of the Service Applications. From DocAve 5.4, you can back up SSP setting properties by selecting the newly added node Shared Search Settings under Shared Services.
	InfoPath Form Services	It will display all the form templates that are installed on the SharePoint Web Front End and Form Services Configuration. The Data Connection Files and Exempt User Agents are also displayed.
	Windows SharePoint Solutions	It will display the SharePoint solution's installation files.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	FAST Search Server Farms	It will display all the FAST Search Server Farms associated with SharePoint. When you select FAST Search Server Farm, there will be a popup message to prompt you to backup the content SSA together. If you click **OK**, the content SSA will be selected automatically. It is recommended to backup and restore the content SSA together. You can refer to the link for the detailed information and the method of manually backing up and restoring FAST Search Server Farms: http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff460221.aspx
	NewsGator Social Site Service 2010	It will display NewsGator solutions, Service Application, Proxy and NewsGator.Social.Library.Utility.NgDiagnosticsService.
	Nintex Workflow	It will display the Config Database, Content Database and two solutions.
	Front-End Web Servers	It will display the IIS settings, SharePoint template hive, custom features, GAC (Global Assembly Collection) and custom site definitions. File system folders can also be expanded and included. ***Note:** If you want to select the GAC to restore, please ensure that only SharePoint customization related assemblies are selected for restore. Restoring system assemblies are not recommended. They must be installed using original installer.
	Custom Databases	Click the **Add** button, all available agents will be listed in the pop-up window. Click the agent name to load all additional databases. Select the database and click **OK**, the database will be listed under *Custom Databases*.
4	There is a check-box corresponding to each level on the data tree, the box is unchecked by default. Checking the box indicates that all content on that level and underneath that level will be backed up.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** If a database has been selected in an existing backup plan, it cannot be selected in other plan.

5.3.2.4 Setting up a Schedule

After selecting the content to be backed up, specify the frequency of the backup job.

(5-27) Setting up a Schedule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Custom Backup Builder* > *Platform Backup*.
2	In the Schedule area, you can set up to six unique schedules associated with that plan(each represented by one of the Clock icons at the top of the Schedule window). Click on the clock icon and it will become highlighted in yellow.
3	Check the Schedule check-box to activate a Schedule. The clock icon you are setting currently will be highlighted in green. When you configure other schedules, this active clock icon will be highlighted in blue.
4	By selecting the Restore Granularity Level check-box, you can set the level of granularity on restore. Choosing Item Version Level will allow you to restore individual files and file versions during a Platform Level restore, while choosing Item will allow you to restore individual files. ***Note:** Generating index files to increase restore granularity will result in longer backup duration.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select a Backup Type for the selected schedule. • *Full* : A full backup of the selected source. • *Incremental* : A partial backup where only data that has been added since the last incremental or full backup is backed up. • *Differential* : A partial backup where only data that has been added since the last full backup is backed up. ***Note:** Frequent consecutive differential backups have a tendency to backup the same data over and over again and fill server space quickly. For best results when conducting high frequency backups, it is recommended to use incremental backups. Incremental backups save time and storage space by backing up only the differences between incremental backups or an incremental backup and a full backup, instead of backing up the entire source location. ***Note:** Between the incremental job and the full job before it, you cannot use the third party's tool to backup the database or backup the database manually. They will make the incremental backup job failed. ***Note:** If you want to run the incremental job, SQL Sever Recovery Models is required to be enabled as **FULL** mode**.**
6	Click on the calendar icon located to the right of the Start Time field.
7	Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
8	Select a time zone in the TimeZone drop-down box. By default, it will be selected according to the Browser's. If you select the time zone which is affected by Daylight Saving Time, the Automatically adjust clock for Daylight Saving Time checkbox will appear. It is recommended to select this option.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Specify the interval at which the backup will occur. The basic intervals are: • *Only Once* : This plan will run at the specified time • *Every Hour, Day, Week or Month* : This plan will run over a specified interval. The Advanced intervals are as follows: • *Hourly* : You can set the plan to run during production hours only, specified in the time window(s) provided, or at specific hours set in the Select Time Below fields. • *Daily* : This will let you run the plan once a day on week-ends only or weekdays only. • *Weekly* : Specify the days of the week to run the plan on, and after how many weeks to recur. • *Monthly* : This will let you set up a custom monthly plan.
10	Specify an Exclude for this job under the Advanced schedule options. This will allow you to prevent plan from running during scheduled maintenance, holidays, etc..
11	Specify a Plan Duration for this job under the Advanced option. This will allow you to terminate the plan after a number of occurrences, or by an appointed date and time.
12	Repeat these steps to create additional schedules (if necessary).
13	Save the plan by clicking **Save**. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the column area on the right.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	To run the plan immediately, click **Run now**. A pop-up window will appear, you should select a Backup Type, and then click **Run** to run this plan. If you want to restore the content of the database at a specified granularity level, you can check the **Restore Granularity Level** option and choose the desired level. If you select this option, it will take some time to generate the corresponding index for restore. You can click the **Go to The Job Report** button to be redirected to Job Monitor to view the job's process, or click **Close** to return from the pop-up window.

***Note:** When scheduling an Incremental or a Differential backup, a Full backup must also be included within the same plan by including it in another available Schedule. Incremental and Differential backup require a Full backup in order to function properly. We recommend using Schedule A as a Full Backup on Sunday and Schedule B as an Incremental backup every day except Sunday.

5.3.2.5 Supported In-place and Out-of-place Features for SharePoint 2007 Environment

Please refer to the following table for the detailed information of the currently supported in-place and out-of-place features for SharePoint 2007 environment.

(5-28) Supported In-place and Out-of-place Features for SharePoint 2007 Environment

Features	Supported in In-place Restore	Supported in Out-of-place Restore	Notes
Configuration Database	√	×	
SharePoint Web Service	√	×	Windows SharePoint Service Web Application and WSS_Administration
Central Admin Web Application	√	×	
Admin Content Database	√	×	
Web Application	√	√	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Features	Supported in In-place Restore	Supported in Out-of-place Restore	Notes
Content Database	√	√	
SSP	√	√	SSP Properties and SharedService_DB
SSP Osearch Index	√	√	We recommend backing up and restoring it with SSP together.
SSP Project Server Application	√	√	PWA Site should be backed up and restored together with the web application to which it belongs.
Global Search Settings	√	√	Farm-level search settings and Crawler impact rules
SharePoint Help Search	√	×	
InfoPath Form Services	√	√	InfoPath Forms Services Settings and InfoPath Forms Services From templates
SSO	√	√	SSO Database and some configuration in Manage Settings for Single Sign-On
FBA Databases	√	×	The FBA Database and some configuration in the Web.config under WebApp IIS Setting (eg: Connection Strings, MemberShipProvider, RoleManagerProvider)
SLK	√	×	SLK Database
Windows SharePoint Solutions	√	√	The uploaded Solution and its configuration in the Solution Management

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Features	Supported in In-place Restore	Supported in Out-of-place Restore	Notes
Front-end Web Server	√	√	IIS Settings, which can be set individually in the WFE server and not saved in SharePoint such as Form Authentication, SSL certification and so on. SharePoint Template directory, it is the most important directory to record the IIS extension. Most useful files like feature files and site definition files in the WFE all can be saved in this directory. In addition, PR can also backup and restore the file system in the WFE server.
Farm Level Backup and Item Level Restore	√	√	This feature has been implemented in 4.5.2 or above. If you want to do item level restore, you should generate index when you do a backup. However, this will affect the backup performance. This is optional.

5.3.2.6 Currently Supported and Unsupported Service Applications for SharePoint 2010 Environment

Please refer to the following table for the detailed information of the currently supported and unsupported Service Applications for SharePoint 2010 environment.

(5-29) Currently Supported and Unsupported Service Applications for SharePoint 2010 Environment

Service Application	Database(s) of the Service Application	Supported in In-place Restore	Supported in Out-of-place Restore
Access Services	This Service Application does not have a database	√	√
Application Registry Service	application registry service database	√	×
Business Data Connectivity Service	Bdc_Service_DB(Business Data Connectivity Database)	√	√

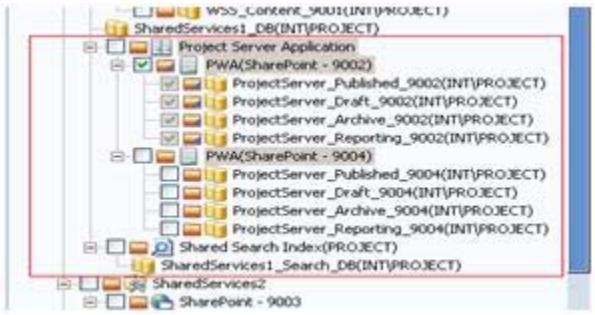
2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Service Application	Database(s) of the Service Application	Supported in In-place Restore	Supported in Out-of-place Restore
Excel Services Application	This Service Application does not have a database	√	√
Managed Metadata Service	Managed Metadata Service_Database(Service Application Database)	√	√
PerformancePoint Service Application	PerformancePoint Service Application_Database(Microsoft.PerformancePoint.Scorecards.BIMonitoringServiceDatabase)	√	√
Search Service Application	Search_Service_Application_DB(Administration Database) Search_Service_Application_CrawlStoreDB(Crawl Database) Search_Service_Application_PropertyStoreDB(Property Database)	√	Search Service Application(Native) is supported and Search Service Application(Fast) is not supported.
Secure Store Service	Secure_Store_Service_DB(Secure Store Service Database)	√	√
Security Token Service Application	This Service Application does not have a database	√	×
State Service	StateService_Database(State Service Database Settings)	√	×
User Profile Service Application	User Profile Service Application_ProfileDB (Microsoft.Office.Server.Administration.ProfileDatabase)User Profile Service Application_SyncDB(Microsoft.Office.Server.Administration.SynchronizationDatabase) User Profile Service Application_SocialDB (Microsoft.Office.Server.Administration.SocialDatabase)	√ The result of In-place restore is the same with SharePoint default restoration.	×
Visio Graphics Service	This Service Application does not have a database	√	√
Web Analytics Service Application	WebAnalyticsServiceApplication_StagingDB(Web Analytics Staging Database) WebAnalyticsServiceApplication_ReportingDB(Web Analytics Warehouse Database)	√	√

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Service Application	Database(s) of the Service Application	Supported in In-place Restore	Supported in Out-of-place Restore
Word Automation Services(Word Conversion Service)	WordAutomationServices_Database(Microsoft.Office.Word.Server.Service.QueueDatabase)	√	√
Lotus Notes Connector	–	×	×
Usage and Health data collection	–	×	×
Word Viewing Service	–	×	×
PowerPoint Service Application	–	×	×
Project Service Application	–	×	×
SQL Server PowerPivot Service Application	–	×	×
Subscription Settings Service Application	Subscription Settings Database	√	√

***Note:** DocAve v5 supports SSP and Project Server backup and restore. In order to run a Project Web Access (PWA) backup and restore, the PWA, the web application to which the PWA belongs, and the databases located beneath the PWA must be selected (see the picture below):



If the items mentioned are not all selected, the PWA site cannot be used after the restore. For more details about Project Server support, please see the section of the Appendix DocAve Solution for Microsoft Office Project Server 2007.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** The Project Server 2010 backup and restore is not supported in current version.

***Note:** DocAve supports Transparent Data Encryption(TDE) of SQL Server 2008.

***Note:** Read-Only DB backup and restore are not supported in both SharePoint 2007 and SharePoint 2010.

5.3.2.7 Supported and Unsupported Feature for Virtual Database

Please refer to the following table for the supported and unsupported feature for virtual database backup.

(5-30) Supported and Unsupported Feature for Virtual Database

Feature	Supported	Unsupported
Full Backup	√	
Copy-only(Full Backup)	√	
Incremental Backup		×
Differential Backup	√	
VDI	√	
VSS	√	
In place	√	
Out of place	√	
Net Share	√	
FTP		×
TSM		×
EMC Centera		×
Cloud Storage		×
NetApp ONTAP		×

5.3.3 Custom Backup CLI

DocAve Custom Backup supports the administrator to run the backup plan by using CLI (CommandLine Interface)

You need to configure DocAveBackup.bat under the directory ...*AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusCLI|bin|DocAveBackup.bat*

To run a granular backup job, execute the following command:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

backup -t backupType -n planName

To run a platform backup job, execute the following command:

backup -t backupType -n planName -r restoreLevel

There are several settings you need to configure.

Basic Settings

- *backupType* : The type of the backup job.
  backupType = "F" represents Full Backup Job
  backupType = "I" represents Incremental Backup Job
  backupType = "D" represents Differential Backup Job
- *planName* : The name of the running plan.

If you want to run a platform backup job, you also need to specify the restore index level for the backup job.

- *restoreLevel* : The restore Granularity level of the job.
  restoreLevel = "1001" represents No Index
  restoreLevel = "1002" represents Site Collection
  restoreLevel = "1003" represents Site
  restoreLevel = "1004" represents Folder
  restoreLevel = "1005" represents Item
  restoreLevel = "1006" represents Item Version

After executing the command line, you can use the DocAveBackupJobReportCollector.bat to view the job report.

5.4 Restore Controller

After a backup plan has completed successfully, the backup data is ready for browsing. To perform a restore, enter the Restore Controller to begin browsing the backup data. In this section, there are three kinds of the restore mode: Granular Restore, Platform Restore and Restore From SQL Backup.

Some operations require additional settings that must be configured prior to restoring contents to SharePoint and these are described below in the Settings section.

***Note:** Currently DocAve does not support restoring SharePoint 2007 backup data to SharePoint 2010 environment directly, this includes the backup data from Granular Backup, Platform Backup and SQL Backups.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5.4.1 Settings

Before running a restore job, you must make sure the basic settings for it have been configured.

5.4.1.1 Staging SQL Server Info

The options below will let you specify a SQL location to perform a restore of contents on a more granular level than the content database. By default, the local instance is used.

(5-31) Staging SQL Server for Platform Restore

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Settings > Staging SQL Server Info*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name for the profile.
3	Under the connection Info, you must enter the information to connect to the SQL server.
4	Select an Agent name from the drop-down box, it will list all the SQL instances of this agent in the SQL Instance Name drop-down list.
5	Select an instance from the drop-down box.
6	Select an Authentication from the drop-down box. If you select the SQL Server Authentication option, you need to enter the necessary information in the SQL Username and Password fields.
7	Under Temporary Database Configuration, you can setup the following two options: • *Minimum amount of free space to leave* : Enter a positive number into the text box to specify the minimum free space to leave on the disk. You can also select the unit used for measurement in the following drop-down box. • *Temp Database fIle Location* : This option is used to specify a location for the temporary database. Enter the path and click **Test**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Click **Save** to save the configuration, it will be listed under the SQL Server Profiles column on the right-hand side.

5.4.1.2 Restore to File System

Restore to file system is used for out-of-place restore of contents directly to the file system. To setup a location, please follow the steps below:

(5-32) Location Setup

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Restore Controller* > *Settings* > *Restore to File System*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name for the location profile.
3	Input the username as domain\username format and then type in the password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored.
4	Click **Test** to test the specific path.
5	Click **Save** to save the profile after a successful test, the profile will be listed in the Restore to File System column on the right side of the screen.

***Note:** DocAve does not support restoring SharePoint system contents to the File system.

***Note:** List items will be restored to empty files (0 KB) because they do not have any content.

5.4.1.3 End User Restore

End User Restore allows you to install a Restore web part in SharePoint to offload the responsibilities of restoring content from the DocAve Administrator or Farm Administrator to the Site Collection Administrators. This is especially useful when the end users do not have enough permission

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

to access to the DocAve Platform. Users must have site collection admin permissions to view the backup data.

In order to use this feature, please navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *DocAve Solution Manager* to install the solution. For SharePoint 2007, it is *AvePointEndUser-ItemRestore.wsp* and for SharePoint 2010, it is *DocAve.SP2010.EndUserRestore.Restore.wsp*. You can refer to section DocAve Solution Manager for the installation steps.

***Note:** From DocAve version 5.5, DocAve supports installing the End User Restore webpart for SharePoint 2010.

5.4.2 Granular Restore

After running a granular backup, you can restore the backup data in Granular Restore.

5.4.2.1 Finding a date range

In order to view all backup data available, you must specify the Farm and the Time Period. This will allow you to see a timeline of all backup data available for the range you defined.

(5-33) Finding A Data Range

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Restore Controller* > *Granular Restore*.
2	Select a farm from the drop-down box.
3	You can choose a time range in the Time Window field. By default, it is one week before the current time.
4	You can click on the calendar icons to the right of the *From* field and the *To* field to change the time range. Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
5	Check the *Include Job(s) with partial backup data* option to show data you backed up successfully in the failed job(s).

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	You can filter the plans by clicking *Additional Filters* to filter the results displayed on the timeline. In the *Additional Filters* window, you can filter the plans by the Plan Name, Backup Mode, Backup Type and Restore Granularity Level by selecting the corresponding check-box(es). • *Plan Name* : Select the plan you want to display from the drop-down box. You can select *Select All* box to select all plans. • *Backup Method* : There are two options you can select: Automated Backup, and Granular Backup. To select the Automated Backup option, it will display the backup jobs performed by *Automation Center*. To select the *Granular Backup*, the backup jobs performed by Granular Backup will be displayed. • *Backup Type* : There are three options you can select: Full, Incremental, and Differential. Select the backup type by clicking the corresponding check-box, then the appropriate backup jobs will be displayed. • *Restore Granularity Level* : There are three options: Site Collection, Site and Item. The corresponding backup job whose Restore Granularity Level is the specified level will be displayed. Click **OK** to save the selection.
7	Click **Load Timeline**. The time points at which you ran the backup jobs will be displayed on the time-line.
8	By clicking on the time point, detailed data and time information for the job will be shown in the pop-up bubble.
9	By clicking on the time point, you can review the content of the job in the tree mode on the left of the screen. If you click the time point of an incremental backup job, *Only show incremental data* option will appear below the *Tree Mode* tab. Select this option, only the backup data of the incremental job can be loaded. ***Note:** If the backup job you want to load is encrypted, it will ask you to enter the corresponding password to access the data.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5.4.2.2 Historic View vs. Single Point View

The data tree mode allows administrators to view the entire topology of their SharePoint environment while navigating. The name of the farm you have selected will be displayed in the area directly underneath, ready for browsing.

There are two viewing methods: Historic View and Single Point View.

- *Historic View* : The Historic View lists all of the backup data before the time point you have selected on the time line.
- *Single Point View* : Single-Point View lists only the backup data of the specified time point.

For example, If you want to log in to find the latest copy of something and you would like to see the whole farm, you do not have to navigate to that individual backup job by using Historic View. However, you must also point out the time-stamps in this view to ensure that you can view when each node was backed up. If you only want to know what was in a single backup plan, you can use Single Point View.

5.4.2.3 The tree browser / search results

Browsing for the backup data to be restored

(5-34) Browsing For The Backup Data

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Restore Controller* > *Granular Restore*.
2	Select one view method in the drop-down box at the top right corner of the tree mode area. By default, the Single Point View is selected.
3	Click on the time point to display the available backup data.
4	Browse through the backup data by clicking on the SharePoint instance to expand the Site Collection located beneath the instance.
5	Click on the name of a specific Site Collection to expand the data tree.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Clicking on the "." expands the tree to display Folders/Lists and content located directly on the top Site of the Site Collection. Clicking on individual Site names expands the tree to display Folders/Lists and content located on those individual Sites.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">7</td><td colspan="2">Select the data to be restored. There is a check-box corresponding to each level on the backup tree which is unchecked by default. You can check the Select All box to select all backup data to restore.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Restoring a File/ File Version</td><td>1. Navigate to the Library/List which contains the File/ File Version.
2. Click the icon to the right of the Library/List.
3. Check the corresponding check-box next to the File/File Version located in the pop-up window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Restoring only a Site Collection</td><td>1. Navigate to the Site Collection and expand its data tree.
2. Check the box next to the "." Beneath the site collection and the entire site collection contents will be selected.
3. If you want to restore only a Site Collection content, check the box next to the Site twice and the check mark becomes a triangle () in the check-box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Restoring a Site</td><td>1. Navigate to the Site.
2. Check the box next to the Site to select the Site and its content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">You can search for a Site/List/Folder/File/File Attribute/Full Text by clicking on the search icon next to the Site URL.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Searching for the backup data to be restored

For larger backups that contain a significant amount of content, browsing through the data for the restore can be inefficient and tedious. For these cases the search mode is recommended.

(5-35) Searching For The Backup Data

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Granular Restore*.
2	Directly to the right of each site URL there is a search icon . Clicking on the icon will open a pop-up window which allows an advanced search for the desired content to be restored.
3	In the search pop-up, select a type of content and add a search criterion in the criteria field. After clicking **Add**, the criteria will be listed underneath. ***Note:** 1. You can only search the content under the job that you select on the timeline. 2. The search can be restricted to be case sensitive by selecting the check-box provided.
4	Click **OK** and you will see a list of all results in the *List Mode*.

5.4.2.4 How to view individual documents

To view the individual documents, see the following steps.

(5-36) View Individual Documents

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Granular Restore*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	You can view an individual document by clicking the icon at the end of the URL. A pop-up window will appear listing all individual documents.
3	To ensure that all metadata and version histories will be restored, it is very important to check both the Securities and the Properties boxes when selecting the content. Otherwise the securities and the properties such as user permissions, version histories, custom columns and other settings may not be restored correctly. For more information about securities and properties, please refer to subsection Security and Property of the SharePoint Objects.

5.4.2.5 Restore Options

You can specify one of the restore options from the drop-down list: Not Overwrite, Overwrite, Overwrite by Modified Time, Append and Replace.

- *Not Overwrite* : DocAve will not restore the content if it already exists on the destination. For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for restore, but only one document was removed from the destination folder, only the removed document will be restored. Selected this option, a check-box *Include Recycle Bin Data* appears. If you select the *Include Recycle Bin Data* check-box and there are the items with the same name in the Recycle Bin, DocAve will not restore the data. If not, DocAve will not check the data in the recycle bin. By default, this check-box is selected.
- *Overwrite* : DocAve will restore the content over duplicate content on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be restored.
- *Overwrite by Modified Time* : DocAve will restore the content over duplicate content on the destination only when the modified time of the backup data is later than the modified time of the destination. You can use this if you have restored content to SharePoint through another method (i.e., farm-level or database-level restore) and want to ensure that the destination has the latest data intact on a granular level.
- *Append* : It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

  ***Note:** This option is only used for item level.

- *Replace* : This option will delete all content in the container of the destination before performing the restore. This can be used to remove unwanted content that will not be deleted by the *Overwrite* option. (This can be looked at as a *Reset* function, to

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

restore a list or library to its original state, removing any contents added since the time of the backup point selected for restore.)

***Note:** By default Overwrite Option looks at items based on the *ID* metadata column. This can be adjusted in the out-of-place restore controller to base on other columns, such as author, modified time, version numbers, or any custom columns defined in the destination list. In order to access this, open the destination SharePoint tree, browse to a list, and use the icon to open a new pop-up. This will let you choose which columns are used for the Overwrite comparison.

***Note:** If the column you selected does not exist in the source, DocAve will add this item in the destination; if there is a different type but with the same name column in the source, it will add this item in the destination; if you perform a restore from list to list without selecting any column as the conflict rule, it will add this item in the destination.

5.4.2.6 How to perform a restore

At the bottom-right section of the Restore Controller, the type of restore (either In Place or Out-of-Place) can be selected. An In Place restore allows the restore of backup data to its original location. An Out-of-Place restore allows the user to specify an alternate location for the backup data to be restored to.

***Note:** The restore job will fail if the destination database is offline.

(5-37) Perform Restore

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">1</td><td colspan="2">Select either an In Place restore or Out of Place restore by selecting the corresponding radio box within the Restore Setting window on the right of the screen.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>In Place</td><td>Click the In Place radio button.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Out of Place	1. Click the *Out of Place* radio button. You can select restoring the data to file system or a farm from the drop-down list. 2. If you select the File System, the *Restore Location* drop-down box will appear. Select the location from the list. For more information about the location setup, please refer to Section Restore to File System of this Manual. 3. Click the **...** button next to the destination. A pop-up window will appear, select the destination by clicking the radio button in the tree, then click **OK**, the location you select will be listed next to the Destination box. 4. If you select a farm to restore, the *Agent Group* drop-down box will appear. Select an agent from the drop-down box. 5. Click the **...** button next to the destination. A pop-up window will appear, select the destination by clicking the radio button in the tree, and select a language from drop-down box for the specific location, then click **OK**, the location you select will be listed next to the Destination box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
		6. There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/List by providing a name in the blank field. Ensure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new Site Collection, the full URL must be used. At the Site or Folder/List level, just the name of the location is sufficient. If you want to create a new site collection, you need to click **Configure** to select a Language and Content Database for the site collection. If the destination site is created with form based authentication, enter a form based authentication user in *SiteCollection Administrator* field, otherwise, the Site Collection will not be created. 7. You can select a language mapping from the drop-down list. For more information for the language mapping, please refer to Section Language Mapping of this mapping.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Within the *Advanced Options* tab, there are several options you can select for the restore job, if the content you select is backed up on item level. • *Workflow Definition* : You can select this option to restore all workflow data with the file. For more information, please refer to the section Workflow Definition. ***Note:** DocAve only supports to restore the workflow which is created in the third party tool *SharePoint Designer*. • *Keep user metadata even if user no longer exists* : Checking this option, you can actually input a valid username into *Place Holder Account* text box to transfer the metadata to the value as the source. Example: domain\username or FBAprovidername: username. The metadata which is displayed as the dead user account will be replicated to the destination. By default, the dead user account will be displayed as System Account if you did not specify a place holder account. ***Note:** This place holder account must be a pre-existing user in that SharePoint destination environment. ***Note:** This option is only used for item level. • *Create a new version for duplicate items/documents* : If you restore an entire site with overwrite, but there are items / documents in a versioning enabled list on this site, it overwrites all other content, but just add a new version to the contents in those versioning enabled lists. ***Note:** Please make sure the lists/libraries you want to restore using this option have enabled the Versioning feature. This option supports both SharePoint 2007 environment and SharePoint 2010 environment. • *Restore contents to a subfolder/subsite* : It will restore the content to the folder/site under the selected destination. ***Note:** This option is only available when using the out-of-place restore, and the source and destination are both on site level or folder level. This option supports both SharePoint 2007 environment and SharePoint 2010 environment.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	• *Include detailed job report for all items in this plan* : If you select this option, it will list the detailed information for all restore items in job report. You can view the detailed report in Job Monitor. • *Restore the latest... versions* : It will restore only the specified versions of the items. You can select to restore the major versions only or both the major and minor versions. • *Restore large site collection by DocAve Restore Method* : Since the site collections larger than 15 GB cannot be restored by SharePoint, you can select this option to restore large site collection by DocAve Restore. Specify the size in **Size greater than** field. The site collections larger than the size specified will be restored by DocAve Restore Method. ***Note:** This option is only available for SharePoint 2007 Site Collection level restore. Reset IIS to clear the cache after the restore job.
4	Within the *Default Options* tab, select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to Section Restore Options of this Manual.
5	Select a time for the restore to run. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and then select a date and time in the pop-up calendar window and click **OK**.
6	You may enter a **Description** in the field provided to help distinguish this job from the others in the Job Monitor.
7	Click **Data Size** to display the data size of the selected backup data in a pop-up.
8	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. If you click **Go**, you can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** In SharePoint 2010 environment, the Archive stub which is created by using Attachment Rule in Archive job will be changed to real data in the destination after the Granular restore.

5.4.3 Platform Restore

Navigate to Platform Restore under Restore Controller in Data Protection. You can restore the backup data in this section for your SharePoint Content Database (including on the granular level when indexed), Front-End Web Servers' Settings and files, and other SharePoint databases and configurations.

In order to restore data, you will need to select a farm, the time range in which your backup took place, and find the contents beneath. See the sections below for more details.

5.4.3.1 Finding a date range

In order to browse the timeline, you must first select a date and time range to search for content.

(5-38) Finding A Data Range

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Platform Restore*.
2	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
3	You can hide the jobs that have not been completely indexed by checking the corresponding box. It supports both SharePoint 2007 environment and SharePoint 2010 environment.
4	You can choose a time range in the Time Window fields for *From* and *To*. By default, it is one week before the current time.
5	You can click on the calendar icon to the right of the *From* and *To* field to change the time range. Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
6	Click **Load Timeline**. It will display the time points at which you run the backup jobs on the time line.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Moving the mouse on the time point, it will list the detailed information of the job in the pop-up window.
8	Clicking on the time point, you can review the content of the job in the Farm Browser area. ***Note:** If the backup job you want to load is encrypted, it will ask you to enter the corresponding password to access the data.

5.4.3.2 The tree browser / search results

To browse the backup data to be restored, please follow the steps below:

(5-39) Browsing For The Backup Data

Step	Action
1	Continue from the *Platform Restore* module, after you have set the data range.
2	Click on the time point to display the available backup data.
3	Click the Agent Host's Name to expand the data tree.
4	You can click **Find Site Collections** to search for a site collection by typing its URL in the corresponding text box and then click **Search**, it will list the database which the site collection is in under the *DB Browser* tab.
5	You can click **Detail** button following the Content Database URL to view the content of the database under the *Detail* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Under the *Detail* tab, it lists the content of the database. Check *Restore Granular Content* box, and then you can click the corresponding URL to expand the tree. ***Note:** For Site Collection level in place restore, if you select this option, DocAve will use item restore method to restore the content. If you do not select it, DocAve will use copy table method to restore the content. For Site Collection level out of place restore, it is controlled by the configuration file. For SharePoint 2007, the configuration file is *FarmEvn.cfg* under the path *...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2007*. For SharePoint 2010, the configuration file is *SP2010.Platform.Configuration.xml* under the path *...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010\Platform*. If the value of *UseCopyTableOutOfPlaceReatore* is *false*, it will use item restore method no matter *Restore Granular Content* is selected or not. Only if the value is *true* and *Restore Granular Content* is not selected, it will use copy table method. By default, the value is *false*. Click the icon to view the content inside, and check the corresponding box to select the content to restore. By default, once you check the content, all items in it will also be checked. If you uncheck some items inside, the check-box will become a triangle sign( ). For large environments, you may limit the results displayed in the window by clicking the icon. For case-sensitive searches, check the *Case Sensitive* box located in the lower-left corner of the window. You can view the search result under the *Search Result* tab.
7	Select the data to be restored. There is a check-box corresponding to each level on the data tree which is by default unchecked.

Historic Content View

This view allows you to browse through a master index of site collections available across all backup jobs, you can select the backup points for each site collection.

***Note:** It supports both SharePoint 2007 environment and SharePoint 2010 environment.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-40) Historic Content View

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Platform Restore*.
2	Click **Historic Content View** on the top-right of the screen.
3	Select the agent from the drop-down box, and the Agent Host will be listed underneath the Farm Browser.
4	Click the Agent Host's name to expand the data tree. All the Site Collections that have been backed up under the farm will be listed.
5	Select the Site Collection you want to view by clicking the corresponding radio box.
6	Click **Show Backups**, the Backup Finder page will appear.
7	You can choose a time range in the Time Window fields for *From* and *To*. By default, it is one week before the current time.
8	Click **Load Timeline**. It will display the time points at which you run the backup jobs on the time line.
9	Clicking on the time point, you can review the content of the job in the Detail area. ***Note:** If the backup job you want to load is encrypted, it will ask you to enter the corresponding password to access the data.
10	Select the data you want to restore by checking the corresponding check-box. To restore more granular content, you can select the *Restore Granular Content* option, and the data tree can be loaded to the level according to the generated index level.

5.4.3.3 Restore Options

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Restore options include four options: Overwrite, Not Overwrite, Append and Replace. You can select each option list in the restore option drop-down box.

- *Overwrite* : DocAve will restore the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be restored.
- *Not Overwrite* : DocAve will not restore the content if it already exists on the destination. For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for restore, but only one document was removed from the destination folder, only the removed document will be restored.
- *Append* : It will create a new item and restore the data to it if the item exists in the destination.

  ***Note:** This option is only used for item level.
- *Replace* : This option will delete all content in the container of the destination before performing the restore. This can be used to remove the content that will not be deleted by the *Overwrite* option. (This can be seem as a *Reset* function, to restore a list or library to it's original state, removing any contents added since the time of the backup point selected for restore.)

  ***Note:** This option is only used for Restore Granular Content.

5.4.3.4 Advanced Options

Within Advanced Options, there are several options you can select for the restore job.

- *Restore Database To Most Recent State* : The High Availability module provides disaster recovery on the content database level. The Platform Level Backup solution will restore the databases to the most recent state if the SQL transaction logs are still available on server.
  For example, if a backup job completed at 1:00 PM and the database server crashes at 2:00 PM. Platform Level Backup will try to restore the databases to the most recent functioning state (at 1:59 PM) even though the last backup data is from 1:00 PM.

  ***Note:** If you select the *Copy Only* option for the backup content, it cannot be restored by using *Restore Database To Most Recent State* option.

  ***Note:** In order to preserve database integrity, the only way to restore the database to its most current state after a point-in-time restore is to complete a new full backup that has only one recovery path. For more information, please refer to section Point-in-time Restore for more information.
- *Restore Whole Farm* : This option is enabled when all farm is selected. For more information about restoring whole farm, please refer to Farm-level Backup & Restore
- *Restore Database Only* : Platform Level Backup will restore the databases to the database server, but will not make the connections with the database to the Share-

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Point environment.
This is useful for when the SharePoint environment is not setup yet (i.e. during a whole farm restore), or for cases where user wants to perform manual steps of bringing up or bringing down specific environments after the database restore.

***Note:** Configuration databases and Central Administration databases can only be restored by selecting this option.

- *Restore Database To Specified SQL Server* : This option is used for restoring the Database to another farm. Please refer to Restore Database to specified SQL server for more information. This option can be used only for the backup data used the VDI backup method.
- *Safe Restore* : After backing up the database using the VDI method and choosing the Overwrite restore option, this option can be used. In "Safe Restore", the Platform Level Backup module will restore to a temporary database first to ensure the success of the restore.
- *Restore front-end file security* : This option is used for backing up and restoring Front-End Files, it will restore the content with the security by selecting this option. Front-End files are all the files of the Front-End server, such as IIS setting files, feature files and the files under Extra File System Folders. If the Front-End files are broken, you can restore them. DocAve will restore the content with the security by selecting this option. If this option is not selected, the security of the files cannot be restored correctly. The user should have read and write permission for the restore files.

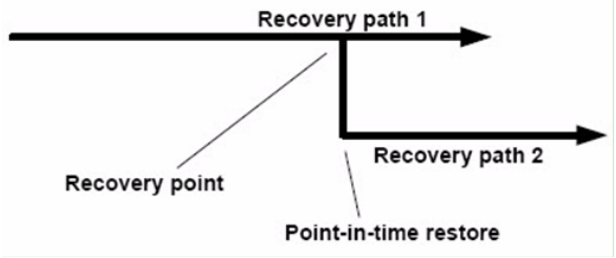
5.4.3.5 Point-in-time Restore

In a point-in-time restore, databases are restored to a time point selected from the timeline.

A point-in-time restore occurs in two restore scenarios:

- The database is restored to a given time from a backed up transaction log.
- The database is restored but only a subset of backed up transaction logs are applied to it.

Performing a point-in-time database recovery results in a new recovery path. The following image illustrates the potential problems when a point-in-time restore is performed.



 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

In this image, Recovery path 1 consists of a full backup followed by a number of transaction log backups (a point-in-time backup). New transaction log backups are created after the point-in-time restore takes place, which results in Recovery path 2. It is not possible to tie the transaction logs created in Recovery path 2 to the full backup belonging to Recovery path 1.

Therefore, to preserve database integrity, the only way to restore the database to its most current state after a point-in-time restore is to complete a new full backup that has only one recovery path.

***Note:** To avoid the problems listed previously, ensure that you always create a full backup after restoring a database to a point-in-time.

5.4.3.6 How to perform restore

Platform Restore supports restore content database or restore indexed content.

At the right bottom section of the Restore Controller, the type of restore (either In Place or Out of Place) can be selected. An In Place restore allows the restore of backup data to its original location. An out-of-place restore allows the user to specify an alternate location for the backup data to be restored to. For more information about the out-of-place restore please refer to section Out of Place Restore of this Manual.

***Note:** The restore job will be failed if the destination database is offline.

Index Database Restore

(5-41) Index Database Restore

Step	Action
1	Continue from the *Platform Restore* module, after you have selected the backup data which you want to restore.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">2</td><td colspan="2">Select either an In Place restore or Out of Place restore by selecting the corresponding options in the window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>In Place</td><td>Select the In Place radio button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Out of Place</td><td>To restore to an alternate farm or location:
Select the Out of Place radio button.
Select an agent from the drop-down list.
Click ... button to the right of the destination field. This will open the Restore Destination window.
Navigate to the location for the restore.
Click the radio box next to the location to select it as the destination.
Click OK.
You can select a language mapping from the drop-down list. For more information for the language mapping, please refer to Section Language Mapping of this manual.
*Note: There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL must be used. At the Site or Folder/List level, just the name of the location is sufficient.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
		***Note:** For SharePoint 2010, if you select Windows Authentication Site Collection in the source and select Claims Based Authentication (CBA) Web Application in the destination, you must configure user mapping in *SP2010.Platform.Configuration.xml* under the path *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2010|Platform*. For example, *<UserMapping SourceUser="domain1\user1" DestinationUser="FBAprovider:user2" />*. If you do not configure user mapping, the job will fail.
3	Check Staging SQL Server check box and select one Staging SQL Server from the drop-down box, it will save the temporary data in this staging location.	
4	You can select the *Workflow Definition* option to restore all workflow data with the file. For more information, please refer to the section Workflow Definition.	
5	If you select the *Include detailed job report for all items in this plan* option, it will list the detailed information for all items restored in job report. You can view the detailed report in Job Monitor.	
6	For Full backup data, the *Use Virtual Database* option is available. If you select this option, when running a restore job, it will create a virtual database in SQL Server instead of temp database to improve efficiency. ***Note:** If you select this option, Compression and Encryption will be unsupported.	
7	Select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to section Restore Options of this Manual.	
8	Select a time for the restore to run. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Select an *Email Notification* profile from the drop-down box, it will send the email to the recipient once the job result matched the Report Notification level.
10	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
11	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

Content Database Restore

(5-42) Content Database Restore

Step	Action	
1	Continue from the *Platform Restore* module, after you have selected the backup data which you want to restore.	
2	Select either an *In Place* restore or *Out of Place* restore by selecting the corresponding options in the window.	
	If...	**Then...**
	In Place	Select the In Place Restore radio button.
	Out of Place	Please refer to the section on Out of Place Restore below.
3	Select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to section Restore Options of this Manual.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select a time for the restore to run. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as the Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
5	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
6	Go to *Advanced Options* tab, select the advanced options if necessary. Please refer to Advanced Options of this Manual for instructions on this process.
7	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

KnowledgeLake Imaging In Place Restore

(5-43) KnowledgeLake Imaging In Place Restore

Step	Action
1	Continue from the *Platform Restore* module, after you have selected the backup data which you want to restore.
2	In *Restore Settings*, only *In Place Restore* option is available.
3	Select a time for the restore to run. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as the Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
4	Enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Go to *Advanced Options* tab, select the advanced options if necessary. Please refer to Advanced Options of this Manual for instructions on this process.
6	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

Granular restore data in SSP

From DocAve 5.4, you can restore the data in SSP, like Shared Service Settings, by using DocAve **Platform Restore**.

To restore the settings for SSP, see the following steps.

(5-44) Granular Restore SSP Settings

Step	Action
1	Continue from the *Platform Restore* module, after you have set the data range.
2	Click on the corresponding time point to display the SSP settings backup data available.
3	Click the Agent Host to expand the data tree.
4	Click **Detail** after the Shared Search Settings to view the content of the Search settings under the Detail tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select the setting you want to restore by checking the corresponding check-box.

You can restore the following settings:
Content Sources
Crawl Rules
File Types
Crawler Impact Rules
Authoritative Pages
Federated Locations
Metadata Properties
Scopes
Search-based Alerts</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">6</td><td colspan="2">Select either an In Place restore or Out of Place restore by selecting the corresponding options in the window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>In Place</td><td>Select the In Place radio button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Out of Place</td><td>To restore to an alternate farm:
Select the Out of Place radio button.
Select the agent where you want to restore the settings from the drop-down box.
Click ... button to the right of the destination field. All the SSPs under the specified agent will be listed in the pop-up window.
Select the SSP which you want to restore the Shared Service Settings to by clicking the corresponding radio box.
Select OK.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	If you select the *Restore the exported Federated Locations* option, it will use the restore method which is provided by Microsoft to restore the Federated Location, but the user authentication information for the federated location which already exists in the destination will be deleted if the restore option is set as Overwrite. If not select this option, it will use the method provided by DocAve.
8	Select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to section Restore Options of this Manual.
9	Select a time for the restore to run. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
10	Select an *Email Notification* profile from the drop-down box, it will send the email to the recipient once the job result matched the Report Notification level.
11	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
12	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as now, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

Restore Database to specified SQL server

DocAve 5.6 supports you to restore the Database to a specified SQL Server, and this restored database cannot affect the operation of the original database. For example, some data in the current active config DB is corrupted, and you want to restore the backup of the database to the farm and fix the corrupted data according to the restored database manually, but not overwrite the original database. In this case, you can perform the following steps to implement this operation.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-45) Restore the Database to Specified SQL Server

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Restore Controller* > *Platform Restore*.
2	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
3	Choose the time range during which you run the backup job in the Time Window fields for *From* and *To*.
4	Click **Load Timeline**. It will display the time points at which you run the backup jobs on the time line.
5	Clicking on the time point of the appropriate backup job, you can review the content of the job in the Farm Browser area.
6	Click the agent name to expand the tree, only select the database by checking the corresponding check-box.
7	Select the In Place Restore option.
8	Select *Overwrite* or *Not Overwrite* from the Restore Option drop-down box.
9	Select a time for the restore job. By default, Now is selected and will run the process as soon as Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
10	Select an *Email Notification* profile from the drop-down box, it will send the email to the recipient once the job result matched the Report Notification level.
11	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	Within *Advanced Options* tab, select the **Restore Database to Specified SQL Server** option, and then specify a Staging SQL Server from the drop-down list. You can click the **Check Space** button to check whether the space of the staging SQL server is enough for the temporary database.
13	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as now, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

Restore SharePoint Service Applications(for SharePoint 2010 environment only)

From the version 5.5, DocAve supports the in place restore of all the Service Applications of SharePoint 2010 and below is a list of the Service Applications supported by the out of place restore feature.

- Access Service Application
- Secure Store Service Application
- PerformancePoint Service Application
- Visio Graphics Service Application
- Managed Metadata Service Application
- Web Analytics Service Application
- Excel Services Application
- Word Automation Services Application
- Business Data Connectivity Service Application
- Search Service Application

To do an in place restore of the Service Applications of SharePoint 2010 environment, see the following steps.

(5-46) In Place Restore SharePoint Service Applications(for SharePoint 2010 environment) only)

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Platform Restore*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
3	Choose the time range when running the backup job in the Time Window fields for *From* and *To*.
4	Click **Load Timeline**. It will display the time points at which you run the backup jobs on the time line.
5	Clicking on the time point of the appropriate backup job, you can review the content of the job in the Farm Browser area.
6	Click the agent name to expand the tree, select the Service Application by checking the corresponding check-box. If you only want to restore the Service Application's database, select the node of the database only.
7	Select the In Place Restore option.
8	Select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to section Restore Options of this Manual.
9	Select a time for the restore job. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
10	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
11	Go to *Advanced Options* tab, select the advanced options if necessary. Please refer to Advanced Options of this Manual for instructions on this process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

To do an out of place restore of the Server Applications of SharePoint 2010, please refer to section Out of Place Restore of this Manual.

***Note:** If the corresponding Service of the Service Application is stopped when running the backup job, the Service Application will be available only if you start the Service manually after the restore job. For User Profile Service Application, you must reset IIS manually after the restore job.

Restore FAST Search Server Farm (for SharePoint 2010 environment only)

From the version 5.6, DocAve supports the in place restore of FAST search server farm and below are the steps.

(5-47) In Place Restore FAST Search Server Farm (for SharePoint 2010 environment)

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Platform Restore*.
2	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
3	Choose the time range when running the backup job in the Time Window fields for *From* and *To*.
4	Click **Load Timeline**. It will display the time points at which you run the backup jobs on the time line.
5	Clicking on the time point of the appropriate backup job, you can review the content of the job in the Farm Browser area.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Click the agent name to expand the tree, select the FAST Search Server Farm by checking the corresponding check-box of Admin server. Click **OK** to select the farm and click **Cancel** to unselect it.
7	Click the **Restore Settings** button beside the Admin server name to configure the settings in the pop-up window.
8	To restore associated SharePoint Content SSAs, check the corresponding check-box.
9	If any FAST search server is reinstalled after the backup and has not been configured, you can check the *Configure FAST Search Servers* check-box to configure it. Enter FAST admin password and select the restore FAST certificate. ***Note:** It is not recommended to select this option if not necessary.
10	If you want to restore FAST certificate, check the corresponding check-box. Select *Generate new FAST certificate* or *Use the certificate from backup* and enter the password. ***Note:** It is not recommended to select this option if not necessary.
11	Click **OK** to save the configuration.
12	Select the In Place Restore option.
13	Select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to section Restore Options of this Manual.
14	Select a time for the restore job. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as **Go** is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
15	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	Go to *Advanced Options* tab, select the advanced options if necessary. Please refer to Advanced Options of this Manual for instructions on this process.
17	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

***Note:** The regular SharePoint index is located in Search Service Application while FAST index is allocated to different servers according to the topology of FAST farm. DocAve backs up and restores the config files and the index file of FAST search server.

Supported and unsupported list for FAST search server farm backup and restore

(5-48) Supported and unsupported list for FAST search server farm backup and restore

Content	Supported	Unsupported
Back up and restore the SharePoint Content SSA associated with FAST farm	√	
Full backup of FAST search server farm	√	
Back up and restore the certificate	√	
Generate a new FAST self-signed certificate	√	
Automatically configure the FAST search server which is reinstalled in the farm	√	
In place restore FAST search server farm	√	
Out of place restore FAST search server farm		√
Configuration backup and restore		√

***Note:** You can refer to the link for more information about the limitations of a configuration backup and restore: http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff460220.aspx

***Note:** You can refer to the link for the detailed information about manually backing up and restoring FAST Search Server Farms: http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff460221.aspx

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5.4.3.7 Out of Place Restore

The out of place restore feature allows the user to copy the data from one SharePoint farm over to another farm.

***Note:** The SharePoint Learning Kit (SLK) is not compatible with the out-of-place restore function.

***Note:** If the source's domain and the users are different from the destination, and you restore the Web Application by using the out-of-place, then restore the IIS, in this condition, the web application restored to the destination cannot be used. You need to change the user to a user of the destination in Application Pool Identity Window to make sure the web application can be used.

(5-49) Out of Place Restore

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Platform Restore*.
2	Select the "Out of Place" option for the restore, and then select the data you want to restore.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td colspan="2">After selecting the agent host from the Destination Agent Host drop-down list, the Destination Component Options will appear. Depending on the selection of the source, the user will have a different set of component.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Selected the source to be just a Database.</td><td>The user must provide the following information:
Database Server : the name of the database server where the database will be moved to.
Database Name : the new database name you will give on the destination server.
Database and Log File Mapping : specify the file location and file name of the database and log file. Click Configure and you will see the default information in the pop-up window. You can change the path and file name in Destination File Path of Database File and Log File.

*Note: The path in the corresponding Destination File Path column is an absolute path which contains the corresponding name of the Database File or Log File.
Parent WebApp URL : the web application on SharePoint where you will attach the database.
Windows Authentication : this is a TRUE and FALSE drop-down box for the Windows Authentication.
Database User : specify the database user if the DocAve Agent does not have an account with administrative rights to the SQL server.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
		• *Database Password* : specify the database user password if the DocAve Agent does not have an account with administrative rights to SQL. • *Failover Database Server(for SharePoint 2010 environment only)* : Associate the database with a specific failover server that is used in conjunction with SQL Server database mirroring.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Selected the source to be just a Web Application	Before you type the information, select the *Pre-defined* or *Configuration* to ensure whether you need to configure the *App Pool User* and *App Pool Password*. • *App Pool User* : The Application pool user for the new web application • *App Pool Password* : This will be the Application pool user's password • *Zone* : The backup zone of the web application • *Description* : The new name of the web application • *Port* : The new port of the web application • *Host Header* : The new host header of the web application • *Path* : The IIS path of the web application • *Load Balance URL* : The new URL for the web application • *Service Application Connections (for SharePoint 2010 environment only)* : You can specify the Service Applications and connections used by the web application after clicking **Edit** and changing the drop-down box named *Edit the following group of connections* to [custom]

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Selected the source to be just a SSP	The user must provide the following information: **SSP information:** • *Name* : The name of the SSP you selected. • *AdminAPP URL* : The URL of the Web Application as the host on the SSP admin site. • *MySite App URL* : The URL of MySite Application you selected. • *MySite Web Path* : The path of MySite Web. • *User and Password* : The account which has the permission to administrate the SSP and the corresponding password. For the information about the Web App and Content DB, please refer to the configuration on selecting the Web App and the Content DB. The configuration of the Search DB is the same as the Content DB's **SSP Index:** • *SSP Name* : The name of the specified SSP, you cannot edit it. • *Index Server* : Select the agent to host the index service from the drop-down box. • *Index file location* : Specify a location for the index file.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Selected the source to be just a Service Application(for SharePoint 2010 environment only)	The user should provide the following information for the Service Application: • *Service Name* : The name of the Service Application. • *Application Pool* : The application pool for the Service Application. You can select *Use existing application pool* to specify an existing application pools. To select *Create new application pool*, you can create a new application pool. • *Select a security account for this application pool* : The security account for the application pool. By selecting *Configurable*, you can choose from the existing security accounts in the drop-down list. If you want to add an account, click *Register new managed account* and type in the *Username* and the *Password*. ***Note:** The specific settings of the Service Application will also be displayed (for example, the option *Audit log enabled* of the Service Application *Secure Store Service*), you can configure them according to your SharePoint settings. The user should provide the following information if there is a corresponding database of the specified Service Application: • *Database Server* : the name of the database server where the database will be moved to. • *Database Name* : the new database name you will give on the destination server.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
		• *Database and Log File Mapping* : specify the file location and file name of the database and log file. Click **Configure** and you will see the default information in the pop-up window. You can change the path and file name in Destination File Path of Database File and Log File. ***Note:** The path in the corresponding Destination File Path column is an absolute path which contains the corresponding name of the Database File or Log File. • *Service Application* : Specify a Service Application to restore the database to ***Note:** If all the components of the Service Application are selected, they can only be restored to the default Service Application ***Note:** Some Service Applications' Databases can be selected separately and then be attached to the Service Applications in the destination. The Service Applications which support attaching databases are: Secure Store Service Application, Managed Metadata Service Application, Word Automation Services Application and Business Data Connectivity Service Application • *Windows Authentication* : this is a TRUE and FALSE drop-down box for the Windows Authentication • *Database User* : specify the database user if the DocAve Agent does not have an account with administrative rights to the SQL server

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
		• *Database Password* : specify the database user password if the DocAve Agent does not have an account with administrative rights to SQL • *Failover Database Server* : You can choose to associate the database with a specific failover server that is used in conjunction with SQL Server database mirroring
	Selected the source to be just a Service Application Proxy(for SharePoint 2010 environment only)	The user should provide the following information: • *Proxy Name* : the name of the Service Application Proxy. Before you type the information below, select *Connect to the specific application* or *Farm or Service Application address* to ensure whether need to configure either the address of the farm's discovery service or the address of the Service Application. • *Connect to the specific application* : Specify a Service Application to connect to. • *Farm or Service Application address* : Configure either the address of the farm's discovery service or the address of the Service Application to connect to. • *Add this service application's proxy to the farm's default proxy list* : Specify whether to restore the proxy to the farm's default proxy list.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	selected the source to be both a Web Application the Web Application's Content Database.	The user must then provide the information from both the Web Application and Database sections.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">4</td><td colspan="2">There are some options within the Advanced Options tab you can select for the database restore.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Restore Database To Most Recent State</td><td>The High availability module provides disaster recovery on the content database level. The Platform Level Backup solution will restore the databases to the most recent state if the SQL transaction logs are still available on server.

For example, if a backup job completed at 1:00 PM and the database server crashes at 2:00 PM. Platform Level Backup will try to restore the databases to the most recent functioning state (at 1:59 PM) even though the last backup data is from 1:00 PM.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Restore Database Only</td><td>Platform Level Backup will restore the databases to the database server, but will not make the connections with the database to the SharePoint environment.

This is useful when the SharePoint environment is not setup yet (i.e. during a whole farm restore), or for cases where user wants to perform manual steps of bringing up or bringing down specific environments after the database restore.

*Note: Configuration databases and Central Administration databases can only be restored by selecting this option.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Safe Restore</td><td>After backing up the database using the VDI method and choosing the Overwrite restore option, this option can be used. In Safe Restore, the Platform Level Backup module will restore to a temporary database first to ensure the success of the restore.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select a Restore Option from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to section Restore Options of this Manual.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select a time for the restore to run. By default, Now is selected and will run the process as soon as the **Go** is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by pressing the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
7	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
8	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

Front-End Web Out of Place Restore

DocAve v5 Platform Level Backup supports backup and restore of Front-End Web Servers.

There are two icons following the Front-End Web Server node, you can use the icon to view the installed programs at the backup time and the current time, and the icon to download a backup list and the current list which list the three attributes(Backup node name, Data size and the Modified time) for the backup data, you can compare these two files to view the modification which cannot be restored.

Different from other restores, when *Front-End Web Feature* is specified in the backup plan to restore, the *Out of place* cannot be selected.

To perform a Front-End Web Out-of-Place Restore, please proceed as follows:

(5-50) Front-End Web Out-of-Place Restore

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Platform Restore*.
2	Select the Front-End Web content you want to restore, and then **Browser** next to the *Out of place restore front-end files to alternate location* will be enabled.
3	Click **Browser**, a pop-up window will appear.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select an agent from the drop-down box to expand the data tree, select the destination location for the Front-End Web content you want to restore. Click **OK**. The path will be listed in the text box.
5	There is also one option within Advanced options tab that you can select for the Front End Web restore. • *Restore front-end file security* : This option is used for restoring Front-End Files, DocAve will restore the content with the security with this option selected. ***Note:** If you want to do an out-of-place restore of hive, you need to stop the SharePoint Service first, then perform a restore with the Restore front-end file security option unchecked.
6	Select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to section Restore Options of this Manual.
7	Select a time for the restore to run. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
8	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
9	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

5.4.3.8 Helpful Notes for Platform Level Backup and Restore

Below are some helpful notes of the Platform level backup and restore jobs:

1. For the out of place restore of one Platform level backup job whose granularity is down to one item, if there are some features that do not exist in the destination farm, the sites

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

which are based on those features could not be restored to the destination successfully. So before restoring some sites which are based on some features which do not exist in the destination farm, you need to ensure the corresponding features have already been deployed in the destination farm.

2. If you want to use the SharePoint Components (that have been backed up) normally after a Platform level restore job, you need to ensure the corresponding services are started after the restore. To backup the SharePoint components, you also need to ensure those services have already been started. Please refer to the table(5-48) below for more information:

(5-51) Services that Need to Be Started For Platform Level Backup

Components of SharePoint	Services that need to be started
Web Application	Windows SharePoint Services Web Application
SSP(Shared Services Provider)	Office SharePoint Server Search
HelpSearch	Windows SharePoint Services Help Search
SSO	Microsoft Single Sign-on Service

3. If there is a Time-out error during the Platform level backup or restore job, please check the *hosts* file locates at *C:|WINDOWS|system32|drivers|etc* and add the corresponding mappings if necessary. Please also ensure each agents can connect with others before running any job. The format of the command is: *Ping Agent Host Name*.
4. In SharePoint 2010 environment, if you delete any Service Application of SharePoint Web Service in Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager after backing up Web-Front-End server (for example, SecurityTokenServiceApplication and Topology), the backup data cannot be restored.
5. In SharePoint 2010 environment, If you run a PR DB restore job, the Archive stub will be restored normally. If you run a PR restore with granularity job, the Archive stub will be changed to real data in the destination. DocAve backs up the real data of page stub created by Extender job to make sure the page can be opened correctly after the restoration.
6. The backup and restore between different farms for the third party stub based on EBS or RBS is not supported.

5.4.4 Restore from SQL Backup

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Restore from SQL Backup is used to restore the SQL database backed up by SQL. Before you do the restore, you must back up the content database in SQL using the SQL backup feature.

5.4.4.1 Restore From Live Database

To restore the content from a live database in the DocAve GUI, please follow the steps below:

(5-52) Restore from Live DB

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Restore Controller* > *Restore from SQL* > *Restore From Live Database*.
2	Enter a SQL Server name in server\instance format. ***Note:** For the default instance, you only need to input the SQL Server's name.
3	Select an authentication from the drop-down box. If you select the *SQL Authentication* option, you need to enter the necessary information in the *Username and Password* fields.
4	Select the appropriate version of the SharePoint Environment you are using in the SharePoint drop-down box, by default SharePoint 2007 is selected.
5	Select the appropriate agent from the *Agent* drop-down box. The agent will be used to load the tree structure of the SQL database you want to restore the data from. ***Note:** The Agent Account should have the system admin role of the SQL Server and it should be in the Administrators group of the machine that hosts the SQL server.
6	Click the Content Database's name under the Agent node to expand the data tree, and select the content you want to restore by checking the corresponding check-box. The tree can be expanded down to the folder level.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	You can click the icon following the tree node to search for the specified site/list/folder. The type of the SharePoint Object you are searching for will be shown in the *Type* drop-down box. Enter the criterion in the *Criteria* textbox and click **Add** to add it to all the search criteria. Check the *Case Sensitive* check box if you want the search to be case sensitive. Click **OK** and the result will be shown in the *Search Result* tab on the right of *Tree Mode* tab. The following columns will be shown: • *Name* : The name of the SharePoint Object. • *Path* : The path of the SharePoint Object in the database. • *Node Type* : The type of the SharePoint Object. • *Security* : Choose whether to restore the security of the SharePoint Object. • *Property* : Choose whether to restore the property of the SharePoint Object. For the detailed information of Security and Property, please refer to section Security and Property of the SharePoint Objects.
8	You can click the icon following the tree node to view the content of the SharePoint Object in the pop-up window. The following columns will be shown: • *ID* : The ID of the file. • *File Name* : The name of the file. • *File Attribute* : The Modified Time of the file. • *Security* : Choose whether to restore the security of the file. For the detailed information of Security and Property, please refer to section Security and Property of the SharePoint Objects. You can check the *Select All* check box to select all the files and their securities. If you do not want to restore the Security/Property of the node, you can select it, click and then uncheck the corresponding check box.
9	You can click the icon following the tree node to refresh the tree structure.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Click **...** button and a pop-up window will appear. Select one agent from the *Agent Name* drop-down list and then load the tree to select a destination for the specific content. After the destination has been specified, it will be listed under the *Restore Settings* area on the right side of the screen. The Agent Name will also be listed. There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree, you can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/List by providing a name in the blank field. For a new Site Collection, the full URL must be used. For the Site or Folder/List level, the name of the location is sufficient. If you select to create a new Site Collection as the destination, the content database which stores the Site Collection could be specified by clicking **Configure** and selecting one content database from the drop-down list. For Web Applications using the Forms Based Authentication, this field is required when creating the corresponding site collection. You need to specify an FBA user in the *Site Collection Administrator* textbox. For the normal Web Applications, this field is optional.
11	Select a restore option: Overwrite or Not Overwrite. • *Overwrite* : DocAve will restore the content over the same one exists on the destination. DocAve will find the same content on the destination and replace it with the corresponding content selected to be restored. • *Not overwrite* : DocAve will not restore the content if it already exists on the destination. For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for restore, but only one document is different from those in the destination folder, only the different document will be restored.
12	If you want to run the restore job later, you can click the calendar icon to specify a time and DocAve will run this restore job at the specific time. If you want to run the job immediately, go to Step 14 directly.
13	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Click **Go**. If you do not set the start time, DocAve will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or you can click **Close** to close the pop-up.

Security and Property of the SharePoint Objects

Please refer to the chart below for the detailed information of Security and Property.

(5-53) Security and Property

Type	SharePoint Object	Attributes of the SharePoint Object which belongs to the specified Type
Security	Site Collection	Users and groups of the Site Collection
	Site	Mappings of the users and their permissions, Permission Levels, Groups, Users
	List	Mappings of the users and their permissions, Users, Groups
	Folder/Item/File	Mappings of the users and their permissions, Users, Groups
Property	Site Collection	Basic information used to create the Site Collection, Other information of the Site Collection, Site Features
	Site	Basic information used to create the Site, Other information of the Site, Site Columns, Site Content Types, Navigation, Site Features, Triggers for the users' actions in the Site
	List	Basic information used to create the List, Other information of the List, List Columns, List Content Types, Triggers for the users' actions in the List, Alert
	Folder/Item/File	Properties of the Folder/Item/File, Alert

5.4.4.2 Staging SQL Server for SQL Backup Restore

Before restoring the SQL backup data, you must specify a temporary database for the backup data.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** SQL Express is not supported for the staging SQL server and DocAve will not load the SQL Express server instance when loading the instances of the staging SQL server.

(5-54) Staging SQL Server SQL Backup Restore Info

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Restore From SQL > Analyze SQL Backup > Staging SQL Server Info.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click New and enter a name for the profile.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Under the Connection Info to Staging SQL Server, you must enter the information to connect to the SQL Server.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">4</td><td colspan="2">There are five kinds of backup data you can restore: SQL Backup Files, TDP Backup Files, DPM Backup Files, STSADM Backup Files, and HP Data Protector Backup Files.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	SQL Backup Files	It will restore the backup data from SQL server. 1. Select an agent name from the drop-down box, it will list the all instance of this server in the SQL Instance Name drop-down list. Select a instance from the drop-down box. 2. Select an Authentication from the drop-down box. If you select the SQL Server Authentication option, you need to enter the necessary information in the User-name and Password fields. 3. After specifying the connection info, you can setup a device to load the backup of the database in Location of SQL Backup Data area. 4. Click **Add a device**, a pop-up window will appear. There are two kinds of devices: Local Drive and UNC Path. • *Local Drive* : To specify a path to load the backup of the database from a local location. • *UNC Path* : To specify a path to load the backup of the database from a network location, you need to input the Username as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data has been written to and stored. 5. Under Temporary Database Configuration, you can setup the following three options: • *Maximum number of temp databases* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum number of the temp DBs. • *Minimum amount of free space to leave* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum size of the temp DBs. • *Temp DB file location* : This option is used to specify a location for the temp DB. Enter the path and click **Test**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	TDP Backup Files	It will restore the TDP backup data. 1. Select an agent name from the drop-down box, and then select an instance from the drop-down box. Please make sure the instance you selected has installed the TDP. 2. Select an authentication from the drop-down box. If you select the SQL Server Authentication option, you need to enter the necessary information in the SQL Username and Password fields. 3. After specifying the connection information, the information of the TSM Node which is used to store the TDP Backup files will be listed under the TSM Node Info area. Specify the password access setting by checking the corresponding radio button. If you select the Prompt option, you need to enter the password to setup the access to the TSM node. ***Note:** If you set the connection info the first time, the password access option will be checked by default according to the information provided in the dsm.opt settings. 4. Under Temporary Database configuration, you can setup the following three options: • *Maximum number of the temp DBs* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum number of the temp DBs. • *Minimum amount of free space to leave* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum size of the temp DBs. • *Temp DB file location* : This option is used to specify a location for the temp DB. Enter the path and click **Test**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	DPM Backup Files	It will restore the DPM backup data. 1. Select an agent name from the drop-down box, and then select an instance from the drop-down box. Please make sure the agent you selected has installed the DPM or being protected by the DPM server. 2. Select an authentication from the drop-down box. If you select the SQL Server Authentication option, you need to enter the necessary information in the SQL Username and Password fields. 3. After specifying the connection info, you can enter a DPM server name to connect to the DPM server in the Location of SQL Backup Data area. 4. Under Temp DB configuration, you can setup the following three options: • *Maximum number of the temp DBs* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum number of the temp DBs. • *Minimum amount of free space to leave* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum size of the temp DBs. • *Temp DB file location* : This option is used to specify a location for the temp DB. Enter the path and click **Test**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	STSADM Backup Files	It will restore the backup data from SQL server. 1. Select an agent name from the drop-down box, it will list the all instance of this server in the Instance Name drop-down list. Select a instance from the drop-down box. 2. Select an authentication from the drop-down box. If you select the SQL Server Authentication option, you need to enter the necessary information in the SQL Username and Password fields. 3. After specifying the connection info, you can setup a device to load the backup of the SQL database in Location of SQL Backup Data area. 4. Click **Add a device**, a pop-up window will appear. There are two kinds of devices: Local Drive and UNC Path. • *Local Drive* : To specify a path to load the backup of the database from a local location. • *UNC Path* : To specify a path to load the backup of the database from a network location, you need to input the Username as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data has been written to and stored. 5. Under Temporary Database configuration, you can setup the following three options: • *Maximum number of the temp DBs* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum number of the temp DBs. • *Minimum amount of free space to leave* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum size of the temp DBs. • *Temp DB file location* : This option is used to specify a location for the temp DB. Enter the path and click **Test**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	HP Data Protector Backup File	It will restore the HP Data Protector backup data. 1. Select an agent name from the drop-down box, it will list the all instance of this server in the Instance Name drop-down list. Select a instance from the drop-down box. 2. Select an authentication from the drop-down box. If you select the SQL Server Authentication option, you need to enter the necessary information in the SQL Username and Password fields. 3. After specifying the connection info, you can setup a device to load the backup of the SQL database in Source Devices area. 4. Under Temp DB configuration, you can setup the following three options: • *Maximum number of the temp DBs* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum number of the temp DBs. • *Minimum amount of free space to leave* : Enter a positive number to limit the maximum size of the temp DBs. • *Temp DB file location* : This option is used to specify a location for the temp DB. Enter the path and click **Test**.
5	Click **Save** to save the configuration, it will be list under the SQL Server Profiles column on the right-hand side.	

5.4.4.3 Analyze SQL Backup

In order to restore granular contents from your SQL backups, you must first analyze and index the backups. This will allow you to explore the SharePoint structure as you would when restoring a live content database.

SQL Backup Files Mode

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-55) Analyze SQL Backup for SQL Backup Files

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Analyze SQL Backup*.
2	Click **New**.
3	Select the *SQL Backup Files* option from the Mode drop-down box.
4	Select a Staging SQL Server Info from the drop-down box, the Find SQL Backup Files button will be activated.
5	Specify the SharePoint Environment you are using by selecting one from the drop-down list. By default, SharePoint 2007 is selected.
6	Select a Filter from the drop-down box. This option is optional.
7	Select an Index Storage Location from the drop-down box. Please refer to Section Device Manager for instruction on this process.
8	For Full and Differential SQL backup data, the *Use Virtual Database* option is available. If you select this option, when running the job, it will create a virtual database in SQL Server instead of temp database to improve restoration efficiency. ***Note:** If you select this option, Compression and Encryption will be unsupported.
9	Click **Find SQL Backup Files**, a pop-up window will appear.
10	Click the Agent Host name in the pop-up window to load the path of the source device.
11	Click the path, the SQL backup data will be listed on the right side of the pop-up window.
12	Select the backup data by checking the corresponding box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	Click **OK** to close the pop-up window, and the selected backup data will be listed under the Find SQL Backup Files button.
14	Click the URL of the backup data, the details of the database will be listed on the right side. Select the database file by checking the check-box. ***Note:** If a DB is backed up in multiple files, when you select one of the backup files, the other related backup files will be selected auto-matically. If the list under *Find SQL Backup Files* does not include all the backup files of the DB, it will prompt you to check the selected backup data.
15	Click **Go** and run this job immediately or specify a time to run the anal-ysis job later in the pop-up window. You can also enter a description to distinguish this job from the others in Job Monitor. The job will be listed in the Job Viewer column on the right. If you click **Run**, a pop-up window will show up, you can click **Go to Job Report** to navigate to Job Monitor to view the progress of the job or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

TDP Backup Files Mode

(5-56) Analyze SQL Backup For TDP Backup Files

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Set-tings > Analyze SQL Backup*.
2	Click **New**.
3	Select the *TDP Backup Files* option from the Mode drop-down box.
4	Select a staging SQL Server Info from the drop-down box, the **Find TDP Backup Files** will be activated.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select an Index Storage Location from the drop-down box. Please refer to Section Device Manager for instruction on this process.
6	Specify the SharePoint Environment you are using by selecting one from the drop-down list. By default, SharePoint 2007 is selected.
7	Click **Find TDP Backup Files**, all the backup data will be listed under the Find TDP Backup Files button.
8	Select the backup data by checking the corresponding box, the details of the database will be listed on the right side. Select the database file by checking the check-box. ***Note:** We only support the Full backup data now.
9	Click **Go** and run this job immediately or specify a time to run the analysis job later in the pop-up window. You can also enter a description to distinguish this job from the others in Job Monitor. The job will be listed in the Job Viewer column on the right. If you click **Run**, a pop-up window will show up, you can click **Go to Job Report** to navigate to Job Monitor to view the progress of the job or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

DPM Backup Files Mode

(5-57) Analyze SQL Backup For DPM Backup Files

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Settings > Analyze SQL Backup*.
2	Click **New**.
3	Select the *DPM Backup Files* option from the Mode drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select a staging SQL Server Info from the drop-down box, the **Find DPM Backup Files** will be activated.
5	Select an Index Storage Location from the Index Storage Location drop-down box. Please refer to Section Device Manager for instruction on this process.
6	Specify the SharePoint Environment you are using by selecting one from the drop-down list. By default, SharePoint 2007 is selected.
7	Click **Find DPM Backup Files**, a pop-up window will appear.
8	Click the DPM server name in the pop-up window to load the protection group.
9	Click the protection group, the data source will be listed on the right side of the pop-up window.
10	Select the data source by checking the corresponding box. Click **OK** to load the backup tree in DPM.
11	Select one backup data by clicking the corresponding database.
12	Click **OK** to close the pop-up window, and the selected backup data will be listed under the Find DPM SQl Backup Files button.
13	Select the backup data by checking the corresponding box, the details of the database will be listed on the right side. Select the database file by checking the check-box.
14	Click **Go** and run this job immediately or specify a time to run the analysis job later in the pop-up window. You can also enter a description to distinguish this job from the others in Job Monitor. The job will be listed in the Job Viewer column on the right. If you click **Run**, a pop-up window will show up, you can click **Go to Job Report** to navigate to Job Monitor to view the progress of the job or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

STSADM Backup Files Mode

(5-58) Analyze SQL Backup For STSADM Backup Files

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Settings > Analyze SQL Backup*.
2	Click **New**.
3	Select the *STSADM Backup Files* option from the Mode drop-down box.
4	Select a staging SQL Server Info from the drop-down box, the **Find STSADM Backup Files** will be activated.
5	Select the Backup Level for the analyze job. If you select the Site Collection level, you can specify whether generate the index for the site collection. If select to generate the index, you need to specify a index storage location for it, otherwise, it will not generate the index, and you can only load the data to the site collection level. When you run the restore job, you need to specify a database for this site collection.
6	If you select Database in Backup Level, the *Use Virtual Database* option will be available. If you select this option, when running the job, it will create a virtual database in SQL Server instead of temp database to improve restoration efficiency. ***Note:** If you select this option, Compression and Encryption will be unsupported.
7	Select an Index Storage Location from the Index Storage Location drop-down box. Please refer to Section Device Manager for instruction on this process.
8	Specify the SharePoint Environment you are using by selecting one from the drop-down list. By default, SharePoint 2007 is selected.
9	Click **Find STSADM Backup Files**, a pop-up window will appear.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Click the STSADM server name in the pop-up window to load the backup location.
11	Click the backup location, the database will be listed on the right side of the pop-up window.
12	Select the database by checking the corresponding box.
13	Click **OK** to close the pop-up window, and the selected backup data will be listed under the Find STSADM SQl Backup Files button.
14	Select the backup data by checking the corresponding box, the details of the database will be listed on the right side. Select the database file by checking the check-box.
15	Click **Go** and run this job immediately or specify a time to run the analysis job later in the pop-up window. You can also enter a description to distinguish this job from the others in Job Monitor. The job will be listed in the Job Viewer column on the right. If you click **Run**, a pop-up window will show up, you can click **Go to Job Report** to navigate to Job Monitor to view the progress of the job or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

HP Data Protector Backup Files Mode

(5-59) Analyze SQL Backup for HP Data Protector Backup Files

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Analyze SQL Backup*.
2	Click **New**.
3	Select the *HP Data Protector Backup Files* option from the Mode drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select a staging SQL Server Info from the drop-down box, the Find HP Data Protector Backup Files will be activated.
5	Select an Index Storage Location from the drop-down box. Please refer to Section Device Manager for instruction on this process.
6	Specify the SharePoint Environment you are using by selecting one from the drop-down list. By default, SharePoint 2007 is selected.
7	Click **Find HP Data Protector Backup Files**, a pop-up window will appear.
8	Click the SQL server name in the pop-up window to load the path of the source device.
9	Click the path, the SQL backup data will be listed on the right side of the pop-up window.
10	Select the backup data by checking the corresponding box.
11	Click **OK** to close the pop-up window, and the selected backup data will be listed under the Find HP Data Protector Backup Files button.
12	Click the URL of the backup data, the details of the database will be listed on the right side. Select the database file by checking the check-box.
13	Click **Go** and run this job immediately or specify a time to run the analysis job later in the pop-up window. You can also enter a description to distinguish this job from the others in Job Monitor. The job will be listed in the Job Viewer column on the right. If you click **Run**, a pop-up window will show up, you can click **Go to Job Report** to navigate to Job Monitor to view the progress of the job or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

5.4.4.4 Restore from SQL Backup

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

In this area, it has five kinds of restore methods: SQL Backup Files, TDP Backup Files, DPM Backup Files, STSADM Backup Files, and HP Data Protector Backup Files. In order to use these methods to restore the SQL database, you must run an analyzed job first. Please refer to Section Analyze SQL Backup for instruction on this process.

***Note:** In this module, you can restore the five kinds of backup files for both SharePoint 2007 environment and SharePoint 2010 environment.

(5-60) Restore from SQL Backup

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Restore Controller* > *Restore From SQL* > *Restore From SQL Backup*.
2	Select the backup file you want to restore from the SQL Data Source drop-down box. If you select the STSADM Backup Files, you must select a backup level for the analyzed job. If you select the Site Collection level, you can specify whether generate the index for the site collection. If select to generate the index, you need to specify a index storage location for it, otherwise, it will not generate the index, and you can only load the data to the site collection level. When you run the restore job, you need to specify a database for this site collection.
3	Select a Analyzed Job from the drop-down box, the backup of the database selected in this analyzed job will be listed underneath.
4	Select the database you want to restore by click the corresponding radio button.
5	Click **...** button to select a destination for the specific content. After you select it, it will be listed under the Restore Settings area on the right side of the screen.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select a restore option: Overwrite or Not Overwrite. • *Overwrite* : DocAve will restore the content over the same one exists on the destination. This will find the same content on the destination and replace it with the corresponding content selected to be restored. • *Not overwrite* : DocAve will not restore the content if it already exists on the destination. For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for restore, but only one document was removed from the destination folder, only the removed document will be restored.
7	Select a time for the restore to run. By default, Now is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as Go is clicked. You can set the Start Time for this restore by clicking the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
8	You may enter a *Description* in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
9	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

5.4.4.5 Restoring contents from a third party SQL backup

You can also leverage restore from SQL Backups to perform a full-fidelity item level restore from proprietary backups, such as Microsoft's Data Protection Manager (DPM) or any other SQL backup.

To restore the content from a third party SQL backup, you need to stage your database backup to a SQL Server instance first, and then follow the steps for connecting to a Restore From Live Database and browse for the granular items from there. The restore from SQL backups offers a full-fidelity restore of your contents, permissions, and settings.

5.5 High Availability

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocAve High Availability module is a one-switch disaster recovery solution for Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services and Microsoft SharePoint Server. It enables SQL database replication to a stand-by environment in order to minimize downtime, or allows you to leverage SQL alias to replicate databases within the same farm to separate SQL instances.

***Note:** Currently the SharePoint High Availability module is not compatible with SQL Express.

***Note:** This function needs certificate endpoint, and will create master key in SQL server. If you have created a master key in SQL server, it will use this master key directly. Otherwise, you can create it in DocAve configuration page. If you did not configure it in DocAve configuration page either, High Availability will create a default one automatically.

5.5.1 Installation

To install the DocAve High Availability module, please follow the instructions below.

***Note:** When you setup the DocAve Agent, please make sure the agent host name must be a hostname not the IP address. If you setup it as a IP address, it will cause some issues.

(5-61) High Availability Installation

Step	Actions
1	Please make sure that there are DocAve Agents installed on the SharePoint Web Front-End (WFE) and the SharePoint SQL back-end.
2	Log onto the production SharePoint WFE.
3	Under Windows, proceed to *Start >All Programs >AvePoint DocAve v5 >DocAve v5 Agent Tools > Agent Configuration Tool*.
4	Please make sure that the check-box for High Availability Sync Agent has been checked.
5	Log onto the production SharePoint SQL back-end.
6	Proceed to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Agent Tools > Agent Configuration Tool*.
7	Please make sure that in the check-boxes below that the High Availability SQL Agent has been checked.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Actions
8	Log onto the standby SharePoint WFE.
9	Proceed to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Agent Tools > Agent Configuration Tool*.
10	Please make sure that the check-box for High Availability Sync Agent has been checked.
11	Log onto the standby SharePoint SQL back-end.
12	Proceed to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Agent Tools > Agent Configuration Tool*.
13	Please make sure that in the check-boxes below that High Availability SQL Agent has been checked.

***Note:** The DocAve Agent Name must be the machine name, otherwise, you will not find the agent when setup a High Availability job. You can configure it in the Agent Configuration Tool or the Agent Monitor in DocAve.

Used ports in High Availability

To run the High Availability job properly, the following port will be used.

(5-62) Used Ports in High Availability

Port Number	Description
10103	The DocAve agent service port, by default, the port is 10103.
13213	The HA listen port. This port is used to receive data for Standby SQL. You can edit it by adding a new value of the HAListenPort in the …\Ave-Point\DocAve5\Agent\data\VCEnv.cfg. The format of the node should be HAL-istenPort="20000"

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Port Number	Description
5022--	The port(s) is used for SQL Mirroring, the number of the port used by DocAve is defined according to the number of the instance(s). For example, there are two instances in one SQL, the port 5022 and 5023 will be used for the two instances. You can configure it in SQLMIRRORVCEnv.cfg under the path ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SPDR.

5.5.2 Stand-By Farm Failover

High Availability can be configured using a stand-by farm to sync the databases between one SharePoint instance and your disaster recovery (DR) one. In order to accomplish this, a secondary farm must be configured with a High Availability Agent installed.

5.5.2.1 Rule Builder

Rule Builder is used to build a sync between two SQL instances, please follow the steps below to build a sync.

(5-63) High Availability Rule Builder

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *High Availability* > *Rule Builder*.
2	Click **New** to create a new plan. Enter a Plan Name in the corresponding text box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Select a sync method from the drop-down box. The options are Log Shipping, SQL Mirroring and Log Shipping from Platform Level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Log Shipping</td><td>This option will do a replication at the log level.

This level of replication will be up to date after a few hours.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SQL Mirroring</td><td>This option will do a replication at the transaction level.

This level of replication will be up to date after an hour or less, but this level of replication requires three times the log generation speed. This means that the network transfer speed between production and standby will be faster than three times the log generation speed on production.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Log Shipping from Platform level</td><td>This sync method will allow the Platform Level Backup module and the High Availability module to backup/replicate the same database. This sync method will require the user to run a Platform Level Backup of the database.

The High Availability module can execute the Platform Level Backup directly from this module. In order to do this, go to Offline Sync section and select Export. Specify the Sync Method as Log Shipping from Platform Level.

Specify the Platform Level Backup location as either a default or net location by using the radio button. If a default location is selected, you will see the appropriate Media Server below. If you choose to export to a network location, enter the appropriate information in the pop-up window, then click Save to save the configuration.

*Note: Log Shipping from Platform Level can only support backups that have been executed using the VDI method. For more information, please see Platform Backup section of this user guide.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Under Basic Settings tab, you can select Compression and Encyption options and select the Throttle Control profile from the drop-down box.

• Compression : Selecting the checkbox will compress the backup data before migrating and decompress after migration. This can enhance the transmission speed.

• Encryption : This option allows the users to encrypt the data during the replication transfer.

• Throttle Control : This option will enable you to specify the network bandwidth for the data replication from the product server to the stand-by SQL server. Select a profile from the drop-down box. If un-checking this option, it will use entire bandwidth to transfer the data between the product server and stand-by SQL server. For more information of setting Throttle Control, please refer to the Section Throttle Control of this Manual. You can also click the name to go to the Setting interface to configure this setting.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Under *Schedule* tab, you can enable the schedule by un-checking *No Schedule* option. Select Synchronize or Initialize\Reinitialize methods. • *Synchronize* : Selecting this option, it will make the data between production database and standby database synchronously basing on the data stored in the database currently. • *Initialize\Reinitialize* : Selecting this option, it will replicate the entire data from production server to the standby server. ***Note:** If you have selected Log Shipping sync method, only the Synchronize option is enabled.
6	Specify a start time by clicking the calendar icon. Select a interval from the drop-down box. The options are Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, Month and Always Run. ***Note:** If the option *Always Run* is selected, DocAve will run the job every 30 seconds. If the last job status is failed or skipped, DocAve will rerun this job after 10 minutes by default. You can change the delay time in the configuration file *zeus-job.properties* in the following path *...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Manager\ZeusJob\etc* by changing the value of the node *Zeus.AlwaysRun.Interval*.
7	Select a source agent from the drop-down box on the lower-left of the screen. If the Source Agent is a SharePoint 2010 Agent, the drop-down box named Stand-By SharePoint Agent under the Stand-By Server section will be available. If you select a content DB under Web Application and select a Stand-By SharePoint Agent, it will create a Web Application with the same name of the source Web Application in the Stand-By SharePoint environment.
8	Click *Farm Component Root* to expand the data tree. The web application and the corresponding available content databases for backup will be displayed.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Select a web application, SSO or SSP to replicate to the standby Server by checking the corresponding check-box.

*Note: Before running the job, make sure the recovery model of the Database selected is full. By default, the recovery models of SSP Database and SSP Search Database in SharePoint 2007 and Service Search Application Database and User Profile Service Database in SharePoint 2010 are simple. To change the recovery model, open SQL Server Management Studio. Right click the Database and select Properties. Click Options tab and select Full in Recovery model field. Click OK to save the change.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Under the Stand-by Server section, select a SQL Agent Host from the drop-down box as the destination SQL server to replicate the database to.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">11</td><td colspan="2">Select a SQL instance from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no instance name</td><td>Select the default instance from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is an instance name or multiple instance names</td><td>Select the destination instance from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save this plan, it will be displayed on the right. You can select one agent in the Agent drop-down box to display all the plans created under the corresponding agent. By default, All is selected.

You can click Save as to save the original plan as a new one after choosing the different content to back up.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">If you want to reselect the nodes, click Clear to clear all the nodes you have selected on the tree.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Click **Run** to execute this plan immediately. You can also specify a start time for the job by clicking the calendar icon.

5.5.2.2 Failover Controller

Failover Controller consists of the following features: Failover Plan, Bring Online and Bring Offline.

Failover Plan

A Failover Plan is used to relate a standby Web application and several production content databases to enable the standby server when the production server is down.

(5-64) Failover Plan

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > High Availability > Failover Controller > Failover Plan*.
2	Click **New** and then enter a plan name.
3	Select a Production SharePoint Agent and Stand-By SharePoint Agent from the appropriate drop-down box. The two Agents must be the same type.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">4</td><td colspan="2">Click Farm Component Root to expand the data tree. There are three kinds of databases listed underneath: Web Application, SSO, and SSP.

*Note: If the farm component has already been involved in a failover job or configured in one plan, it cannot be configured in other plans.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Web Application</td><td>1. Check the corresponding check-box, a pop-up window will appear.
2. Select a Web Application of the stand-by server to bring the database online for failover.
3. You can view the sync method of the database in the information table.
4. Click OK to save the settings.
5. You can click to edit the configuration.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	SSO	1. Check the corresponding check-box, a pop-up window will appear. 2. Enter SSO Admin ID, SSO AppDefAdmin ID, SSO Ticket Timeout, and SSO Audit Purge. • *SSO Admin ID* : Type the group name or user account that can setup and manage the Single Sign-on Service. • *SSO AppDef Admin ID* : Type the group name or user that can setup and manage enterprise application definitions. • *SSO Ticket Timeout* : Enter the integer number to specify the time for timeout. • *SSO Audit Purge* : Enter the integer number to specify the time to hold records in the audit. 3. Click **OK** to save the configuration. 4. You can click to edit the configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	SSP	1. Check the corresponding check-box, a pop-up window will appear. 2. Select a Web Application of the stand-by server to bring the database online for failover. 3. Enter SSP Name, SSP Admin ID, and SSP Admin Password. • *SSP Name* : Type the name of Shared Services Provider. • *SSP Admin ID and SSP Admin Password* : Enter the name and password for the SSP Web services for using the inter-server communication and running SSP-scoped timer jobs. • *My Site Application URL* : Enter the URL of My Site Application. For example, http://test/. • *My Site Web Path* : Enter My Site Web path. For example, /MySite. 4. You can view the sync method of the database in the information table. 5. Click **OK** to save the settings. 6. You can click to edit the configuration.
5	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed on the right column.	
6	Click **Failover** to run the plan, you can select to bring offline production environment, keep SQL mirroring session or keep database read-only by checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Run** to run this job. *Keep database read-only* allows you to bring the Stand-By DB online in the read only state without breaking the High Availability log shipping link. By default, it is checked. You can go to Job Monitor to view the process of the plan.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Fallback Plan

Fallback Plan is used to sync the data from the Stand-by Server to the Production Server for the Production Server recovery. You can select the content you want to fallback and click **Fallback**.

***Note:** Only the database which has been synchronized from production server using the SQL Mirroring sync method can fallback.

Script Triggered Failover

Script can also be run to failover the failover group from external source, this will allow user to plug DocAve High Availability with their existing auto-failover detection mechanism.

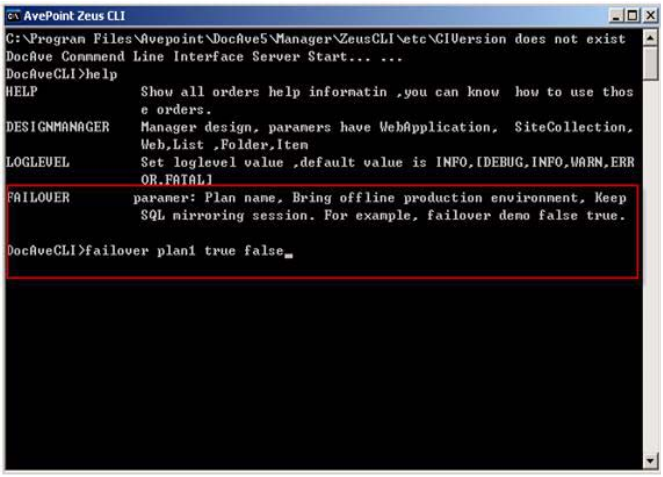
To perform a script striggered failover, please follow the steps below.

***Note:** If you want to use this function, please make sure there is a plan in Failover Plan in DocAve.

(5-65) Script Striggered Failover

Step	Action
1	Open the *failover-config.xml* under the directory *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusCLI|etc* in Notepad.
2	In this xml file, you can edit the value of the plan name, the value of *Bring offline production environment*, and the value of *Keep SQL mirroring session*. *True* represents selecting the option, *False* represents unselecting the option. ***Note:** The coding method must be *UTF-8* for this *failover-config.xml* file.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Save the modification. There are two methods to run the plan by using command line.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>The first method</td><td>1. Double click the DocAveCLI.bat under ...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|Zeus-CLI|bin to open it.
2. Enter Failover Planname true/false true/false.
 

*Note: The Failover plan name must be marked by the quotation.
3. Press Enter key to run the plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The second method</td><td>After editing the configuration, double click Failover.bat under ...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusCLI|bin to run the plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">You can go to Job Monitor to view the process and the detailed information about the job.</td></tr>
</table>

Bring Online

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Bring Online is used to relate a standby content database and a Web application to enable the standby database when the production server is down. For SSP, an administrator need to create a blank web application on the standby SharePoint prior to bring the database online.

***Note:** The blank Web Application means a Web Application without a content database or with a content database which does not have Site Collection.

To bring a database online, perform the following:

(5-66) Bring Online

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *High Availability* > *Failover Controller* > *Bring Online*.
2	Select the *SPDR Agent Host* from the drop-down box.
3	Check the *Scan all databases* box, it will load all databases which are isolated and not related to the current SharePoint farm under this agent. By default, only the databases which have been set up a sync rule by using High Availability can be loaded. ***Note:** *Scan all databases* option should be checked before selecting the SQL Agent Host. This is only affecting users who uses HA to bring offline and online databases without any sort of synchronization.
4	Select the SQL Agent Host. If you want to access the SQL server by Windows authentication, you need to select the integrated security option. Otherwise, enter the necessary information in the SQL User name and password fields.
5	Select a Database under the *Database Root* listed on the left-hand of the screen.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">For SharePoint 2007 environment, select the desired Farm Component Type from the drop-down list: either the Web Application, SSP or SSO.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>SSP or SSO is selected</td><td>Select the SQL Agent Host and the SSO or SSP server and the Database Root will be listed on the left-hand of the screen.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Web Application</td><td>Select the Web Application from the corresponding drop-down list.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">For SharePoint 2010 environment, select the SQL Agent Host, the Web Applications and services will be listed under Database Root. Click the check-box of Web Application or service and enter the configuration information in the pop-up window. Click the icon beside the service or Web Application name to edit the configuration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">You can choose to Keep SQL mirroring session or Keep database read-only by selecting the corresponding check-box.
Keep SQL mirroring session is intended for the databases synchronized using the Sync Method of SQL Mirroring, and Keep database read-only is intended for the ones synchronized using the Sync Method of Log Shipping or Log Shipping from Platform Level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Select a database status(Ready or Offline) for the specified database from the Content Database State drop-down box and click Bring Online.</td></tr>
</table>

Bring Offline

Bring Offline is used to countermand the relation between the Web Application and the content database to remove content database from the web application.

To bring a database offline, perform the following:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-67) Bring Offline

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > High Availability > Failover Controller > Bring Offline*.
2	Select a *SPDR Agent Host* and a *Web Application* from the drop-down lists.
3	You will view all databases under this web application on the right of the screen.
4	Select the Database under the *Database Root* tree.
5	Click **Bring Offline** and it will notify the administrator that the SQL database has been successfully taken offline. The SharePoint content will no longer be visible.

5.5.3 Single Farm Failover

In a distributed farm, frequently several of the SharePoint infrastructure components can be located at separate locations, such as a nearby disaster recovery site. This DR site might include a standby web front end server and a standby SQL server. This form of high availability will allow you to replicate the content, admin, and config databases, (including the SSP) to the standby site, while leveraging SQL Alias on the SharePoint front end web servers to switch to the secondary databases in the event of a disaster. For more information, please see the sections below.

***Note:** User needs to define the failover plan before disaster happens.

5.5.3.1 Rule Builder

is used to build a sync between two SQL instances., please follow the steps below to build a sync.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-68) High Availability Rule Builder

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Data Protection > High Availability > Rule Builder.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click New to create a plan. Enter a Plan Name in the corresponding text box.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Select a sync method from the drop-down box. The options are Log Shipping, SQL Mirroring and Log Shipping from Platform Level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Log Shipping</td><td>This option will do a replication at the log level.

This level of replication only be up to date after a few hours.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SQL Mirroring</td><td>This option will do a replication at the transaction level.

This level of replication will be up to date after an hour or less, but this level of replication requires three times the log generation speed. This means that the network transfer speed between production and standby will be faster than three times the log generation speed on production.

*Note: If you use SQL Mirroring for a SharePoint 2010 agent, you also need to configure the Failover Method. By default, SQL Alias is used. If you select the SharePoint Failover Server option, DocAve will use the Failover Server configured in SharePoint 2010 environment for the mirrored database(s).</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Log Shipping from Platform level	This sync method will allow the Platform Level Backup module and the High Availability module to backup/replicate the same database. This sync method will require the user to run a Platform Level Backup of the database. The High Availability module can execute the Platform Level Backup directly from this module. In order to do this, go to *Offline Sync* section and select *Export*. Specify the Sync Method as *Log Shipping from Platform Level*. Specify the Platform Level Backup location as either a default or net location by using the radio button. If a default location is selected, you will see the appropriate Media Server below. If you choose to export to a network location, enter the appropriate information in the pop-up window, then click **Save** to save the configuration. ***Note: Log Shipping from Platform Level** can only support backups that have been executed using the VDI method. For more information, please see Platform Backup section of this user guide.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Under *Basic Settings* tab, you can select *Compression* and *Encyption* options and select the Throttle Control profile from the drop-down box. • *Compression* : Selecting the checkbox will compress the backup data before migrating and decompress after migration. This can enhance the transmission speed. • *Encryption* : This option allows the users to encrypt the data during the replication transfer. • *Throttle Control* : This option will enable you to specify the network bandwidth for the data replication from the product server to the stand-by SQL server. Select a profile from the drop-down box. If un-checking this option, it will use entire bandwidth to transfer the data between the product server and stand-by SQL server. For more information of setting Throttle Control, please refer to the Section 5.5.4 of this Manual. You can also click the name to go to the Setting interface to configure this setting. • *Email Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to the Section Email Notification of this Manual. This feature is optional.
5	Under *Schedule* tab, you can enable the schedule by un-checking *No Schedule* option. Select Sync or Initialize\Reinitialize methods. • *Sync* : Selecting this option, it will make the data between production database and standby database synchronously basing on the data stored in the database currently. • *Initialize\Reinitialize* : Selecting this option, it will replicate the entire data from production server to the standby server.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Specify a start time by clicking the calendar icon. Select a interval from the drop-down box. The options are Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, Month and Always Run. ***Note:** If the option *Always Run* is selected, DocAve will run the job every 30 seconds. And if the last job's status is failed or skipped, DocAve will rerun this job after 10 minutes by default. You can change the delay time in the configuration file *zeus-job.properties* in the following path *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|etc* by changing the value of the node *Zeus.AlwaysRun.Interval*.
7	Select a source agent from the drop-down box on the lower-left of the screen.
8	Click *Farm Component Root* to expand the data tree. The web application and the corresponding available content databases for backup will be displayed.
9	Select a config database, admin database, web application, SSO or SSP to replicate to the Secondary Server by checking the corresponding check-box.
10	Under the Secondary Server section, select a SQL Agent Host from the drop-down box as the destination SQL server to replicate the database to.
11	Enter an agent host address into the provided field to connect to the SQL instance. In this field, you need to enter the agent host address according to the information you specified in the Agent Configuration Tool.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">12</td><td colspan="2">Select a SQL instance from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no instance name</td><td>Select the default instance from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is an instance name or multiple instance names</td><td>Select the destination instance from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save this plan, it will be displayed on the right. You can also select one agent in the Agent drop-down box to display all the plans created under the corresponding agent. By default, All is selected. You can click Save as to save the original plan as a new one after choosing the different content to back up.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">If you want to reselect the nodes, simply click Clear to clear all the nodes you have selected on the tree.</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td colspan="2">Click Run to execute this plan immediately. You can also specify a start time for the job by clicking the calendar icon.</td></tr>
</table>

5.5.3.2 Failover Controller

Failover Controller is used to relate a standby Web application and several production content databases to enable the standby server when the production server is down.

***Note:** If the source SQL agent and the destination SQL agent are not in the same domain, there will be some issues while running a failover plan. In this case, you need to build a trusting relationship between the two SQL agents or create a user with the same name as the source user in the destination.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-69) Failover Plan

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *High Availability* > *Failover Controller* > *Failover Plan*.
2	Click **New** and then enter a plan name.
3	Select the Single Farm from the HA Mode drop-down box.
4	Select a Failover Method from the drop-down box. *SharePoint Failover Server* is for SharePoint 2010 only.
5	Select a Production SharePoint Agent and a Remote SharePoint Agent from the appropriate drop-down boxes.
6	If you select SQL Alias method, you can view the information of the alias name and WFE in the two lists underneath. You can click to edit the configuration, or the icon to view the SQL Alias Information.
7	Click *Farm Component Root* to expand the data tree. There are several components listed underneath: Config database, admin database, Web Application, SSO, and SSP for SharePoint 2007 and Web Application, service, config database, admin content database for SharePoint 2010. If you select SharePoint Failover Server method for SharePoint 2010, only the content you select in Rule Builder is available to be checked. ***Note:** If the farm component has already been involved in the failover job or configured in one plan, it cannot be configured in other plans.
8	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed on the right column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Click **Failover** to run the plan, you can select to keep SQL mirroring session by checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Run** to run this job. You can go to Job Monitor to view the process of the plan.

Fallback Plan

Fallback Plan is used to sync the data from the Stand-by Server to the Production Server for the Production Server recovery. You can select the content you want to fallback and click **Fallback**.

***Note:** Only the database which has been synchronized from production server using the SQL Mirroring sync method can fallback.

Script Triggered Failover

Script can also be run to failover the failover group from external source, this will allow user to plug DocAve High Availability with their existing auto-failover detection mechanism.

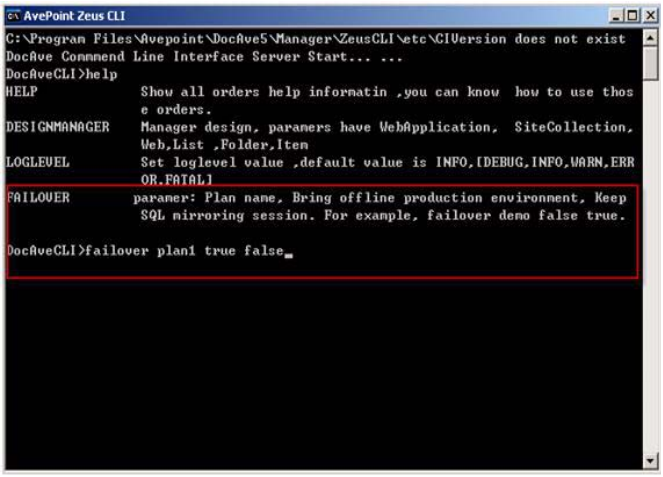
To perform a script striggered failover, please follow the steps below.

***Note:** If you want to use this function, please make sure there is a plan in Failover Plan in DocAve.

(5-70) Script Striggered Failover

Step	Action
1	Open the *failover-config.xml* under the directory *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusCLI|etc* in Notepad.
2	In this xml file, you can edit the value of the plan name, the value of *Bring offline production environment*, and the value of *Keep SQL mirroring session*. *True* represents selecting the option, *False* represents unselecting the option. ***Note:** The coding method must be *UTF-8* for this *failover-config.xml* file.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Save the modification. There are two methods to run the plan by using command line.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>The first method</td><td>1. Double click the DocAveCLI.bat under |AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusCLI|bin to open it.
2. Enter Failover Planname true/false true/false.
 

3. Press Enter key to run the plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The second method</td><td>After editing the configuration, double click Failover.bat under |AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusCLI|bin to run the plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">You can go to Job Monitor to view the process and the detailed information about the job.</td></tr>
</table>

5.5.4 Settings

There are some basic settings which can be applied in this module. It has four tabs: Throttle Control; Export Location; Cache Settings; and SQL Instance Settings.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

5.5.4.1 Throttle Control

For low-bandwidth networks, the throttle / network control is available to set boundaries and limitations on this process. This will ensure that this process does not cause a noticeable degradation in performance when running this job.

(5-71) Throttle Control Setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *High Availability* > *Setting* -> *Throttle Control*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name in the Profile Name filed to create a new profile.
3	In *Run During* section, you can set the network bandwidth for working hours and non-working hours respectively. Check the corresponding checkbox to activate the option.
4	Input a positive number in the field and select the unit of KB or MB from the drop-down box.
5	In *Define Working Schedule* section, specify the working hours interval from the drop-down boxes. Select the days as the working days by checking the corresponding boxes next to them.
6	Click **Apply** to save this profile. You can see this profile on the right.

5.5.4.2 Export Location

In order to run an import/export plan, you must first define a location to place the temporary content.

(5-72) Export Location Setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *High Availability* > *Settings* > *Export Location*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Click **New** and enter a name on the Profile Name Field to create a new profile.
3	Select an Agent from the drop-down box.
4	Input the User Name, Password and Path in the corresponding field according to the example provided.
5	Click **Test** to test the path you input.
6	If test path successfully, click **Apply** to save it. You can see this profile on the right hand of the screen under the corresponding agent name that you selected from the Agent drop-down box. By default, All is selected.

5.5.4.3 Cache Settings

The cache setting will define the temp location where DocAve will store the temp data when doing a High Availability Job.

(5-73) Cache Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *High Availability* > *Settings* > *Cache Settings*.
2	Select an agent under the SP Agents section by clicking on the agent name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">There are two kinds of locations that can be defined: UNC Path and Local Device.

By default, the UNC path is checked and configured, you can clear the fields to specify a new network location.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>UNC Path</td><td>UNC Path is used to specify a path to store the data in a network location.

1. Select the UNC Path radio button.

2. Input the Username as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored.

3. Click Test to test the path. After testing successfully, click Apply to save the configuration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Local Drive</td><td>Local Drive is used to specify a path to store the data into a local location.

1. Select the Local Drive radio button.

2. Input the path that data will be written to and stored.

3. Click Apply to save the configuration.</td></tr>
</table>

5.5.4.4 SQL Instance Settings

This feature allows you to specify a master key password for SQL server instance.

(5-74) SQL Instance Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > High Availability > Settings > SQL Instance Settings*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select an agent under the SQL Agents section by clicking on the agent name. All the SQL instances of this agent will be displayed in the table.
3	Input the password in Master Key Password field. If Display characters option is checked, the content of the password you are editing will be displayed. When you move the cursor away or click **Apply**, the password will be encrypted. If Display characters option is not checked, the password will be cryptographic when you edit it. Move the cursor back to the field, the old password will be cleared and you can reset it. ***Note:** If you have set the password in SQL server or ran a SQL Mirror job in Rule Builder, Master Key Password field will be gray and cannot be edited.
4	Click **Apply** to save the configuration.

5.5.5 Offline Sync

This feature allows you to replicate the data from the production server to an export location, then import this data to the standby server.

There are two tabs in this feature, export and import.

5.5.5.1 Export

To export the data to the specified location, please follow the steps below:

(5-75) Export the data

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > High Availability > Offline Sync > Export*.
2	Click **New** and enter a profile name into the corresponding field to create a new export profile.
3	Select a kind of HA mode from the drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select an agent from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select an export location from the drop-down box. Please refer to Section Export Location of this Manual for instruction on this process.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Select a sync method from the drop-down box. The options are Log Shipping and SQL Mirroring.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Log Shipping</td><td>This option will do a replication at the log level.

This level of replication will be up to date after a few hours.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SQL Mirroring</td><td>This option will do a replication at the transaction level.

This level of replication will be up to date after an hour or less, but this level of replication requires three times the log generation speed. This means that the network transfer speed between production and standby will be faster than three times the log generation speed on production.

*Note: If you use SQL Mirroring for a SharePoint 2010 agent in Single Farm mode, you also need to configure the Failover Method. By default, SQL Alias is used. If you select the SharePoint Failover Server option, DocAve will use the Failover Server configured in SharePoint 2010 environment for the mirrored database(s).</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">You can un-check No Schedule option to activate a schedule for this plan. Specify a start time by clicking the calendar icon.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Input a positive number in the interval field, and select Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, Month or Always Run as the interval unit from the drop-down box. ***Note:** If the option *Always Run* is selected, DocAve will run the job every 30 seconds. And if the last job's status is failed or skipped, DocAve will rerun this job after 10 minutes by default. You can change the delay time in the configuration file *zeus-job.properties* in the following path *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|etc* by changing the value of the node *Zeus.AlwaysRun.Interval*. ***Note:** Always Run is just used for Incremental Level Schedule.
9	Select a replication type, full or incremental.
10	If you want to reselect the nodes, simply click **Clear** to clear all the nodes you have selected on the tree.
11	Click **Save** to save your settings.
12	This profile will be displayed on the right hand of the screen under the corresponding agent that you selected. By default, All is selected. . You can click **Save as** to save the original plan as a new one after choosing the different content to back up.
13	Click **Run** to execute this plan immediately or wait for the appropriate schedule.

5.5.5.2 Import

To import the data from the location, please follow the steps below:

(5-76) Import

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > High Availability > Offline Sync > Import*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select a SQL agent from the drop-down box.
3	Select a SQL instance from the drop-down box.
4	If the export data loaded under URL is the data of SharePoint 2010, the drop-down box named Stand-By SharePoint Agent will be available. If you select a content Database under Web Application in the tree and select a Stand-By SharePoint Agent in the drop-down box, it will create a Web Application with the same name of the source Web Application in the Stand-By SharePoint environment.
5	Click on the agent name under the source section to expand the data tree to the location for the exported data.
6	You can view the path you selected in the *URL* field.
7	Un-check *No Schedule* option, you can activate a schedule.
8	Specify a start time by clicking the calendar icon.
9	Click **Save** to save this plan. Then it will be displayed under the Plan Profile. You can click **Run Now** to run the plan immediately.
10	Click the to start the job. If you wish to pause the job, you can click the .
11	You can view the detailed information for each plan such as start time, status and progress. Click , you can delete the plan.

5.5.6 Dashboard

This section supplies an interface to view the detailed information of the production server and the stand-by server.

To view the information, please follow the steps below:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(5-77) View the Detailed Information

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > High Availability > Dashboard*.
2	Select the agent you want to view from the drop-down box. It will list the Web Application of the production server and the information of the corresponding stand-by server.
3	Click the plus icon next to the name of the Web Application to expand the database tree, it will list the database, its status and the corresponding stand-by database.
4	Move mouse on the database name, the details of the stand-by database will be listed in a bubble.
5	Open the job Controller by clicking *Job Controller* tab on the bottom of the interface. You can view the job information of High Availability: Plan Name; Control used to pause, resume and delete the job; Start time; Status; and Progress. Click **Detail**, a pop-up window will appear to show the details of the job.

5.5.7 Helpful Notes on High Availability

This section will focus on several tips to fully utilize the High Availability solution.

5.5.7.1 Replicating SSO databases

In the situation where an attempt is made to replicate SSO databases but fails:

Check the domains of the two machines hosting the SharePoint environment. If the source and destination machines are on the same domain, then the end user will not be able to replicate the SSO databases. The reason for this is that DocAve will use native Microsoft SharePoint API in order to replicate the SSO, but the current SharePoint API has a limitation that will not allow similar domain replications.

5.5.7.2 High Availability module and differing SQL versions

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

In the situation when a replication fails:

The first thing to check is the current version of the end user's SQL Server. The High Availability module works on the database level, but there are limits to working on that level. If the end user has two different SQL Server versions, the High Availability module is to fail during the replication process. For example, if the end user's production SharePoint 2007 environment is using SQL Server 2000 and the development SharePoint 2007 environment is using SQL Server 2005, a replication between environments is impossible because of the limitations of SQL Server itself.

5.5.7.3 Setting up for High Availability Mirroring

In the situation that if High Availability Mirroring fails:

Make sure that the fully qualified domain name of the DocAve Agents on both the production and the disaster recovery servers are reachable from each other. Configuring the fully qualified domain name can be done on either the DNS or the Host's file.

5.5.7.4 Log Shipping Versus SQL Mirroring

This section will focus on the differences between Log Shipping and SQL Mirroring. The main difference between the two options is that Log Shipping is a schedule based replication while SQL Mirroring is an event-driven (transaction level) replication.

For Log Shipping, the data synchronization between the production and the standby environment depends on how frequently the replication can run and finish. If the user selects the Always Run option, the data can be synchronized up to 10 to 20 minutes in difference. In normal situations, the difference between the production and the standby environment would be a difference of a few hours.

SQL Mirroring is considered as a transaction level replication which means that the standby database will be closely synchronized with the production database.

***Note:** Log Shipping is considered as a warm standby while SQL Mirroring is referred to as a hot standby.

5.5.8 Troubleshooting High Availability

Please refer to the scenarios below for common troubleshooting methods for the High Availability module.

5.5.8.1 General Information

For simple troubleshooting needs:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- Make sure that the SQL Server that is installed on the production and the standby machines are using either the Standard or Enterprise editions. The High Availability module can only support these editions.
- High Availability (HA) SQL Mirroring can co-exist with the Platform Level Backup module. However, in order for the Platform Level Backup and the HA module to co-exist, the user must do the following:

(5-78) SQL Mirroring Co-exist With Platform Level Backup

Step	Action
1	Create a High Availability mirroring plan using the previous section as a guide.
2	Execute the initial sync of the High Availability mirroring.
3	Proceed to run a Platform Level full backup.

***Note:** If the user brings online the standby environment, then the High Availability SQL Mirroring must be sychonized again before attempting any other Platform Level Backups.

***Note:** In order for High Availability to work, the database must be in full Recovery model, otherwise the replication will fail.

However, the SQL database being on Full Recovery will require more administrative overhead in order to manage the log growth.

5.5.8.2 Failure in loading the nodes on the High Availability module

If the account configuration information in the *DocAve Control Panel* > *Agent Monitor* does not have administrative rights to the SQL server, the nodes will fail to load in the High Availability plan builder.

5.5.8.3 If there are errors in the DocAve Agent Event Viewer

There may be issues with the DocAve temporary staging location. Please refer to the scenarios below:

Full Sync job requirements:

- Please make sure that the production High Availability (HA) SQL Agent's staging location contains enough hard disk space to cover the database backup size (with a 1 GB

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

buffer). For example, if the database backup size is 3 GB, make sure that the overall production HA SQL Agent staging location contains a total of 4 GB of free space.
- If the user decides to configure the standby HA SQL Agent's staging location to be stored on the same drive as the actual SQL database files, make sure that there is enough hard disk space to cover the database backup size: the actual database size plus a 1 GB buffer. For example, if the database size is 4 GB and the database backup size is 3 GB, the hard disk must have a total of 8 GB free.

Incremental Sync job requirements:

- Make sure that the production HA SQL Agent's staging location contains enough hard disk space to cover the log backup size with a 1 GB buffer. For example, if the log backup size is 1 GB, the user must make sure that the overall production HA SQL Agent staging location contains a total of 2 GB of free space.
- On the standby HA SQL Agent's staging location, make sure there is enough hard disk space to cover the log backup size with a 1 GB buffer. For example if the database size is 1 GB, make sure that the overall staging HA SQL Agent location contains a total of 2 GB of free space.

Using a Network Location:

- If you want to use a network location to store temporary backup or restore data, please make sure to enable the xp_cmdshell on the Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Surface Area Configuration.

5.5.8.4 Log Shipping

Please refer to the information below for information on the High Availability Log Shipping option:

- After the Log Shipping replication completes, the SQL database will show as Standby on the SQL Management Studio.
- If the database already exists on the standby SQL server, the sync job will fail with the error "the database already exists." In this case, please manually delete the database on the standby server and try again.
- Please make sure that the database recovery model is not set to Simple recovery model or the Bulk Logged recovery model. Currently, the High Availability Log Shipping option will not support the Simple Recovery model or the Bulk Logged Recovery model.

5.5.8.5 SQL Mirroring

Please refer to the information below for information on the High Availability Log Shipping option:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- After the mirroring has completed, the database status on the standby database will be marked as Principal, and the database status will be marked as Mirror.
- In order to use the SQL Mirroring option, make sure that the production SQL and the standby SQL are using SQL Server 2005 with the same edition and version. Also please make sure that the SQL Server 2005 is using at least Service Pack 1. Finally if SQL Server 2005 x32 is installed, this will only support 10 databases for mirroring. This specification is actually a SQL Server 2005 limitation.
- If the SQL Mirroring option fails with the following error in the DocAve Agent Event-Viewer: "The server network address 'TCP://avepoint2007.msxml.com:5022' cannot be reached or does not exist. Check the network address name and that the ports for the local and remote endpoints are operational…" Then the user must clean up the failed mirroring. For this situation please consult an AvePoint technical support representative in order to walk you through the SQL mirroring clean up. You can also use the HAMirrorCleanUpTool provided by technical support.

5.5.8.6 Bring Online Issues

Please refer to the information below if there are issues in bringing a synchronized database online:

- If bringing online the Content Database fails, make sure that the there is a stable network connection to the database. Usually, if a Bring Online of a Content Database fails, please refresh the GUI and attempt the process again.
- If the synchronized database cannot be loaded in the High Availability recovery controller then make sure that the database name does not already exist in MOSS 2007. Also please check that the standby HA SQL Agent's staging location contains the .cfg file. This will be used for the Bring Online process
- If bringing online the SSO Database fails, make sure the following information is the same as the MOSS server: SSO Admin ID, SSO AppDef, and Admin ID (domain\username). Please make sure that Domain is the same as the MOSS server, otherwise this misconfiguration will cause an error. Make sure that the Microsoft Single Sign-on Service is open and opened by the domain user.
- If bringing online the SSP Database fails, make sure that the following information is correct: SSP Name, SSP Admin ID (domain\username) , SSP Admin password, My Site Application URL, and My Site Web Path.

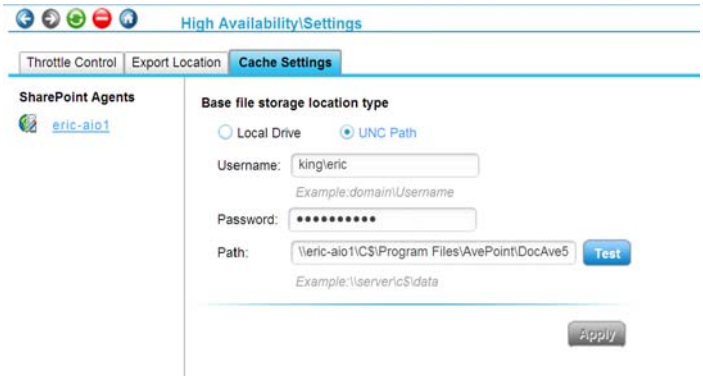
In general, make sure to enter all the information the same way used when creating the SSP in SharePoint Central Administration for the first time. If the wrong information has been entered then a DocAve pop-up will indicate an error in configuration.

After bringing the SSP Database online, the administrator will have to start the SharePoint search services.

5.5.8.7 Prior to running first job check the following:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Verify there is enough disk space in cache location on the **source** and **standby** server. There must be enough to hold a copy of the database plus 1GB of extra space. Example, database is 50GB - make sure there is 51GB in both locations. The location by default is the install directory *||server|c$|Program Files|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|Temp*. DocAve breaks the database down to the default 20MB chunks in those directories and then rebuilds the database off those chunks.

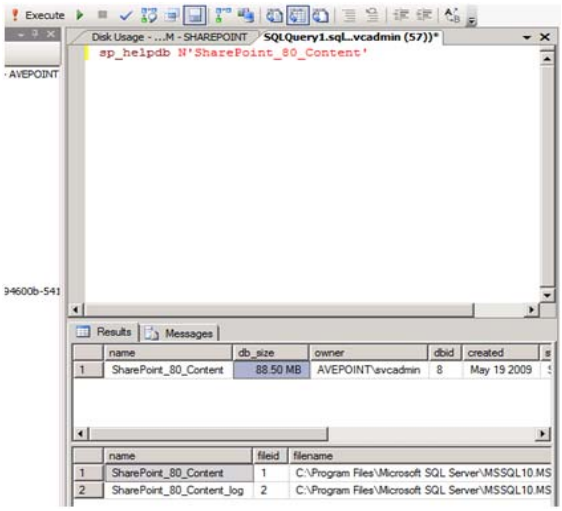


In some cases the install drive will not be large enough so the path needs to be changed to a network share. If using a UNC path the xp_cmdshell need to be enabled on the SQL Server.

You may run into an issue where the database is only 50GB for example, but the space allotted in SQL is 150GB. DocAve checks that allotted space and will require 150GB free space be present in the cache location. This is done as a worst case scenario since the MDF, NDF, and LDF files could end up being a total of 150GB. If there is not enough space in the cache location the job will fail and say there is not enough free space. This can be misleading if the database is 50GB and there is 100GB of free space. The job will fail because the allocated space in SQL is 150GB. You can run the following query to find the amount of space DocAve will look at.

sp_helpdb N'databaseName'

db_size column will give you the amount that DocAve will to verify if there is enough disk space. If there is a large difference in the db_size and the actual space on the database the customer can perform database maintenance such as shrinking the database to ensure they do not need as much free space in the cache location.



 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Verify that the database you want to have DocAve HA handle is not currently log shipping. If it is the log chain will be broken and when you do an incremental sync in DocAve the job will fail since it can't find the proper log files DocAve needs. You will get a similar error message if log shipping is currently taking place outside of DocAve.

Restore Failed: The log in this backup set begins at LSN 4850000000203200001, which is too recent to apply to the database. An earlier log backup that includes LSN 4850000000198100001 can be restored.

RESTORE LOG is terminating abnormally.

Bringing the databases online:

Verify that there is an empty web application for the content database and a separate empty web application for the SSP. When bringing the SSP online verify that the account you are using was a site collection administrator for the SSP in the source environment. If account is not a site collection administrator it will not properly create the SSP in the standby environment since that account does not have permission to the database. You can verify by going to *central administration -> application management > site collection owners*.

5.5.9 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for High Availability

The following lists the database supported by the DocAve High Availability

(5-79) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for High Availability

Database	Standby Farm	Single Farm
Content Database	Supported	Supported
SSO Database	Supported	Supported
SSP Admin Content Database	Supported	Supported

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Database	Standby Farm	Single Farm
SSP Services Database	Supported	Supported
Config Database	Unsupported	Supported
Central Admin Database	Unsupported	Supported
SSP Search Database	Unsupported	Supported

5.6 SiteBin

Site-Level Recycle Bin is used for the swift recovery of accidentally deleted sites and site collections. SiteBin allows administrators to instantly restore entire sites and site collections in the exact state they were prior to deletion. SiteBin leverages event listeners to capture the deletion event before it can be processed, providing you an immediate and real-time backup of the site or site collection.

In order to use this feature, please navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *DocAve Solution Manager* to install the solution. For SharePoint 2007, it is *AvePoint_AveSiteBin.wsp* and for SharePoint 2010, it is *DocAve.SP2010.SiteBin.PermanentDelete.wsp*. You can refer to section DocAve Solution Manager for the installation steps.

***Note:** Provided that the event listeners are triggered, the SharePoint sites and site collections that were deleted using STSADM or SharePoint APIs can also be backed up by DocAve SiteBin.

***Note:** In order to use the SiteBin feature in all FEW machines, it is recommended to install the DocAve agent with the SiteBin feature on all the Front End Web Servers which have enabled the SharePoint Service of Windows SharePoint Services Web Application.

***Note:** From DocAve 5.5, the SiteBin Module supports SharePoint 2010.

***Note:** SharePoint 2007 SiteBin will be available only if you have the licenses of both SharePoint 2007 SiteBin and SharePoint 2007 Backup, and SharePoint 2010 SiteBin will be available only if you have the licenses of both SharePoint 2010 SiteBin and SharePoint 2010 Backup.

5.6.1 Settings

Before using the Site-Level Recycle Bin, you must configure the Deletion Tracking Settings and the Export Location.

5.6.1.1 Deletion Tracking Settings

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To install this feature on your SharePoint, please follow the steps below.

(5-80) Installing SiteBin Feature On SharePoint

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *SiteBin* > *Settings* > *Deletion Tracking Settings*.
2	Select the farm you want to enable the deletion tracking feature, the Web Applications under it will be listed in the table.
3	Select the Web Application you want to enable the feature by checking the corresponding Enable Event Handler check-box. You can also select the check-box next to *Enable Event Handler* to select all the Web Applications. It will add this feature on all sites under the specific Web Application. ***Note:** From DocAve 5.7, it is supported to enable Event Handler properly when one Web Application has about 100,000 site collections.
4	If you want to keep the Permanently Delete Site feature to delete some sites directly, you can select the *Allow Users to Permanently Delete Sites* option to enable it. It will add a *Delete this site permanently* option in SharePoint. ***Note:** Select the *Delete this site permanently* option in SharePoint 2010, you will be redirected to a web page which requires you to specify a deletion method. There are two options which are *Gradual Deletion* and *Immediate Deletion*. *Gradual Deletion* uses the SharePoint 2010 default method to delete the site. If you select *Gradual Deletion* to delete a root site, the site collection record in content database will be deleted, but all the records under site collection level will be kept. After the deletion, if you select the database in Platform Restore or High Availability module to perform web application to web application restore, the site collection will not be restored correctly. If you select *Gradual Deletion* to delete a sub site, all the related data in database will be deleted and the sub site can be restored normally. *Immediate Deletion* uses SharePoint 2007 deletion method to delete the site and the related information in database is deleted. It is the same as *Delete this site* option in SharePoint. If you want to delete a site collection, it is recommended to use *Immediate Deletion*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	If the **Site use confirmation and deletion** for the specific web applications is enabled, the status in the Site Use Confirmation and Deletion column is *Yes*. You can click the hyperlink to go to the *Central Admin* module to change the settings. ***Note:** It is only supported in SharePoint 2007 environment.
6	Once both the Event Handler and the Site Use Confirmation and Deletion are enabled, the Configure button in the *Set Schedule for Backup* column will be activated. If you want to backup the unused sites before the deletion, you can click **Configure** to set up the schedule. In the *Schedule Settings* window, you can view the *SharePoint Auto Deletion Schedule* which you set on your SharePoint environment. There are three options you can set. • *Start Time* : Click the calendar icon following the Start Time field to select the start time for the checking. • *Interval* : Enter a number into this field, and it will check for the unused sites according to the specified interval. • *Backup Site Collection* : Specify the time when to backup the unuse sites. For example, set the interval as *Every 1 Day*, and *Backup Site Collection 3 Day before deletion*, it will check the unused sites status every one day and backup the unused sites which will be deleted 3 days before the deletion.
7	Select a logical device to save the backup data. For more information on adding a new location for backup data, please refer to the Section Device Manager of this Manual. ***Note:** This module only supports the NetShare device type.
8	Select a Data Pruning Rule from the drop-down box to permanently delete old sitebin data. Please refer to the Section Creating a Pruning Rule for SiteBin of this Manual.
9	Select an email notification profile from the drop-down box. It will send the email to the recipient once the deletion of the site fails.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	To generate a detailed report for the sites which were applied the Deletion Event Handler, select the *Generate Detailed Report* option and specify the *export location*. You can view the job process in the *Job Monitor*.
11	You can also set a schedule to periodically apply the event handlers to new content. ***Note:** SiteBin will not be activated automatically to new content, if there are always new content added to the Web Application, it is recommended to set up a schedule to periodically apply the event handlers to new content.
12	Click **Apply**, it will enable the deletion tracking on the specific Web Application.

Adjusting the Backup Method

SiteBin leverages SharePoint's native backup solution (STSADM) for site collections and sites under 15 GB. However, for sites collection over this size, DocAve's proprietary backup technology is used. In order to adjust this threshold and change the backup method for site collection level used, please see the instruction of setting the configuration file below.

(5-81) Setting Up the Backup Method

Step	Action
1	Open the file *…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2007\Env.cfg* using NotePad.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	You can change the backup method by changing the value of sitebin-Flag. If you make the value as "0", it will backup the site collection using STSADM; if "-1", it will backup the site collection using the item level backup; if the value is more than zero, it will compare the value with the data size. If the value is greater than the data size, it will backup the site collection using site collection level backup, if smaller than the data size, it will backup the site collection using item level backup. ***Note:** The unit of the value is megabit. ***Note:** You can only change the backup method for site collection level.

5.6.1.2 Export Location

In order to run an out-of-place to File System plan or save the detailed deletion report, you must first define a location to place the backup content.

(5-82) Export Location Setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > SiteBin > Settings > Export Location*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name on the Profile Name Field to create a new profile.
3	Input the Username, Password and Path in the corresponding field according to the example provided.
4	Click **Test** to test the path you input.
5	If test path successfully, click **Apply** to save it. You can see this profile on the right side of the screen in the column named Export Location.

5.6.2 Restore Controller

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After a backup of the site has completed successfully, the backup data is ready for browsing. You can navigate to the Restore Controller to restore the deleted site.

***Note:** SiteBin wokrs correctly when the site is deleted by stsadm or the custom application such as SharePoint.dll API.

(5-83) Restore The Deleted Site

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > SiteBin > Restore Controller*.
2	Select the farm, and then select the restore granularity level from the drop-down box.
3	Click the farm name to expand the data tree, and all the deleted sites backed up at the specific level will be listed on the tree. ***Note:** From DocAve 5.7, it is supported to load the tree properly when one Web Application has about 100,000 site collections.
4	Select the content you want to restore by checking the corresponding check-box. You can also click the icon to view the deleted versions to select the content you want to restore. You can also click **Delete** to delete the corresponding data. ***Note:** If you delete some sites first, and then delete the corresponding site collection later, you will need to restore the site collection first and then restore the deleted sites, otherwise, the sites will be overwritten while restoring the site collection, or the site collection cannot be restored.
5	Click **Delete Data** under the data tree, you can delete the selected content.
6	After selecting the data you want to restore, you can setup the basic option underneath.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Select a Restore Setting in the drop-down box. You can select to restore the site to the original place(In Place), or restore it to file system(Out of Place-File System). ***Note:** Only the content backed up using the item level backup could be restored using Out of Place-File System Restore. By default, only the Site Collections using the Publishing Portal Template could use the Restore Setting of Out of Place-File System. You can change the backup method of the deleted content to item level backup manually to enable this option. For the detailed information, you can refer to Section Adjusting the Backup Method of this manual.
8	Select one Agent Group from the drop-down box.
9	Select the start time for the restore job using the calendar icon. By default, DocAve will run the job immediately after you click Go button.
10	Select one Restore Option from the drop-down box.
11	You may enter a *Description* in the provided field to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
12	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as *Now*, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time.

5.7 Supported and unsupported List for SharePoint 2010

Below is the supported and unsupported list of Data Protection module for SharePoint 2010.

(5-84) Supported and Unsupported for SharePoint 2010

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
Automation Center	Criticality Matrix	√	
	Settings	√	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
Granular Backup	Archived data with attachment rule	√	
	EBS of Extender and Archiver	√	
	RBS of Extender and Archiver	√	
Granular Restore	Compare the backup data and destination content based on the following column(s)	√	
Platform Backup	backup the setting property of Search Service Application		√
Platform Restore		√	
Template Builder		√	
High Availability	Rule Builder > Stand-By SharePoint Agent	√	
	Failover Controller > Failover Plan > Failover Method > SharePoint Failover Server	√	
	Offline Sync > Stand-By SharePoint Agent	√	
SiteBin	Restore Controller	√	
	Settings > Site Use Confirmation and Deletion	√	
	Setting > Set Schedule for Backup	√	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

6. Administration

The Administration module is composed of modules designed to assist administrators in managing and optimizing their day-to-day SharePoint environment. This includes the SharePoint Administrator, Content Manager, Deployment Manager, and the Replicator. From a single interface, administrators can manage and synchronize their entire deployment, whether it be a single farm or comprised of hundreds of farms. DocAve lets administrators easily view, search, manage, report, and replicate configurations, securities and content across all SharePoint assets.

6.1 SharePoint Administrator

SharePoint Administrator puts many of the jobs a typical SharePoint administrator performs into a single, centralized user interface. It is composed of the Central Administrator, STSADM functions, Administrative Reporting, and User Clustering Web part.

6.1.1 Central Admin

The Central Admin interface allows you to perform common SharePoint administrative tasks by either selecting content on your SharePoint tree or by searching for SharePoint content, users, or shared security permissions.

SharePoint Administrator offers you a full granular view of your SharePoint environment, you can expand each Farm, Web Application, Site, and the other SharePoint objects down to the item level and perform all SharePoint administrator operations on the selected content.

For large SharePoint environments and known content (including Web Applications, Site Collections, Sites, Lists, Databases, and Folders), we recommend using the search mode for rapid navigation and management of settings.

To select content to perform actions on in the Central Admin, you will first use the tree filter mode to limit the scope of the content displayed in your farm. You may then either select the content from the farm in this view, or use the Search Mode button to search for content.

6.1.1.1 Tree Filter

The Tree filter is best used when exploring large environments. By using the tree filter viewing mode, you may limit the results by specifying particular agents, and selecting only the content desired. This is done by clicking the Tree Filter button, and specifying the agents you wish to examine.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Creating a new filter

(6-1) Creating A New Filter

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click the Tree Filter button, a dialog box will appear.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td colspan="2">Select a filter type in the drop-down box:</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Agent Filter</td><td>1. Set up either a Public or a Private filter. A Public filter will allow all DocAve users to use this filter. A Private filter will only be available to the user who created it.
2. Click New to create a new filter.
3. Enter a name for the filter in the name field.
4. Select an agent and use the < button to remove agents and the > button to add agents, create your Selected Agent list. The agents in this list will display their corresponding farms in the tree filter view mode.
5. Click Save to save the filter.
6. Select the filter from the column on the left to enable the search button and then click Search, the filtered results will be displayed in the tree view mode.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Select the Scope Filter	1. Choose to set up either a Public or a Private filter. 2. There are four filters you may configure in any combination by selecting: ***Note:** You must at least select either Server Name or IP Address as your searching criteria. ***Note:** Clicking the **+** in front of the entered search criteria will change the icon to **-** which means that the content will be excluded in the search, and all other results will be returned. • *Domain Search Filter* : Filters the search results by displaying only results from the specified domains. • *Server Name Search Filter* : Filters the search results by displaying only results from the specified servers. • *IP Address Search Filter* : Filters the search results by displaying only the results from the specified IP addresses. • *Site Collection Search Filter* : Filters the search results by only displaying the results from the specified site collections. 3. After specifying the search conditions, click **Search**.

Editing an Existing Filter

You can edit a previously configured tree view Agent Filter by clicking the **Tree Filter** button and selecting it from the column on the left. Change the Selected Agent configuration as desired and click the **Save** button.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

6.1.1.2 Search Mode

After you have configured any Tree filters you wish to configure, you can search for individual content to perform actions on by using the Central Administration Search Mode. There are two types of search results: Central Administration and Security Center. To use this feature, click the search mode button after you have specified where to search in the farm on the left.

To perform a search based on metadata or other administrative data follow the steps below, if you wish to search by security permissions you may skip to the next table.

(6-2) Searching for SharePoint content in Central Administrator

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin*.
2	Select the scope where you wish to search for content from the farm data tree on the left.
3	Click **Search Mode**, a dialog box will appear.
4	Select the Admin radio button

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">5</td><td colspan="2">In the Search Mode window, you can select different levels you can search on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If you are searching for ...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Web Application</td><td>Select this option and skip to step 6.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Database</td><td>Select this option and skip to step 6.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Site Collection</td><td>Select this option and configure additional options:

Specify Site Collection Template: Limits the search to list the specified type of Site Collection. You can select multiple templates from the list provided, or specify a custom template using the blank space provided.

Auditing Enabled: Includes all Site Collections for which the audit function has been enabled in SharePoint.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Site	Select this option and configure additional options: Specify Site Template: Limits the search to only the certain types of site specified. You can select multiple templates from the list provided, or specify a custom template using the blank space provided. Auditing Enabled: Includes all sites for which the audit function has been enabled in SharePoint. Select the Search Level: • *Search all levels* : This will select all levels of the site to be included in the search. • *Limit search to... levels* : You may enter a positive integer to specify the number of levels to be included in the search.
	List/Library	Select this option and configure additional options: Versioning Enabled: Includes all Lists and Libraries for which versioning in SharePoint has been enabled or disabled as specified. Auditing Enabled: Includes all Lists and Libraries for which the audit function in SharePoint has been enabled or disabled as specified.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Folder	Select this option and configure additional options: Auditing Enabled: Includes all Folders for which the audit function has been enabled in Share-Point. Select the Search Level: • *Search all levels* : This will select all levels of the site to be included in the search. • *Limit search to... levels* : You may enter a positive integer to specify the number of levels to be included in the search.
	Item	Select this option to perform an offline search on all granular content in your SharePoint farm.
	Item Version	Select this option to perform an offline search on all granular content in your SharePoint farm.
6	Select the Search Term checkbox, select the type of criteria for the search term, and enter in the search term. Click the Add button. The plus sign and minus sign will allow you to include or exclude the specified content. This field accepts wildcards (*).	
7	Click **Next**, and you will go to the plan mode page for the search.	
8	Configure the remaining Search Mode options: Schedule: Enables this search to be run at a specified time and on a specified interval. Save as Profile: Enter in a plan name and description to run this configuration in the future. This is also how the plan will be displayed in the job monitor. Email Notification: Select an e-mail notification profile as set in the Control Panel.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Click **Save** to save the search configuration You can then reuse this search configuration later. If you want to run the search immediately, click **Run.**
10	After the search has completed, you may view the results from the Job Monitor under the Admin Search heading. If you run the search job immediately, a new tab will pop up and all the search result will be listed in this tab. In the search result, you can select to select nodes in current page or in all pages by selecting corresponding option.

User/Group

Use the User/Group tab when searching for content that users or groups have access to.

(6-3) Searching for Users or Groups in Central Administrator

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Select the scope where you want to search on the data tree.
3	Click **Search Mode**, a dialog box will appear.
4	Select the Admin radio button.
5	Click the *User\Group* tab and input usernames in to one of the two input fields: AD Users and Groups or FBA Users. Multiple names can be entered and separated by a semi-colon. Additionally, You can search for a user or group using the icon. From the popup you can either select to search for an individual user or to search for a group. From the search results list, select the user/group you want and click **Add**. You can also verify the names as entered into the field by selecting the icon.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Click **Next**. Configure the remaining Search Mode options: Schedule: Enables this search to be run at a specified time and on a specified interval. Save as Profile: Enter in a plan name and description to run this configuration in the future. This is also how the plan will be displayed in the job monitor. Email Notification: Select an e-mail notification profile as set in the Control Panel.
7	Click **Save** to save the search configuration You can then reuse this search configuration later. If you want to run the search immediately, click **Run.**
8	After the search has completed, you may view the results from the Job Monitor under the Admin Search heading.
9	From this window, click on the content's name to display the SharePoint location. You can also check the result(s) using the check-box on the left, giving you access to all single and batch settings listed in the following section.

Permission Criteria

In this tab, you can limit the content returned in the search results based on permissions assigned to it:

(6-4) Permission Criteria

Step	Then
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administrator > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin*.
2	Select the scope where you want to search on the data tree.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Then
3	Click **Search Mode**, a dialog box will appear.
4	Select the Admin radio button.
5	Click the Permission Criteria tab.
6	You may select a permission to limit the search results based upon: • Any Permission • Full Control • Design • Contribute • Read • Limited Access • View Only
7	You can also specify either: • *Exact Permission* : Returns search results meeting the permission field exactly. • *Exact Permission or Better* : Returns search results of permission levels equal to or greater than the permission field specified. • *Inherited Permissions* : Includes search results that match due to inheritance. • *Explicit Permissions* : Includes search results that match due to explicit assignment of permissions.
8	Click **Next**. Configure the remaining Search Mode options: Schedule: Enables this search to be run at a specified time and on a specified interval. Save as Profile: Enter in a plan name and description to run this configuration in the future. This is also how the plan will be displayed in the job monitor. Email Notification: Select an e-mail notification profile as set in the Control Panel.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Then
9	Click **Save** to save the search configuration You can then reuse this search configuration later. If you want to run the search immediately, click **Run.**

Search for Web Part

DocAve allows you to go into Admin Report and run a search job on web application, site collection or site level, and you will get a full report about what webparts on implement on the target, and you can do some operations on the web part by DocAve without going to the appropriate page.

(6-5) Search for Web Part

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Click the *Farms* on the left hand of the window to expand the data tree. You can use the Tree Filter to limit the result.
3	Select the desired content by checking the corresponding check-box. ***Note:** This feature only supports the web application, site collection, and site level.
4	Click **Search Mode** button on the right hand of the window.
5	In the *Search Mode* pop-up, select the Admin radio button. This option is the default option.
6	On the *SharePoint Criteria* tab, select *Web Part* from the Search for drop-down list. The User/Group and Permission Criteria tabs cannot be used when searching for web parts.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	If you want to filter the search result, you can use the Search Term to filter the web part by Title. Select the *Search Term* option, and enter the criteria into the Criteria box. ***Note:** This field supports the fuzzy search, for example, if you enter a criteria as *DocAve*, then the search result will be all the web parts whose name includes the *DocAve*.
8	Click **Next**, and you will go to the plan mode page for the search.
9	Configure the remaining Search Mode options: Schedule: Enables this search to be run at a specified time and on a specified interval. Save as Profile: Enter in a plan name and description to run this configuration in the future. This is also how the plan will be displayed in the job monitor. Email Notification: Select an e-mail notification profile as set in the Control Panel. It will send the search result to the specific email.
10	Click **Save** to save the search configuration You can then reuse this search configuration later. If you want to run the search immediately, click **Run.**
11	After the search has completed, you may view the results from the Job Monitor under the Admin Search heading, or click **Close** and a new tab named *Admin Search Result* will appear when the search job is completed.
12	You can select the type of the report and download the report, the report will list all the information of the search result.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	For more operations on the search result, select the sorting scheme from the Sort by drop-down box. • *Web Parts* : It will sort the search result by the web part, and list all the pages which use this web part under the specific web part. • *Pages* : It will sort the search result by the pages, and list all the web parts which is used by the specific page.
14	Click the node to expand the data tree, you can do the following operations. • *View Details* : Select the web part, the View Details operation will appear, click it, you can view the detail information about this selected web part, such as Created By, Last Modified By, and Usage. You can click the icon to configure the column. • *Remove the Web Part from This Page* : Select the page, this operation will appear, click it, it will permanently delete all kinds of web parts from the selected URL(s). • *Browse the Page* : Click the icon after the page URL, it will open the page in the default browser. • *Close the Web Part* : Expand the tree to the node about the detail information of the web part (if you select Sort by web part, click the page to view the web part installed on this specific page, if the pages, click the web part to expand the tree. Please note this node is named by the web part title, location, and order.) Select this node, and the Close the web part option will appear. It will close the select web part from the specific page, and the icon for this node will be after refreshing the data tree. • *Reset the Web Part* : Expand the tree to the node about the detail information of the web part(if you select Sort by web part, click the page to view the web part installed on this specific page, in the pages, click the web part to expand the tree. Please note this node is named by the web part title, location, and order.) Select this node, and the Reset the web part option will appear. It will delete the user view properties for the web part.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Security Search Criteria Page

Selecting the Security radio button when entering Search Mode will allow you to search for content based on the security setting applied to it. You can search for SharePoint content based on three levels SharePoint Criteria, User/Group, and Permission Criteria.

SharePoint Criteria

(6-6) SharePoint Criteria

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Select the scope where you want to search on the data tree.
3	Click **Search Mode**, a dialog box will appear.
4	Select the Security radio button.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="9">5</td><td colspan="2">Under the SharePoint Criteria tab, you will see checkboxes corresponding to the different levels you can search on. You may select one or multiple restrictions.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Farm</td><td>Select this option and skip to step 6.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Web Application</td><td>Select this option and skip to step 6.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Site Collection</td><td>Select this option and skip to step 6.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Site</td><td>Select this option and configure the additional options:
Search all levels : Selects all levels of the site to be included in the search. This is selected by default.
Limit search to... levels : Enter a positive integer to specify the number of levels to be included in the search.
*Note: The customized permission of the user/group cannot be displayed in the search result.</td></tr>
<tr><td>List/Library</td><td>Select this option and skip to step 6.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Folder</td><td>Select this option and configure the additional options:
Search all levels : Selects all levels of the folder to be included in the search. This is selected by default.
Limit search to...levels : Enter a positive integer to specify the number of levels to be included in the search.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Item</td><td>Select this option and skip to step 6.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Item Version</td><td>Select this option and skip to step 6.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select the Search Term checkbox, select the type of criteria for the search term, and enter in the search term. Click the **Add** button. The plus sign and minus sign will allow you to include or exclude the specified content. This field accepts wildcards (*).
7	Click **Next**, and you will go to the plan mode page for the search.
8	Configure the remaining Search Mode options: Schedule: Enables this search to be run at a specified time and on a specified interval. Save as Profile: Enter in a plan name and description to run this configuration in the future. This is also how the plan will be displayed in the job monitor. Email Notification: Select an e-mail notification profile as set in the Control Panel, it will send the search report to the specified email address. There are two options you can select: *Attach Brief Report(PDF) To Email* and *Attach Search Result To Email*. • Attach Brief Report(PDF) To Email : It will send the brief PDF report by attachment to the specific email. • Attach Search Result To Email : It will send the search result by attachment. If you select this option, the format drop-down box will appear, there are three format you can select for the search result: PDF, CSV, and XML.
9	Click **Save** to save the search configuration You can then reuse this search configuration later. If you want to run the search immediately, click **Run.**

Any settings specified here will limit the search results set in the other tabs. These search results can also be exported to a .PDF, .CSV, or .XML file formats.

User/Group

Use the User/Group tab when searching for content that users or groups have access to as defined by your security policies.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-7) User/Group

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Select the scope where you want to search on the data tree.
3	Click **Search Mode**, a dialog box will appear.
4	Select the Security radio button.
5	Click the *User/Group* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Input usernames in to one of the two fields: AD Users and groups or FBA Users. Multiple names can be entered and separated by a semi-colon. You can search for a user or group using the icon. From the popup you can either select to search for a user or to search for a group. You can also select **Also search parent AD groups** to search for preceding level. From the search results list, select the user/group you want and click **Add**. You can verify the names entered into the field by selecting the icon. Configure the remaining User/Group Options: • *Search for deactivated users* : Includes users with the specified security permissions whose accounts have been deactivated. If you select this option, the *Include users with no permission in downloaded report* option will be checked automatically, you can uncheck it manually. • *Include users/groups with no permission in downloaded report* : Includes users/groups that have been disabled or deleted from the AD in the report. • *Include active directory group members in downloaded report* : Includes either the direct members of the specified AD group or all members of the specified AD group. You can also select the **Do not expand the following group** option, and specify the group(s) into the text box, it will only list the specified group(s) without enumerating the users under the certain group(s) in the search report.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Configure the remaining Search Mode options: Schedule: Enables this search to be run at a specified time and on a specified interval. Save as Profile: Enter in a plan name and description to run this configuration in the future. This is also how the plan will be displayed in the job monitor. Email Notification: Select an e-mail notification profile as set in the Control Panel, it will send the search report to the specified email address. There are two options you can select: *Attach Brief Report(PDF) To Email* and *Attach Search Result To Email*. • Attach Brief Report(PDF) To Email : It will send the brief PDF report by attachment to the specific email. • Attach Search Result To Email : It will send the search result by attachment. If you select this option, the format drop-down box will appear, there are three format you can select for the search result: PDF, CSV, and XML.
8	Click **Save** to save the search configuration You can then reuse this search configuration later. If you want to run the search immediately, click **Run.**
9	From this display, click on the content's name to display the SharePoint location. You can also check the result(s) using the check-box on the left, giving you access to all single and batch settings listed in the following section.

***Note:** Any settings specified here will limit the search results set in the other tabs.

Permission Criteria

The Permissions Criteria tab allows you to search for content in SharePoint based on the permissions assigned by your security policy.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-8) Permission Criteria

Step	Then
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administrator > SharePoint Administrator - Central Admin*.
2	Select the scope where you want to search on the data tree.
3	Click **Search Mode**, a dialog box will appear.
4	Select the Security radio button.
5	Click the Permission Criteria tab.
6	You may select a permission to limit the search results based upon: • Any Permission • Full Control • Design • Contribute • Read • Limited Access • View Only
7	You can also specify either: • *Exact Permission* : Returns search results meeting the permission field exactly. • *Exact Permission or Better* : Returns search results of permission levels equal to or greater than the permission field specified. • *Inherited Permissions* : includes search results that match due to inheritance • *Explicit Permissions* : includes search results that match due to explicit assignment of permissions.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Then
8	Click **Next**. Configure the remaining Search Mode options: Schedule: Enables this search to be run at a specified time and on a specified interval. Save as Profile: Enter in a plan name and description to run this configuration in the future. This is also how the plan will be displayed in the job monitor. Email Notification: Select an e-mail notification profile as set in the Control Panel, it will send the search report to the specified email address. There are two options you can select: *Attach Brief Report(PDF) To Email* and *Attach Search Result To Email*. • Attach Brief Report(PDF) To Email : It will send the brief PDF report by attachment to the specific email. • Attach Search Result To Email : It will send the search result by attachment. If you select this option, the format drop-down box will appear, there are three format you can select for the search result: PDF, CSV, and XML.
9	Click **Save** to save the search configuration You can then reuse this search configuration later. If you want to run the search immediately, click **Run.**

***Note:** Any settings specified in the Security Search criteria sections above may overlap. For instance, if you want to search only on the Site-level for a specific group, and see only those sites for which they have full access, all three tabs(SharePoint Criteria, User/Group, and Permission Criteria) can be combined to produce this result.

6.1.1.3 Batch Setting Instructions

DocAve allows administrators to apply settings to batches of sites, farms, web applications, content databases, etc. When selecting multiple data types from the tree view, a list of possible batch settings will appear in both the Central Administration and the Security Center tabs to the right. The possible batch settings for each level are listed in the sections below, as well as detailed explanations for each.

To apply batch settings, please follow the steps below:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-9) Applying Batch Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin.
2	Click on your farm to expand the tree.
3	Navigate to the desired content and select it using the checkboxes. You can refresh the data tree by clicking , and you can link to the site by clicking .
4	After selecting the batchable content, the right hand column will now list all of the possible batch settings. Select your desired action to continue.
5	In the bulk settings pop-up window, you will see a list of all applicable SharePoint content options.
6	In the column next to each Setting Name you can select to edit the field using the checkbox to the left. Once selected, the Edit will become enabled . ***Note:** A setting name marked with a red start * means it is a mandatory option.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">7</td><td colspan="2">When editing each setting field, you can select whether to edit it for each item individually, or as the same value for every Web Application:</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Same value</td><td>1. Input the values in the corresponding field.
2. Click the icon to confirm your setting or click the icon to reset the value to the previous setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Different values</td><td>1. Click the icon to open the popup window. A list of the web applications should be displayed.
2. Select the checkbox for the Web Application you would like to edit and then input the value in the corresponding field. Using the box next to Object will select all Web Applications.
*Note: You can also fill in the selected fields using the "Update" section. The value you enter here will be updated for all selected objects.
3. Click OK. The edit icon will change to .</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to confirm the changes. Click Cancel to cancel the configuration.</td></tr>
</table>

6.1.1.4 Central Administration Operations

This section of the manual will explain all of the actions that can be taken on the SharePoint environment from each level of the tree.

Operations on the Farm-level

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

The following table shows the operations that can be performed on a SharePoint farm (Italicized items are currently disabled):

(6-10) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Manage Farm Features	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Default Database Server	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Check Services Enabled In This Farm	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Configure Session State	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Records Center	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
HTML Viewer	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Usage Analysis Processing	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Antivirus	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Information Management Policy Configuration	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Manage Settings for Single Sign-On	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Timer Job Status	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Timer Job Definitions	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Master Site Directory Settings	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Site Directory Links Scan	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Quiesce Farm	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Data Retrieval Service	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Outgoing E-mail Settings	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Incoming E-mail Settings	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Custom Properties	N/A	Unsupported
Configure privacy options	Central Administration -> System Settings -> Farm Management	Supported
Manage user solutions	Central Administration -> System Settings -> Farm Management	Unsupported
Configure Mobile Account	Central Administration -> System Settings	Supported

***Note:** The features Configure privacy options, Manage user solutions and Configure Mobile Account are only supported for SharePoint 2010 environment.

Operations on the Web Applications-level

The operations that can be performed on SharePoint Web Applications are:

(6-11) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Quota Templates	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Create Web Application	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported

Operations on the Web Application-level

The operations that can be performed on SharePoint Web Application are:

(6-12) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Web Application Outgoing E-mail Settings	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported
Web Application General Settings	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported
Site Use Confirmation and Deletion	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported
Delete This Web Application	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Custom Properties	N/A	Supported
Extend Web Application	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Block File Types	Central Administration -> Operations	Unsupported
Create Site Collection	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported
Define Managed Paths	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Self-Service Site Management	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Manage Web Application Feature	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Remove SharePoint From IIS Web Site	Central Administration -> Application Management	Unsupported
Service Connections	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported
Configure Cross-firewall Access Zone	Central Administration -> System Settings -> Farm Management	Supported
Workflow	Central Administration -> General Settings	Supported
SharePoint Designer	Central Administration -> General Settings	Supported
Resource Throttling	Central Administration -> General Settings	Supported

***Note:** The features Service Connections, Configure Cross-firewall Access Zone, Workflow, Resource Throttling and SharePoint Designer are only supported for SharePoint 2010 environment.

Operations on the Content Databases-level

The operations that can be performed on the Content Databases-level are:

(6-13) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Add Content Database	Central Administration -> Application Management -> Content Databases	Unsupported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Operations on the Content Database-level

The operations that can be performed on the Content Database-level are:

(6-14) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Manage Content Database Settings	Central Administration -> Application Management -> Content Databases	Supported
Custom Properties	N/A	Supported
Site Collection List	N/A – see the section below.	Unsupported
Create Site Collection	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported
Delete Orphan Sites	N/A	Supported
Remove Content Database	Central Administration -> Application Management -> Content Databases	Supported

***Note:** To remove a content database, select the option from the Manage Content Database Settings pop-up.

***Note:** The Site Collection List function operates differently than the SharePoint content database settings. You can display each site by clicking on its link in the pop-up window.

***Note:** Different from the SharePoint "Create Site Collection", DocAve supports site collection creation under a specified content database.

***Note:** In "Manage Content Database Settings", you can view the size and free space of the SQL Database. This information can also be listed in custom reports for the content database level.

***Note:** "Delete Orphan Sites" function allows you to remove the site which failed to be removed from a content database to another content database.

Operations on the Site Collection-level

The operations that can be performed on the Site Collection-level are:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-15) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Create Site	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Create -> Sites and Workspaces ***Note:** You should select a language from drop-down box in the "Language Option" field according to language of your specified SharePoint environment.	Supported
Enable RSS	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Search Scopes	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Search Settings	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Search Keywords	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Portal Site Connection	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Site Collection Features	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Delete the Site Collection	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Site Templates	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
List Templates	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Web parts	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Deploy Site Maximum Depth	N/A (see the section below)	Unsupported
Site Collection Quotas and Locks	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported
Change Content Database	N/A	Supported
Site Columns	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Define Importance	N/A	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Install Importance Feature	N/A	Unsupported
Check Broken Link	N/A	Supported
SharePoint Designer Settings	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Translatable Column Settings	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Document ID Settings	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Help Settings	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Searchable Columns	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported

***Note:** The "Deploy Site Maximum Depth" function provides a feature to deploy the site maximum depth. Once this depth is specified, the customer will only be able to create subsites to the specified depth. Enter the number in the space provided in the pop-up.

***Note:** The features SharePoint Designer Settings, Translatable Column Settings, Document ID Settings, Searchable Columns and Help Settings are only supported for SharePoint 2010 environment.

Operations on Site-Level

The operations that can be performed on the Site-level are:

(6-16) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Create Site	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Create -> Sites and Workspaces	Unsupported
Site Theme	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Search Visibility	Login Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Regional Settings	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Alert me	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
RSS Settings	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Delete This Site	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported (Delete These Sites)
Custom Properties	N/A	Supported
Title, Description, and Icon	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Master Pages	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Site Content Types	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Site Features	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Reset to Site Definition	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Site Columns	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Unsupported
Create List / Library	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Create	Supported
Add a Web Part	N/A	Supported
Define Importance	N/A	Supported
Check Broken Link	N/A	Supported
Search and Offline Availability	Login a Site -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported

***Note:** The feature Search and Offline Availability is only supported for SharePoint 2010 environment.

Operations on List/Library-level

The operations that can be performed on the List/Library-level are:

(6-17) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Version Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> Settings -> List Settings	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Advanced Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> Settings -> List Settings	Supported
Title, description and navigation	Access a List/Lib. -> Settings -> List Settings	Unsupported
Alert Me	Access a List/Lib. -> Actions -> Alert Me	Supported
RSS Setting	Access a List/Lib. -> Settings -> List Settings	Unsupported
Delete this list/ library	Access a List/Lib. -> Settings -> List Settings	Supported(Delete These Lists)
Create New Folder	Access a List/Lib. -> List Settings	Unsupported
Audience Targeting Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> Settings -> List Settings	Unsupported
Rating Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> List/Lib. Settings	Supported
Manage Item Sched-uling	Access a Lib. -> Lib.Settings	Supported
Per-Location View Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> List/Lib. Settings	Unsupported
Metadata Naviga-tion Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> List/Lib. Settings	Unsupported
Column Default Value Settings (Only supported by Library)	Access a Lib. -> Lib. Settings	Unsupported
Validation Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> List/Lib. Settings	Unsupported
Record Declaration Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> List/Lib. Settings	Supported
Indexed Columns	Access a List/Lib. -> List/Lib. Settings	Unsupported

***Note:** The features Rating Settings, Manage Item Scheduling, Per-Location View Settings, Metadata Navigation Settings, Column Default Value Settings, Validation Settings, Indexed Columns, and Record Declaration Settings are only supported for SharePoint 2010 environment.

Operations on the Folder-level

The operations that can be performed on the Folder-level are:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-18) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Delete	Select a folder	Supported
Alert Me	Select a folder	Supported
View Properties	Select a folder	Supported
Edit Properties	Select a folder	Supported
Create New Folder	N/A	Supported
Per-Location View Settings	Access a List/Lib. -> List/Lib. Settings	Unsupported

***Note:** The feature Per-Location View Settings is only supported for SharePoint 2010 environment.

Operations on the File / Item-level

The operations that can be performed on the File / Item-level are:

(6-19) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Delete Item	Select a list	Unsupported
Alert Me	Select a list	Unsupported

Operations on Shared Services Provider

The operations that can be performed on the Shared Services Provider are:

(6-20) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Edit Shared Service Provider	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Supported
Manage Search Content Sources	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP -> Search Setting -> Content Sources and crawl schedules	Unsupported
User Profiles and properties	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Unsupported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Profile Services policies	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Unsupported
Import Profile		Unsupported
My Site Settings	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Unsupported
Trusted My Site host locations	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Unsupported
Published links to Office client applications	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Unsupported
Personalization Site links	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Unsupported
File types	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP -> Search Setting	Unsupported
Default content access account	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP -> Search Setting	Unsupported
Server name mappings	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP -> Search Setting	Unsupported
Search-based alerts	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP -> Search Setting	Unsupported
Specify authoritative pages	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP -> Search Setting	Unsupported
Usage repeating	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Unsupported
Audiences	Shared Services Administration -> Select a SSP	Unsupported

6.1.1.5 Security Center

The security center allows you to perform the operations below on objects and users. Please refer to the tables for the supported operations, and the "Batch Settings" if you wish to perform this operation in bulk.

Operations on Farm-level

The operations that can be performed on the Farm-level are:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-21) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Add Users	N/A	Supported
Add Groups	N/A	Supported
(Windows)Service Accounts	Central Administration -> Application Management	Supported
All People	N/A	Unsupported
Groups	N/A	Unsupported
Site Collection Permissions	N/A	Unsupported
Import Configuration Profile	N/A	Unsupported

Operations on Web Application-level

The operations that can be performed on the SharePoint Web Application are:

(6-22) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Security for Web Part Pages	N/A	Supported
User Permissions for Web Application	N/A	Supported
Policy for Web Application	N/A	Supported
Authentication Providers	N/A	Supported
Manage Permission Policy Levels	N/A	Unsupported

Operations on Site Collection-level

The operations that can be performed on the Site Collection-level are:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-23) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Add Users	Login a Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings -> People and Groups -> New	Supported
Add Groups	Login a Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings -> People and Groups -> New	Supported
Edit User Permissions	Login a Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings -> Advanced Permission -> Actions	Supported
Edit Group	N/A	Supported
Permission Level	Login a Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings -> Advanced Permission -> Setting	Unsupported
Delete Users and Groups	N/A	Supported
Anonymous Access	N/A	Supported
Site Collection Administrators	Login a Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings	Supported
Groups	N/A	Unsupported
All People	N/A	Unsupported
Site Collection Permission	N/A	Unsupported
Clone Account Permission	N/A	Unsupported
Dead Account Cleaner		Supported
Transfer Permissions		Supported

***Note:** For "Groups," "All People," and "Site Collection Permission," you must select an item of the list in the pop-up window by clicking on it to see additional settings.

Operations on Site-level

The operations that can be performed on the Site-level are:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-24) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Add Users	Login a Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings -> People and Groups -> New	Supported
Add Groups	Login a Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings -> People and Groups -> New	Supported
Edit User Permissions	Login a Site Collection -> Site Actions -> Site Settings -> Advanced Permission -> Actions	Supported
Delete Users and Groups	N/A	Supported
Groups	N/A	Unsupported
All People	N/A	Unsupported
Site Permissions	N/A	Unsupported
Anonymous Access	N/A	Supported
Clone Account Permission	N/A	Unsupported
Search Alerts	N/A	Unsupported
Dead Account Cleaner	N/A	Supported
Transfer Permission	N/A	Supported

Operations on the Folder-level

The operations that can be performed on the Folder-level are:

(6-25) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Add Users	Login a Site Collection > Site Actions > Site Settings > People and Groups > New	Supported
Clone Account Permissions	N/A	Unsupported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Manage Permis-sions	Select a folder	Unsupported

Operations on List/Library-level

The operations that can be performed on the List/ Library-level are:

(6-26) Supported / Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Add Users	N/A	Supported
Permissions For This List/Library	N/A	Unsupported
Manage Checked Out Files	N/A	Unsupported
Clone Account Permission		Unsupported
Transfer Permis-sions		Supported

Operations on File/ Item-level

The operations that can be performed on the File/ Item-level are:

(6-27) Supported/Unsupported Batch Settings

Operation	Location in SharePoint	Batch Settings
Alter Users	N/A	Unsupported
Permissions For This Item	N/A	Unsupported

6.1.1.6 Operations Specific to DocAve

DocAve allows you to run several proprietary operations directly from the Central Administrator interface.

Deploy Site Maximum Depth

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This option in DocAve allows you to set up the maximum depth of the site collection you have selected.

(6-28) Deploy Site Maximum Depth

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration >SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin*.
2	Select a site collection whose depth maximum you want to setup, and then you can find the Deploy Site Maximum Depth option under the Central Administration tab.
3	Click **Deploy Site Maximum Depth**, a dialog box will appear.
4	The maximum depth of the current site will be showed on the top of the window. You can setup the maximum depth of sites for the site collection you selected by entering a number in the text box provided below, then click OK. ***Note:** The number you enter must be larger than the current one. When the maximum depth is set up, you cannot create site more than the maximum depth under the site collection.

Change Content Database

This operation in DocAve allows you to move a site collection from one content database to another.

(6-29) Change content database

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin*.
2	Expand your farm tree to the desired Site Collection that you want to change the content database for. Select its corresponding check-box. The Change Content Database option will be listed on the right side of the screen under the Central Administration tab.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Click **Change Content Database**, a pop-up window will appear. ***Note:** There must be at least two content databases under one web application where the specified site collection locates in. If not, this operation can not be performed.
4	Select a content database in the corresponding Move site to drop-down box. The selected content database in the drop-down box is the destination where the specified site collection will be moved to. ***Note:** The target content database must be at least three times the size of the source site collection.
5	Click **Move** to move the specified site collection to the selected content database, all the data under this site collection will be saved to this selected content database. ***Note:** For SharePoint 2007, you should reset the IIS to ensure the content of this site collection can be displayed properly.

Dead Account Cleaner

This operation in DocAve allows you remove the deactivated account and non-existent AD accounts from SharePoint and transfer the permission to other user. Please note the alert for the dead account will be deleted together while deleting the dead account.

(6-30) Dead Account Cleaner

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Select the Site or Site Collection whose dead account you want to remove. You can find the Dead Account Cleaner option under the Security Center tab. You can also find any deactivated users by using the Search for Deactivated Users option in Security Search, then selecting the deactivated users, the "Dead Account Cleaner" option will be listed on the right side of the screen.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Click the "Dead Account Cleaner", a pop-up window will appear. There are two mode for you to select: Plan Mode and Live Mode.
4	Select the Plan Mode. In this mode, you can setup a schedule to clean the dead account.
5	Select the action to deal with Mysites of the deactivated users.
6	Select other settings by checking the checkbox. By default, the scanned dead accounts will be deleted after the scanning. If you wish to check the accounts and then approve the ones you wish to remove, select the Verify Accounts Before Deleting option. In this case, go to Job Monitor and click the corresponding links in the Configuration column or Detail column to download a report of all the scanned dead accountsbefore removing them from SharePoint. If you choose to remove one account, click the **Dead Account Deletion** button in the Control column of the scanning job and specify the corresponding settings in the pop-up window, then a dead account cleaning job will run. You can view the detailed information of the deleted account(s) in the deleting job report. At the same time, the deleted accounts' status will be updated in the former job which has scanned this dead account. In the job report, the Comment column records the detailed reason when the specified dead account(s) are not successfully deleted.
7	Click **Schedule** button and a pop-up window will appear. You can setup the schedule for this plan, including plan name, description, start time and the interval, and then click **OK.**
8	Select Live Mode. In this mode, the selected dead account can be removed directly.
9	All the deactivated users and non-existent AD account will be listed in the window, you can view the corresponding permission for the specific content.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Enter the user you want to transfer the permission to into the text box in the "Transfer Permissions" column. Click " " to check the user or Click " " to search a user.
11	Clicking **Clean Account**, you can select the operation to delete the account in the pop-up. Click **OK**, it will run the operation immediately. If you do not want to run it immediately, you can setup a schedule for the running time.

Clone Account Permissions

DocAve allows you to clone the account permission for site collection level, site level, and list level. By using this operation, you can clone the permission for the site collection/site/list or the user to the desired object.

Clone User Permissions

(6-31) Clone User Permissions

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Select the target where you want to do the operation by clicking the corresponding check-box.
3	Click the **Clone Account Permission** on the *Security Center* tab, and the *Clone Account Permissions* window will appear.
4	Select the **Clone User Permissions** option by clicking the radio box. Click **Next**.
5	Enter the user you want to clone the user permission from into the *Clone User Permissions From* text box, and the user you want to clone the permission to into the *Clone User Permission To* box. Click to check the user or Click to search a user.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select the permission rule by checking the corresponding check-box. • *Include permissions inherited from groups* : It will assign all the permissions of the original user to the target, including the permission of the group which the original user belongs to without adding the target user to this/these group(s) if you select this option only. • *Add user to the same groups in the destination* : It will add the target user to the group which the original user belong to. Click **Next**.
7	Specify an **email notification** to report which permission is cloned by this operation from the drop-down box.
8	If you select the **Select All** option, it will select all contents to clone permissions for.
9	If you select the **Clone objects with broken inheritance** option, the selected site includes all objects with unique permissions below the current level that the original user has permission to.
10	If you do not plan on running this clone operation now, you can set it to run on a schedule by clicking the **Schedule** button. Using the calendar icon next to the *Start Time* field, select a date and time for the job to run. Also, enter a description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the *Job Monitor*.
11	Click **OK** to save the configuration.

Clone Site Permissions

(6-32) Clone Site Permissions

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select the target where you want to do the operation by clicking the corresponding check-box.
3	Click the **Clone Account Permission** on the *Security Center* tab, and the *Clone Account Permissions* window will appear
4	Select the **Clone Site Permissions** option by clicking the radio box. Click **Next**.
5	Select the user account(s) that you want to clone to the destination site by checking the corresponding check-box, then click **Next**.
6	Select the destination sites to clone the permission to by checking the corresponding check-box, then click **Next**. ***Note:** The permissions of the children nodes are inherited from their parent nodes, so if the parent node is checked, all its children nodes are checked automatically, if the parent node is unchecked, all the children nodes will be unchecked.
7	Specify an **email notification** to report which permission is cloned by this operation from the drop-down box.
8	If you do not plan on running this clone operation now, you can set it to run on a schedule by clicking the **Schedule** button. Using the calendar icon next to the *Start Time* field, select a date and time for the job to run. Also, enter a description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the *Job Monitor*.
9	Click **OK** to save the configuration.

Operations for the security search result

After running the security search in SharePoint Administrator, DocAve allows you to do several operations on the search result.

Customize the column for the report

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To customize the search report, follow the step below.

(6-33) Customize the Column for the Security Search Result

Step	Action
1	Perform a security search job, and then go to *Job Monitor*. After the search job is complete, click *View detail report* in the **Detail** column to open the search result.
2	Click the Column Filter( ) icon on the top right corner of the search result window, and the *Column Settings* pop-up will appear.
3	Check/uncheck the check-box in the **Display** column to ensure the selected column will be displayed or not in the search result.
4	If you want to change the column name, you can enter the desired column name into the **Change Column Name To** column, the column name will be displayed accordingly.
5	Select the display order of the column by changing the number in the **Position** column.
6	Click **Apply** to save the changes, or click **Reset** to restore the column settings to the default settings.

Download the report

To download the search report, follow the steps below.

(6-34) Download the Search Report

Step	Action
1	Perform a security search job, and then go to *Job Monitor*. After the search job is complete, click *View detail report* in the **Detail** column to open the search result.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Click **Download Report** on the right pane of the search result window.
3	In the *Download Report* pop-up, select the columns you want to display in the report. There are two options you can select. • *Current Columns* : The report will include the columns which is selected in the Column Settings. For more information about this instruction, refer to Customize the column for the report section of this manual. • *All Columns* : The report will include all the columns of the search result.
4	Select the report format from the corresponding drop-down box. There are three formats you can select: PDF, CSV, and XML.
5	Click **OK**, and save the search result to the location where you want to save it.

Edit the Configuration File

After running the security search job in SharePoint Administrator, DocAve allows you to export the permission for editing, and then later import the document.

Step1: Export the file for editing

(6-35) Export the File for Editing

Step	Action
1	Perform a security search job, and then go to *Job Monitor*. After the search job is complete, click *View detail report* in the **Detail** column to open the search result.
2	Click **Export for Editing** on the right pane of the search result window to export the configuration file.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Save the configuration file to the location where you want to save it.

Step2: Edit the configuration file

(6-36) Edit the Configuration File

Step	Action
1	Go to the location where saving the configuration file, after exporting the configuration file.
2	Unzip the report folder, and then open the configuration file to update the permission as required. There are three operations(Add, Delete, and Modify) you can do on the items and you must update the status of the operation in the Change column accordingly. • *Add* : DocAve allows you to add a new permission to the specified target. If you want to add a new item to the configuration file, you must change the value of the **Change** column after adding the information of the new item. • *Delete* : You can delete the permission for specific user by changing the value of the **Change** column to **Delete**. • *Modify* : If you make some changes on the specific item, the value of the **Change** column must be changed to **Modify**. ***Note:** Only the Name and Permission columns can be modified in the configuration file.
3	Save the configuration file after the update.

Step3: Import the configuration file

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-37) Import Configuration File

Step	Action
1	After editing, you can go to *Job Monitor*. Select *Admin Search* module, and open the same search result and click **Import Configuration File**.
2	In the *Import configuration File* window, select the corresponding farm and click **Browse** button to select the edited file. You can select an *email notification* from the corresponding drop-down box, it will send the recipient(s) the email about the job completion status.
3	Click **Run** to run the import job immediately or the **Test Run** to run a test job first. If you do not plan on running this import operation now, click *Schedule* icon to schedule job.
4	After uploading, select *Central Admin* to view the import job report. Click *View configuration* in the Configuration column of the import job you want to view, and you can view the detailed information about the update items. You can also click the **Rollback** button to rollback to the previous status, or **Download** button to download the report to edit it.

Delete Orphan Sites

Change content database enables site collections to be moved from one content database to another. Sometimes the site collections may not be moved properly, however, such as if the SQL server is down. In this case there may be some corrupted sites in the destination content database. To remove these sites, use the Delete Orphan Sites function as described below:

(6-38) Delete Orphan Sites

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Select the content database which you want to delete orphan sites to, and then select the Delete Orphan Sites on the Central Administration tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td colspan="2">Select the mode by clicking the corresponding radio button, there are two mode, Plan Mode and Live Mode.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Plan Mode</td><td>If select this option, the deletion job will be run at a schedule.
Specify an email notification to report which site is orphan site by this operation from the drop-down box.
Select the Verify Orphan Sites Before Deleting option, it will report all orphan sites to the Job Monitor before removing from SharePoint. You must review the job report and approve the orphan sites before removing them from SharePoint.
Click the Schedule button to set up a schedule. Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the job to run.
Click OK to save the configuration.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Live Mode</td><td>To select this option, it will run the deletion plan immediately.

You can select the site collection URL(s) on the Site Collection URL tab or input site collection GUID(s) to remove the corrupted sites.

Click OK to run the deletion job, you can go to Job Monitor to view the report.</td></tr>
</table>

Active Account Import

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocAve allows you to configure settings for importing user profiles from Active Directory or LDAP compliant directory service.

(6-39) Import User Profiles

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Expand the data tree, and then select the Shared Services Administration where you want to import the user profiles to.
3	On the *Central Administration* tab, click **Import Profile**, and the Import Profile window will pop-up.
4	Under *Import profile data from*, select the Active Directory source from which you want to import user information. To import user information from an LDAP directory, Business Data Catalog application or other custom source click **Custom Source**. ***Note:** To successfully complete this task, you must have detailed information about your directory service structure and the correct syntax for mapping properties.
5	Under *Default Access Account*, one account should be specified, you can select to specify an account or use the default content access account. To specify an account, enter the account name and password for a default account that can access the source. The default account will be used for connections that do not specify an import access account. When choosing Use Default Content Access Account verify that the account has access to the source. ***Note:** For an Active Directory directory service connection that enables **Server Side Incremental**, the account must have the Replicate Changes permission for Active Directory directory services provided by Windows 2000 Server. Contact the domain administrator to request the proper security changes. That permission is not required for Windows Server 2003 Active Directory.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select the **Exclude deactivated accounts** option, DocAve will leverage the dead account removal logic in reverse to import only active accounts into SharePoint instead of all accounts.
7	Specify an **email notification** to report the user profile import information from the drop-down box.
8	Click the **Schedule** button to set up a schedule for the full import job and/or the incremental import job. Using the calendar icon next to the *Start Time* field, select a date and time for the job to run, and then specify the interval for the import job.
9	You can also click **OK** button to run the import job immediately.

Group Mapping

By using this function, you can move the user(s) from one group to another easily.

(6-40) Group Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > SharePoint Administrator > Central Admin*.
2	Expand the data tree, and then select the site collection(s) which you want to edit the users in batch.
3	Under the Security Center on the right hand of the screen, select the Edit Group.
4	Select the *Export Groups for Editing* option in the pop-up, and click **OK**, and then select the location where you want to save the configuration file.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Go to the location, and open the configuration file by Excel. It will list all the site collections in the first sheet, and all the user and group information in the following sheet one site collection by one site collection. You can add/remove the users to the desired SharePoint group. Save the changes.
6	Select the *Import Groups from Datasheet* option in the pop-up, and then click **Import** to import the configuration file.
7	You can click **Test Run** to test the group mapping job result. Click **Go to Job Report** button to go to Job Report to view the test report, and then click **View configuration** under the Configuration column to view the report. In the pop-up, select the site collection you want to view on the right hand window, please note the changed item will be marked in the yellow, and the failed item will be in the red. For more detail test result, click V*iew detail report* under the Detail column.
8	To run the mapping job, click **OK**. And all the information will be listed in the Import Groups from Datasheet pop-up window. To run the mapping job immediately, click **Apply Now**. To run the mapping job by schedule, click the **Schedule** button to set up a schedule. Using the calendar icon next to the *Start Time* field, select a date and time for the job to run.
9	After the mapping job is complete, you can go to *Job Monitor* or view the detail job report.

Check Broken Link

This feature help you to scan all the pages and links on the site to find the broken link and show the position of broken links and the reason why it does not work in the job report.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-41) Check Broken Link

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Expand the data tree, and then select the site collection(s)/site(s) which you want to scan.
3	On the *Central Administration* tab, click **Check Broken Link**.
4	In the *Check Broken Link* pop-up, select the links you want to check in the Check For Broken Links In field. There are three type links will be checked, hyperlinks, images, and other page contents(script, css...). By default, these three options are checked. ***Note:** The links in the documents and files will not be checked.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	In the *Advanced Settings* field, you can set up some settings for the verify job. • *Verify broken links by retrying … times* : Sometimes, the broken links cannot be verified properly, you can set up the number of times for retrying. By default, this option is not selected, it will not retry the verify job. • *Check internal/external links depth* : Specify the depth of the links, and it will check the all the links in the pages which is included in the specific depth. For example, page A links to page B, and page B links to page C, specify the depth as 2, it will check the page B and page C. ***Note:** Please note the different between an internal link and external links. The internal link means the link which point to the URL which is with the managed path of the selected site collection, the external link is the link which point to some webpart, like *Yahoo*.For example, select the site collection http://www.AvePoint.com/sites/abc as the target site, the link as http://www.AvePoint.com/sites/abc/internal is the internal link, if the link point to http://www.DocAve.com/test, it is the external. • *Check the URLs that match the criteria/Skip the URLs that match the criteria* : You can select to check some links whose URL matched the specific criteria, or skip some links whose URL is with the specific criteria.
6	Click the **Schedule** button to set up a schedule for the verify job. You can select to run this job immediately by selecting the *Now* in the *Start Time* field, or using the calendar icon next to the *Start Time* field, select a date and time for the job to run, and then specify the interval for the check job.
7	Click **OK**, if you select to run this job now, it will run this job immediately, otherwise, it will run this job by schedule.

Delete the site collection

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This feature supports you to delete the selected site collection(s) in DocAve Central Admin directly, and by selecting corresponding deletion method, you can instantly restore entire site collections in the exact state they were prior to deletion.

(6-42) Delete the Site Collection

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Central Admin*.
2	Expand the data tree, and then select the site collection(s) which you want to delete.
3	On *Central Administration* tab on the right hand of the window, click **Delete The Site Collection**.
4	Confirm the site collection information. Select the deletion method, there are two methods you can select. • *Immediate Deletion* : uses SharePoint 2007 deletion method to delete the site and the related information in database. • *Gradual Deletion* : uses the SharePoint 2010 default method to delete the site, but the related information in database is not deleted. If your environment is SharePoint 2007, this option is in gray and cannot be selected.
5	Click **Delete** to delete the site collections.

6.1.2 STSADM

DocAve supplies a graphical user interface to run STSADM commands for Microsoft SharePoint. In the setting section, you can add new operations directly, and then execute them via the STSADM interface.

For a detailed reference guide on all STSADM commands, view the Microsoft TechNet site here:http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/office/sharepointserver/cc948709.aspx.

6.1.2.1 STSADM Settings

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To add an operation you want to use, please follow the steps below:

(6-43) STSADM Settings

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > SharePoint Administrator > STSADM > STSADM Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click New and enter the Profile Name into the corresponding field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Select the Visibility check-box to make sure whether the profile is visible. By default, the check-box is checked.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Specify the operation name, and then set up the argument.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">5</td><td colspan="2">Select a Type from the drop-down box to add corresponding arguments. It includes three options: Text Box; Check Box; and Drop-down.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Text Box</td><td>1. Enter the Argument Name in the corresponding input field.
2. You may enter a “Description” in the field provided.
3. If this argument is a necessary parameter, you need to check the “Mandatory Option” box.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Check Box</td><td>1. Enter the Argument Name in the corresponding input field.
2. You may enter a “Description” in the field provided.
3. If this argument is a necessary parameter, you need to check the “Mandatory Option” box.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Drop-Down	1. Enter the Argument Name in the corresponding input field. 2. Enter the choices content into the text box. It will list in the drop-down box. 3. You may enter a "Description" in the field provided. 4. If this argument is a necessary parameter, you need to check the "Mandatory Option" box.
6	Add or remove an argument by clicking **Add** or **Remove**.	
7	Click **Save** to save this operation. A list of saved profiles will appear on the right.	
8	You can also download and upload a batch of the operation profiles by using **Download** option and then using **Upload** option to import the file back to DocAve.	

6.1.2.2 STSADM Interface

Please follow the steps below to execute scheduled (or immediate) STSADM commands:

(6-44) STSADM Interface

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DovAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *STSADM* > *STSADM Interface*.
2	You can run the plan on a schedule, specify a time to run the command using the calendar icon. If you wish to run this plan immediately, check the "No Schedule" box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Click the check-box in front of the server names in the "Front End Servers" drop-down box that will be running the STSADM command and click **Apply**.
4	Select an email notification from the drop-down box, it contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to the Section Email Notification of this Manual. Please note that this feature is optional.
5	Click the checkbox next to Reset IIS and select the time. You can reset it after the job is completed or specify a time by using the calendar icon. For the scheduled Reset IIS job, you can view it in the Schedule Job Monitor.
6	Using the "Profile Name" field, and the corresponding Operation name will be listed underneath. Select an STSADM command to run. ***Note:** Please ensure you are running the latest version of DocAve v5 to have a complete list of commands. As SharePoint upgrades their interface, this module will also be updated to include new STSADM commands. You can add any new commands in the STSADM Settings section as well.
7	Input the necessary parameters in the fields.
8	If you want to run the plan immediately, either click **Submit** or **Run now** to run the plan. ***Note:** If you select the "Submit" option, a job report will not be created for this command in the Job Monitor.
9	If you want to run this plan on a schedule, you first need to setup a schedule. Click **Save** to save this plan. A list of saved plans can be found on the right section of the screen. You can also reload or delete a previously scheduled task using the corresponding buttons behind the plan name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** The DocAve STSADM interface is intended only to supply an interface to STSADM. Though you can schedule commands, it does not enhance any functionality of STSADM. Any errors received from this module should be referenced in the Microsoft SharePoint Administration Guide.

6.1.3 Admin Reports

You can generate a report to view specific information by using the DocAve Admin Reports.

Before configuring the report, you should setup a export location for the report.

6.1.3.1 Export Location

To setup an export location for a report, please follow the steps below:

(6-45) Setup an Export Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Admin Report* > *Export Location*.
2	Click **New** and enter a profile name into the corresponding box.
3	Input the Username as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored. Click **Test** to test the path. After testing successfully, click **Save** to save the configuration, and the location will list in the Location Profiles column on the right of the screen.

6.1.3.2 Report Builder

To setup a report configuration, you can see the following steps:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-46) Report Builder

Step	Action
1	Navigate *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *SharePoint Administrator* > *Admin Report* > *Report Builder*.
2	Click **New** and type a plan name into the corresponding box.
3	Select the level of the selected content from the **Level** drop-down box.
4	Click the Farm icon to expand the tree. You can select the content you want to generate a report for, by checking the corresponding check-box. If the level of the content you selected is higher than the specific level which you specified in step3, all the content whose level is lower will be selected together. For example, set the level as Site, and select the a web application on the data tree, all the sites under this selected web application will be selected also.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Specify the attribute of the report by checking the corresponding check-box under the "Report Settings". You can view and select the sub-attributes included in the attribute by clicking the "" icon. Select the attributes by checking corresponding check-box. • Configuration database : The configuration database server, name, and version will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Antivirus : The settings of virus scanning will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Outgoing E-Mail Settings : The default e-mail settings for all web applications will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Current License : The current license of SharePoint will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Security Settings : Administrators will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Servers and Services : The servers and services details will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Features : The features of SharePoint will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Shared Services : The Shared Service settings will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. You can also select two jobs in one plan to view the differences of Shared Search Settings by clicking the icon. • Include lower level options : The attributes' information under current level will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Default Database Server : The settings of default content database server will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Single sign-on settings : The single sign-on settings will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Incoming E-Mail Settings : The e-mail settings for current server will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	• Farm type : The settings of Shared Services between server farms which allows Web applications from one server farm to use shared services for another sever farm will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Properties : The properties of SharePoint content will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Solutions : The solutions deployed in SharePoint will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Farm Features : The farm features of SharePoint will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • Environment overview : The environment overview will displayed in the report by checking this attribute. • SharePoint Storage Report : The storage details of SharePoint(the sizes of each site collection, site, list, folder, file in different storages) will be displayed in the report by checking this attribute.
7	Go to the *Location* tab, you can setup three options: • *Including Difference Report* : If you select this option, the generated report will include a difference report of the selected content. • *Report Format* : There are four kinds of formats in the drop-down list: PDF, EXCEL(.xls), EXCEL(.xlsx), CSV and XML. Select a format for the report you would like. ***Note:** To export a EXCEL (.xlsx) report, the .NET Framework must be 3.5 with SP1 or above. • *Export Location* : You can select an export location to generate the report to. The location can be setup in the section "Export Location". Please refer to Section 6.1.3.1 of this Manual.
8	Select an email notification for this plan from the drop-down box under the *Reporting* tab. These profiles are set up in Section 3.5.1.1 of this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">In the schedule area, you can have up to six different schedules for each report. Click on the clock icon, it will be highlighted in yellow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Check the Schedule check-box to activate a Schedule, the clock icon you set currently will be highlighted in green. When you configure other schedule, this active clock icon will be highlighted in blue.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">Click on the calendar icon to the right of the Start Time field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click OK.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select a time zone in the TimeZone drop-down box. By default, it will be selected according to the Browser’s.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">14</td><td colspan="2">Specify the interval at which the backup will occur. Choices are: Every Hour, Day, Week, and Month.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If…</td><td>Then…</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every Hour</td><td>Choose this plan to run every set number of hours.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every Day</td><td>Set the plan to run every set number of days.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every Week</td><td>Set the plan to run every set number of weeks.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every Month</td><td>You can choose this plan to run on every set number of months.</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td colspan="2">You can check the “Time Window”. It has two options:
End after… : The plan will end after completing the set number of occurrences.
End by… : Click on the calendar icon to the right of the “End by” field. Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click OK. The plan will end at the specified time.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	To create another schedule, click on another clock icon and repeat steps 8-14. Otherwise, proceed to step 16.
17	Save the plan by clicking **Save**. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the right column. To run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**.
18	After the plan finishes successfully, you can find the report in the location you specified in Export Location.

6.2 Content Manager

The Content Manager module allows the seamless migration of content from one location to another within Microsoft SharePoint 2007, based upon a one-to-one replication. This migration can be performed within the same SharePoint farm, or from one SharePoint farm to another. Content Manager is a powerful tool that performs real-time, live copy with no backup needed. Content Manager allows the administrator to restructure the content and topology of his/her SharePoint environment easily and accurately.

6.2.1 Installation

To enable the Content Manager module, please follow the steps below:

(6-47) Installation

Step	Action
1	Open the Agent Configuration Tool on Agent machine by going to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Agent Tools > Agent Configuration Tool*.
2	Under the *Administration* tab, verify that the Content Manager option is checked.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

6.2.2 Un-installation

To uninstall the Content Manager module, please follow the steps below:

(6-48) Un-installation

Step	Action
1	Open the Agent Configuration Tool on Agent machine by going to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Agent Tools > Agent Configuration Tool*.
2	Under the Administration tab, uncheck the Content Manager checkbox.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

6.2.3 Layout, Features, and Options

Content Manager can copy specific content from one location to another location. Although it does have scheduling options, it is not designed to perform automatic real time replication of an entire SharePoint farm.

Content Manager was designed to allow SharePoint administrators to copy documents, libraries, sites, and other SharePoint items from one location in SharePoint to another seamlessly and quickly.

With Content Manager, the administrator has a simple and easy-to-use interface that allows this process to be done in one step.

6.2.4 Settings

Content Manager has three types of settings you should configure before building any Content Manager plans: Export Location, Mapping Setup, and Content Selection Rule. These will be explained in further detail in the following sections.

6.2.4.1 Export Location

The Export Location tab allows you to configure locations on external system storage that you may use Content Manager to export data to.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-49) Set up an Export Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Content Manager > Settings*.
2	Click the *Export Location* tab.
3	Click **New** and enter a Profile Name into the corresponding box.
4	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
5	Enter a domain\username, password, and server path to set up access to the path where data will be written to and stored. Click **Test** to test the path. After testing successfully, click **Save** to save the configuration.
6	The profile will now appear in the Custom Settings column on the right.

6.2.4.2 User Mapping

The User Mapping tab allows you to custom map individual domains or users from the source SharePoint location to the destination SharePoint location.

(6-50) Setup An User Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Content Manager > Settings*.
2	Click the *Mapping Setup* tab
3	Click **New** and input a profile name in the corresponding box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	If you wish to map domains between SharePoint locations, check the Domain Mapping Replace Settings box. This setting maps the domain name from the source to the destination domain. Input the source domain name and the destination domain name into the corresponding field. If you want to add new mapping, click the Add button.
5	If you wish to map individual users between SharePoint locations, check the User Mapping Replace Settings box. Input the Source Username you want to map and the destination user name you wish to map to. Click the **Add** button to add the user mapping. You can also specify a Destination Default User in the provided field, and the user will be changed to this specified default user if the source user cannot be found in the destination and does not have mapping setting. This destination default user must be existed in the destination and the permission of this source user cannot be mapped to this specified default user.
6	Click **Save**, it will list under the new Mapping Settings profile in the column on the right.

6.2.4.3 Content Selection Rule

Under the Content Selection Rule tab, you can configure rules to select certain types of content tab, you can select various level to assign content selection rules. You just need to fill in one field under each rule, and then save the setting. It supported the wildcard "*.*" in Document and the wildcard "*" in other rule.

(6-51) Rules Regarding Site Collections, Sites, and Lists

	Site Collections	Sites	Lists
Name: Will include any items with the phrase specified here in the title of the item.	For site collection you will filter by Site URLs	X	X

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

	Site Collections	Sites	Lists
Modified Time: Includes any sites modified since the time specified.	X	X	X
Created Time: Includes any sites Created since the time specified.	X	X	X
Owner: Includes the specified owner set in SharePoint.	X	X	X
Template: Includes all sites with the template specified.	X	X	
Site Size Trigger: Includes all sites larger than the size specified.	X		

(6-52) Rules Regarding Item, and Document,

	Item	Document
Name: Will include any items with the phrase specified here in the title of the item.	X	For document you will filter by Document Name
Keep number of Items: Will keep the number of the latest modified items.	X	For document you will keep the number of the documents.
Modified Time: Includes any items modified since the time specified.	X	X
Created Time: Includes any items created since the time specified.	X	X
Owner: Includes the specified owner set in SharePoint.	X	X
Last Modifier: Includes the specified last modifier set in SharePoint.	X	X

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

	Item	Document
Document Size: Includes any file larger than the specified number		X
Content Type: Includes any items with the specified content type.	X	X
Column: Includes any column related to an item in the SharePoint environment.	X	X

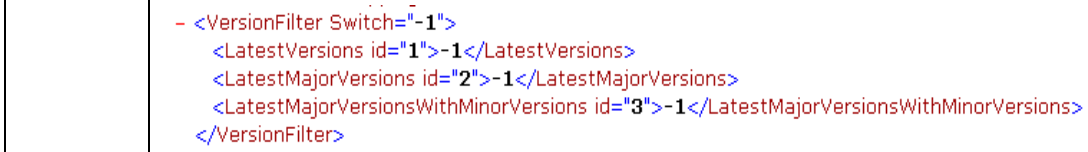
6.2.4.4 Version Filter

DocAve allows you to copy the specific versions to the destination, by using this function, you can select to copy a specific number and version to the destination.

(6-53) Set up the Version Filter Rule

Action	Step
1	Go to the agent installation directory, by default, it is C:\Program Files\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Action	Step
2	Open the ContentManager.xml file, and go to the *VersionFilter* node.  There are three values you can specify for the Switch parameter. If the Switch value is not the followings(1, 2, 3), all the versions will be copied to the destination. • *1* : It represents *Copy the latest x versions*, the number between the *LatestVersions* node is the version number. For example, in the source there are 6 versions: 1.0, 2.0, 2.1, 3.0, 3.1, and 3.2(current version), set up the VersionFilter node as *<VersionFilter Switch="**1**"> <LatestVersions id="1">**2**</LatestVersions>* It will copy the version 3.2, 3.1, and 3.0 to the destination. • *2* : It represents *Copy the latest x major versions*, the number between the *LatestMajorVersions* node is the version number. For example, in the source there are 6 versions: 1.0, 2.0, 2.1, 3.0, 3.1, and 3.2(current version), set up the VersionFilter node as *<VersionFilter Switch="**2**"> <LatestVersions id="1">-1</LatestVersions> <LatestMajorVersions id="2">**2**</LatestMajorVersions>* It will copy the version 3.2, 3.0 and 2.0 to the destination. • *3* : It represents *Copy the latest x major versions with minor versions*, the number between the *LatestMajorVersionsWithMinorVersions* node is the version number. For example, in the source there are 6 versions: 1.0, 2.0, 2.1, 3.0, 3.1, and 3.2(current version), set up the VersionFilter node as *<VersionFilter Switch="**3**"> <LatestVersions id="1">-1</LatestVersions> <LatestMajorVersions id="2">-1</LatestMajorVersions> <LatestMajorVersionsWithMinorVersions id="3">**2**</LatestMajorVersionsWithMinorVersions> </VersionFilter>* It will copy the version 3.2, 3.1, 3.0, 2.1 and 2.0 to the destination. ***Note:** The current version must be included in the filter result.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Action	Step
3	Save the configuration file.

6.2.4.5 Site Template mapping and List Template mapping

In SharePoint 2007 environment, you can map the source site/list template to the destination one by configuring the ContentManager.xml file. The file is in DocAve Agent's installation path, which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data by default.

***Note:** For the lists that can only be created in the source site template, they cannot be replicated to the destination site which use another site template, even when you have configured the site template mapping.

In order to enable the configuration in the ContentManager.xml file, the **Configuration** checkbox must be unchecked when you create a new plan in *DocAve > Administration > Content Manager > Plan Builder*.

After you find the file and open it with NotePad, you can configure the settings in the following sections.

SiteTemplateAndListTemplateMapping switch = "off"

This attribute is the switch of the site\list mapping function. By default, its value is off, and the site\list mapping function is not enabled.

If the value of this attribute is on, both the site template mapping and the list template mapping functions are enabled. If you only want to enable one of the mappings, refer to the information below.

- If you only want to enable the site template mapping, remove the <List source="101" destination="10101" featrueId="8948732A-8439-4577-82CE-AC8F81D7B7A6"/> node.
- If you only want to enable the list template mapping, remove the <Site source="STS#0" isDestinationCustom="True" destination="FDIC_Governance_043009.stp" /> node.

Multiple records can be entered in the configuration file.

Site source = "Site_Template_ID"

The value of this attribute is the ID of the site template used by the source site collection or sub site. If the attribute is configured as *Site source="STS#0"*, all the team sites will be replicated to the destination using the template specified in the **destination** attribute. Refer to the following table for the template ID of each site template.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-54) Site Template ID and Template Name

Template ID	Template Name
STS#0	Team Site
STS#1	Blank Site
STS#2	Document Workspace
MPS#0	Basic Meeting Workspace
MPS#1	Blank Meeting Workspace
WIKI#0	Wiki Site
BLOG#0	Blog
SPS#0	SharePoint Portal Server Site

isDestinationCustom="True"

The value of this attribute specifies whether the destination site template is customized. True means the site template is a customized one and False means the site template is a built-in template.

destination="destination_site_template.stp"

The value of this attribute is the name of the destination site template.

List source="List_Template_ID"

The value of this attribute is the ID of the list template used by the source library. If the attribute is configured as *List source="101"*, all the document libraries will be replicated to the destination using the customized template specified in **destination** attribute. Refer to the following table for the template ID of each list template.

(6-55) List Template ID and Template Name

Template ID	Template Name
DocumentLibrary	Document library. Value = 101.
PictureLibrary	Picture library. Value = 109.
DataConnectionLibrary	Data connection library for sharing information about external data connections. Value = 130.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

destination=”10101”

The value of this attribute is the ID of the list template used by the destination library.

featureId="8948732A-8439-4577-82CE-AC8F81D7B7A6"

The value of this attribute is the feature ID of the destination list template specified in **destination** attribute.

6.2.5 Plan Builder

The Content Manager Plan Builder is used to actually move content from one SharePoint location to another. There are two Plan Builder modes: Native and Advanced.

6.2.5.1 Plan Builder - Native Mode

You can use Native mode in Plan builder for an easier to configure, one-way replication similar to how SharePoint manages content. In Native mode, you can replicate content between the same level or from lower-levels to higher-levels.

To set up a Native mode Content Manager Plan, please follow the steps below:

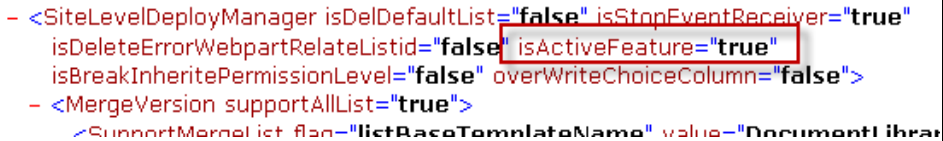
(6-56) Native Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > Content Manager > Plan Builder.
2	Click **New** and enter the Plan Name in the corresponding field.
3	Select Native from the Mode drop-down.
4	Under the Reporting tab, you can optionally select an Email Notification profile for this plan from the drop-down box. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on creating Email Notification profiles.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Under the Scheduling tab, you can optionally configure a schedule for this plan to run on. If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by un-checking the “No Schedule” check-box under the Schedule tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Check the “Keep ID” check-box. If you check this box, it will replicate the unique identifier of the content in SharePoint instead of generating a new ID.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Click on the calendar icon to the right of the Start Time field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click OK.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">9</td><td colspan="2">Select a kind of option from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not copy the content if it already exists on the destination. For example, if an entire folder’s content is selected for replicating, but only one document was removed from the destination folder, only the removed document will be restored.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will copy the content over duplicate content on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be replicated.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected items to be restored. Items that already exists will not be deleted; item that is not already present will be added. When duplicate items are present a “_1” or “_2” (increasing in numerical value) will be added.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a “Description” in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Select an Source Agent from the drop-down box.
12	Click the agent name to expand the tree.
13	Select the content you want to replicate by clicking the corresponding radio button. In order to see the files inside the folder, open the file browser by clicking on the " " button after the URL. You can select the individual content and the security to replicate by checking the corresponding check-box(es). ***Note:** If you select list level to run job, and some features are activated in the site which this list resides in, after the job, these features will be activated in the sites which the destination list resides in. For SharePoint 2010, you can select to change this setting in the configuration file(the default location is *C:\Program Files (x86)\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010\DesignManager\SP2010.DesignManager.Configuration.xml*), change the parameter isActiveFeature value to select whether activate the site features after the list level job. By default, the value of this parameter is true, which means the site features will be activated. 
14	You can also find the content you want to restore by clicking the " " button after the URL and it will pop-up the "Advance Search" window. Enter the exact content URL or use wildcards in the Criteria box. Click **Add** to add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case-sensitive searches, check the "Case Sensitive" box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting.
15	Select a destination agent from the "Destination Agent" drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	Click on the agent name to expand the tree.
17	Navigate through the tree structure of the SharePoint environment to find your destination for the content. Clicking on the corresponding radio next to the document library to select it. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be copied to it. ***Note:** If you want to create a new Site Collection, you need to enter the entire URL for the new Site Collection, and click **Configure** button to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. If you want to create a Site/ List/ Folder, a new name is enough.
18	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
19	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a replicator type and option and input a description, and then click **OK** to run the plan. You can go to the job report to view the process.

6.2.6 Advanced Mode

There are two modes to do the migration, live mode and stage mode. In live mode, you can do the migration from source Agent to destination Agent directly. In stage mode, you can export the content to a location you setup in the section Settings of this Manual, and then import it from the location and restore to destination.

6.2.6.1 Basic Options

Before you run a content manager, you need to select the various options.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Settings

- *Content* : This will replicate all items, files, and versions.
- *Configuration* : Replicating configurations and properties will replicate the specified items.
- *Security* : Replicating securities will copy over users, groups, and permissions. Security and permissions can only be replicated if the content exists in the destination, or if "Content" is selected as well.
- *DocAve Archived Data* : You can also select the operation on the archived data by checking the corresponding radio button. Please note this option only works on the item level.
- *Include List Attachments* : This will replicate the attachments in the list. By default, it is checked.
- *Include Workflow Definition* : This option allows you to copy the workflow state of the contents that you have selected. For details regarding the replication of workflows themselves, please refer to section Customization and Workflow Definition.
- *Preserve NULL column values* : It will keep the column value as none for the selected content after the job is complete if the source column value is null. If you do not select this option, the value will be the default column value. Only the SharePoint 2010 supports this option.

Customization and Workflow Definition

In order to support backup and restore for most customizations and workflows:

- The backup plan defined by the user must include the site collection (or content database in platform level backup) containing these customizations, as well as the related resources for these customizations on the front-end.
- At the time of the restore, customizations may require front-end resources that do not exist on the destination front-end server(s). These must be searched / restored first. This can either be done through the platform level backup's front-end restore capability, or may need to be re-installed to the front-end directly via a separate installer (if the customization originally came as a part of a separate application).
- Only in-place restore at site collection or database level is supported.

All customizations and workflows are not guaranteed and will not be covered by this backup due to the flexibility of SharePoint and the lack of unified deployment strategies. As a result, it is impossible to programmatically detect the links to external sources (either application databases or front-end files) that are common in customizations, workflows, and web parts are as follows, such as:

- Front-end resources or separately installed packages
- The SharePoint GUID and/or URL of any objects associated with the customization (list items, images, documents, etc.)

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- External SQL databases for management of workflows or states

For issues that depend on the GUID or URL, an in-place restore at the site collection / database level should keep these parameters intact. Other parameters will not be automatically covered. However, you are encouraged to use DocAve to test the backup and restore of your workflows or other customizations.

Data Configuration

- *Data Configuration* : This is where the administrator can select whether encrypt or compress on the data. By default, the check-boxes of Compression and Encryption is unchecked.

Reporting

- *Email Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual. Please note that this feature is optional.

Schedule

To setup a schedule, please follow the steps below:

(6-57) Setup A Schedule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Content Manager* > *Plan Builder* > *Schedule*.
2	Uncheck the "No Schedule" checkbox.
3	Specify a start time by clicking the " " icon, it will pop-up a window. Select the time you want to run the job, and then click **OK**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">4</td><td colspan="2">Select a kind of action from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Copy</td><td>It will copy the content from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Move</td><td>It will move the content from the source to the destination. The source content will be deleted from SharePoint after the content successfully moved to the destination.
Manually Delete Source documents/ items : You can delete the source content manually by clicking Delete Content in the Job Monitor module.
Automatically Delete Source documents/items : The documents/items in the source will be automatically deleted after being moved to the destination.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">5</td><td colspan="2">Select a kind of option from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not copy the content if it already exists on the destination. For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for replicating, but only one document was removed from the destination folder, only the removed document will be restored.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will copy the content over duplicate content on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be replicated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected items to be restored. Items that already exists will not be deleted; item that is not already present will be added. When duplicate items are present a "_1" or "_2" (increasing in numerical value) will be added.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Replace</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to copy the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be replicated. For the security reason, it is recommended you use this option when the destination is created by the manually input functions, which means you create a new destination for the source content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a "Description" in the field provided to help distinguish the job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
</table>

Advanced

To setup the advanced options, please follow the steps below.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Custom User Mapping* : This drop-down list shows the custom user mapping configured in the "Setting" section in this module.
- *Content Selection Rule* : This drop-down list shows the content selection rules configured in the "Setting" section in this module.
- *Backup Destination Before Move* : Selecting this option will backup the data on the destination server before replicating the data. Please specify the Media Service and destination Device for the backup data to be saved to. Once the data replicated job failed, you can reset the destination by the backup data.
- *Include User Profiles* : This option decides if user profiles are going to be replicated with the security.

***Note:** If the user profile already exists on the destination, the profile will not be overwritten when replicating the sites.

- *Keep metadata even if user no longer exists* : Checking this option, you can actually input a valid username into the "Place Holder Account" text box to transfer the metadata to this value. The metadata which is displayed as the dead user account will be replicated to the destination. By default, the dead user account will be displayed as System Account if you did not specify a place holder account.

***Note:** This place holder account must be a pre-existing user in that SharePoint destination environment.

- *Language Mapping* : This drop-down list shows the language mapping configured in the "Language Mapping" section in the Control Panel module. Please note that this feature is optional.

6.2.6.2 Live Mode

To run a Live Mode Content Manager, please follow the steps below:

(6-58) Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Content Manager > Plan Builder > Advanced*.
2	Input a name in the field next to the "plan name".
3	Select Advanced from the "Mode" drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Configure the basic options on the top of the GUI. For more information, please refer to the "Basic Settings" under the Section 6.3.5.2 of this Manual.
5	Select the Source Agent and Destination Agent radio boxes.
6	Select an agent from the "Source Agent" drop-down list on the left.
7	Click the Agent name to expand the tree until the desired location is reached. Select the content you want to replicate by clicking the corresponding radio box. You can also open the file browser by clicking the icon, and check off the appropriate items in the pop-up.
8	You can also find the content you want to restore by clicking the button after the URL and it will pop-up the "Advance Search" window. Enter the exact content URL or use wildcards in the Criteria box. Click **Add** to add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case-sensitive searches, check the "Case Sensitive" box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting.
9	Select a destination agent from the drop-down box.
10	Click on the agent name to expand the tree. You can select the default Language Mapping or turn off it from the drop-down list

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Navigate through the tree structure of the SharePoint environment to find your destination for the content. Clicking on the corresponding radio next to the URL to select it. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field, and click **Configure** button to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up After running this plan, the selected data will be copied to it. ***Note:** If you want to create a new Site Collection, you need to enter the entire URL for the new Site Collection. If you want to create a Site/ List/ Folder, a new name is enough.
12	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed in the Plan Viewer column under the corresponding agent.
13	If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time. If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. You can go to the job report to view the process.

6.2.6.3 Stage Mode

This is a preconfigured location that houses a sample environment, you can export the content and import the content to the production SharePoint server you want to use. To Perform of stage mode content management, you must export the content to a specified location, then import the backup data to a SharePoint environment.

Source Agent to Export to staging

(6-59) Export Data From Source Agent

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > Content Manager > Plan Builder > Advanced.
2	Click **New** and enter a plan name into the corresponding box,

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Select the radio button next to Export from staging on the right of the screen.
4	Select an Source Agent from the drop-down box, then expand the tree to the content you wish to export and check the corresponding check-box. You can also open the file browser by clicking the icon, and check off the appropriate items in the popup.
5	You can also find the content you want to restore by clicking the button after the URL and it will pop-up the Advance Search window. Enter the exact content URL or use wildcards in the Criteria box. Click **Add** to add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** * represents random characters; ? represents one character. For case-sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding par-ent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting.
6	Select a location from the Export Location drop-down box. For more information about setting up the location, please refer to Section Set-tings of this Manual.
7	Click **Save**, the plan will list in the Plan Viewer column under the cor-responding agent on the right. If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time.
8	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now** and select a type and option and enter a description, and then click **OK**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

Import from Staging to a Destination Agent

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-60) Import The Data To The Destination

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > Content Manager > Plan Builder > Advanced.
2	Check the radio button next to "Import from staging."
3	Select a destination agent from the drop-down box on the right.
4	Click the location name to expand the data tree on the left hand of the screen, and then select the content you want to import by clicking the corresponding radio box.
5	Click the Destination Agent name to navigate through the data tree structure of the SharePoint environment to find your destination for the content on the right hand of the screen. Clicking on the corresponding radio next to the URL to select it. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it. ***Note:** If you want to create a new Site Collection, you need to enter the entire URL for the new Site Collection, and click **Configure** button to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. If you want to create a Site/ List/ Folder, a new name is enough. ***Note:** If you want to create a site collection under a web application with FBS authentication, click **Configure**. The content database and the site collection administrator must be specified. To run this job successfully, you must configure the user mapping for this site collection administrator in User Mapping section, otherwise, the source content will not be copied to the destination.
6	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed in the Plan Viewer column under the corresponding farm name. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time. If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now** and select a type and option and input a description, and then click **OK**. You can go to the job report to view the process.

6.2.6.4 Promote Multiple Site to Site Collections by using Configuration File

This function allows you promote sites to site collections using configuration file. By using this function, multiple sites can be promoted to site collections under the destination web application, with the flexibility of specifying destination managed path, content database and relative URL can be specified. During the process, the managed paths and content databases will be created automatically if not existing. This will make the SharePoint re-structure process much easier, eliminating the need of manual and lengthy process of creating managed paths, content databases and moving destination Site Collections among content databases.

You can select a Site Collection or some Sites in it individually from the source, and specify a web application where you want to promote the Sites of the selected Site Collection in the destination. Then generate a template configuration file, edit it and upload it to the plan. After performing the following steps, the selected sites will be promoted in destination as specified in configuration file.

(6-61) Promote Multiple Sites to Site Collections by using Configuration File

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > Content Manager > Plan Builder.
2	Select Advanced from the "Mode" drop-down box.
3	Configure the basic options on the top of the GUI. For more information, please refer to the "Basic Settings" under the Section 6.3.5.2 of this Manual.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select a Site Collection or some Sites in it individually from the source agent drop-down box on the left hand of the screen, and then select a Web Application from the destination agent drop-down box on the right side. ***Note:** From the source agent, you can select a Site Collection or multiple sites in it individually.
5	Click " " icon next to the selected web application URL to make it turn to " ". The "multiple sites promotion" function will be enabled in this plan.
6	Click **Configuration** next to "Promote sub site using configuration file", a Configuration File window will appear. By default, there is no initial template provided. So you need to click **Generate Template** to create one and click **Apply** to apply it to this plan. Before generating the template, you should configure the basic settings. • *Global Wildcard Managed Path* : It is used to define the managed path for the destination site collection • *Global Content DataBase* : It is used to define the Content Database for the destination site collection. • *Level of Sites* : It is used to define the site level to be migrated.
7	After generating the template, the " " will appear, and you can click it to download the configuration file, and then custom the configuration manually. You can setup the mapping rules in this configuration file to promote the sites in the specific site collection up to site collections in destination. You can also specify Destination managed paths, content databases and site collection URL in this file.
8	Click " " to upload the configuration file after editing.
9	Click **Apply** to apply it to the plan.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Configuring the attributes in Configuration File

Users can configure the configuration file according to their requirements, the following is an example for running the Job.WAP Config.

```
<WebApplicationUpgradeConfiguration DestinationDBServer="" DBAuthentication="W"
    DBAccount="" DBPassword="" GlobalWildcardManagedPath="" GlobalContentDB=""
    keyBegin="" keyEnd="">
  <Web key="0" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/" DestinationManagedPath=""
    ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="root" ContentDB=""
    IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="1" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/itemA" DestinationManagedPath=""
    ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="itemA" ContentDB=""
    IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="2" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/team1" DestinationManagedPath=""
    ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="team1" ContentDB=""
    IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="3" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/team1/11" DestinationManagedPath=""
    ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="11" ContentDB=""
    IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="4" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/team1/12" DestinationManagedPath=""
    ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="12" ContentDB=""
    IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="5" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/team1/team11"
    DestinationManagedPath="" ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="team11"
    ContentDB="" IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="6" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/team1/team12"
    DestinationManagedPath="" ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="team12"
    ContentDB="" IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="7" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/team2" DestinationManagedPath=""
    ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="team2" ContentDB=""
    IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="8" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/team2/21" DestinationManagedPath=""
    ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="21" ContentDB=""
    IncludeSubSites="true" />
  <Web key="9" SourceServerRelativeUrl="/team2/22" DestinationManagedPath=""
    ManagedPathType="" DestinationRelativeUrl="22" ContentDB=""
    IncludeSubSites="true" />
    </WebApplicationUpgradeConfiguration>
```

To perform the Sites Promotion, you should set the mapping in the configuration file, and then upload it.

- There are a root node named WebApplicationUpgradeConfiguration and the "Web" node which is used to define the mapping for site in the configuration file.
- Every "Web" node has an attribute "key". The values of the keys are unsigned integers. You can set a range of key to perform the promotion by inputting the number in the root's attributes "keyBegin" and "keyEnd".
  Example: If you set keyBegin= "0" keyEnd= "5", then the mappings whose keys are between 0 and 5 will be run. If you leave them empty, all mappings in this configuration file will be available.
- Only the sites that meet all following conditions will be promoted.
- In the selected scope
- Fit the mapping settings
- The key in the range you set

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- If there is no valid site in the plan, the job will fail.

There are several attributes for the <WebApplicationUpgradeConfiguration> in this Configuration XML file.

- *DestinationDBServer* : To specify the Database Server on which the Content Databases locate. It is a global variable which is used with the web factor "ContentDB" attribute. Please refer to the following description for the detailed information. The Database Server name is case sensitive, make sure it is entered correctly.
- *DBAuthentication* : "W" is Windows Authentication. You cannot change this attribute.
- *DBAccount* : You cannot change this attribute.
- *DBPassword* : You cannot change this attribute.
- *GlobalWildcardManagedPath* : It is a global setting for managed path of the site collection in the destination. If you do not set a specific managed path in a "Web" node, it will use this one as its managed path in the destination. Please note that it's a Wildcard inclusion managed path.
- *GlobalContentDB* : It is a global setting for Content Database of the site collection in the destination. If you do not set a specific Content Database in a "Web" node, it will use this one as its Content Database in the destination.
- *KeyBegin&keyEnd* : It is a setting for key range. You can use it to filter out the nodes you do not wish to do the promotion. If you leave them empty, all keys in this configuration will be valid. Please make sure the value of keyEnd is larger than the keyBegin's.
- *Web Key* : They're the index of the web nodes, so please make sure they are in order without duplicated integers.
- *SourceServerRelativeUrl* : Used to specify the Site in source. We use the standard Server Relative URL which begins with "/", but can't end with "/" (that is, truncating the web application URL from site's full URL). "/" will be used just only when the site is top site of the root site collection of the web application.
- *DestinationManagedPath* : Used to specify the Managed Path of the site collection in the destination. If set it as null, the Managed Path in destination will be consistent with SourceRelativeUrl, and its type is "Explicit Inclusion". If configure it as root according to the configuration rule of SharePoint Central Admin, please enter "/", otherwise you cannot use "/" as the beginning or the end. The Managed Path stored in SharePoint is set as lowercase, please enter small letters.
- *ManagedPathType* : To specify the type of the ManagedPath. It can only read two characters, "W" represents "Wildcard Inclusion", and "E" represents "Explicit Inclusion". If use other characters, the program will report error. The attribute can take effect only when the DestinationManagedPath is specified.
- *DestinationRelativeUrl* : This attribute will not take effect if the ManagedPathType is "E". If it is the "W", please assign it as a managed path relative URL without "/".

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Set Managed Path With GlobalWildcardManagedPath* : The global attribute Global-WildcardManagedPath, the "Web" attribute DestinationManagedPath, ManagedPath-Type, and DestinationRelativeUrl are used to define the destination site collection managed path.

- The destination site collection's managed path is determined by DestinationManaged-Path from "Web" node if its value is not null.
- The destination site collection's managed path is determined by GlobalWildcardMa-nagedPath if the value of DestinationManagedPath is null. Please note that it is a wild-card inclusion managed path and please make sure the value of DestinationRelativeUrl is not null.
- The Managed Path in destination will be consistent with SourceRelativeUrl which type is Explicit Inclusion if the values of DestinationManagedPath and GlobalWildcardMa-nagedPath are null.
- *Conflict* : If the Managed Path has the same name but different types, it will make conflict in SharePoint.

- *Content DB* : The Content Database name of the Site Collection should be used with the Database Server of the up-level root node after migration.

- Specifying the both Database Server and Content Database. it will find Content Data-base on the server in the destination; if cannot find the Content Database, it will cre-ate a new one on the server, then add Site Collection to this new database.
- Specifying Database Server, but not Content Database. It will find any Content Data-base in the destination which related to the Web Application on the server to add the Site Collection. If there is no Database related to the Web Application, it will create a new content Database for the Web Application on this Database server.
- Specifying Content Database, but not Database Server (not recommend). System will find the first Database server of the Web Application in the destination, find or create Database.
- Specify neither Database Server nor Content Database. The MOSS will select Data-base automatically to create Site Collection base on the load balance.
- *Set Content DB with Global Content DB* : Like the way of setting destination site col-lection managed path, the local attribute Content Database can be take effect together with global attribute "Global Content DB".

- If the local setting is not empty, the destination content Database will be set as the local attribute.
- If the local attribute is empty, but the global attribute is not empty, the global attri-bute takes effect in the single mapping.
- If both of them are empty, the MOSS chooses the content Database.
- *IncludeSunSites* : To specify whether to move the subsites with their parent site into destination. Two values are provided. If set the value as "true", it will make the selected site in source as root, and migrate all its subsites as sites to the destination Site Collection with the original architecture. If set it as "false", only the site selected by the Web node without any subsites will be migrated into destination.
  If you select two source sites, one is a subsite of the other one (both have been con-figured in the template), and the "IncludeSubStie"' attributes both are true, the two

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

sets of subsites, which are generated by the two mappings in the configuration file, will have the set-coverage relationship.
The program will compare the sets of sites generated by the configuration file. If any set-coverage relationship exists, the small set will be truncated from the larger one.

Every Web node represents a mapping from source to destination. These mappings work in the serial way. We recommend you to configure these mappings as one to one mapping. If you make multiple sources mapped to the same destination, the operation will overwrite the previous one in the serial way, and then only the latest mapping will take effect. If you make one source mapped to multiple destinations, the source will be moved to different destinations.

***Note:** Please make sure the DNS name and IP Address are mapped correctly in your environment.

***Note:** When you want to create a Content Database which is not in Local SQL Server (the agent and Database server are not in the same server host), please make sure the account which is registered in the agent has enough permission for the Database server.

***Note:** If you select a folder with several subfolder as the source and want to copy all the items in this folder and its subfolder to the destination folder without keeping the folder structure, you need to change the value of the attribute KeepFolderStructure in the ContentManager.xml which is saved in *…\Program Files\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data* to False. By default, the value is True, and this will keep the folder structure during the replicate job.

6.2.7 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Content Manager

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-62) Supported / Unsupported Elements

Components	Function		Status
Content Manager (Adv mode)	Same level replication or Low level to high level	Web application	Supported
		Site collection	Supported
		Site	Supported
		Library	Supported
		DocAve Content Library	Supported(real data)
		DocAve Media Library	Supported(real data)
		List	Supported
		Folder	Supported
		Item	Supported
		Column	Supported
		View	Supported
		Attachment	Supported
		Reply	Supported
		Alert me	Supported
		Workflow	Supported
		Version	Supported
		User	Supported
		Group	Supported
	One to more agents		Unsupported
	Content only replication		Supported
	Configuration only replication		Supported
	Security only replication		Supported
	Content and configuration replication		Supported
	Content and security replication		Supported
	Configuration and security replication		Supported
	Concurrent threads		Unsupported
	Email Notification		Supported
	Include workflow		Supported
	Data configuration		Supported
	Migrate Archiver Stubs		Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Components	Function		Status
	Throttle Control		Unsupported
	Dump/load		Supported
	Backup		Supported
	Include Workflow		Supported
	Byte level		Unsupported
	Schedule		Supported
	Incremental Replicate Modification		Unsupported
	Incremental Replicate Deletion		Unsupported
	Differential type replication		Unsupported
	Differential level change		Unsupported
Content Manager (Native mode)	Same level replication or Low level to high level	Web application	Unsupported
		Site collection	Supported
		Site	Supported
		Library	Supported
		List	Supported
		Folder	Supported
		Item	Supported
		Column	Supported
		View	Supported
		Reply	Supported
		Keep ID	Supported
		Attachment	Supported
	One to more agents		Unsupported
	Differential type replication		Supported
	Different level change		Unsupported

6.3 Deployment Manager

Deployment Manager is a configuration tool that helps customers to streamline development and rollout of large-scale SharePoint deployments. You use the Deployment Manager to replicate deployment within the same SharePoint farm or between SharePoint farms. Usually, you use the Deployment Manager to migrate a configuration from one deployment to another.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

6.3.1 Front-End Deployment

The Front-End Deployment is used to deploy the IIS setting, the Global Assembly Cache (GAC), the features and the site definitions of Web Front End Server, and the deployment of the File System.

***Note:** To run a front-end deployment job properly, the version of the IIS in the source and destination must be the same, otherwise, the deployment job will be failed.

6.3.1.1 Front-End Deployment Setting

You should configure the Front-End deployment settings before deploying the Front-End. There are two parts in this section: Storage Location and Filter Options.

Storage Location

To setup a Storage location, please follow the steps below:

(6-63) Setup a Storage Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *Administration* > *Deployment Manager* > *Settings* > *Front-End Deployment Setting* > *Storage Location*.
2	Select an agent from the drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">There are two kinds of locations that can be defined: a UNC Path and Local Drive.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>UNC Path</td><td>UNC Path is used to specify a path to store the data into a network location.
Select the UNC Path radio button.
Input the Username as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored.
Click Test to test the path. After testing successfully, click Save to save the configuration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Local Drive</td><td>Local Drive is used to specify a path to store the data into a local location.
Select the Local Drive radio button.
Input the path that data will be written to and stored.
Click Test to test the path. After testing successfully, click Save to save the configuration.</td></tr>
</table>

Export Location

You can setup an export location in this section.

(6-64) Setup An Export Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Deployment Manager* > *Settings* > *Front-End Deployment Setting* > *Export Location*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Click **New** and input a Profile Name into the corresponding box.
3	Select an Agent from the drop-down box.
4	Input the User Name as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored. Click **Test** to test the path. After testing successfully, click **Save** to save the configuration. ***Note:** Both the Net Share and FTP can be set up as a storage location.
5	After saving successfully, the location will list in the Location Profiles column on the right.

Filter Options

In this section, you can setup a filter rule for the Front-End deployment.

(6-65) Setup a Filter Rule for the Front-End Deployment

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manager > Settings >Front-End Deployment Setting*.
2	Click **New** then enter a filter name for the filter rule.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td colspan="2">You can select filter for GAC or File System by clicking the corresponding radio button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>GAC Filter</td><td>It allows you to setup a filter rule for the GAC of the Web Front End Server.
1. Select GAC Filter checkbox.
2. You can change the plus sign into a minus sign according to your search criteria by clicking the icon.
*Note: + means the content will be included in the search.
- means the content will be excluded in the search.
3. Select a type from the drop-down box (either File or Version).
4. Enter a criteria into the text box.
5. Click Add, the filter rule will be listed underneath. You can click delete icon to delete the filter rule.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	File System Filter	It allows you to setup a filter rule for File System Filter. 1. Select *File System Filter* checkbox. 2. You can change the plus sign into a minus sign according to your search criteria by clicking the icon. ***Note: +** means the content will be included in the search. **-** means the content will be excluded in the search. 3. Select a type from the drop-down box (either File or Folder). 4. Enter a criteria into the text box. 5. Click **Add**, the filter rule will be listed underneath. You can click delete icon to delete the filter rule.
4	Click **Save**, it will be listed under the Filter Profiles on the right column.	

6.3.1.2 Front-End Deployment

To replicate Front-End Deployment Agent to Agent, please follow the steps below:

(6-66) Front-End Deployment

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manager > Front-End Deployment*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name for the deployment plan into the provided field.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Under the Option tab, you can select a Email Notification and a Filter Options from the appropriate drop-down box. For more information of the Email Notification and the Filter options, please refer to Section Email Notification for Email Notification and Section *WFE Deployment Setting* for Filter option.
4	If you do not plan on running this plan now, you can set it to run on a schedule by un-checking the "No Schedule" check-box. Using the calendar icon next to the "Start Time" field, select a date and time for the job to run. Also, enter a description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
5	Select a source agent from the drop-down box on the left-hand of the screen, it will be listed the underneath.
6	Click the Agent name to expand the data tree, it will list the content of the IIS Settings, GAC, Custom Feature, SharePoint SiteDefinitions, and the File System. ***Note:** The web.config is listed on the data tree as a separate node, you can select whether copy it or not. Please note the web.config cannot be backed up or rollback separately. ***Note:** If you select to deploy the physical files of IIS site to the destination, the files can be deployed to the destination but you can only view the settings in the IIS Manager of the destination, it cannot be displayed in the SharePoint Web Application List of the destination since the configuration between the source and destination environment is different.
7	Select the content you want to deployment by checking the corresponding check-box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">8</td><td colspan="2">Select a deployment options from the drop-down box on the right hand of the screen. There are three options in the drop-down list: Overwrite if source is newer, Overwrite, and Not Overwrite.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite if source is newer</td><td>DocAve will replicate the content if the source is newer than the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not replicate the content if it already exists on the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will replicate the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be restored.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Check the box next to the Destination Agent name on the right hand of screen.

*Note: You can select multiple agents to deploy to in a single plan.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">10</td><td colspan="2">There are six options list under the selected agent: Enable rollback, Accept GAC Deployment, Accept Features Deployment, Accept SiteDefinitions Deployment, Accept IIS Deployment, and Accept File System Deployment.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Enable rollback</td><td>This option is used to configure the rollback rule. If this option is checked, it will backup the destination before deployment to the storage location set up in Settings section.
Check the corresponding box to enable this option.
Click the triangle icon to list the rollback configuration options.
Enter a positive number into the “Maximum Rollback points” text box.
Maximum Rollback points : It is used to define the maximum number of the backup plan kept in the agent. For example, setup the maximum rollback points as four, once a fifth backup job of one plan runs and completes, it will begin and data of the first job will be expunged.
Storage limit : This is used to limit the size of the backup data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Accept GAC Deployment</td><td>This option allows you to replicate the selected GAC deployment to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Accept Features Deployment</td><td>This option allows you to replicate the selected Custom Features deployment to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Accept SiteDefinitions Deployment</td><td>This option allows you to replicate the selected SiteDefinitions deployment to the destination.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Accept IIS Deployment	This option allows you to replicate the selected IIS deployment to the destination. 1. Check the corresponding box to enable this option. 2. Click the triangle icon to list the IIS Settings selected in the source and the destination IIS Settings. 3. There is a icon next to the IIS settings selected in the source, click it, a pop-up window will appear. You can configure the settings to define the deployment you want to replicate to destination. If you do not change any information in the pop-up, it will replicate the default deployment to destination. 4. After configuration, click **OK** to save the modification, it will deploy the destination according to the modification.
	Accept File System Deployment	This option allows you to replicate the selected File System deployment to the destination. 1. Check the corresponding box to activate this option. 2. Two options will appear underneath. • *Keep File Security* : It will migrate the security with the selected files, if this check-box is checked. • *Enable Customized Folder Mapping* : It allows you to map a source folder to a customized folder URL in destination. You can input the path of the source folder or drag a folder icon from the source to the "Drag a folder from source" text box. After entering the URL of the destination folder, click **Add**, the mapping rule will be listed in the table.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Click **Save** to save this plan, it will be listed in the Plan Viewer column under the corresponding agent.
12	Before running this plan, you can click **Test run** to test if the agent can be connected successfully.
13	If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time. If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now** and select a type and option and enter a description, and then click **OK**. You can go to the job report to view the process.

6.3.1.3 Stage Mode

Performing a stage mode deployment requires two steps. First, you need export the content to a specified location, and then import the backup data to a SharePoint environment.

(6-67) Export Data From Source Agent

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Deployment Manager* > *Front-End Deployment*.
2	Click **New** and enter a plan name into the corresponding box.
3	Select the *Export to staging* radio button on the right of the screen.
4	Select a Source Agent from the drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Click the Agent name to expand the data tree, it will list the content of the IIS Settings, GAC, Custom Feature, SharePoint SiteDefinitions, and the File System. ***Note:** The web.config is listed on the data tree as a separate node, you can select whether copy it or not. Please note the web.config cannot be backed up or rollback separately. ***Note:** If you select to deploy the physical files of IIS site to the destination, the files can be deployed to the destination but you can only view the settings in the IIS Manager of the destination, it cannot be displayed in the SharePoint Web Application List of the destination since the configuration between the source and destination environment is different.
6	Select the content you want to deployment by checking the corresponding check-box.
7	On the right hand window, select a location from the drop-down box. For more information about setting up the location, please refer to Export Location of this Manual.
8	Click **Save**, the plan will list in the Plan View column under the corresponding agent on the right. If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time.
9	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now** and specify a version and the description to distinguish the jobs.and then click Run You can go to the job report to view the process.

(6-68) Import The Data To The Destination

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manager > Front-End Deployment*.
2	Click **New** and enter a plan name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Check the Import from staging radio button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select the agent where you run the Export job from the Control Agent drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click the staging name to expand the tree, and then select the content you want to import by clicking the corresponding radio box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Check the box next to the Destination Agent name on the right of the screen. It will display underneath.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">7</td><td colspan="2">Select a deployment options from the drop-down box on the right hand of the screen. There are three options in the drop-down list: Overwrite if source is newer, Overwrite, and Not Overwrite.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite if source is newer</td><td>DocAve will replicate the content if the source is newer than the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not replicate the content if it already exists on the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will replicate the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be restored.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Check the box next to the Destination Agent name on the right hand of screen.

*Note: You can select multiple agents to deploy to in a single plan.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">9</td><td colspan="2">There are six options list under the selected agent: Enable rollback, Accept GAC Deployment, Accept Features Deployment, Accept SiteDefinitions Deployment, Accept IIS Deployment, and Accept File System Deployment.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Enable rollback</td><td>This option is used to configure the rollback rule. If this option is checked, it will backup the destination before deployment to the storage location set up in Settings section.
Check the corresponding box to enable this option.
Click the triangle icon to list the rollback configuration options.
Enter a positive number into the “Maximum Rollback points” text box.
Maximum Rollback points : It is used to define the maximum number of the backup plan kept in the agent. For example, setup the maximum rollback points as four, once a fifth backup job of one plan runs and completes, it will begin and data of the first job will be expunged.
Storage limit : This is used to limit the size of the backup data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Accept GAC Deployment</td><td>This option allows you to replicate the selected GAC deployment to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Accept Features Deployment</td><td>This option allows you to replicate the selected Custom Features deployment to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Accept SiteDefinitions Deployment</td><td>This option allows you to replicate the selected SiteDefinitions deployment to the destination.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Accept IIS Deployment	This option allows you to replicate the selected IIS deployment to the destination. 1. Check the corresponding box to enable this option. 2. Click the triangle icon to list the IIS Settings selected in the source and the destination IIS Settings. 3. There is a icon next to the IIS settings selected in the source, click it, a pop-up window will appear. You can configure the settings to define the deployment you want to replicate to destination. If you do not change any information in the pop-up, it will replicate the default deployment to destination. 4. After configuration, click **OK** to save the modification, it will deploy the destination according to the modification.
	Accept File System Deployment	This option allows you to replicate the selected File System deployment to the destination. 1. Check the corresponding box to activate this option. 2. Two options will appear underneath. • *Keep File Security* : It will migrate the security with the selected files, if this check-box is checked. • *Enable Customized Folder Mapping* : It allows you to map a source folder to a customized folder URL in destination. You can input the path of the source folder or drag a folder icon from the source to the "Drag a folder from source" text box. After entering the URL of the destination folder, click **Add**, the mapping rule will be listed in the table.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Click **Save** to save this plan, it will be listed in the Plan Viewer column under the corresponding agent.
11	Before running this plan, you can click **Test run** to test if the agent can be connected successfully.
12	If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time. If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now** and select a type and option and enter a description, and then click **OK**. You can go to the job report to view the process.

6.3.1.4 Rollback Center

Rollback Center is a platform to support to make the destination rollback to the original one, once the deployment plan failed.

To perform a rollback operation, please follow the steps below:

(6-69) Rollback Operation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Deployment Manager* > *Front-End Deployment*.
2	Click on the right-upper side of the screen.
3	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
4	Select the plan from the corresponding drop-down box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select a job ID from the *Rollback from a snapshot* drop-down box. It will list the backup data underneath. ***Note:** If you select the *Enable Rollback* option in Front-End Deployment section, it will backup the destination before deployment and generate a corresponding Job ID when run the deployment plan. You can click Delete to delete the backup data by selecting the corresponding Job ID.
6	Click the agent name to expand the data tree.
7	Select the data you want to rollback by checking the corresponding box.
8	Select a Start time, you can run the rollback job immediately by selecting the "Now" radio button, or click the calendar icon to select a start time.
9	Click **Rollback** to run the job.

6.3.2 Design Manager

"Design Manager" module allows you to replicate the structure of the source site to the destination site, such as custom webparts, features, and site templates. There are two modes to do the deployment: live mode and stage mode. In live mode, you can do the deployment from source Agent to destination Agent directly.

In stage mode, you need to setup a location for the export content, and then import them from the location and restore to destination.

6.3.2.1 Settings

There are two parts in this section: Export Location and Filter Options.

Export Location

You can setup an export location in this section.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-70) Setup An Export Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manager > Settings > Design Manager Setting > Export Location*.
2	Click **New** and input a Profile Name into the corresponding box.
3	Select an Agent from the drop-down box.
4	Input the User Name as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored. Click **Test** to test the path. After testing successfully, click **Save** to save the configuration.
5	After saving successfully, the location will list in the Custom Settings column on the right.

Filter Options

To setup a filter option, please follow the steps below:

(6-71) Setup a Filter Option

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manger > Settings > Design Manager Settings > Filter Options*.
2	Click **New** then input a profile name into the provided field.
3	You can change the plus sign into a minus sign according to your search criteria by clicking the icon. ***Note: +** means the content will be included in the search. **-** means the content will be excluded in the search.
4	Select a type from the drop-down box (either Site Collection, Site, List, Folder, File or Document).

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select the name or template in the drop-down box for the criteria, and then input a criteria. Click **Add** to add the criteria, it will list underneath.
6	For case-sensitive searches, check the *Case Sensitive* box located in the lower-left of the window.
7	Click **Save**, it will be listed under the Filter Profiles on the right column.

6.3.2.2 Basic Options

Before you run a deployment, you need to select the various options.

Options

- *Email Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual. Please note that this feature is optional. You can click the option name to go to the configuration interface.
- *Filter Option* : This contains a list of filter rules. For more information on adding or editing new filter profiles, please refer to the Settings. Please note that this feature is optional. You can click the option name to go to the configuration interface.
- *Backup before Deployment* : This option is used to backup the content before deploying. Once the design manager job failed, reset the destination by the backup data.
- *Include Security* : It will backup the deployment with the security. This option is selected by default.
- *Include user profiles* : This option decides if user profiles are going to be replicated with the security.

***Note:** If the user profile already exists on the destination, the profile will not be overwritten when replicating the sites.

- *Include user content* : This option decides if user content is going to be replicated with the security.

Advanced

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *DocAve Archived Data* : You can select the operation on the archived data by checking the corresponding radio button. Please note this option only works on the item level.
- *Deploy to all site collections* : It will deploy the selected design elements to all the site collections under the destination web application(s). If this option is not selected, it will only deploy the selected design elements to the site collection that have the same relative URL with the source, or create a new site collection if the site collection does not exist. This option will be active if you select a content library or content type(s) on the source and select the Web Application or the Site Collection on the destination.
- *Deploy to all sites* : It will deploy the selected design elements to all the site under the destination web application(s) or the site collection(s). If this option is not selected, it will only deploy the selected design elements to the site that have the same relative URL with the source, or create a new site if the site does not exist. This option will be active when you select the **Deploy to all site collections** option.

Schedule

To setup a schedule, please follow the steps below:

(6-72) Setup A Schedule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Deployment Manager* > *Design Manager* > *Schedule*.
2	Uncheck the "No Schedule" check-box.
3	Specify a start time by clicking the *Calendar* icon, it will pop-up a window. Select the time you want to run the job, and then click **OK**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
4	Specify the interval at which the backup will occur. Choices are: Only Once, Every Hour, Day, Week, or Month.	
	If...	**Then...**
	Only Once	This will only run once at the specified time.
	Hour	Choose this plan to run every set number of hours.
	Day	Set the plan to run every set number of days.
	Week	Set the plan to run every set number of weeks.
	Month	You can choose this plan to run on every set number of months.
5	Select a Deployment Type for the current schedule.	
	If...	**Then...**
	Full	A full replication of the selected source.
	Incremental	A partial replication where only data that has been added since the last incremental or full replication was executed.
6	You may enter a **Description** in the field provided to help distinguish the job in the Job Monitor.	
7	If you want to use multiple schedules, select the "Schedule B" tab.	

6.3.2.3 Live Mode

To run a Live Mode Deployment, please follow the steps below:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-73) Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manager > Design Manager*.
2	Click New and enter a name in the field next to the "plan name".
3	Configure the basic options on the top of the GUI. For more information, please refer to the Basic Options of this Manual.
4	Select the Source Agent and Destination Agent radio boxes.
5	Select a Source Agent from the drop-down box.
6	You can hide all the user lists by checking the "Hide All The User Lists" box.
7	Click on the agent name to expand the tree.
8	Browse the tree structure and search for the folder to import content from. In order to see the configuration files inside the folder, open the file browser by clicking on the **View Item** icon after the URL. It will list on the right. You can select a individual file you want to deploy by checking the corresponding box. ***Note:** If you do not select all the files under the folder, the check box will become a sideway arrow.
9	You can also find the content you want to restore by clicking the *magnifying glass* icon after the URL and it will pop-up the "Advance Search" window. Enter the exact content URL or use wildcards in the Criteria box. Click Add to add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case-sensitive searches, check the "Case Sensitive" box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Once you have found the content you would like to deploy, select it from the tree browser by checking the check-box next to it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">Check the box next to the Destination Agent name on the right hand of screen. It will display underneath.
*Note: You can select multiple agents to deploy. And in one agent, you can also select multiple nodes to deploy the designs by one job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Click the Agent Name to expand the tree.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">13</td><td colspan="2">Select a Deployment Option from the “Deployment Options” drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not restore the content if it already exists on the destination.
For example, if an entire folder’s content is selected for restore, but only one document was removed from the destination folder, only the removed document will be restored.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will restore the content which already exists on the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Replace</td><td>DocAve will restore the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be restored.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">Select language mapping from the drop-down box. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to Section Language Mapping of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td colspan="2">Browse the data tree structure. In order to see the configuration files inside the folder, open the file browser by clicking on the View Items icon after the URL. It will list on the right.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	Once you have found the content you would like to deploy, select it from the tree browser by checking the check-box next to it. If you select the content type or document library as source, and select one web application as the destination, it will create the content type or document library in all site collections under the destination web application. ***Note:** The type of the selected content should be the same as the specified content in source.
17	Click **Save** to save the plan, it will list in the Plan Viewer column on the right.
18	If you want to run the job immediately, click **Run now** to run the plan. If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time. You can view the process in the job monitor.

6.3.2.4 Stage Mode

Performing a stage mode deployment requires two steps. First, you need export the content to a specified location, and then import the backup data to a SharePoint environment.

(6-74) Export Data From Source Agent

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manager > Design Manager*.
2	Click **New** and enter a plan name into the corresponding box.
3	Select the radio button next to "Export to staging" on the right of the screen.
4	Select a Source Agent from the drop-down box.
5	You can hide all the user lists by checking the "Hide All The User Lists" box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Click on the agent name to expand the tree.
7	Browse the tree structure and search for the folder to import content from. In order to see the configuration files inside the folder, open the file browser by clicking on the *View Items* icon after the URL. It will list on the right. You can select a individual file you want to deploy by checking the corresponding box. ***Note:** If you do not select all the files under the folder the check-box will become a sideway arrow.
8	You can also find the content you want to restore by clicking the *magnifying glass* icon after the URL and it will pop-up the "Advance Search" window. Enter the exact content URL or use wildcards in the Criteria box. Click Add to add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case-sensitive searches, check the "Case Sensitive" box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting.
9	Once you have found the content you would like to deploy, select it from the data tree browser by checking the check-box next to it.
10	Select a location from the drop-down box. For more information about setting up the location, please refer to Section 6.4.1 of this Manual.
11	Click **Save**, the plan will list in the Plan View column under the corresponding agent on the right. If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time.
12	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now** and specify a version and the description to distinguish the jobs.and then click Run You can go to the job report to view the process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-75) Import The Data To The Destination

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manager > Design Manager.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click New and enter a plan name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Check the radio button next to “Import from staging.”</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Click the staging name to expand the tree, and then select the content you want to import by clicking the corresponding radio box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Check the box next to the Destination Agent name on the right of the screen. It will display underneath.
*Note: You can select multiple agents to deploy. And in one agent, you can also select multiple nodes to deploy the designs by one job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click the Agent name to expand the tree.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">7</td><td colspan="2">Select a Deployment Option from the “Deployment Options” drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not restore the content if it already exists on the destination.
For example, if an entire folder’s content is selected for restore, but only one document was removed from the destination folder, only the removed document will be restored.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will restore the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be restored.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Select language mapping from the drop-down box. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to Section Language Mapping of this Manual.
9	Browse the tree structure. In order to see the configuration files inside the folder, open the file browser by clicking on the *View Items* icon after the URL. It will list on the right.
10	Once you have found the content you would like to deploy, select it from the tree browser by checking the check-box next to it. ***Note:** The type of the selected content should be the same as the specified content in source.
11	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed in the Plan Viewer column under the corresponding farm name.
12	If you have setup a schedule, this plan will run at the specific time. If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now** You can go to the job report to view the process.

6.3.2.5 Design Manager CLI

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocAve Design Manager supports the administrator to run the Design Manager plan by using CLI (Command Line Interface).

You need to configure the design-manager-config.xml under the directory *Avepoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusCLI|etc*.

There are several settings you need to configure.

Basic Settings

- *PlanName* : The name of the running plan
- *Level* : The level of the job
  level = "0" represents Full deployment type.
  level = "1" represents Incremental deployment type.
- *restoreOption* : restoreOption = "0" represents "Not Overwrite"
  restoreOption = "1" represents "Overwrite"
- *description* : the description of this plan
- *GenerationReport* : Whether generate a job report after the job completed.
  GenerationReport = "0" represents not generating the job report
  GenerationReport = "1" represents generating the job report
- *reportPath* : generate a path for the report. If do not enter any path information, it will generate a report folder under the directory "Avepoint\DocAve5\Manager\Zeus-CLI\", and all information of the report will be saved in this folder.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *emailNotificationName* : configure a email notification name which is existed in data-base. if is option do not be configured or the emailnotificationname is not existing, it will ignore this option during the process of running the plan.

***Note:** When you run the plan, it will check whether the GUI has this plan or not by using the plan name you entered. If there was the plan, it will run the plan according to the job saved in GUI.

***Note:** The planname, level, and restore options are mandatory option.

Settings for the Source

- <*SrcAgent name=""*> : the name of the agent in the source
- <*WebApplication name =""*> : the URL of the web application in the source
- <*SiteCollection name = ""*> : the URL of the site collection in the source
- <*Site name= ""*> : the name of the site in the source
- <*List name= ""*> : the name of the list
- <*Folder name= "*> : the name of the folder

***Note:** You can set several site collections, sites and the lists in one plan for the source.

Settings for the Destination

- <*Agent name=""*> : the name of the agent in the destination
- <*WebApplication name =""*> : the URL of the web application in the destination
- <*SiteCollection name = ""*> : the URL of the site collection in the destination
- <*Site name= ""*> : the name of the site in the destination
- <*List name= ""*> : the name of the list

***Note:** You can set several site collections, sites and the lists in one plan for the destination.

After setting the configuration, run the DesignManager.bat under the directory *Avepoint*|*DocAve5*|*Manager*|*ZeusCLI*|*bin*| to run the plan.

6.3.2.6 Workflow Replication in Design Manager

For SharePoint 2007, DocAve Design Manager supports workflow replication from the source to the destination. In order to replicate the workflow:

- Please make sure the source and destination are under the same domain.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- The "System Account" will not automatic active workflow, please use other user account.
- Please make sure all the workflows to be replicated are defined in the source, and at least one "Workflow Instance" has been activated from the source side.
- If the workflow is looking up any of the site column or content type, please make sure the site column and content type are selected from the source.

***Note:** This function is not supported for SharePoint 2010.

6.3.2.7 Currently Supported and Unsupported Design Elements for Deployment Manager

(6-76) Supported / Unsupported Design Elements

Source Content	Status
Web Application	Supported
Site Collection	Supported
Sites	Supported
Site Columns	Supported
Content type	Supported
Converted forms	Supported
List template	Supported
Master Page Gallery	Supported
Site Template Gallery	Supported
User Information List	Supported
Web Part Gallery	Supported
Announcement	Supported
Links	Supported
Shared Documents	Supported
Team discussion	Supported
Tasks	Supported
User Defined Field Types (column types not defined by SharePoint)	Customization may be required
DocAve Content Library	Supported(real data)
DocAve Media Library	Supported(real data)

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

6.3.3 Solution Center

Solution Center deals with the solution deployment between different farms. You can replicate the solution of a farm to another farms.

6.3.3.1 Solution Center Setting

You should configure the solution center settings before deploying the solution between different farms. There are two parts in this section: Source Device and Filter Options.

Source Devices

Source Device is used for the "Deploy from File System" module. To setup a source device, please follow the steps below:

(6-77) Setup a Source Device

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Deployment Manager* > *Settings* > *Solution Center Setting* > *Source Device*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name for the device into the provided field.
3	Select an agent from the drop-down box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">4</td><td colspan="2">There are two kinds of location: Local Drive and UNC Path.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Local Drive</td><td>Local Drive is used to specify a path to store the data into a local location.
Select the Local Drive radio button.
Input the path that data will be written to and stored.
Click Test to test the path.</td></tr>
<tr><td>UNC Path</td><td>UNC Path is used to specify a path to store the data into a network location.
Select the UNC Path radio button.
Input the User Name as domain\user-name format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored.
Click Test to test the path.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">After testing successfully, click Save to save the configuration. The profile will be listed under the corresponding farm on the Location Profiles column.</td></tr>
</table>

Filter Options

In this section, you can setup a filter rule for the Solution deployment.

(6-78) Setup a Filter Rule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Deployment Manager* > *Settings* > *Solution Center Setting* > *Filter Options*.
2	Click **New** then enter a filter name for the filter rule.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	You can change the plus sign into a minus sign according to your search criteria by clicking the icon. ***Note: +** means the content will be included in the search. **-** means the content will be excluded in the search.
4	Select a type from the drop-down box (either File or Folder).
5	Enter a criteria into the text box.
6	Click **Add** to add other criteria. Click **Delete** to delete the criteria.
7	Click **Save**, it will be listed under the Filter Profiles on the right column.

6.3.3.2 Deploy From Farm

To deploy from farm, please follow the steps below:

(6-79) Deploy from Farm

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Deployment Manager > Solution Center*.
2	Click **New** and enter a plan name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Select the source from the Deploy from Farm drop-down box. There are three kinds of source you can select.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Farm</td><td>Select a farm from the drop-down box, it will list all solutions of the farm underneath. There are three columns of the solution table, you can click the icon to list or hide the column.

To retract any solution, you can select the solution by checking the check-box then click Retract. A pop-up window will appear, select the scope you want to retract and click OK. It will be unpublished.

You also can delete a solution by clicking Delete after checking the corresponding check-box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>File System</td><td>Select the source agent from the drop-down box, and click the agent name to expand the data tree, you can view the solutions in the pop-up by clicking the icon.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Solution Store</td><td>Select the logical device where store the solution and the control agent, it will list all solutions of the solution store underneath.

*Note: Both the Net Share and FTP type logical device can be set up as a solution store.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select the solution you want to replicate to destination by clicking the corresponding check-box.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">You can select to replicate the solution to the DocAve Solution Store or deploy to the specified location.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>DocAve Solution Store</td><td>This option allows you to save the specified solution to the logical device.
Check the corresponding check-box.
Select a logical device where you want to store the solution from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other Farms</td><td>Select the Farm or the Web Application under the Farm by checking the check-box.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Click Deploy to run the job. A pop-up window will appear, and you can select a deploy option for the solutions already exist by checking the check-box before “Overwrite solution if already exists”. If you deploy one solution two times, and select this option, it will add the solution file to the destination with the time stamp to name to distinguish between the file names, and both files will be shown in the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Use upgrade solution method</td><td>This will upgrade the previous version of solution with the current version of the solution.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Use retract/re-deploy method</td><td>This will retract the previous version of solution, and then deploy with the current version of the solution.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">You can reorder the solution and then click OK, and you can go to Job Monitor to view the process.</td></tr>
</table>

6.3.3.3 Deploy from File System

Deploy from File System allows you select the local solution file to deploy.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To deploy from File System, please complete the following steps:

(6-80) Deploy from File System

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Deployment Manager* > *Solution Center*.
2	Click **New** and enter a plan name.
3	Select Deploy for File System.
4	Select a filter option from the drop-down box. Please refer to section Solution Center Setting for instruction on this process.
5	Select a Source Agent from the drop-down box, the agent name will list underneath. Please note before you select the source agent, you can see all the farms on the destination side, once you select the source agent, the farm that is on the different SharePoint version will disappear.
6	Click the agent name to expand the data tree, it will load the source device you set up. Please refer to section Solution Center Setting for instruction on this process.
7	You can find the folder you want by clicking the *magnifying glass* icon after the URL and it will pop-up the Advance Search window. Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click Add add the criteria. It will be listed underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case-sensitive searches, check the "Case Sensitive" box located in the lower-left of the window. Click OK to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click Cancel to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the *Refresh* button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">In order to see the solution files inside the folder, please open the file browser by clicking on the View Items icon after the folder.

Select the solution file by checking the corresponding box, and click >>. It will list on the right hand side of the file browser window. Click OK to save the selection.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">9</td><td colspan="2">You can select to replicate the solution to the DocAve Solution Store or deploy to the specified location.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>DocAve Solution Store</td><td>This option allows you to save the specified solution to the logical device.

1. Check the corresponding check-box.
2. Select a logical device where you want to store the solution from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other Farms</td><td>Select the Farm or the Web Application under the Farm by checking the check-box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Click Deploy to run the job. You can go to Job Monitor to view the process.</td></tr>
</table>

6.3.3.4 Deploy from Solution Store

Deploy from Solution Store is used to manage solutions you replicate to Logical Device. In this area, you can delete the solution, deploy solution to other farm, or replicate solution from one logical device to another.

To deploy from Solution Store, please follow the steps below:

(6-81) Deploy from Solution Store

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 -> Administration -> Deployment Manager -> Solution Center*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click New and enter a plan name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Select Deploy from Solution Store.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select a logical device from the “Logical Device” drop-down box. It will list all the solution files under the selected logical device.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select a control agent from the “Control Agent”.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click the solution name, the details of the solution file will appear in a window.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">To delete a solution file from the specified device, select the solution by checking the corresponding check-box then click Delete.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">8</td><td colspan="2">You also can select to replicate the solution to another DocAve Logical Device or deploy to the specified location.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>DocAve Logical Device</td><td>This option allows you to save the specified solution to another logical device.
Check the corresponding check-box.
Select a logical device where you want to store the solution from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Other Farms</td><td>Select the Farm or the Web Application under the Farm by checking the check-box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Click Deploy to run the job. You can go to Job Monitor to view the process.</td></tr>
</table>

6.4 Replicator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocAve Replicator enable the seamless migration of content from one location to another within Microsoft SharePoint 2007. This replicator can be performed within the same SharePoint farm, or from one SharePoint farm to another. Replicator is a powerful tool and is considered real-time, live copy because no backup is needed. You can replicate at the same level.

6.4.1 Replicator Installation

Before using *Replicator*, make sure that it is installed and enabled within the "DocAve Agent Configuration Tool." Under this tool, ensure the "Replicator" option is selected for each agent.

To properly use Replicator, a DocAve Agent should be installed on each front-end web server. This is required in order to perform cross farm replications.

6.4.2 Layout, Features, and Options

Replicator can copy specific content from one location to another. Although it does have scheduling options, it is not meant to perform "automatic" real time replication of an entire SharePoint farm.

The key use of Replicator is to allow the administrator to copy documents, libraries, sites, configuration, settings, securities, and users from one location to another seamlessly and quickly. Typically, the administrator must first backup the content and then perform an out of place restore. This requires the administrator to go through a two step process in order to copy content. With Replicator, the administrator has a simple and easy-to-use interface that allows the process to be done in one step.

6.4.3 Settings

Before you run a replicator job, you should configure some settings first. It has three settings: Global Settings, Plan Settings and Mapping Settings.

6.4.3.1 Global Settings

To setup the "Global Settings", please follow the steps below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-82) Setup Global Settings

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > Replicator > Settings > Global Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Go to “Cache Setting”, and then select a farm by clicking the farm name under the “Farm” column.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Under the “Byte Level Cache Configuration”, you can limit the cache retention and the data size.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Under the “Byte level cache location”, enter the User Name as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored.
Click Test to test the path.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">After testing successfully, click Apply to save the configuration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Go to “Database Settings”, select a farm by clicking the farm name under the “Farm” column.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Enter the SQL Server Name you want to save your replication job information under the Replication Configuration Database Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Enter the desired database name into the Database Name field, by default, the database name is DocAveCache.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">9</td><td colspan="2">Select the Authentication from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Windows Authentication</td><td>The authentication to the database will be the Windows authentication you set up.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SQL Server Authentication</td><td>If you select the SQL Server Authentication, you need to specify the username and password in the field provided.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Click **Test** to test the authentication. After testing successfully, click **Apply** to save your settings.

6.4.3.2 Plan Settings

You can setup the Thottle Control, Throttle Scheduling, Connection Retry, and the Export Location in this section, please follow the steps below:

(6-83) Setting up The Plan Setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Replicator* > *Settings* > *Plan Settings*.
2	Click New and type the profile name into the provided box under the "Network Control".
3	You can specify the amount of the network bandwidth and select KB or MB from the drop-down box to limit the bandwidth for Work/Non-Work hour under "Run During".
4	You can configure the work hours in "Define Work Schedule" field by selecting the Work Hours and Work Days to define a work schedule.
5	You can also configure the connection retry in "Connection Retry" field by setting up a Retry Delay time and the Number of Retries.
6	Click **Save**. After saving successfully, the setting will list under the Network Profile column on the right.
7	Go to "Export Location", Click **New** and enter the Profile Name into the provided field.
8	Select a Farm and Agent Group from the drop-down box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Enter the User Name as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored. Click **Test** to test the path.
10	After testing the path successfully, click **Save**. It will list under the Location Setups on the right column.

6.4.3.3 Mapping Settings

To setup the "Mapping Settings", please follow the steps below:

(6-84) Setup the Mapping Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Replicator* > *Settings* > *Mapping Settings*.
2	Click **New** and input a Profile Name in the text box under the "Replication".
3	With in *Security* tab, check the *Replicate security* box, and then select the securities of the content you wish to replicate. If you want replicate the design elements for the two-way replication, you can check the "Receive security changes from destination(in two-way replication)" option Replicating securities will copy over Users, Groups, and Permissions. If the content has already existed in the destination, it will only replicate the security and permission. ***Note:** SharePoint calculates the design elements again while refresh the interface again, the design elements will be modified of the corresponding site. DocAve will consider this as a modification and the design elements replicator job will have some differences with the expectation.
4	If you want to receive the security changes from destination in two-way replicator, you should check the *Receive security changes from destination (in two-way replication)* check-box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	If you want to replicate the user deletion operation, you should select the *Enable sync deletion for users and groups* option. DocAve will delete the user(s) or group(s) in the destination when running the replication job, if the user(s) or group(s) is/are deleted in the source.
6	Within *Configuration* tab, you can select to replicate the features by checking the corresponding check-boxes. If you want replicate the design elements for the two-way replication, you can check the "Receive configuration changes from destination(two-way replication)" option. Once you select the "Receive configuration changes from destination(two-way replication)" option, the "Conflict Resolution Rules" and the "Conflict Action" will appear. ***Note:** If you want to replicate the design elements on the fly, and run a "Full" replication type for each job, the changes for the features "Public views" and "Personal views" under the List level will not be replicated.
7	Under the "Conflict Option", there are two options you can select if there are conflict. • *Source always wins* : if there are some conflicts between the source and destination, the modification on the selected source will be consider as the valid one, and replicate the source to the destination. • *Target always wins* : If there are some conflicts between the source and destination, the modification on the destination will be consider as the valid one, and replicate the destination to the source.
8	Under the "Conflict Action", there are two options you can select if there are conflict. • *Skip* : it will skip the files and do nothing on the source and destination. • *Overwrite* : it will overwrite the files according to the conflict resolution rule.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Under the "Content" tab, you can check the "Replicate content" option. There are two options under it. • *Workflow Definition* : This option supports to replicate the workflow both the default workflow template in SharePoint and the customized workflow. For more information, please refer to Customization and Workflow Definition section. • *Include User Profile* : This option decides if user profiles are going to be replicated with the security. You can also select the operation on the DocAve archived data by checking the corresponding radio button. Please note this option only works on the item level.
10	You can select the "Keep user metadata even if user no longer exists" option and then input a valid username into the "Place Holder Account" text box to transfer the metadata to the value as the source. The metadata which is displayed as the dead user account will be replicated to the destination. By default, the dead user account will be displayed as System Account if you did not specify a place holder account. ***Note:** This place holder account must be a pre-existing user in that SharePoint environment.
11	If you select the "Receive deletions from destination (in two-way replication)" option, it will delete the content in the source once the content is deleted in the destination.
12	Go to "Conflict Options", click **New** and input the profile name.
13	You can setup the priority for the conflict resolution rules by change the number from the drop-down box. ***Note:** If you setup a conflict resolution rules for one-way replicator, the "Target always wins" will be noneffective.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Select a kind of conflict action by clicking the corresponding radio box. There are four options available: Skip, Overwrite and Manual Conflict Resolution. • *Skip* : When the rules are being applied, if there are the same name files in the source and destination, this file will not be treated. • *Overwrite* : All of the original rules will be deleted and changed to reflect the new ones. • *Manual Conflict Resolution* : If you select this option, it will create a new folder named as the file's and backup the file in the destination into this folder. The file in the source will replace the original file.
15	Specify a kind of conflict notification to notify you by email. Select a Email Notification from the drop-down box. Please refer to Configuring a Replicator Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process. ***Note:** If you define two administrators (primary and secondary) for a site collection in SharePoint, it will only send the email to the primary administrator. You can select the user the email will sent to from the following recipient: • *Item Creator* : The email will send to the user who created this item. • *Last Modifier Of The Losing Version* : The email will send to the user who latest modified the losing version. • *Site Collection Administrator* : The email will send to the administrator of the site collection • *Specified Address* : You can specify an email address in the provided text box which the email will send to. • *Specified User Column* : You can specify a user column in the provided text box, and the email will send to the address of this user column you entered.
16	Click **Save** to save this profile.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
17	Click the "Filter Options". Input the name for the profile.
18	You can change the plus sign into a minus sign according to your search criteria by clicking the icon. ***Note: +** means the content will be included in the search. **-** means the content will be excluded in the search.
19	Select a type from the drop-down box (either Site Collection, Site, List, Folder, Item, or Version).
20	Select the filter type and the condition in the drop-down box for the criteria, and then input a criteria. Click **Add** to add the criteria, it will list underneath. ***Note:** If you select the Version level, there will be a "Replicate only major version" option next to the Criteria text box. You can select this option by checking the check box in front of it. Once it is selected, only the current and major version can be replicated according to the criteria you entered.
21	By default, the "Case Sensitive" option will be checked. To turn off case sensitivity, uncheck the case sensitive check-box.
22	Click **Save**, it will be listed under the Filter Profile on the right column.
23	Go to "User Mappings"; click **New** and input the profile name.
24	Check the box next to "User Mapping Replace Settings". Input the Source User name you want to map and the destination user name you wish to map to. Click the plus icon to add a new setting and the minus icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
25	Check the box next to "Domain Mapping Replace Setting". This setting maps the domain name from the source to the destination. Input the source domain name and the destination domain name into the corresponding field.
26	Specify the corresponding default user for the source and the destination after checking the check-box.
27	You can also configure the user mapping in the .XSD file, you can find the Replicator.xsd file from *...|Program Files|AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|etc|xsd* or download the file directly. After the configuration, you can upload the user mapping file by clicking **Upload**.
28	Click **Save**, it will list under the User Mapping Profile on the right column.

Workflow State

In order to support backup and restore for most customizations and workflows:

- The backup plan defined by the user must include the site collection (or content database in platform level backup) containing these customizations, as well as the related resources for these customizations on the front-end.
- At the time of the restore, customizations may require front-end resources that do not exist on the destination front-end server(s). These must be searched / restored first. This can either be done through the platform level backup's front-end restore capability, or may need to be re-installed to the front-end directly via a separate installer (if the customization originally came as a part of a separate application).
- Only in-place restore at site collection or database level is supported.

All customizations and workflows are not guaranteed and will not be covered by this backup due to the flexibility of SharePoint and the lack of unified deployment strategies. As a result, it is impossible to programmatically detect the links to external sources (either application databases or front-end files) that are common in customizations, workflows, and web parts are as follows, such as:

- Front-end resources or separately installed packages

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- The SharePoint GUID and/or URL of any objects associated with the customization (list items, images, documents, etc.)
- External SQL databases for management of workflows or states

For issues that depend on the GUID or URL, an in-place restore at the site collection / database level should keep these parameters intact. Other parameters will not be automatically covered. However, you are encouraged to use DocAve to test the backup and restore of your workflows or other customizations.

6.4.4 Plan Builder

Plan builder allows you to create a plan to run a replicator job at a specific time or immediately.

6.4.4.1 Basic Options

Before you create a replication plan, you need to select the various settings. There are three options: Default Replication Options, Schedule and Advanced Options.

Default Replication Options

Under this section, each selection in the drop-down box can be added or modified from Section 6.5.3 of this Manual.

- *Replication Option* : This drop-down list shows the replication rules configured in the "Settings" section in this module. You can view the setting by clicking the icon next to the drop-down box.
- *Conflict Options* : This drop-down list shows the conflict resolution rules configured in the "Settings" section in this module. You can view the setting by clicking the icon next to the drop-down box.
- *Language Mapping* : This drop-down list shows the language mapping configured in the Language Mapping section in the Control Panel module. Please note that this feature is optional.
- *Filter Options* : This drop-down list shows the filter rules configured in the "Settings" section in this module. Please note that this feature is optional.
- *User Mappings* : This drop-down list shows the user mapping configured in the "Settings" in this module. Please note that this feature is optional.

***Note:** You can click the options name to go to the corresponding setting section to setup the rules.

- *Enable Byte Level* : Selecting this check-box will reduce the quantity of data in the transmission by transferring only modified information from the source to the destina-

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

tion. It is a way of reducing the amount of data transmitted with each replication. When a "Base File" (the original file) becomes a "Version File" (the current file after modification), DocAve will only transfer the "Delta File" (all modified information) from the source to the destination. After the transmission, the Delta File and the Base File will merge into a Version File.

Setup a Schedule

To setting up a schedule, please follow the steps below:

(6-85) Setup a schedule

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Administration > Replicator > Plan Builder >Schedule.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Uncheck the No Schedule checkbox.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Specify a start time by clicking the Calendar icon, a pop-up window will appear. Select the time you want to run the job, and then click OK.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">4</td><td colspan="2">Specify the interval at which the replication will occur. Choices are: Only Once, Every Hour, Day, Week, or Month, and Advance.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Only Once</td><td>This will only run once at the specified time.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Minute</td><td>Set this plan to run every set number of minutes.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Hour</td><td>Choose this plan to run every set number of hours.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Day</td><td>Set the plan to run every set number of days.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Week</td><td>Set the plan to run every set number of weeks.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Month</td><td>You can choose this plan to run on every set number of months.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">Select a Replication Type for the current schedule.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>A full replicator of the selected source.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>A partial replicator where only data that has been added since the last incremental or full backup is backed up.

If you select this option, there are two options will appear.
Replicate Modifications : This option will modify items in the destination if they have been modified in the source. This is only available with Incremental option.
Replicate Deletions : This option will delete items in the destination if they have been deleted in the source. This is only available with Incremental option.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish the job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Check Backup Before Replication option, it will backup the data before replication executes</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">If you want to use multiple schedules, select the “Schedule B” tab.</td></tr>
</table>

Advanced Options

Navigate to “Advanced Options”, there are several options:

- *Email Notification* : Shows a drop-down of possible email notifications to choose from. These profiles are triggered in the event of a failure or success of a job. They are created within the Section Email Notification of this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Network Control Profile* : List the configuration you setup in the setting section. You can click the option name to go to the Network Control setting section.
- *Concurrent Thread* : You can select the positive integer from the drop-down box to specify the number of the thread which can run in the same mapping at one time.
- *Data Configuration* :

  Compression:compress the data before replication and decompressed after migration. This will greatly enhance the speed of the migration process.

  Encryption: encrypts the data for replication process. This will greatly enhance the security of the replication process

- *Include user profiles* : This option decides if user profiles are going to be replicated with the security.

***Note:** If the user profile already exists on the destination, the profile will not be overwritten when replicating the sites.

- *Backup before replication* : You can select this option to backup the content before performing a replication. You need to select a logical device for the backup job. Once the replicator job failed, reset the destination by the backup data.

6.4.4.2 Setting up a Mapping Table

To setup a Mapping Table, please follow the steps below:

(6-86) Setup a Mapping Table

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Administration > Replicator > Plan Builder*.
2	Click **Add Mapping** or the icon, a data tree browser window will appear.
3	Select a Farm and Agent Group from the drop-down box on the left of the screen.
4	Click on the plus sign before the source agent name to expand the tree and find the content you wish to migrate. You can click the icon to view the existed mapping of the individual content.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select a Farm and Agent Group from the drop-down box on the right of the screen. Click on the plus sign before the agent name to expand the tree to the location you want to replicate to. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the name into the blank input field next to the folder icon, and click **Configure** button to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. For the large environment, you can limit the results by specifying particular SharePoint Site URL, and then click **OK** button to load content under the specified site collection You can drag the content to the new folder directly. After running this job, the selected data will be replicated to this new folder.
6	Drag the content you want to replicate from the source to the destination location you desired. It will pop-up a replicator setting window. ***Note:** You can select multiple site collection by pressing "Ctrl + site collection name", and then drag them to a Web Application.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">7</td><td colspan="2">In the pop-up, you can select a type for the replicator.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>One way</td><td>This option will replicate the data from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Two way</td><td>This option will achieve dual replication between the source and the destination. The data in the source will be replicated in the destination, and the data in the destination will be replicated to the source.

If you delete a site on one side, the Site Deletion button in Job Monitor for this replicator job will be enabled. For more information about that, please refer to the Section Delete Site (Replication) in Job Monitor of this Manual.

*Note: The user must select a source first and only select one node in the source. The node types in the source and destination should be the same, and the node in the source and destination should be on the same level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">The “Enable Real Time Replication” option will replicate the modification you select in the “List of Events to Replicator” drop-down box in real time.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Select the events to replicator from the "List of Events to Replicate" drop-down box. It is only available with Enable Real Time Replicator option. You can check the events box and click **Apply** to apply the selected items. ***Note:** Replication events only work for folder/ item level. So if you want to replicate the attributes on design level(such as content type, column, .etc), please run a Full replication job or an Incremental replication job. ***Note:** For the Folder/Item Move event, real time replication supports keeping the destination in step with the source. For the granular replication job, it will create a new folder or document when replicating without deleting the moved file. ***Note:** For the event List Column Changes, the personal views and public view of the list will be replicate to the destination by default, please ensure the Receive configuration changes from destination (two-way replication) option and the Personal views and Public views on the list level in the Replication Options field are selected. You can find this option in the Replicator -> Settings -> Mapping Settings -> Replication. ***Note:** Please ensure you run a full replication job before running the real time replication.
10	Click **OK** to save the mapping. It will be listed in the Mapping Table with the basic information.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	You can do the operations below in the Mapping Table: • Change the order of the mapping plan by selecting the number in the drop-down box. • Disable the mapping plan by unchecking the corresponding check-box. • View the source and destination directly. • View and edit the replicator setting in the popup by clicking the icon in the Type column. • View and edit the basic settings by click the " " button to popup a window in the Info column. If you want edit the settings, uncheck the "Use Default Replication Options" and then change the options. • Browse the replicator content of the source. Clicking the " " button in the Detail column, a pop-up window will appear. You can browse the tree of the replicator content by clicking the content name. • View the history action of this mapping. You can click the " " button, and select the job in the pop-up, it will list the detail information of the selected job. • Delete the mapping by clicking **Delete**.
12	Click **Save** to save the plan, it will list in the Plan Viewer column on the right under the corresponding agent. You can click **Export** to down-load all mappings information for the current plan to local system.
13	After you save the plan successfully, the Test Run and the Run buttons will be enabled. You can click **Test Run** to test if the agent can be connected first, or click **Run** to run the plan immediately.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">14</td><td colspan="2">After you click Run, a pop-up window will appear. You need to select a replication type.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last replication job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on replication.

By default, if no full replication has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full replication.

You can click Advanced, and check the checkbox. This option is used to incremental replication. It will check the changes in the specified interval, and then replicate the changes.

Select the Use a special reference time checkbox and enter the amount of time as of which you want the new or modified content to replicate. You can also select a start time and enter the description for the job.

If the size of the site you want to run the replication is too large (for example, larger than 100G), it is recommended you to run an incremental job with the Special reference time setting after attaching the Content database to the destination.

*Note: If you set the advanced incremental option and run the replication first time, it will perform an incremental replication.

*Note: You can only use the specified interval for running the mapping first time.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
15	Click **Run** to run the plan. You can view the process of the plan in the Mapping Monitor on the bottom of the GUI. You can click the " " icon to pause the plan and the " " icon to resume the plan.

6.4.5 Helpful Notes on Replicator

Refer to the sections below to get helpful notes on using DocAve Replicator.

Replicate Content Type by ID and Name

In SharePoint 2007 environment, you can choose whether to compare the content type name when replicating the content type.

In order to replicate content type by ID and name at the same time, navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data* and find the Replicator2008.xml file. Open it with Notepad and set the value of EnableFindCTByName to True to enable this function.

When this function is enabled, the content type will be replicated according to the logic below.

1. First, DocAve will check whether the content types have the same ID at both source and destination or not.
   - *For the content types that have the same ID at the source and the destination* : The source content type overwrites the destination content type.
   - *For the content types that have different IDs at the source and the destination* : DocAve will perform step 2.
2. Second, DocAve will check whether the content types have the same name at both source and destination or not.
   - *For the content types that have the same name at the source and the destination* : If they have the same Parent Built-in content type, the columns in the source content type will be added to the destination content type; if they have different Parent Built-in content types, the source content type will be replicated to the destination, and a suffix of _1,_2,… will be added to the name of the original content type in the destination.
   - *For the content types that have different names at the source and the destination* : The source content type will be replicated to the destination normally. The original content type at destination will stay the same and not be affected by the replication.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Synchronize the Breaking Operation of Permission Inheritance

When the following requirements are met, you can specify how to synchronize the breaking operation of permission inheritance by configuring **InheritPermission**'s value in the following configuration file: *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|Replicator2008.xml*.

***Note:** This function can only be used in the SharePoint 2007 environment. If this function is disabled, when the source and the destination both have broken the permission inheritance, and you choose to inherit the top level's permissions again at the source, this inheriting operation will not be replicated to the destination.

- Make sure **Permission Levels** is selected under **Site level** in the *Security* tab of the **Replication Options** profile.
- Make sure **Receive security changes from destination (in two-way replication)** is checked in the *Security* tab of the **Replication Options** profile. This requirement is only for two-way replication.
- Make sure **Enable sync deletion for users and groups** is checked in the *Security* tab of the **Replication Options** profile.
- Make sure **Replicate Deletions** is selected in **Options** when running the Incremental Replication job in GUI.

After changing the value of **InheritPermission** to True, the following logic will be enabled and used in the replication job.

- *If the permission inheritance of one SharePoint object is broken at the source, and the source object is mapped to a newly created destination object that inherits the top level's permissions* : The destination object's permission inheritance will be broken.
- *If the permission inheritance of one SharePoint object is broken at the source, and the source object is mapped to a destination object that inherits the top level's permissions again* : Since you choose to inherit the top level's permissions again at the destination, the destination object's permission inheritance will not be broken.

Replicate File Renaming Operation

When you synchronize the source and the destination web applications/site collections/sites/libraries/folders where the files exist, then modify the source file name and run a one-way/two-way incremental replication job, DocAve Replicator updates the destination file name instead of creating new files at the source/destination.

***Note:** Real-time replication supports replicating file renaming operation.

Refer to the detailed information of this function below.

- The Full Mode does not support synchronizing the Renaming operation.
- For one-way or two-way incremental jobs, if the name or other properties of the source file and the destination file are both modified, the file renaming logic will not work. In this case, the destination modified file will be created at the source, and the source modified file will be created at the destination.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- If the user that renames the file on one side does not have the permission to operate the data of the other side, a new file will be created at the corresponding side.
- For nested folders, if you rename both the parent folder and its subfolder in the source, and then rename the files in the subfolder, only the top-level folder's renaming operation will be synchronized to the destination.

6.4.6 Dashboard

This section supplies an interface to provide a higher level monitoring and failsafe measures for all replication jobs. Manually recover any failed jobs is implemented to make sure all the data are replicated. You can view the detailed information and recover any failed jobs by selecting the plan name under the Plan Viewer or by clicking **Go to Dashboard** to view the job information when you run a replication job in the Plan Builder module.

To view the detailed information or recover any failed replication jobs, please follow the steps below:

(6-87) View the Detailed Information

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5->Administration->Replicator->Dashboard
2	Select the plan name you want to view from the Plan Viewer. The setup Plan Name, Schedule, Concurrent Thread and Network Control Profile of this plan will be shown on the top of the screen. Also, all the mapping detailed information will show below. If you want to view certain mappings, click **Mapping Filter** and a pop-up window will appear.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Select All Mappings, and all the mappings included in the plan will be shown.This is selected by default. If you want to view certain mappings, click Filter Mappings radio button and there are two types of filter options for you to select.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Destination Agent Name</td><td>Enter the exact agent name in the text box. Click Add to add the criteria.
Click OK, and the mapping will be filtered by the agent name you entered.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Destination Agent Connection</td><td>You can filter the mapping by the status of the destination agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">After the Mapping Filter is setup, the detailed information of each job will be shown, and there are three control options you can perform to each job.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4"></td><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pause</td><td>If you want to stop a running replication job, click Pause and then the button will turn to Resume for you to click if you want to start the job again.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Retry Now</td><td>This button is used to manually retry the failed replication job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Link Test</td><td>Click Link Test, and a pop-up window will appear. You can view the link information between the source agent and destination agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">If you want to control all the mapping jobs, you can click Pause All, Resume All or Retry All Failed on the right top of the mapping table.</td></tr>
</table>

6.4.7 Offline Replicator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Offline replicator allows you export the data to a local location from the source agent and then import the data to a destination. By default, it will copy the security, content and configuration automatically.

6.4.7.1 Export

You can export the data to a local location by following the steps below:

(6-88) Export The Data

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5 -> Administration -> Replicator -> Offline Replicator -> Export.
2	Click **New** and enter a name into the provided field.
3	Select a Farm from the drop-down box.
4	Select an Agent Group from the drop-down box. For more information on setting up an Agent Group, please refer to Section "Agent Group" of this Manual.
5	Select a export location from the drop-down box. For more information on adding a new location for backup data, please refer to Section Settings of this Manual.
6	You can select a user mapping from the drop-down box. Please note that this feature is optional.
7	Click on the farm name to expand the tree. Select the content to replicate by clicking the radio button.
8	Select the operation on the DocAve archived data by checking the corresponding radio button. Please note this option only works on the item level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by un-checking the "No Schedule" check-box. Using the calendar icon next to the "Start Time" field, select a date and time for the job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on only once, hour, day, week, or month schedule. You also need to select a replication type in corresponding field.
10	Click **Save** to save the plan, or click **Clear** to clear the setting. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)". If you want to run this plan immediately, click **Run Now** to run the job. The information about the job will list underneath or you can go to Job Report center to view the job process.

6.4.7.2 Import

After exporting the data, you can import the data to a specific location.

(6-89) Import The Data

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5 -> Administration -> Replicator -> Offline Replicator -> Import.
2	Select the Farm for the destination from the drop-down box.
3	Select an Agent Group from the drop-down box.
4	Click the farm name on the left side of the screen to expand the tree, and then find the export folder.
5	Once you have found the export folder you would like to import, select it from the tree browser by clicking the radio button next to it. You can view the import tree from the pop-up a window.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	After selecting the folder, the URL of the folder will display next to the URL.
7	Click the farm name on the right side of the screen to expand the tree.
8	Navigate through the tree structure of the SharePoint environment to find the desired destination. Clicking on the corresponding radio button next to the URL. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by selecting it and inputting the new name into the blank input field, and click **Configure** button to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. After running this plan, the selected data will be copy to it. ***Note:** If you want to create a new Site Collection, you need to enter the entire URL for the new Site Collection. If you want to create a Site/ List/ Folder, a new name is enough. ***Note:** If you want to create a site collection under a web application with FBS authentication, click **Configure**. The content database and the site collection administrator must be specified. To run this job successfully, you must configure the user mapping for this site collection administrator in Mapping Settings section, otherwise, the source content will not be copied to the destination.
9	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by un-checking the "No Schedule" check-box. Using the calendar icon next to the "Start Time" field, select a date and time for the job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on only once, hour, day, week, or month schedule.
10	Click **Save** to save the plan, or click **Clear** to clear the setting. If you want to run this plan immediately, click **Run Now** to run the job. The information about the job will list underneath or you can go to Job Report center to view the job process.

6.4.7.3 Two Way Offline Replication

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocAve Offline Replication allows you to run a two way offline replication job. To set up a two way replication job, please follow the steps below.

For example, the two agents you want to perform two way replication job are the Agent1 and Agent2

(6-90) Two Way Offline Replication

Step	Action
1	Navigate to DocAve v5 -> Replicator -> Settings -> Plan Settings -> Export Location.
2	Specify the same location for these two agents.
3	Navigate to DocAve v5 -> Replicator -> Offline Replicator -> Export.
4	Set up the export plan Export1 for Agent1, and export plan Export2 for Agent2. Please note the Export Location for these two export plans must be the location you set up in step 2.
5	Go to the Import page, and set up the import plan Import1 for Agent1, and select the Export2 as the source, the Import2 for Agent2 and select the Export1 as the source.

After configuring the above steps, you can set the suitable schedule for these export jobs and import jobs, this will implement the two-way replication function.

***Note:** You must specify the same conflict rule for the two import plans, and the same user mapping profile for the export plans.

6.4.8 Replicate through DocAve Web Service

DocAve also supports migrate the content across two SharePoint farms which are in different subnets via DocAve Web Service without opening any ports in firewall. This process requires establishing a local or regular DocAve replicator agent and a remote agent. The Regular Agent must be in the same subnet as DocAve Manager.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

6.4.8.1 Enable Web Service

In order to replicate the content across different subnets, the Web Service must be enabled for both Regular Agent and Remote Agent.

You can enable this option when you install the agent, and DocAve also allows you enable it in Agent Monitor module.

Enable Web Service in Installation Wizard

You can enable the Web Service in installation wizard. For more information about this instruction, please refer to Section Enabling Web Service in the Installation Wizard of this Manual.

Enable Web Service in Agent Configuration Tool

Due to Remote Agent cannot connect to the Manager automatically, this method is only used for Regular Agent.

(6-91) Enable Web Service in Agent Configuration Tool

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the "Agent Configuration Tool" on Agent machine.
2	Check the "Enable Web Service" option, the Configure button will appear next to the option.
3	Click **Confirm**.
4	For the web service configuration, you need to configure it in Agent Monitor.
5	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *Agent Services* > *Agent Monitor*.
6	Click **Configure** and then switch to the "Web Service" Tab, the configuration window will appear.
7	Check the *Enable Web Service* option.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Enter the Web Service URL for the corresponding agent. The URL must be provided in the following format: *http://hostname:port/_vit_bin/DocAveWebService.asmx*.
9	Input the Username and Password to set up access to the Web Service, then click **Test** for verification.
10	Click **Save** to save the configuration.

Adding a Remote Agent

Since the remote agent cannot communicate directly with the DocAve manager, the connection / configuration information must be manually added to the Agent Monitor

(6-92) Adding a Remote Agent in Agent Monitor

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Agent Services > Agent Monitor*.
2	Click **Add Remote Agent** on the top-left of the screen. A Configuration window will appear.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Within the Agent Configuration, you need to enter some information for the remote agent. • *DocAve Agent Address* : The machine's name or IP address • *DocAve Agent Port* : The default port number is 10103 • *Log Level* : There are five options in the drop-down list: Error, Warning, Info, Debug, and Log to File. • *Use Proxy Agent* : Select this option, and specify a regular agent as a proxy agent to ensure the Byte level replication job can be run properly. By default, this option is selected. • *SharePoint Version* : The version of the SharePoint, you must select it according to your SharePoint version on the remote machine. This option can be selected when unseleting the Use Proxy Agent option.
4	Under the Web Services Setting, enter the Web Service URL for the corresponding agent. Input the Username, and Password to set up access to the Web Service, then click **Test** for verification.
5	For the Account Configuration, an account which has administrative access to both the SharePoint Front-End Web Server and your SQL Server MUST be used. A SharePoint service account is recommended.
6	Click **Save** to save the configuration, and the remote agent will be add to the list of Agent Monitor.

Replicator through Web Service

To run a replicator across the agents which are in the different subnets, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-93) Replicator via Web Service

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Administration* > *Replicator* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Configure other basic options on the top of the GUI. For more information, please refer to Section Basic Options of this Manual. ***Note:** The operation **Backup before replication** is not supported by Replicator Through Web Service.
3	Click **Add Mapping** or the " " icon, a data tree browser window will appear.
4	Select a Source Agent from the drop-down box on the left of the screen. For the Source Agent drop-down box, both the Regular Agent and the Remote Agents will be loaded. ***Note:** DocAve will use Regular Agent to load the Remote Agent data tree, so when Regular Agent is selected, the Remote Agent can be displayed in destination agent drop-down list.
5	Click on the plus sign before the source agent name to expand the tree and find the content you wish to migrate. You can click the " " icon to view the existed mapping of the individual content. ***Note:** Since DocAve will use Regular Agent to load the Remote Agent data tree, you should not select a Remote Agent as the Source Agent. Otherwise, a prompt message will come out when DocAve is expanding the source tree since there is no available SharePoint agent in the default agent group of the farm.
6	Select a Remote Agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen. Click on the plus sign before the agent name to expand the tree to the location you want to replicate to. You can create a new folder by inputting the folder name into the blank input field next to the folder icon. You can drag the content to the new folder directly. After running this job, the selected data will be replicated to this new folder.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Drag the content you want to replicate from the source to the destination location you desired. It will pop-up a replicator setting window.

***Note:** You can select multiple site collection by pressing "Ctrl + site collection name", and then drag them to a Web Application.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">8</td><td colspan="2">In the pop-up, you can select a Mapping Type for the replicator.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>One way</td><td>This option will replicate the data from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Two way</td><td>This option will achieve dual replication between the source and the destination. The data in the source will be replicated in the destination, and the data in the destination will be replicated to the source.

***Note:** The user must select a source first and only select one node in the source. The node types in the source and destination should be the same, and the node in the source and destination should be on the same level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">The "Enable Real Time Replication" option will replicate the modification you select in the "List of Events to Replicator" drop-down box in real time.

***Note:** Real Time Replication requires each Web Front End has the DocAve SharePoint agent installed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Select the events to replicator from the "List of Events to Replicate" drop-down box. It is only available with Enable Real Time Replicator option.

You can check the events box and click Apply to apply the selected items.

***Note:** Replication of deletions only works for folder/ item level. You can select the Folder/ Item Deletion option in the drop-down list.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Click **OK** to save the mapping. It will be listed in the Mapping Table with the basic information.
12	You can do the operations below in the Mapping Table: • Change the order of the mapping plan by selecting the number in the drop-down box. • Disable the mapping plan by unchecking the corresponding check-box. • View the source and destination directly. • View and edit the replicator setting in the popup by clicking the icon in the Type column. • View and edit the basic settings by click the " " button to popup a window in the Info column. If you want edit the settings, uncheck the "Use Default Replication Options" and then change the options. • Browse the replicator content of the source. Clicking the " " button in the Detail column, a pop-up window will appear. You can browse the tree of the replicator content by clicking the content name. • View the history action of this mapping. You can click the " " button, and select the job in the pop-up, it will list the detail information of the selected job. • Delete the mapping by clicking **Delete**.
13	Click **Save** to save the plan, it will list in the Plan Viewer column on the right under the corresponding agent.
14	After you save the plan successfully, the Test Run and the Run now buttons will be enabled. You can click **Test Run** to test if the agent can be connected first, or click **Run now** to run the plan immediately.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">15</td><td colspan="2">After you click Run now, a pop-up window will appear. You need to select a replication type.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last replication job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on replication.

By default, if no full replication has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full replication.

You can click Advanced, and check the checkbox. This option is used to incremental replication. It will check the changes in the specified interval, and then replicate the changes.

*Note: If you set the advanced incremental option and run the replication first time, it will perform an incremental replication.

*Note: You can only use the specified interval for running the mapping first time.</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td colspan="2">Click Run to run the plan. You can view the process of the plan in the Mapping Monitor on the bottom of the GUI.

You can click the “ ” icon to pause the plan and the “ ” icon to resume the plan.</td></tr>
</table>

6.4.9 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Replication

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(6-94) Supported and Unsupported Elements

Source	Type	Status	Known Issues*
Libraries	Document Library	Supported	
	Form Library	Supported	
	Wiki Page Library	Supported	
	Picture Library	Supported	
	Translation Management Library	Supported	
	Data Connection Library	Supported	
	Slide Library	Supported	
	Report Library	Supported	
	DocAve Content Library	Supported(real data)	
	DocAve Media Library	Supported(real data)	
Communica-tions List	Announcements	Supported	
	contacts	Supported	
	Discussion Board	Supported	
Tracking Lists	Links	Supported	
	Calendar	Supported	
	Tasks	Supported	
	Project Tasks	Supported	
	Issue Tracking	Supported	
	Survey	Supported	
Custom Lists	Custom List	Supported	
	Custom List in Datasheet View	Supported	
	Language and Translators	Supported	
	KPI Lists	Supported	
	Import Spreadsheet	Supported	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status	Known Issues*
Web Pages	Basic Page	Supported	
	Web Part Page	Supported	1. Some customizations are not supported. 2. The image in the Web part cannot be replicated between the sites successfully. Such as from the subsite to topsite.
	sites and Workspaces	Supported	
Workflow		Supported	Only support replicating the definition of the workflow. the instance for the workflow is not supported.
RSS		Supported	
Alerts		Supported	
Metadata	Single line of text	Supported	
	Multiple lines of text	Supported	
	Choice (menu to choose from)	Supported	
	Number	Supported	
	Currency	Supported	
	Data and Time	Supported	
	Look up	Supported	Only support replicating the lookup between the same site
	Yes/No	Supported	
	Person or Group	Supported	
	Hyperlink or Picture	Supported	
	Calculated	Supported	
	Business Data	Supported	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status	Known Issues*
Security & Properties	Version settings	Supported	
	Column Settings	Supported	
	Permissions	Supported	This function cannot be such steadily in some levels except site-level and web level.
Version Histories	Documents	Supported	
	Lists	Supported	

6.4.9.1 Currently Supported and Unsupported Function for Offline Replication

(6-95) Supported and Unsupported Function for Offline Replication

Component	Function	Status
Offline Replication	User Mappings	Supported
	Archived Data replication control	Supported
	Backup Before Replication	Supported
	Schedule configuration	Supported
	Item replication conflict control	Supported
	HTTP/HTTPS Replication	Supported
	Configuration Replication control/Two way design	Unsupported
	Language Mapping	Unsupported
	Byte Level	Unsupported
	Filter Options	Unsupported
	Email Notification	Unsupported
	Network control	Unsupported
	Data compression/Encryption	Unsupported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7. Migration

The migration module allows you to migrate data from several sources into SharePoint 2007 (both WSS v3 and SharePoint 2007)/ SharePoint 2010. See the sections below for more information.

7.1 File System Migration

File system migration provides a way for administrators to migrate file system data from the source to the selected List or Folder in SharePoint document libraries(Standard and Stellent migration) or general lists(Vignette migration). A single File or Folder can be specified from the source and placed into an existing SharePoint Document Library or a new folder can be created at the destination. In order to perform Stellent Migration, you must be running Stellent version 7.5 or above. For Vignette Migration, the Vignette supported version is only 7.2.

***Note:** The Stellent data must be exported before the Stellent migration, for more information about the exporting files, see Stellent Content Server System Administration Guide. http://www.sonypicscareers.com/stelprdwcm1/help/admin_guide/wwhelp/wwhimpl/js/html/wwhelp.htm?href=page_13_007.htm.

You can also use the Migration pre-scan tool to scan the source information and set up some mappings for the migration job. For more information about this tool, please refer to File Migration Section.

7.1.1 Installation

To make sure the File System Migration module is enabled, please follow the steps below:

(7-1) Installation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab verify that the *File Migrator* option is checked.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.1.2 Uninstallation

To uninstall the File System Migration module, please follow the steps below:

(7-2) Uninstallation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab verify that the File Migrator option is not checked.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

7.1.3 Basic Settings

You should configure the basic settings before performing the file system migration. There are three kinds of settings respectively for File System migration, Stellent migration and Vignette migration.

7.1.3.1 File System Settings

There are four parts in File System settings: Mapping Setup, Source Devices, Filter, and Web Part Settings.

Mapping Setup

This section describes how to set up mapping from File System permissions, columns, and other information to SharePoint.

(7-3) Mapping Setup

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Settings* > *File System*.
2	Select the *Mapping Setup* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	You should setup Mapping Profile, Properties Mapping, Common Mapping, Security Mapping, and Migration Options. In order to set a Mapping Profile, the Properties Mapping, Common Mapping, Security Mapping, and Migration Options settings must be specified and saved.
4	Select the Properties Mapping, click **New** and enter a profile name.
5	Select the check box next to the File System Properties which you want to modify the corresponding properties in SharePoint for File System. You can also check the check box next to File System Properties to select all options.
6	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Properties Mapping File column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
7	Select the Common Mapping and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are four options: Add SharePoint Group, Character length setting, Illegal characters replace setting, and Custom metadata setting.
8	Check the box next to **Add SharePoint Group**, where you can map the Active Directory group to SharePoint group. By default, it will not map to any group. Input the SharePoint group name in the field, multiple groups should be separated by a comma ",".

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Check the box next to **Characters length setting**; you can control the file/folder name and SharePoint URL's maximum length. By default, the maximum lengths of the file/folder name and SharePoint URL are separately 80, 60 and 255. You can define the length of the folder/file name in the range of 1 to 128 and the SharePoint URL in the range of 1 to 260. If the folder/file name or the SharePoint URL exceeds the length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra characters. The truncated file/folder name or SharePoint URL will be recorded in the Job Report. ***Note:** The filename length limit of 128 includes the length of the extension (i.e. '.exe' is four characters). ***Note:** For files, if the defined name length is shorter than the length of the file extension, the file will not be migrated.
10	Select the **Illegal characters replace setting** box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which is "_" by default. After the job finished, it will list the edited filename and the original filename in the Report.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	The Custom metadata setting fields are defined as follows: • *Path* : the root path of the application rule • *Filter* : you can set a wildcard to filter. If the type is folder, the value of the filter should be foldername* or *folder-name. If the type is file, the filter should be *.extension or filename.*. • *Type* : the types of the object. The value should only be "folder" or "file". • *Content Type/New Column* : If the source files match the conditions above, the files will contain the content type of the filter object and the new column in Share Point. The content type should have existed in the Parent list. • *Value* : the value of the new column in SharePoint. You can click icon to next to Custom metadata setting to add a new rule or click icon to remove it. You can also click icon next to the column to add a new column or click icon to remove it.
12	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Common Mapping File column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)". ***Note:** There is already default common mapping file on the right column.
13	Select the Security Mapping, click **New** and enter a profile name. There are three fields: Domain Mapping, User Mapping and Permission mapping.
14	Check the check-box next to *Domain Mapping* where you can map the File System Domain to SharePoint Domain. Input File System Domain Name and SharePoint Domain Name. Click the icon to add a new row and the icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
15	Check the check-box next to *Group Mapping* where you can map the File System Group to SharePoint Group. Input File System Group Name and SharePoint Group Name. Click the icon to add a new row and the icon to delete it. ***Note:** If you want to map groups from different domains, please refer to Security Mapping.
16	Check the check-box next to *User Mapping* where you can map the File System User to SharePoint User. Input File System Username and SharePoint Username. Click the icon to add a new row and the icon to delete it. ***Note:** If you want to map users from different domains, please refer to Security Mapping.
17	Permission Mapping allows you to map the permission from the file system to SharePoint. Select a SharePoint permission for the corresponding File System Permission from the drop-down box.
18	If you want to configure a new SharePoint permission for the permission mapping, click the **New SharePoint Permission**, and a pop-up window will appear. 1. Enter a name for the new permission in the provided text box. 2. You can enter a description in the Description field to help distinguish this permission. 3. Select the permission for the new SharePoint permission by clicking the corresponding check box. You can select *Select All* if you want to include all the permissions. 4. Click **Save** to save the permission, and it will be listed in the Permission Level Profile column area on the right. 5. You can click the clear button to remove your configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>19</td><td colspan="2">Click Save, and it will be displayed in the Permission Level Profile column area on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">20</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as an xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration file, the user has different selection depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Setting interface.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Pro-file list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn't to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has a different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.

*Note: Only the Custom metadata setting in Common mapping supports the Merge the xml files.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">21</td><td colspan="2">Select the Migration Options, click New and enter a profile name. You can specify how to manage the source file after the migration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Do not move source folders and files</td><td>The source folder and files will be kept in the original location. This is selected by default.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remove source folders and files from file system</td><td>The source folder and files will be deleted from file system after they are migrated to SharePoint.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Move source folder and files to another location</td><td>You can specify a location for the source folder and files after they are migrated to SharePoint.
Input the Username, Password and Path in the corresponding field according to the example provided.</td></tr>
<tr><td>22</td><td colspan="2">Specify the content approval status for the file and folder.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">23</td><td colspan="2">Select File tab to decide the content approval status for the migrated files.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>The Content Approval status of the destination SharePoint Library is disabled</td><td>Check the The files will be always migrated as the major version check box, and the files will be as the major version migrated to SharePoint.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The Content Approval status of the destination SharePoint Library is enabled</td><td>Select a approval status in the Status drop-down box for the migrated file and enter the comments in the field provided.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
24	Select *Folder* tab and if the status of Content Approval in the destination SharePoint library is enabled, select the approval status in the Status drop-down box and enter the comment in the field provided.
25	Click **Save** to save the migration options profile. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
26	After setting up the three configurations, you should go to the Mapping Profile.
27	Click **New** and input a new profile name.
28	You can specify the mappings for this profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, it selected the default mapping.
29	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Mapping File column area on the right. When setting up a migration, you can select this profile from the drop-down box. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Source Devices

You can specify the location which includes the content you want to migrate as a source device.

(7-4) Setting up Source Devices

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Settings* > *File System*.
2	Select the *Source Devices* tab.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Click **New**, and then input a new device name.
4	Select an agent in the drop-down box.
5	Input the **Username** as domain\username format and **Password** to set up access to the path that data will be read from.
6	Click **Test** to verify the location.
7	Click **Save** to save this profile. A list of saved profiles will appear on the right under corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

***Note:** If several source devices have the same path, it will use the source device you setup finally.

Filter

The filter allows you to limit content based on modified / created dates, as well as file size and other parameters.

(7-5) Filter

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Settings* > *File System*.
2	Select the *Filter* tab.
3	Click **New**, and then input a new filter name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">4</td><td colspan="2">The File Filter includes two rules: File Name Filter and File Size Filter. If filter rules are enabled, at least one of these filter modes must be specified.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>File Name Filter</td><td>1. Select the migrated content type: Folder or File.
2. You can filter files using the given field.
3. You can change the plus/minus sign by clicking on the icon.

*Note: This field also accepts wildcards (*).
4. Add or delete a rule by clicking on the Add button or Remove button

An example for the name filter would be to find the files whose extension name is .jpg and whose name is not 123:

*Note: The + means the files found will be included in the plan. The - means the files found will be excluded in the plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>File Size Filter</td><td>1. Check off the box next to File Size to activate this filter.
2. Choose the file size by selecting greater than (>) or less than (<) from the drop-down list and enter a value in the input field.
3. Select either KB, MB, or GB from the list.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Under **Customized Metadata** field, you can filter the file according to their properties. First, click **Add** button to add a rule. Second, enter a property name which you want to filter by. Third, select corresponding type and condition from the drop-down box. Fourth, enter a value of the property you wish to filter by. ***Note:** If you want to filter a .pfd file by its specific property, make sure **Adobe Reader** has been installed on the source agent's machine and the file's machine while doing a File System migration and **Adobe Acrobat** has been installed on the source agent's machine and the file's machine while doing an End User File migration. ***Note:** You can use **AvePointMigratorTool** to look over the file's properties. Please refer to chapter 10.8 Migration Pre-scan Tool for the details of this tool.
6	The Time Range includes two rules: Created Time and Modified Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.
7	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.
8	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From… To…* : Specify an interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select Before or After from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select an interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.
10	Click **Save** to save this filter. A list of saved filters will appear on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

End User File System Migration

End User File System Migration allows you to install a file migration web part on SharePoint for the person who does not have the permission of the DocAve.

***Note:** Only the users with the Contribute permission or higher can view the Upload with metadata option, and the read and write permissions for the local files.

***Note:** The account you want to configure for the end user file system migration can access to the database and have the read and write permission for the database.

***Note:** DocAve follows the SharePoint quota limitation when using End User File Migration.

***Note:** The Owner property of the zip file cannot migrate successfully using End User File Migration.

(7-6) Web Part Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > File System > Settings >File System > Web Part Settings*.
2	To use this web part, you need to deploy the corresponding solution first, you can click **here** in the upper right of this page to go to the *DocAve Solution Manager* module to deploy the solution. For SharePoint 2007 environment, you need to deploy the *EndUserFileMigration.wsp* solution. For SharePoint 2010 environment, you should deploy the *DocAve.SP2010.FileMigration.EndUser.wsp* solution.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Select a farm to install the web part on the left column. The Web Applications of this farm will be listed on the right.
4	Select the Web Application you want to install the web part by checking the corresponding check box.
5	Click **Install**, it will install the web part on the specified Web Application, and its status in the list will be turn to Installed. If you want to uninstall the web part, please select the Web Application and click **Uninstall**.
6	Click **Configure**, and select the Mapping Setup and Filter rule for the specific web application. Click **Apply** to apply the configuration.
7	Go to the Shared Document under the appropriate Web Application.
8	Select the Upload Folders from the Upload drop-down list. ***Note:** Only the users with the Contribute permission or above can view this feature.
9	It will prompt to install the End User controller when you view the interface. ***Note:** If it pop up a security warning prompt, you need to download the Certification from https://certs.godaddy.com/repository/gd-class2-root.crt, and then install it. After installing the certification, repeat the step 5, 6, 7 to install the End User Webpart.
10	You can perform a file migration on the web part as the same as on DocAve.

7.1.3.2 Stellent Settings

There are two parts in Stellent Settings: Mapping Setup and Source Devices.

Mapping Setup

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This section describes how to setup mapping from Stellent columns and other information to SharePoint.

(7-7) Mapping Setup

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Settings* > *Stellent*.
2	Select the *Mapping Setup* tab.
3	You should setup Mapping Profile, Common Mapping, and Column Mapping. In order to set a Mapping Profile, the Common Mapping and Column Mapping settings must be configured and saved.
4	Select the Common Mapping and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are three options: Character length setting, Illegal characters replace setting, and Custom metadata setting.
5	Check the box next to Characters length setting; you can control the file/folder name and the SharePoint URL's maximum length. By default, the maximum length of the file/folder name and SharePoint URL is 80, 60 and 255 characters. You can define the length of the folder name and the file name in the range of 1 to 128 and the SharePoint URL in the range of 1 to 260. If the folder/file name or the SharePoint URL exceeds the length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra characters. The truncated file name or SharePoint URL will be recorded in the Job Report. ***Note:** The filename length limit of 128 includes the length of the extension (i.e. '.exe' is four characters). ***Note:** For files, if the defined name length is shorter than the length of the file extension, the file will not be migrated.
6	Select the Illegal characters replace setting box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which is _ by default. After the job finished, it will list the edited filename and the original filename in the Report.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	The Custom metadata setting fields are defined as follows: • *Path* : the root path of the application rule • *Filter* : you can set a wildcard to filter. If the type is folder, the value of the filter should be foldername* or *folder-name. If the type is file, the filter should be *.extension or filename.*. • *Type* : the types of the object. The value should only be folder or file. • *Content Type/New Column* : If the source files match the conditions above, the files will contain the content type of the filter object and the new column in Share Point. The content type should have existed in the Parent list. • *Value* : the value of the new column in SharePoint. You can click icon to next to Custom metadata setting to add a new rule or click icon to remove it. You can also click icon next to the column to add a new column or click icon to remove it.
8	Select the Column Mapping, click **New** and enter a profile name.
9	Select the check box next to the Stellent column name which you want to modify the corresponding column name in SharePoint. The column type of the SharePoint column can be selected in the corresponding drop-down list. You can also check the check box next to Stellent Column Name to select all options. ***Note:** If you select the *Managed Metadata* SharePoint Column Type from the drop-down box, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click icon to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration.
10	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the **Column Mapping File** column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">11</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as a xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration file, the user has different selection depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Setting interface.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn’t to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has a different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the two configurations, you should go to the Mapping Profile.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Click New and input a new profile name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">You can specify the mappings for this profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, it selected the default mapping.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
15	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Mapping File column area on the right. When setting up a migration, you can select this profile from the drop-down box. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Source Devices

You can specify the location which includes the content you want to migrate as a source device. You should navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Settings* > *Stellent* to setup the source devices. For the detailed steps, please refer to the Section Source Devices of this Manual.

7.1.3.3 Vignette Settings

There are two parts in Vignette settings: Mapping Setup and Source Devices.

Mapping Setup

This section describes how to set up mapping from Vignette permissions, lists, and other information to SharePoint.

There are two kinds of vignette data:

- *GTI data* : This kind of data will only be migrated to Publishing Sites or the sites which both have the Office SharePoint Server Publishing Infrastructure feature of site collection level and Office SharePoint Server Publishing feature of site level activated.
- *AIM data* : This kind of data will be migrated to any site in the destination as items.

(7-8) Mapping Setup

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Settings* > *Vignette*.
2	Select the *Mapping Setup* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	You should setup Mapping Profile, Common Mapping, List Mapping and Security Mapping. In order to set a Mapping Profile, the Common Mapping, List Mapping and Security Mapping settings must be configured and saved.
4	Select the Common Mapping and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are two options: Character length setting and Illegal characters replace setting.
5	Check the box next to Characters length setting; you can control the file name and the SharePoint URL's maximum length. By default, the maximum length of the file name and SharePoint URL is 80 and 255 characters. You can define the length of the file name in the range of 1 to 128 and the SharePoint URL in the range of 1 to 260. If the file name and the SharePoint URL exceed the length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra characters. The truncated file name or SharePoint URL will be recorded in the Job Report. ***Note:** The filename length limit of 128 includes the length of the extension (i.e. '.exe' is four characters). ***Note:** For files, if the defined name length is shorter than the length of the file extension, the file will not be migrated.
6	Select the Illegal characters replace setting box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which is _ by default. After the job finished, it will list the edited filename and the original filename in the Report.
7	Select the List Mapping and click **New.** Enter a profile name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Input Vignette Channel Root Name and SharePoint List Name in the corresponding fields. It will map the Vignette Channel Root to the defined SharePoint list. Select a SharePoint List Template from the drop-down box to define the list template in SharePoint. These three are required option in this setting. • *Vignette Channel Root Name* : It is the channel root name in vignette data of source side. • *SharePoint List Name* : It is the SharePoint list name. • *SharePoint List Template* : If the exported data is the link item, you should select Generic List; and if the exported data is article item, you should select Article Page.
9	Input a Vignette Column Name, SharePoint Column Name in the corresponding fields as a mapping and select a SharePoint Column Type from the drop-down box to define the column type in SharePoint.
10	Click the icon next to the rule table to add a new row of the Vignette Column Name, SharePoint Column Name, and SharePoint Column Type and icon to delete it. ***Note:** If you select the *Managed Metadata* SharePoint Column Type from the drop-down box, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration.
11	Click the icon next to List Mapping to add a new rule and icon to delete it.
12	Click **Save**. After the configuration has been successfully saved, it will be displayed in the **List Mapping File** column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
13	Select the Security Mapping and click **New**. Enter a profile name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Select the Vignette Role, SharePoint Group and SharePoint Permission from the corresponding drop-down boxes. By the configured mapping, the users of the selected Vignette role will be added to the selected SharePoint group with the defined permission after the migration.
15	You can create a new role by clicking **New Vignette Role**. Input the role name and configure the capabilities in the pop-up window. For configuring the Granted Capabilities, you should go to the vignette data folder and open the *packageBody.xml* file. Then find out the content between grants tab, and input these content in the format of VCM:MODIFY_TAX_ASSOCS to the text box of DocAve GUI. • *VCM* : It is the value of capability application attribute in grants tab of the xml file. • *MODIFY_TAX_ASSOCS* : It is the value of name attribute in grants tab of the xml file. After being saved, it can be loaded and selected in the Vignette Role drop-down box.
16	You can create a new SharePoint group by clicking **New SharePoint Group**. Specify the name, input the description information in About Me field and define the group owner which should be an existing user in SharePoint. After being saved, it can be loaded and selected in the SharePoint Group drop-down box.
17	You can create a new SharePoint permission by clicking **New SharePoint Permission**. Configure the name, description information and the permissions in the pop-up window. After being saved, it can be loaded and selected in SharePoint Permission drop-down box.
18	Click the icon to add a new rule and icon to delete it.
19	Click **Save**. After the configuration has been successfully saved, it will be displayed in the **Security Mapping File** column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">20</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as a xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration file, the user has different selection depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Setting interface.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn’t to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has a different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.</td></tr>
<tr><td>21</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the three configurations, you should go to the Mapping Profile.</td></tr>
<tr><td>22</td><td colspan="2">Click New and input a new profile name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>23</td><td colspan="2">You can specify the mappings for this profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, it selected the default mapping.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
24	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Mapping File column area on the right. When setting up a migration, you can select this profile from the drop-down box. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Source Devices

You can specify the location which includes the content you want to migrate as a source device. You should navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Settings* > *Vignette* to setup the source devices. For the detailed steps, please refer to the Section Source Devices of this Manual.

7.1.4 Live Mode

To run a live mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-9) Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Live Mode*.
2	Select your Source Agent from the drop-down box. This will populate the drives on the local machine.
3	Select a Mapping Profile from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The Mapping Profile has been set up in Mapping Configuration under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section File System Settings of this Manual.
4	Select a Filter from drop-down box next to it. It is not a required field. ***Note:** The user Profile has been set up in Filter under the setting section. For more information, please refer to Section File System Settings of this Manual.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select a metadata mode from the drop-down box. There are two options: File System and Custom Metadata File. • *File System* : This option allows you migrate the content from the File System to the SharePoint directly. • *Custom Metadata File* : This option supports you migrate the content's metadata to the SharePoint via the excel file, and the excel file need to be in the same directory as the contents you want to migrate. You need to configure the excel manually. Please note you must add the file name you want to migrate to the FileName column in the excel file manually.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">6</td><td colspan="2">Migration options include four options: Not Overwrite, Overwrite, Append and New Version.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the content from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (Lists / Folders / Documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there is a file with the same name existing in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename +_1, 2, 3... and this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>New Version</td><td>This option is for the purpose of creating versions. It copies content from the source to the destination, but in the case when the same name already exists in the destination, an additional copy will be created as a newer version.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Always ensure that the Security box is checked. This will ensure that all metadata and version histories will be migrated.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	*Collapse Folder Structure* option allows you to migrate all content underneath different selected folders and ignore the hierarchical structure in the source to a specified folder in the destination. It does not migrate the folders they belong to. ***Note:** If the content you want to merge have the same name, it will add (1),(2),... after the name to distinguish them. When the folder structure is removed, DocAve will create a column named SourcePath in the destination. This column lists the source path from the root folder of the content you have merged. You will need to go to view > modify this view to add the SourcePath column. ***Note:** You can only select the Append migration option if you check this option.
9	If check the **Do not create top level folder on destination** option, it will not create a top level folder in destination and only migrate the files and the sub level folders in destination.
10	On the right side of the screen, select a destination agent from the drop-down box. Click on the plus sign before the agent name to expand the tree to the location you want to migrate to. You can create a new folder by inputting the folder name into the blank input field next to the folder icon. You can drag the content to the new folder directly. After running this job, the selected data will be migrated to this new folder.
11	On the left side of the screen, click on the plus sign before the source agent name to expand the tree and select the content you wish to migrate. Drag the content to the destination location. ***Note:** The destination locations are available from root web to folder.
12	After dragging the content to the destination location, the job will list in the Queue Window. Enter a positive number for the Maximum number of concurrent running jobs and click **Save** to limit the concurrent running jobs. You can click the button to begin the job. If pause the job, you can click the button. You can also click **Start All** to start all jobs, or click the icon to delete the job.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.1.5 Plan Builder

There are three migration modes in Plan Builder: Standard, Stellent Migration and Vignette Migration. Standard mode is used for migrating regular files, Stellent Migration mode is used for migrating the archived data from Stellent and Vignette Migration mode is used for migrating the archived data from Vignette. For Standard mode and Stellent Migration mode, the destination should be a Document Library; and for Vignette mode, the destination should be a General List and Pages list of publishing site.

7.1.5.1 Basic Options

In order to configure a new backup plan, you must first configure several settings in the control panel or Settings, listed below. Where necessary, links are provided to the control panel or Settings.

Migration Settings

- *Mapping Setup* : Select a Mapping Profile from the drop-down box called Mapping Setup. The mapping Profile has been set up in Mapping Configuration under the settings section. For more information, you can refer to the Section File System Settings of this Manual.
- *Filter* : Select a Filter from drop-down box next to it. It is not a required field. The user Profile has been set up in Filter under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section File System Settings on the Basic Setting in this user guide.
- *Metadata Source* : Select a metadata mode from the drop-down box. There are two options: File System and Excel.
    - *File System* : This option allows you migrate the content from the File System to the SharePoint directly.
    - *Custom Metadata File* : This option supports you migrate the content's metadata to the SharePoint via the excel file created by DocAve. For more information, please refer to Section Excel File Migration
- *Collapse Folder Structure* : This option allows you to migrate all content underneath different selected folders and ignore the hierarchical structure in the source to a specified folder in the destination. It does not migrate the folders they belong to. When the folder structure is removed, DocAve will create a column named SourcePath in the destination. This column lists the source path from the root folder of the content you have merged. You will need to go to view > modify this view to add the SourcePath column.

  ***Note:** If the content you want to merge have the same name, it will add (1),(2),... after the name to distinguish them.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** You can only select the Append migration option if you check this option.

- *Do not create top level folder on destination* : If check this option, it will not create a top level folder in destination and only migrate the files and the sub level folders in destination.
- *Generate only one excel file* : This option will be shown up if you select Custom Metadata File from Metadata Source drop-down box. By default, it will generate an excel file for each folder (including the subfolders) you selected and each excel file will only contain the files' information at current level. If you select this option, it will just generate one excel file for all the content you selected and this excel file will contain the relevant information of all the content you selected.

Reporting

- *Email Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, please refer to the Section Email Notification of this Manual. Please note that this feature is optional.

Setting up the Schedule

In order to run the migration plans on a schedule, you must configure them according to the instructions below.

(7-10) Setting Up A Schedule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > File System > Plan Builder*.
2	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box.
3	Uncheck the No Schedule check box to activate a Schedule.
4	Click on the calendar icon located to the right of the Start Time field.
5	Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Specify the interval at which the Migration will occur. The basic intervals are: • *Only Once* : This plan will run at the specified time • *Every Hour, Day, Week or Month* : This plan will run over a specified interval.
7	Select a Migration Type for the selected schedule. • *Full* : This will copy all content from the source to the destination. • *Incremental* : This option copies only the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration. ***Note:** If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Select a Migration Option for the schedule. • *Not Overwrite* : The content (Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored. For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated. • *Overwrite* : Copies the content from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (Lists / Folders / Documents) in the destination with the same name. • *Append* : This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added. If there is a file with the same name existing in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename +_1, 2, 3... And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report. • *New Version* : This option is for the purpose of creating versions. It copies content from the source to the destination, but in the case when the same name already exists in the destination, an additional copy will be created as a newer version.
9	You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
10	Repeat these steps to create additional schedules (if necessary).

7.1.5.2 Standard Mode

To configure a Standard mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-11) Standard Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Plan Builder*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select Standard from the Mode drop-down box.
3	Click **New** and enter a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
4	Configure the basic options on the top of the GUI. For more information, please refer to Section Basic Options of this Manual.
5	After setting up these basic configurations, select your Source Agent from the drop-down box. This will populate the drives on the local machine.
6	In the *Global Security For Folder* drop-down box, it includes two options: Restore no securities and Restore all securities. If you select *Restore all securities*, all the securities in the folders you selected will be migrated to the specified SharePoint Site. If you select *Restore no securities*, all the securities in the folders you selected will not be migrated to the specified SharePoint Site.
7	Click on the agent name to expand the tree.
8	Browse the tree structure from the drives below and search for the folder to import content from. In order to see the files inside the folder, open the file browser by clicking on the button after the URL. You can find the content you want to migrate by clicking the button after the URL and it will pop-up the Advanced Search window. Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click **Add** to add the criteria. It will be listed underneath. ***Note:** * represents random characters; **?** represents one character. For case sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Once you have found the content you would like to migrate, select it from the tree browser by clicking the radio button next to it. ***Note:** If you select a Filter profile, it will have a icon after the selected node. You can click this icon to view the content will be migrated in the pop-up.
10	On the right side of the screen, select your Destination Agent from the drop-down box.
11	Navigate through the tree structure of the SharePoint environment to find the desired destination site.
12	Click on the Site name to see any available document libraries where you can send your data.
13	Click on the corresponding radio button next to the Document Library to select it. You can also create a new folder by inputting the new folder name into the blank input field under the selected site. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to this new folder.
14	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent and run the plan according to the schedule. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
15	You can click **Test Run** to test whether the file you want to migrate is in use. You can view the amounts of the items which can be migrated successfully and cannot be migrated successfully as well as the unsuccessful result. ***Note:** You should run this function when you migrate the office document to test the document which is in use.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

7.1.5.3 Stellent Migration Mode

To configure a Stellent migration, please follow the steps below.

(7-12) Stellent Migration Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select Stellent Migration from the Mode drop-down box.
3	Click **New** and enter a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
4	Configure the basic options on the top of the GUI. For more information, please refer to Section Basic Options of this Manual. ***Note:** Only Mapping Setup option is available under *Migration Settings* tab and Incremental migration type is not supported in this mode.
5	After setting up these basic configurations, select the content you want to migrate and the destination you want to migrate to. For the detailed steps, please refer to Section Standard Mode of this Manual. ***Note:** Before you select the source content, you need to setup a source device in the Settings of File System. For more information, please refer to Section Source Devices.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent and run the plan according to the schedule. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
7	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process. ***Note:** Test Run function is not supported yet in this mode.

7.1.5.4 Vignette Migration Mode

To configure a Vignette migration, please follow the steps below.

(7-13) Migrating Content by Vignette Migration Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *File System* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select Vignette Migration from the Mode drop-down box.
3	Click **New** and enter a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
4	Configure the basic options on the top of the GUI. For more information, please refer to Section Basic Options of this Manual. ***Note:** Only Mapping Setup option is available under *Migration Settings* tab. **Incremental** migration type, **Append** and **New Version** migration options are not supported in this mode.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	After setting up these basic configurations, select the content you want to migrate and the destination you want to migrate to. For the detailed steps, please refer to Section Standard Mode of this Manual. ***Note:** Before you select the source content, you need to setup a source device in the Settings of File System. For more information, please refer to Section Source Devices. ***Note:** Files can only be viewed while the source and the destination are a root site or a general list, or the Pages list of the publishing site.
6	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent and run the plan according to the schedule. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
7	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process. ***Note:** Test Run function is not supported yet in this mode.

7.1.6 Excel File Migration

This mode file migration allows you migrate the content with the customization metadata by using the excel file. This feature is only supported in Standard mode.

To run an Excel File System Migration, please follow the steps below.

(7-14) Migrating Content by Excel File System Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > File System > Plan Builder*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select **Custom Metadata File** from the Metadata Source drop-down box.
3	Configure other basic options on the top of the GUI. For more information, please refer to Section Standard Mode of this Manual.
4	Select the content you want to migrate and the destination you want to migrate to. ***Note:** Before you select the source content, you need to setup a source device in the Settings of File System. For more information, please refer to Section Source Devices.
5	Click **Save** to save the plan, the **Excel Generation** button will be enable.
6	Click **Excel Generation**, then click **Start** to generate the excel file. You can click **Stop** to stop the progress.
7	After generating successfully, you can click **Report Download** to download the report which list the amount of the succeed files and the failed files.
8	You can find the excel file named *DocAveFileMigrator.xls* in the same directory as the content you want to migrate, and remove some columns or rows in the excel file manually, the corresponding properties and files will not be migrated. ***Note:** If there was the *DocAveFileMigrator.xls* file in the specific folder, it will change the prior excel file's name to *DocAveFileMigrator.xls.bak*. If the destination had the same backup data as the data you want to migrate, the new one will overwrite it. DocAve supports migrate several item types to destination. For more information, you can view the following table.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	If you want to migrate the data to SharePoint with specified folder structure, you can do it as follows. 1. Enable this feature by going to the agent installation directory (*...Program Files*| *AvePoint* | *DocAve5* | *Agent* | *data* | *SP2007* | *SP2007FileMigrationConfig.xml*), and start this feature by modifying *CustomFolder="false"* to *CustomFolder="true"*. 2. Open the excel file named *DocAveMigrator.xls*, and add a new column named *CustomFolder*. 3. Select the file you want to migrate to SharePoint, and specify the destination folder structure under *CustomFolder* column of this row. 4. Save the configuration, and then run the job. The data will be migrated to the certain location with the specified folder structure.
10	If you want to migrate several files from source side to the destination as a file with several versions, you can do it as follows. 1. Enable this feature by going to the agent installation directory (*...Program Files* | *AvePoint* | *DocAve5* | *Agent* | *data* | *SP2007* | *SP2007FileMigrationConfig.xml*), and start this feature by modifying *Node NewVersion="false"* to *Node NewVersion="true"*. 2. Open the excel file named *DocAveMigrator.xls*, and add two new columns named *Original File Name* and *FileVersion*. 3. Select the files you want to migrate to SharePoint as one file, input the original file name under *Original File Name* column and it will be displayed as the destination name of the file. 4. Input the file version you specify under FileVersion column, File System Migrator will just sort the versions by the specified version. 5. Save the configuration and then run the job. The file will be migrated to the destination as a file with multiple versions. ***Note:** If you have not run the Version feature, we will start the major version feature by default.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	You can click **Test Run** to test whether the file you want to migrate is in use. You can view the amounts of the items which can be migrated successfully and cannot be migrated successfully as well as the unsuccessful result.
12	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

***Note:** If you delete the FileName column, it will only migrate the folder without any files in it.

***Note:** The excel file name must be DocAveFileMigrator.xls or DocAveFileMigrator.xls.bak, you cannot change the file name.

***Note:** The excel file cannot be open during migration. This feature cannot migrate the permission and cannot run on Windows 2008 operating system in the version before DocAve 5.2.2.0

(7-15) The List of the Item Types

Type	Column_Name := Type	The example of the content format
Text	column_name := singleText	Random Character String, less than 255 character
Node	column_name := multipleText	Random Character String
Drop-down	column_name := dropdownlList/choice	Random Character String
Check-box	column_name := checkboxes	Random Character String
Radio Button	column_name := radioButton	Random Character String
Number	column_name := number	10
Currency	column_name := currency	999
DateTime	column_name := dateandtime	008-12-30 8:23:01

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Type	Column_Name := Type	The example of the content format
DateOnly	column_name := dateo-nly/date	2008-12-30
Boolean	column_name := boolean	True
User	column_name := user	administrator
URL	column_name := URL	URLDescription|| http://www.xxxx
Managed Meta-data	column_name := taxon-omy(GroupName;Term-SetName;1;#)	11#22#33
Lookup	column_name := lookup:LinkList-Name:LinkField	Refer to the note below.

***Note:** For Managed Metadata type, if there is a column with the same name but a different type in the destination, the assignment for the this column will be invalid; and if there is no column with the same name in the destination, a Managed Metadata column will be created.

The field type is taxonomy which represents fixed character strings. For this type, you can specify four values. First one is group name and the second one is TermSet name, and both of them exist in SharePoint Central Administration. The third one represents whether this column allows multiple values. Enter **1**(one) to allow multiple values and enter **0**(zero) to only allow one value. By default, it allows multiple values. The fourth one is the separator character, and by default **;** is the separator.

***Note:** For Lookup type, the field type is lookup which represents fixed character strings. For this type, you can specify two values. First one is the name of the list or library where it gets information from. The second one is the name of column which it points to. Please note the list or library must be existed and the second value is case-sensitive.

***Note:** If the content does not match with the item type, it will not be migrated to destination.

***Note:** If there was the column with the same name but different type in the destination, this column will not be created.

***Note:** For the URL item type, you also specify the two values, one is the description, the other is the URL, and they are separated by using ||.

***Note:** Multiple values can be specified for Check box separated by ;#. For example, "aaa;#bbb;#ccc".

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.1.7 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for File Migration

(7-16) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for File Migration

Source	Destination	Status
Individual file	Document Library Form Library Wiki Page Library Picture Library Translation Management Library Data Connection Library Report Library Share Document Manually enter Folder	Supported
Multi-File		Supported
Folder		Supported
Individual Folder and the content under the Folder		Supported
Multi-level Folders and the content under the Folders		Supported
Individual disk		UnSupported Supported by End User File Migration
The entire disk and the content under the disk		UnSupported Supported by End User File Migration
The disk and the partial Folders and Files under this disk		Supported
Shared Folder		Supported
Security & Properties	File Properties	Supported
	Folder Security	Supported
	File Security	Supported
File System Data	Extender	Supported
	Connector	

7.2 SharePoint Migration

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

SharePoint migration provides a way for administrators to migrate low level SharePoint data to high level SharePoint.

7.2.1 SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migrator

SharePoint 2003 to 2007 migration provides a way for administrators to migrate SharePoint 2003 data to SharePoint 2007.

You can also use the Migration pre-scan tool to scan the source information and setup some mappings for the migration job. For more information about this tool, please refer to SharePoint 2003 Migration Section.

7.2.1.1 Installation

To make sure the SharePoint 2003 Migration module is installed, follow the steps below on the SharePoint 2007 machine:

(7-17) Installation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab verify that the **SharePoint Migration** option is selected.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will allow the front-end machine to appear on the GUI as a destination agent.

7.2.1.2 Un-installation

To uninstall the SharePoint 2003 Migration module, follow the steps below:

(7-18) Un-installation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Under the *Migration* tab, uncheck the **SharePoint Migration** options.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will remove the Migration tool capabilities from this agent.

7.2.1.3 Basic Settings

In this area, you can set some basic options, and apply these settings in both the Plan mode and Live mode.

There are four tabs in the settings: Database info, Custom Setting, Mapping Setup, and Filter.

Database Info

(7-19) Setting up Database Info

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Settings > Database Info*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name in the field next to the Profile Name.
3	Select a source SharePoint 2003 agent from the drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">4</td><td colspan="2">You can select User Defined or SQL default mode by selecting the corresponding radio button.

***Note:** In WSS 2.0 the name of DataBase server by default is SERVERNAME\SHAREPOINTPORTAL.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>User Defined</td><td>You can enter the SQL information such as Server Name, Instance Name, Username, and Password.

Clicking Load Database, the corresponding content database will be listed in the Database drop-down box, select the appropriate content database of the site you wish to migrate from the drop-down list.

***Note:** The Username and the Password are the database's username and the password.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SQL Default</td><td>You can enter your SQL information here such as Server Name, Instance Name. Many times only entering in the Server name is enough.

Clicking Load Database the corresponding content database will be listed in the Database drop-down box, select the appropriate content database of the site you wish to migrate from the drop-down list.

***Note:** Under this option, the user should have the Administrator Privileges of the database.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save this profile. The profile will appear on the right under corresponding mode name.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".</td></tr>
</table>

Custom Setting

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This setting is optional. If the source contents include SharePoint Lists with customized columns, you must enter the path as follows: *||SP2003 Agent IP|SP2003 installation disk|SP2003 Template* path to enable SharePoint 2007 Agent to find the templates of the customized lists.

(7-20) Setting up Custom Setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Settings > Custom Setting*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name in the field next to the Profile Name.
3	Select the appropriate SharePoint2007 and SharePoint2003 agents from the drop-down boxes provided.
4	Enter the SharePoint 2003 Installation Network Path in the corresponding field according to the example.
5	Enter a username and password.
6	Click **Test** to test the information you input.
7	Click **Save** to save this profile. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Mapping Setup

In this area, it has four kinds of configurations: Common Setting, Permission Configuration, List Level Configuration, and Other Configurations.

To setup these mappings, please follow the steps below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-21) Setting up Mapping Setup

Step	Action	
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Settings > Mapping Setup*.	
2	Click **New** and enter a name in the field next to the Profile Name.	
3	Click *Common Setting* tab, you can set up the common permission setting in this section. This setting is only used for backup migration now.	
	If...	**Then...**

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Site Collection/ Site	There are some options you can setup for site collection/site level. • *Default Site/Site Collection template* : Creates a default parent site for the site you want to migrate. You need to specify a template name for the parent site. For more information about the template name, please refer to The template name/ID for common sites section of this Manual. • *Promote site to site collection* : Promotes the site you want to migrate to Site Collection in the destination. • *Migrate sites under a site* : Supports migrating the site you selected under a site in destination. • *Do not migrate system folder in the root site* : It will not migrate system in the root site. If there are some custom content in the system folder of the root folder, it is recommended to select this option. • *Add the site name to Top Link Bar of the Parent Site when creating a site* : Adds the site name to the Top Link Bar of the Parent Site when creating a site. • *Add the site name to Quick Launch of the Parent Site when creating a site* : Supports to add the site to Quick Launch of the Parent Site when creating a site. • *Inherit Top Link Bar of Parent site when creating a site* : The site will inherit the Top Link Bar of Parent site when migrating. • *Sort Quick Launch* : Sorts the quick launch when migrating.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Site Collection/ Site	• *Overwrite site title and description* : When migrating a site from the source to an existing one in the destination, if you select this option, the title and description of the source site will overwrite those of the destination site; otherwise, it will keep the title and description of the destination site. • *Use Special Setup Path* : For the site page without a setup path, if you select this option, a setup path will be created for the site as you defined when migrating. • *Only Restore Aspx* : If you select this option, only *.aspx files will be restored while the items and attachments in the site will not.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List	There are some options you can setup for list level. • *Overwrite the default view of the List when selecting "overwrite"* : Select this option if you want to overwrite the default view of the list in the destination when you select the *Overwrite* option. If this option is not selected, the destination view will not be overwritten by the source view even if the *Overwrite* option is selected. For example, there is a ListA with the default view named View1 in the source, and there is also a ListA with the default view named View2 in the destination. Use a mapping setup profile with this option selected and select the *Overwrite* option in the job. After the job is finished, the default view is the View1 in the destination. If you do not select this option, the default view is still the View2. ***Note:** Make sure the default view of the target list is no longer used before performing the migration using this option. Otherwise, the default view which has been overwritten may not be accessed after the migration. • *Sort the source list schema field according to the internal name* : It will sort the field by the internal name when migrate the filed date of ListItem. You should use this option if the List Fields in the source have similar long names. By default, the fields will be sorted by list templates.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List	• *Restore list by title* : By default, this option is unchecked. The source list will be migrated to destination list once the list title or the Leafname for the source list is the same as the destination list title. If you select this option, the list can be migrated to the destination list once the list title of the source and the destination are the same, otherwise, it will be created in the destination. • *Add "portal listing" list to the Quick Launch bar* : If you select this option, it will list the portal listing list in the Quick Launch bar. • *Do not migrate the custom view style* : if you select this option, it will not migrate the custom view style to the destination. If you do not select this option and migrate a custom view, the Version History of the customized view may not be listed in the Content Menu after migration. • *Reset the version number* : Reset the version number, and make it start with the specified number. To use this option, you need to set up the Version filter first. For more information on setting up version filter rule, please refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Permission	You should select a permission restore level first. It is used to setup the security restore configuration. You can also setup other option for the permission level. • *Migrate empty user and groups* : If you select this option, it will restore the empty site group, otherwise, it will not restore the site group without any user. • *Migrate the securities of the site and list when selecting Not overwrite* : If you select this option, it will restore the security even if selecting the NotOverwrite option when restoring the site to an existing site or list in the destination. • *Migrate permission exactly* : When you migrate the permission in the source, it will compare the permission of content both in the source and the destination. By default, it will compare the permission, if there is one permission is matched, the content in the source will be migrated to destination directly with the existing permission level. This option will compare the permission. If the content specified in the source and destination is coincident in permission exactly, it will be migrated to the destination directly, otherwise, a new permission level will be created for it. • *Clean the destination permission when migrating* : It will clean the permission which existed in the destination after migration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	

	Permission	• *Create corresponding web group in the destination when restoring site group* : If select this option, it will create a corresponding Web Group and Permission Level in the destination when migrating the Site Group, otherwise, it will only create the Permission Level.
		• *For the Inactive Users* : You can specify the operation for the inactive users by using the option in the drop-down box.
		  • *Keep permission of source site* : It will delete the inactive users after the migration.
		  • *Keep permission of objects whose inheritance are broken* : It will delete the inactive users if the sites you want to migrate break the inheritance.
		  • *Add user permission to the destination site* : It will not delete the inactive users for the migrated sites.

	Alerts	There are some options you can setup for alert level. • *Migrate alert of the list, library, folder, item and document levels* : This option allows you to restore the all Alert in SharePoint 2003. • *Send Email for Alert* : If the List or Item you want to restore has set up an Alert, it will send the email to the receiver when migrating. If uncheck this option, the Alert will be closed during the restore and be open after the restore.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Characters	You can limit the maximum length of the folder/ file name and the SharePoint URL. Check the boxes under the **Characters Length Settings**, then input the maximum length you want to limit for the folder/file name. By default, the maximum length of them is 128, 128 and 255 respectively. If the folder/file name or the SharePoint URL exceeds the byte length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra bytes. The truncated folder/file name or SharePoint URL will be recording the Job Report. ***Note:** The filename length includes the extension.
4	Click **Save**. It will be listed under the Mapping Setup Profiles on the right column. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">There are three options under the Permission Configuration: Domain Mapping, User Mapping, and Permission Mapping Replace Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Domain Mapping</td><td>You can map the Domain from the source to destination by using this setting.
Check the box next to Domain Mapping.
Enter the Source Domain Name and the Destination Domain Name into the corresponding text box.
Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>User Mapping</td><td>When you want to migrate user from SP2003 to SP2007 within different domains, this setting can be used. This allows users to convert from DomainA\user1 to DomainB\user1 or DomainA\user1 to DomainB\user2.
Check the box next to User Mapping.
Enter the destination default username into the text box. If the user does not exist in destination, it can restore the user information to the destination, but does not add this user into the AD of destination.
Enter the Source Username into the text box, the domain and user info is that in SP2003.
Input the destination username into the text box, the domain and user info is to be migrated in SP2007.
Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Permission Mapping Replace Settings	For this setting, the user could change a group name, or set the destination group's Permission Level. 1. Check the box next to Permission Mapping Replace Settings. 2. Enter the Source Group name, Destination Group name into the corresponding text box. 3. Enter a permission name you want to map to SharePoint. 4. Select the SharePoint permission you want to map the group to from the drop-down box. 5. You can also click **New SharePoint Permission** to create a new SharePoint permission for group you want to migrate, and the Permission Level Mapping window will appear. 6. Enter the permission name into the provided field, and enter a description to distinguish the permission. 7. Select the permission you want to assign to the group by checking the corresponding check box. 8. After selecting the permission, click **Save** to save the permission. You can select this new permission from the SharePoint Permission drop-down list. 9. If you want to add the site title in front of the group name in destination, the box next to **Add** site title should be checked.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">6</td><td colspan="2">Under the List Level Configuration setting, you can configure the six settings: List mapping from web to sites overwrites tree settings in the plan for these lists, Field Mapping Replace Settings, List Templates Replace Settings, List View Replace Settings, Quick Launch Bar Settings, and Content Type Replace Mapping.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>List mapping from web to sites overwrites tree settings in the plan for these lists</td><td>For this setting, a list under the source web will be migrated to a different destination site. The destination site must support multi-level paths.
Check the box next to List mapping from web to sites overwrites tree settings in the plan for these lists.
Enter the Source Web into the text box.
Enter the Source List Title into the corresponding box.
Enter the Destination Web Server's relative URL into the Destination Web URL box.
Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Field Mapping Replace Settings	You can map the Field in the List in the source to the specified Field in the destination. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. 1. Check the box next to Field Mapping Replace Settings. Enter the Source Template ID in the text box. 2. Enter the Source's List Title, * can be used to represent all lists. 3. Enter the source column internal name and destination column internal name into the Source Name and Destination Name boxes. Please note this option is optional, you can setup the display name instead of it. 4. Enter the display name of the source column and destination column into the corresponding box. ***Note:** The column type for the source should be the same as the destination's. 5. If you want to map the column to a column with different column type in the destination, you need to select the Ignore Type box. ***Note:** For mapping different type columns, DocAve only supports the following mapping: • Support Single line of text > Multiple lines text • Choice(menu to choose from) > Single line of text • Date and Time > Single line of text 6. If you want to map the value of the column, you should specify the value for the source and destination into the matching box. 7. If you leave the destination display name blank, it will not do any mappings for this source column you specified.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List Templates Replace Settings	This setting allows you change the List Template and Source List Title when migrating the list from source to destination. 1. Check the box next to List Templates Replace Settings. 2. Input the List Template ID you want to migrate in the source in the Source Template box. 3. Input the List Template ID you want to use to build the List in the destination in the Destination Template box. 4. Input the List Title you want to change in the source into the Source List Title box. 5. Input the Title you want to change to in the destination into the Destination List Title box. 6. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List View Replace Settings	You can add the specified column to the view in the destination. Click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. 1. Check the box next to List View Replace Settings. 2. Click the Default Destination View ID, and then you can specify a default destination view ID for global. 3. Enter a destination list title which you want to add/reset column and the list template ID. 4. Enter a view name into the corresponding box. Click the **View Settings** to configure the view. 5. Under *Column Settings* tab, you can select to add an existing column or reset the view of the column by clicking the corresponding radio box. 6. Select the Add to existing columns, and then input the column name you want to add into the list view after the migration and its order, it will add the columns you specified into the view. 7. Select the Reset view with the following columns, and then enter the column name you want to view for the list and its order, it will only display the columns you specified in the view. 8. Under the *Sort* tab, you can configure the column sort for the view. 9. Click **OK** to save this column, and click **Cancel** to clear the configuration. 10. The customized view in the source has a unique view ID, it may not exist in the destination. In this condition, you can use the view ID mapping to map these customized view.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Quick Launch Bar Settings	This section sets whether to display Lists on the Quick Launch Bar. 1. Check the box next to Quick Launch Bar Settings. 2. Input the Site Name which you want to setup in the corresponding box. 3. Enter the List Title and select the Action to add or remove the Quick Launch Bar. 4. Click the icon to add a new setting and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Content Type Replace Mapping	This option allows you to map a specific content type in destination for the migrated content. 1. You can specify a default content type and check the check box for the destination. There is no content type found in destination, it will use the default content type to do the mapping, otherwise, it will use the system default content type. 2. There are four methods to map the content type. • *Source List Template ID* : Enter a source list template ID and the destination content type, the content type of the content under the specific list will be mapped as the specified content type in the destination. • *Source List Title* : Enter a source list title and the destination content type, the content type of the content with the specific title will be mapped as the specified content type in the destination. • *Source Folder Path* : Enter a source path and the destination content type, the content type of the content under the specific folder will be mapped as the specified content type in the destination. • *Source Column Name and Value* : You can map the column type according to the source column name and the value. The content type of the content with the specific column name and value will be mapped as the specified content type in the destination. ***Note:** The column with the type of Multiple lines of text, Date and Time, Yes/No, or Calculated Column cannot be mapped by this mapping rule.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">7</td><td colspan="2">Under the Other Configurations setting, you can configure six settings: Form Template Mapping Replace Settings, Redundant Web Parts Settings, Managed Path Mapping Replace Settings, Site Template Replace Settings, URL Mapping Settings, and Site Leaf Name Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Form Template Mapping Replace Settings</td><td>This configuration is used to map the source form template URL to the destination.
1. Check the box next to Form Template Mapping Replace Setting.
2. Enter a destination library title in the text box.
3. Input the form template URL in source library (absolute URL) into the Template Source Path.
4. Input the form template URL in destination library(absolute URL) into the Template Destination Path.
5. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Redundant Web Parts Settings</td><td>This configuration will filter out redundant web pages and web parts.
1. Check the box next to Redundant Web Parts Settings.
2. Specify the source webpart page which will be filter out.
3. Click the icon to set other options.
4. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Managed Path Mapping Replace Settings	This setting is used to map the managed path to the destination. 1. Check the box next to Managed Path Mapping Replace Settings. 2. Input the source managed path into the source box (i.e.http://sharepoint03/sites/site01/default.aspx). 3. Enter the destination URL into the corresponding box (i.e.http://sharepoint07/avepoint/site01/default.aspx). 4. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it. ***Note:** The managed path must already exist in the source. The site cannot be created during the migration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Site Template Replace Settings	This setting allows you map the template from the source to destination. It supports three methods to setup the mapping. 1. Check the box next to Site Template Replace Settings. 2. You can specify a template for the Site you want to migrate to the specific ManagePath. Enter a template and manage path into the corresponding box. • *Template* : The template name of default template for the Site Collection (e.g. STS#0). Please refer to Section The template name/ID for common sites for more information. • *Manage Path* : The manager path for the Site Collection. You can set it in *Central Administration* > *Application Management* > *Define Managed Path*s. 3. You can also map the template by template name using the Source Template and the Destination Template boxes. • *Source Template* : The template name of Site Template in the source (e.g. STS#0) • *Destination Template* : The template name of the Site Template in the destination (e.g.MPS#0). 4. Source Template ID and Destination Template ID boxes are used for another way to map the template. • *Source Template ID* : The corresponding ID of the Template type in the source. • *Destination Template ID* : The corresponding ID of the Template type in the destination. 5. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	URL Mapping Setting	This will replace the source virtual server's URL according to the managed path. 1. Check the URL Mapping Setting box. 2. Input the source managed path into the Condition box. 3. Input a URL into the Result column, this URL will replace the source virtual server URL. 4. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.
	Site Leaf Name Settings	This setting allows you to map the site leaf from the source to the destination. 1. Check the box next to the Site Leaf Name Settings. 2. Enter the source leaf name and destination leaf name in the corresponding texts. 3. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">8</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as a xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

For download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

For upload the xml configuration file, the user has different selections depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Setting interface.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn’t to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.

*Note: For the Common Setup, only the Default Site/ Site Collection template supports the Merge feature.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Click Save. After saving successfully, the profile will list under the Mapping Setup Profile column on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with “(1)”.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Filter

The filter allows you to limit content based on modified / created dates.

(7-22) Setting up a Filter Rule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint 2003 to 2007* > *Settings*.
2	Select the *Filter* tab.
3	Click **New**, and then input a new filter name.
4	Within the *Time Range* tab, there are two rules: Created Time and Modified Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.
5	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.
6	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From… To…* : Specify a interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select Before or After from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select a interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.
7	Under the Version Filter, there are two options: No version filter and Migrate the most recent... versions. • *No version filter* : It will migrate all the versions to destination. • *Migrate the most recent… version* : Specify an integer into the box, it will migrate the recent versions to destination.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.
9	Click **Save** to save this filter. A list of saved filters will appear on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

7.2.1.4 Live Mode

The Live Mode Migration process enables a seamless, real-time transfer of data from SharePoint 2003 to SharePoint 2007.

There are two methods to migrate: Import from Staging and Migrate from SharePoint 2003 directly.

Import from Staging

To import from the Staging, please follow the steps below:

(7-23) Importing from Staging

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Live Mode*.
2	Select the Import from staging radio box.
3	Select a Logical Device from the drop-down box. ***Note:** For more information about setting up a logical device, please refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select a mapping profile from the Mapping Setup drop-down box. If you do not set it, it will select the default mapping automatically. ***Note:** You can click the Mapping Setup's name to go to the setting interface. For more information about setting up a Mapping, please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual.
5	Select the Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the corresponding check box.
6	Select *Include Job(s) with partial export data* checkbox if you want to migrate the available data in failed backup jobs.
7	Select a Job ID from the drop-down box. ***Note:** Before you import content, you need to run an export job in the Plan Mode module. The Job ID is the export job's ID.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">8</td><td colspan="2">Select a migration option by clicking the corresponding radio button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Select the Include detailed job report for all items in this plan option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Select a SharePoint agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Expand the data tree to the level you wish to select as the destination. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
12	Click on the source content name. Drag and drop it to the destination location. ***Note:** Please make sure the level the source content is lower than the destination.
13	It will generate an ID for this job; you can view this in the Queue window at the bottom of the GUI.
14	Click the button to start the job and click the button to delete the job. And you can click **Start All** to start all jobs one by one.

Live Mode

To run Migration from SharePoint 2003 directly, please follow the steps below:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-24) Migrating Content in Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Live Mode*.
2	Select the radio box next to *Agent.*
3	Select your source SharePoint 2003 agent from the drop-down list marked Agent.
4	Select a Profile you created in the Mapping Setup Settings from the Mapping Setup drop-down list. Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual for instructions on this process.
5	Select the Filter and Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the corresponding check box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Select Not Overwrite, Overwrite or Append as the Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Select the Include detailed job report for all items in this plan option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Select the Exclude empty lists or libraries option, if you do not want to migrate the lists or document library without items or documents.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Click on the + icon in front of the Database name to expand the tree to the content you wish to select.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Select a SharePoint agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Expand the data tree to the level you wish to select as the destination. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
12	Click on the source content name. Drag it to the destination location. ***Note:** Please make sure the level the source content is lower than the destination.
13	It will generate an ID for this job; you can view this in the Queue window at the bottom of the GUI.
14	Click the button to start the job and click the button to delete the job. And you can click **Start All** to start all jobs one by one.

7.2.1.5 Plan Mode

There are three modes to do a migration from SharePoint 2003 to 2007: Standard, Advanced, and Database Migration.

Advanced Mode

There are two methods to do the migration from SharePoint 2003 to 2007: Live migration and backup migration. During Live migration, you can do the migration from SharePoint 2003 Agent to SharePoint 2007 Agent directly. Using backup migration, you can export SharePoint 2003

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

backup data to a staging location, and then import it from staging into the SharePoint 2007 environment.

Live Migration

To run a backup migration, follow the steps below:

(7-25) Migrating Content by Live Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint Migration* > *SharePoint 2003 to 2007* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select Advanced from the drop-down box next to Mode.
3	Click **New** and input a name in the field next to the Plan Name.
4	Select a Filter, Mapping Setup, and a Filter Policy from the corresponding drop-down box.
5	Select the *Exclude empty lists or libraries* option, if you do not want to migrate the lists or document library without items or documents.
6	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can select an email notification rule. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for this instructions on this process.
7	Under the *Schedule* tab, you can set two schedules for a plan. Uncheck No Schedule to enable it.
8	Specify a start time by click the calendar icon. And select a migration option. You can set an interval for each schedule. The choices are: Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, and Month.Input a positive integer in the field.
9	Select the *Include detailed job report for all items in this plan* option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">10</td><td colspan="2">You can select a Migration Type for the migration job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all content from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from SharePoint 2003 to SharePoint 2007, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in SharePoint 2003 appear as duplicate items in SharePoint 2007. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies only the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">11</td><td colspan="2">Select Not Overwrite, Overwrite or Append as the Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select an agent from the drop-down list on the left as the source agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">The 2003 information should load up. Select the Items, Site Collections, Sites, etc. You would like to migrate over to 2007 by clicking on the check box next to the item. You can also open up the file browser using the icon, and check off the appropriate items from there.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
15	Once you have selected what you would like to migrate, select a SharePoint 2007 agent from the Agent down menu on the right. The structure should appear beneath it.
16	Select your destination location by clicking on the radio button. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
17	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed in the Plan Viewer under the corresponding farm name. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
18	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

Backup Migration

To perform a backup migration, it needs two processes. First, you should back up SharePoint 2003 to the staging. Then, restore the backup data to SharePoint 2007.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-26) Backup from SharePoint 2003

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Plan Builder*.
2	Select Advanced from the drop-down box next to Mode.
3	Check the radio button next to Export to staging.
4	Under the *Data Manager* tab, select a Logical Device from the drop-down box. Please refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual for instructions on this process. It is a mandatory option.
5	Select a filter and a filter policy from the corresponding drop-down box.
6	Select the *Exclude empty lists or libraries* option, if you do not want to migrate the lists or document library without items or documents.
7	Under the *Data Configuration* tab, you can specify whether the encryption and compression will be carried out when backing up the data.
8	Under *Reporting* tab, select an Email Notification from the drop-down box. You can refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
9	Under *Schedule* tab, you can define a start time, by default Now is selected.
10	Select an agent from the drop-down box on the left of the screen. Then expand the tree to the content you wish to backup. Select the corresponding nodes.
11	Click **Go** to run this job immediately or wait for the appropriate schedule.The specified data in the SharePoint 2003 will be backed up to the logical device.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** After backing up the data to the local, you can restore the data to SharePoint 2007.

(7-27) Restore to SharePoint 2007

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint Migration* > *Share-Point 2003 to 2007* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select Advanced from the drop-down box next to Mode.
3	Check the radio button next to Import from staging.
4	You can view two tabs above it, *Migration Settings*, and *Schedule*.
5	Under *Migration Settings* tab, you should select a logical device from the drop-down box. For more information, you can refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual.
6	You can select a mapping setup from the drop down box.The mapping Profile has been set up in Mapping Setup under the setting section. Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual for instructions on this process.
7	Select the Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the corre-sponding check box.
8	Under the *Schedule* tab, Select the radio button next to now or specify a start time by clicking the calendar icon.
9	Select *Include Job(s) with partial export data* checkbox if you want to migrate the available data in failed backup jobs.
10	Select a Job ID from the drop-down box under Import from Staging as the source. ***Note:** For import Item-level incremental backup data in SharePoint 2003, it will be supported in the future version of DocAve.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Select an agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen. Expand the tree to the location you wish to. Select the corresponding node. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
12	You can select the language mapping in the corresponding drop-down box. You can refer to Section Language Mapping of this Manual for instructions on this process.
13	Click **Go** to run this job immediately or wait for the appropriate schedule.

***Note:** To migrate Alert successfully, you must configure Web Application Outgoing E-Mail Settings for the Alert in your Central Administration of SharePoint 2007.

Standard Mode

To perform a standard mode migration please follow the steps below.

(7-28) Standard Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Plan Builder*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select Standard from the drop-down box next to Mode.
3	Click **New** and input a name in the field next to the Plan Name.
4	Select the logical device to save the backup data from the drop-down box. Please note this is a mandatory option.
5	Select a Mapping Setup, Filter, and a Filter Policy from the corresponding drop-down box.
6	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can select an email notification rule. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for this instructions on this process.
7	Under the *Schedule* tab, you can set two schedules for a plan. Uncheck No Schedule to enable it.
8	Specify a start time by click the calendar icon. And select a migration option. You can set an interval for each schedule. The choices are: Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, and Month.Input a positive integer in the field.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">9</td><td colspan="2">You can select a Migrate Type for the migration job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all content from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from SharePoint 2003 to SharePoint 2007, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in SharePoint 2003 appear as duplicate items in SharePoint 2007. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies only the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">Select Not Overwrite, Overwrite or Append as the Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">Select Include detailed job report for all items in this plan option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select an agent from the drop-down list on the left as the source agent.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	The 2003 information should load up. Select the Items, Site Collections, Sites, etc. you would like to migrate over to 2007 by clicking on the check box next to the item. You can also open up the file browser using the icon, and check off the appropriate items from there.
15	Once you have selected what you would like to migrate, select a SharePoint 2007 agent from the Agent down menu on the right. The structure should appear beneath it.
16	Select your destination location by clicking on the radio button. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
17	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed in the Plan Viewer under the corresponding farm name. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
18	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Many To Many Migration

You can also run a many to many migration by using DocAve SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migration.

(7-29) Many to Many Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint* > *SharePoint 2003 to 2007* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select **Standard** from the drop-down list next to Mode.
3	Click **New** and input a name in the field next to the Plan Name.
4	Select the logical device to save the backup data from the drop-down box. Please note this is a mandatory option.
5	Select a Mapping Setup, Filter, and a Filter Policy from the corresponding drop-down box.
6	Select the *Import Migration Mapping* option, and then click **Download XSD** to download the mapping profile.
7	Open a new excel file, and open the Excel Option window to select the *Show Developer* tab in the Ribbon option.
8	Select the Source feature within the *Developer* tab, and the XML Source window will be listed on the right.
9	Click **XML Maps...** to load the mapping profile you download. The mapping list will list in the right column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Drag the concurrentNumber, sourceAgent, and destinationAgent to excel cell, and enter the appropriate content into the corresponding cell. • *concurrentNumber* : You need to enter a number into the corresponding cell, it is represent how many migration job can be run at the same time. • *sourceAgent* : Enter the source agent host full name or the IP address into the corresponding cell, it needs to be uniform with the content you setup in Agent Configuration Tool. • *destinationAgent* : Enter the destination agent host full name or the IP address into the corresponding cell, it needs to be uniform with the content you setup in Agent Configuration Tool. ***Note:** You can only specify one source and one destination agent.
11	Drag the content under the source from the right column. You need to specify the source content you want to migrate one by one. ***Note:** You need to enter the full URL for the Web Application and the Site Collection level, and if there are server level for the site or the folder, you can separate them by /.
12	Drag the content under the destination from the right column. You need to specify the destination you want to migrate to one by one. ***Note:** You need to enter the full URL for the Web Application and the Site Collection level, and if there are server level for the site or the folder, you can separate them by /. ***Note:** The destination level need be higher than the source level, or the same as the source level.
13	Click **Save** to save the configurations in the excel file.
14	Click **Upload** to upload the mapping profile.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
15	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can select an email notification rule. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for this instructions on this process.
16	Click **Run Now** to run the plan immediately. Select a Migration option a Migration type, Include detailed job report for all items in this plan option, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

Database Migration Mode

To perform a Database Migration mode migration please follow the steps below.

(7-30) Database Migration Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Plan Builder*.
2	Select Database Migration from the drop-down box next to Mode.
3	Click **New** and input a name in the field next to the Plan Name.
4	Select a Mapping Setup, and a Filter from the corresponding drop-down box.
5	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can select an email notification rule. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for this instructions on this process.
6	Under the *Schedule* tab, you can set two schedules for a plan. Uncheck No Schedule to enable it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Specify a start time by click the calendar icon. And select a migration option. You can set an interval for each schedule. The choices are: Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, and Month.Input a positive integer in the field.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">8</td><td colspan="2">You can select a Migration Type for the migration job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all content from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from SharePoint 2003 to SharePoint 2007, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in SharePoint 2003 appear as duplicate items in SharePoint 2007. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies only the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">9</td><td colspan="2">Select Not Overwrite, Overwrite or Append as the Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">Select an agent from the drop-down list on the left as the source agent, and select a database profile from the drop-down list.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">The 2003 information should load up. Select the Items, Site Collections, Sites, etc. you would like to migrate over to 2007 by clicking on the check box next to the item. You can also open up the file browser using the icon, and check off the appropriate items from there.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Once you have selected what you would like to migrate, select a SharePoint 2007 agent from the Agent down menu on the right. The structure should appear beneath it.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	You can select the language mapping and custom setting from the corresponding drop-down boxes. Please refer to the Section Language Mapping and Custom Setting of this Manual for instructions on the processes.
15	Select your destination location by clicking on the radio button. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
16	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed in the Plan Viewer under the corresponding farm name. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
17	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

7.2.1.6 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 2003 to 2007

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-31) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 03 to 07

Source	Type	Status
Libraries	Document Library	Supported
	Form Library	Supported
	Picture Library	Supported
Communications List	Announcements	Supported
	Contacts	Supported
	Discussion Board	Supported
Tracking Lists	Links	Supported
	Calendar	Supported
	Tasks	Supported
	Issue Tracking	Supported
	Survey	Supported
Custom Lists	Custom List	Supported
	Custom List in Datasheet View	Supported
	Import Spreadsheet	Supported
Web Pages	Basic Page	Supported
	Web part Page	Supported
	Sites and Workspaces	Supported
Alerts		Supported
My Alerts	My Alerts in SharePoint 2003 Personal Site	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status
Metadata	Single line of text	Supported
	Multiple lines of text	Supported
	Choice (menu to choose from)	Supported
	Number	Supported
	Currency	Supported
	Date and Time	Supported
	Look up	Supported
	Yes/No	Supported
	Person or Group	Supported
	Hyperlink or Picture	Supported
	Calculated	Supported
Security & Properties	Version settings	Supported
	Column Settings	Supported
	Permissions	Supported
Version Histories	Documents	Supported
	Lists	Supported
Site template	Team site	Supported
	Blank site	Supported
	Document workspace	Supported
	Basic meeting workspace	Supported
	Blank meeting workspace	Supported
	Decision Meeting workspace	Supported
	Social Meeting workspace	Supported
	Multipage Meeting workspace	Supported
	Personal site	Supported
	Area (03side)	Supported
Portal listing		Supported
My Profile		Supported
Archiver	All archived stubs (2003 side)	Supported

7.2.2 SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migrator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

SharePoint 2003 to 2010 migration provides a way for administrators to migrate SharePoint 2003 data to SharePoint 2010.

7.2.2.1 Installation

To make sure the SharePoint 2003 Migration module is installed, follow the steps below on the SharePoint 2010 machine:

(7-32) Installation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab verify that the **SharePoint Migration** option is selected.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will allow the front-end machine to appear on the GUI as a destination agent.

7.2.2.2 Un-installation

To uninstall the SharePoint 2003 Migration module, follow the steps below:

(7-33) Un-installation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab, uncheck the **SharePoint Migration** options.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will remove the Migration tool capabilities from this agent.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.2.2.3 Basic Settings

In this area, you can set some basic options, and apply these settings in both the Plan mode and Live mode.

There are two tabs in the settings: *Mapping Setup* and *Filter*.

Mapping Setup

In this area, it has four kinds of configurations: Common Setting, Permission Configuration, List Level Configuration, and Other Configurations.

To setup these mappings, please follow the steps below:

(7-34) Mapping Setup

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > Share-Point 2003 to 2010 > Settings > Mapping Setup.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click New and enter a name in the field next to the Profile Name.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3</td><td colspan="2">Click Common Setting tab; you can set up the common setting in this section.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Site Collection/ Site	There are some options you can setup for site collection/site level. • *Default Site/Site Collection template* : Creates a default parent site for the site you want to migrate. You need to specify a template name for the parent site. For more information about the template name, please refer to The template name/ID for common sites section of this Manual. • *Promote site to site collection* : Promotes the site you want to migrate to Site Collection in the destination. • *Migrate sites under a site* : Supports migrating the site you selected under a site in destination. • *Do not migrate system folder in the root site* : It will not migrate system folder in the root site. If there are some custom content in the system folder of the root site, it is not recommended to select this option. • *Add the site name to Top Link Bar of the Parent Site when creating a site* : Adds the site name to the Top Link Bar of the Parent Site when creating a site. • *Add the site name to Quick Launch of the Parent Site when creating a site* : Supports to add the site to Quick Launch of the Parent Site when creating a site. • *Inherit Top Link Bar of Parent site when creating a site* : The site will inherit the Top Link Bar of Parent site when migrating. • *Sort Quick Launch* : Sorts the quick launch when migrating.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Site Collection/ Site	• *Overwrite site title and description* : When migrating a site from the source to an existing one in the destination, if you select this option, the title and description of the source site will overwrite those of the destination site; otherwise, it will keep the title and description of the destination site. • *Use Special Setup Path* : For the site without a setup path, if you select this option, a setup path will be created for the site as you defined when migrating. • *Only Restore Aspx* : If you select this option, only *.aspx files will be restored while the items and attachments in the site will not.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List	There are some options you can setup for list level. • *Overwrite the default view of the List when selecting "overwrite"* : Select this option if you want to overwrite the default view of the list in the destination when you select the *Overwrite* option. If this option is not selected, the destination view will not be overwritten by the source view even if the *Overwrite* option is selected. For example, there is a ListA with the default view named View1 in the source, and there is also a ListA with the default view named View2 in the destination. Use a mapping setup profile with this option selected and select the *Overwrite* option in the job. After the job is finished, the default view is the View1 in the destination. If you do not select this option, the default view is still the View2. ***Note:** Make sure the default view of the target list is no longer used before performing the migration using this option. Otherwise, the default view which has been overwritten may not be accessed after the migration. • *Sort the source list schema field according to the internal name* : It will sort the field by the internal name when migrate the filed date of ListItem. You should use this option if the List Fields in the source have similar long names. By default, the fields will be sorted by list templates.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List	• *Restore list by title* : By default, this option is unchecked. The source list will be migrated to destination list once the list title or the Leafname for the source list is the same as the destination list title. If you select this option, the list can be migrated to the destination list once the list title of the source and the destination are the same, otherwise, it will be created in the destination. • *Add "portal listing" list to the Quick Launch bar* : If you select this option, it will list the portal listing list in the Quick Launch bar. • *Do not migrate the custom view style* : if you select this option, it will not migrate the custom view style to the destination. If you do not select this option and migrate a custom view, the Version History of the customized view may not be listed in the Content Menu after migration. • *Reset the version number* : Reset the version number, and make it start with the specified number. To use this option, you need to set up the Version filter first. For more information on setting up version filter rule, please refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Permission	You should select a permission restore level first. It is used to setup the security restore configuration. You can also setup other option for the permission level. • *Migrate empty user and groups* : If you select this option, it will restore the empty site group, otherwise, it will not restore the site group without any user. • *Migrate the securities of the site and list when selecting "Not overwrite"* : If you select this option, it will restore the security even if selecting the Not-Overwrite option when restoring the site to an existing site or list in the destination. • *Migrate permission exactly* : When you migrate the permission in the source, it will compare the permission of content both in the source and the destination. By default, it will compare the permission, if there is one permission is matched, the content in the source will be migrated to destination directly with the existing permission level. This option will compare the permission. If the content specified in the source and destination is coincident in permission exactly, it will be migrated to the destination directly, otherwise, a new permission level will be created for it. • *Clean the destination permission when migrating* : It will clean the permission which existed in the destination after migration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Permission	• *Create corresponding web group in the destination when restoring site group* : If select this option, it will create a corresponding Web Group and Permission Level in the destination when migrating the Site Group, otherwise, it will only create the Permission Level. • *For the Inactive Users* : You can specify the operation for the inactive users by using the option in the drop-down box. • *Keep permissions of source site* : It will delete the inactive users after the migration. • *Keep permissions of objects whose inheritance are broken* : It will delete the inactive users if the sites you want to migrate break the inheritance. • *Add user permissions to the destination site* : It will not delete the inactive users for the migrated sites.
	Alerts	There are some options you can setup for alert level. • *Migrate alert of the list, library, folder, item and document levels* : This option allows you to restore the all Alert in SharePoint 2003. • *Send Email for Alert* : If the List or Item you want to restore has set up an Alert, it will send the email to the receiver when migrating. If uncheck this option, the Alert will be closed during the restore and be open after the restore.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Characters	You can limit the maximum length of the folder/ file name and the SharePoint URL. Check the boxes under the **Characters Length Settings**, then input the maximum length you want to limit for the folder/file name. By default, the maximum length of them is 128, 128 and 255 respectively. If the folder/file name or the SharePoint URL exceed the byte length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra bytes. The truncated folder/file name or SharePoint URL will be recording the Job Report. ***Note:** The filename length includes the extension.
4	Click **Save**. It will be listed under the Mapping Setup Profiles on the right column. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">There are three options under the Permission Configuration: Domain Mapping, User Mapping, and Permission Mapping Replace Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Domain Mapping</td><td>You can map the Domain from the source to destination by using this setting.
1. Check the box next to Domain Mapping.
2. Enter the Source Domain Name and the Destination Domain Name into the corresponding text box.
3. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>User Mapping</td><td>When you want to migrate user from SP2003 to SP2010 within different domains, this setting can be used. This allows users to convert from DomainA\user1 to DomainB\user1 or DomainA\user1 to DomainB\user2.
1. Check the box next to User Mapping.
2. Enter the destination default username into the text box. If the user does not exist in destination, it can restore the user information to the destination, but does not add this user into the AD of destination.
3. Enter the Source Username into the text box, the domain and user info is that in SP2003.
4. Input the destination username into the text box, the domain and user info is to be migrated in SP2010.
5. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.
*Note: To ensure the User Mapping effectively, you must select the site collection node or click the icon next to the site collection node to select the #SiteUserInfo file because the user information is saved in the site collection node.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Permission Mapping Replace Settings	For this setting, the user could change a group name, or set the destination group's Permission Level. 1. Check the box next to Permission Mapping Replace Settings. 2. Enter the Source Group name, Destination Group name into the corresponding text box. 3. Enter a permission name you want to map to SharePoint. 4. Select the SharePoint permission you want to map the group to from the drop-down box. 5. You can also click **New SharePoint Permission** to create a new SharePoint permission for group you want to migrate, and the Permission Level Mapping window will appear. 6. Enter the permission name into the provided field, and enter a description to distinguish the permission. 7. Select the permission you want to assign to the group by checking the corresponding check box. 8. After selecting the permission, click **Save** to save the permission. You can select this new permission from the SharePoint Permission drop-down list. 9. If you want to add the site title in front of the group name in destination, the box next to Add site title should be checked.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">6</td><td colspan="2">Under the List Level Configuration setting, you can configure the six settings: List mapping from web to sites overwrites tree settings in the plan for these lists, Field Mapping Replace Settings, List Templates Replace Settings, List View Replace Settings, Quick Launch Bar Settings, and Content Type Replace Mapping.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>List mapping from web to sites overwrites tree settings in the plan for these lists</td><td>For this setting, a list under the source web will be migrated to a different destination site. The destination site must support multi-level paths.
Check the box next to List mapping from web to sites overwrites tree settings in the plan for these lists.
Enter the Source Web into the text box.
Enter the Source List Title into the corresponding box.
Enter the Destination Web Server’s relative URL into the Destination Web URL box.
Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Field Mapping Replace Settings	You can map the Field in the List in the source to the specified Field in the destination. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. 1. Check the box next to Field Mapping Replace Settings. 2. Enter the Source Template ID in the text box. Enter the Source's List Title, * can be used to represent all lists. 3. Enter the source column internal name and destination column internal name into the Source Name and Destination Name boxes. Please note this option is optional, you can setup the display name instead of it. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it 4. Enter the display name of the source column and destination column into the corresponding box. Select Column Type from the drop-down list and the default one is Same Type. ***Note:** If you select the Managed Metadata Column Type from the drop-down box, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration. ***Note:** This option is optional, you should select at least one between Name and Display name. 5. If you want to map the value of the column, you should specify the value for the source and destination into the matching box. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List Templates Replace Settings	This setting allows you change the List Template and Source List Title when migrating the list from source to destination. 1. Check the box next to List Templates Replace Settings. 2. Input the List Template ID you want to migrate in the source in the Source Template box. 3. Input the List Template ID you want to use to build the List in the destination in the Destination Template box. 4. Input the List Title you want to change in the source into the Source List Title box. 5. Input the Title you want to change to in the destination into the Destination List Title box. 6. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List View Replace Settings	You can add the specified column to the view in the destination. Click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. 1. Check the box next to List View Replace Settings. 2. Click the **Default Destination View ID,** and then you can specify a default destination view ID for global. 3. Enter a destination list title which you want to add/reset column and the list template ID. 4. Enter a view name into the corresponding box. 5. Click the **View Settings** to configure the view. 6. Under *Column Settings* tab, you can select to add an existing column or reset the view of the column by clicking the corresponding radio box. 7. Select the Add to existing columns, and then input the column name you want to add into the list view after the migration and its order, it will add the columns you specified into the view. 8. Select the Reset view with the following columns, and then enter the column name you want to view for the list and its order, it will only display the columns you specified in the view. 9. Under the *Sort* tab, you can configure the column sort for the view. 10. Click **OK** to save this column, and click **Cancel** to clear the configuration. 11. The customized view in the source has a unique view ID, it may not exist in the destination. In this condition, you can use the view ID mapping to map these customized view.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Quick Launch Bar Settings	This section sets whether to display Lists on the Quick Launch Bar. 1. Check the box next to Quick Launch Bar Settings. 2. Input the Site Name which you want to setup in the corresponding box. 3. Enter the List Title and select the Action to add or remove the Quick Launch Bar. 4. Click the icon to add a new setting and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Content Type Replace Mapping	This option allows you to map a specific content type in destination for the migrated content. 1. You can specify a default content type and check the check box for the destination. there is no content type found in destination, it will use the default content type to do the mapping, otherwise, it will use the system default content type. 2. There are four methods to map the content type. • *Source List Template ID* : Enter a source list template ID and the destination content type, the content type of the content under the specific list will be mapped as the specified content type in the destination. • *Source List Title* : Enter a source list title and the destination content type, the content type of the content with the specific title will be mapped as the specified content type in the destination. • *Source Folder Path* : Enter a source path and the destination content type, the content type of the content under the specific folder will be mapped as the specified content type in the destination. • *Source Column Name and Value* : You can map the column type according to the source column name and the value. The content type of the content with the specific column name and value will be mapped as the specified content type in the destination. ***Note:** The column with the type of Multiple lines of text, Date and Time, Yes/No, or Calculated Column cannot be mapped by this mapping rule.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">7</td><td colspan="2">Under the Other Configurations setting, you can configure six settings: Form Template Mapping Replace Settings, Redundant Web Parts Settings, Managed Path Mapping Replace Settings, Site Template Replace Settings, URL Mapping Settings, and Site Leaf Name Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Form Template Mapping Replace Settings</td><td>This configuration is used to map the source form template URL to the destination.
1. Check the box next to Form Template Mapping Replace Setting.
2. Enter a destination library title in the text box.
3. Input the form template URL in source library (absolute URL) into the Template Source Path.
4. Input the form template URL in destination library(absolute URL) into the Template Destination Path.
5. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Redundant Web Parts Settings</td><td>This configuration will filter out redundant web pages and web parts.
1. Check the box next to Redundant Web Parts Settings.
2. Specify the source webpart page which will be filter out.
3. Click the icon to set other options.
4. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Managed Path Mapping Replace Settings	This setting is used to map the managed path to the destination. 1. Check the box next to Managed Path Mapping Replace Settings. 2. Input the source managed path into the source box (i.e.http://sharepoint03/sites/site01/default.aspx). 3. Enter the destination URL into the corresponding box (i.e.http://sharepoint10/avepoint/site01/default.aspx). 4. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it. ***Note:** The managed path must already exist in the destination. If not, the site cannot be created during the migration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Site Template Replace Settings	This setting allows you map the template from the source to destination. It supports three methods to setup the mapping. 1. Check the box next to Site Template Replace Settings. 2. You can specify a template for the Site you want to migrate to the specific ManagePath. Enter a template and manage path into the corresponding box. • *Template* : The template name of default template for the Site Collection (e.g. STS#0). Please refer to Section The template name/ID for common sites for more information. • *Manage Path* : The manager path for the Site Collection. You can set it in *Central Administration > Application Management > Define Managed Paths*. 3. You can also map the template by template name using the Source Template and the Destination Template boxes. • *Source Template* : The template name of Site Template in the source (e.g. STS#0) • *Destination Template* : The template name of the Site Template in the destination (e.g.MPS#0). 4. Source Template ID and Destination Template ID boxes are used for another way to map the template. • *Source Template ID* : The corresponding ID of the Template type in the source. • *Destination Template ID* : The corresponding ID of the Template type in the destination. 5. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	URL Mapping Setting	This will replace the source virtual server's URL according to the managed path. 1. Check the URL Mapping Setting box. 2. Input the source managed path into the Condition box. 3. Input a URL into the Result column, this URL will replace the source virtual server URL. 4. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.
	Site Leaf Name Settings	This setting allows you to map the site leaf from the source to the destination. 1. Check the box next to the Site Leaf Name Settings. 2. Enter the source leaf name and destination leaf name in the corresponding texts. 3. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">8</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as a xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

For download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

For upload the xml configuration file, the user have different selection depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Setting interface.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn’t to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.

*Note: For the Common Setup, only the Default Site/ Site Collection template supports the Merge feature.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Click Save. After saving successfully, the profile will list under the Mapping Setup Profile column on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with “(1)”.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Filter

The filter allows you to limit content based on modified / created dates.

(7-35) Filter

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint Migration* > *SharePoint 2003 to 2010* > *Settings*.
2	Select the *Filter* tab.
3	Click **New**, and then input a new filter name.
4	Within the *Time Range* tab, there are two rules: Created Time and Modified Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.
5	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.
6	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From… To…* : Specify a interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select Before or After from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select a interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.
7	Under the Version Filter, there are two options: No version filter and Migrate the most recent... versions. • *No version filter* : It will migrate all the versions to destination. • *Migrate the most recent… version* : Specify an integer into the box, it will migrate the recent versions to destination.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.
9	Click **Save** to save this filter. A list of saved filters will appear on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

7.2.2.4 Live Mode

The Live Mode Migration process enables a seamless, real-time transfer of data from SharePoint 2003 to SharePoint 2010.

There are two methods to migrate: Import from Staging and Migrate from SharePoint 2003 directly.

Import from Staging

To import from the Staging, please follow the steps below:

(7-36) Import from Staging

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > Share-Point 2003 to 2010 > Live Mode*.
2	Select the Import from staging radio box.
3	Select a Logical Device from the drop-down box. ***Note:** For more information about setting up a logical device, please refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select a mapping profile from the Mapping Setup drop-down box. If you do not set it, it will select the default mapping automatically. ***Note:** You can click the Mapping Setup's name to go to the setting interface. For more information about setting up a Mapping, please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual.
5	Select the Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the corresponding check box.
6	Select *Include Job(s) with partial export data* checkbox, if you want to migrate the available data in failed backup jobs.
7	Select a Job ID from the drop-down box. ***Note:** Before you import content, you need to run an export job in the Plan Mode module. The Job ID is the export job's ID.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">8</td><td colspan="2">Select a migration option by clicking the corresponding radio button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Select the Include detailed job report for all items in this plan option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Select a SharePoint agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Expand the data tree to the level you wish to select as the destination. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
12	Click on the source content name. Drag and drop it to the destination location. ***Note:** Please make sure the level the source content is lower than the destination.
13	It will generate an ID for this job; you can view this in the Queue window at the bottom of the GUI.
14	Click the button to start the job and click the button to delete the job. And you can click **Start All** to start all jobs one by one.

Live Mode

To run Migration from SharePoint 2003 directly, please follow the steps below:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-37) Migrating Content by Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2010 > Live Mode*.
2	Select the radio box next to *Agent*.
3	Select your source SharePoint2003 agent from the drop-down list marked Agent.
4	Select a Profile you created in the Mapping Setup Settings from the Mapping Setup drop-down list. Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual for instructions on this process.
5	Select the Filter and Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the corresponding check box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Select Not Overwrite, Overwrite or Append as the Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Select the Include detailed job report for all items in this plan option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Select the Exclude empty lists or libraries option, if you do not want to migrate the lists or document libraries without items or documents.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Click on the + icon in front of the Database name to expand the tree to the content you wish to select.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Select a SharePoint agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	You can select the language mapping in the corresponding drop-down box. You can refer to Section Language Mapping of this Manual for instructions on this process.
12	Expand the data tree to the level you wish to select as the destination. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
13	Click on the source content name. Drag it to the destination location. ***Note:** Please make sure the level the source content is lower than the destination.
14	It will generate an ID for this job; you can view this in the Queue window at the bottom of the GUI.
15	Click the button to start the job and click the button to delete the job. And you can click **Start All** to start all jobs one by one.

7.2.2.5 Plan Mode

There are two methods to do the migration from SharePoint 2003 to 2010: Live migration and backup migration. During Live migration, you can do the migration from SharePoint 2003 Agent to SharePoint 2010 Agent directly. Using backup migration, you can export SharePoint 2003

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

backup data to a staging location, and then import it from staging into the SharePoint 2010 environment.

Live Migration

To run a backup migration, follow the steps below:

(7-38) Migrating Content by Live Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2003 to 2010 > Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New** and input a name in the field next to the Plan Name.
3	Select a Filter, Mapping Setup, and a Filter Policy from the corresponding drop-down box.
4	Select the *Exclude empty lists or libraries* option, if you do not want to migrate the lists or document library without items or documents.
5	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can select an email notification rule. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for this instructions on this process.
6	Under the *Schedule* tab, you can set two schedules for a plan. Uncheck **No Schedule** to enable it.
7	Specify a start time by click the **calendar** icon. And select a migration option. You can set an interval for each schedule. The choices are: Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, and Month. Input a positive integer in the field.
8	Select the *Include detailed job report for all items in this plan* option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">9</td><td colspan="2">You can select a Migration Type for the migration job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all content from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from SharePoint 2003 to SharePoint 2010, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in SharePoint 2003 appear as duplicate items in SharePoint 2010. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies only the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">Select Not Overwrite, Overwrite or Append as the Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Select an agent from the drop-down list on the left as the source agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">The 2003 information should load up. Select the Items, Site Collections, Sites, etc. you would like to migrate over to 2010 by clicking on the check box next to the item. You can also open up the file browser using the icon, and check off the appropriate items from there.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Once you have selected what you would like to migrate, select a SharePoint 2010 agent from the **Agent** down menu on the right. The structure should appear beneath it.
15	You can select the language mapping in the corresponding drop-down box. You can refer to Section Language Mapping of this Manual for instructions on this process.
16	Select your destination location by clicking on the radio button. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
17	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed in the Plan Viewer under the corresponding farm name. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
18	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the **Job Report** to view the process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Backup Migration

To perform a backup migration, it needs two processes. First, you should backup SharePoint 2003 to the staging. Then, restore the backup data to SharePoint 2010.

(7-39) Backup from SharePoint 2003

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint Migration* > *Share-Point 2003 to 2010* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Check the radio button next to **Export to staging**.
3	Under the *Data Manager* tab, select a Logical Device from the drop-down box. Please refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual for instructions on this process. It is a mandatory option.
4	Select a filter and a filter policy from the corresponding drop-down box.
5	Select the *Exclude empty lists or libraries* option, if you do not want to migrate the lists or document library without items or documents.
6	Under the *Data Configuration* tab, you can specify whether the encryp-tion and compression will be carried out when backing up the data.
7	Under *Reporting* tab, select an Email Notification from the drop-down box. You can refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
8	Under *Schedule* tab, you can define a start time, by default Now is selected.
9	Select an agent from the drop-down box on the left of the screen. Then expand the tree to the content you wish to backup. Select the corresponding nodes.
10	Click **Go** to run this job immediately or wait for the appropriate sched-ule.The specified data in the SharePoint 2003 will be backed up to the logical device.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After backing up the data to the local, you can restore the data to SharePoint 2010.

(7-40) Restore to SharePoint 2010

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > Share-Point 2003 to 2010 > Plan Builder*.
2	Check the radio button next to **Import from staging**. You can view two tabs above it, Migration Settings and Schedule.
3	Under *Migration Settings* tab, you should select a logical device from the drop-down box. For more information, you can refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual.
4	You can select a mapping profile from the drop down box.The mapping Profile has been set up in Mapping Setup under the setting section. Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual for instructions on this process.
5	Select the Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the corre-sponding check box.
6	Under the *Schedule* tab, Select the radio button next to *now* or specify a start time by clicking the calendar icon.
7	Select a Job ID from the drop-down box under **Import from Staging** as the source. ***Note:** For import Item-level incremental backup data in SharePoint 2003, it will be supported in the future version of DocAve.
8	Select the *Include detailed job report for all items in this plan* option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Select an agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen. Expand the tree to the location you wish to. Select the corresponding node. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the language and the content database you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
10	You can select the language mapping in the corresponding drop-down box. You can refer to Section Language Mapping of this Manual for instructions on this process.
11	Click **Go** to run this job immediately or wait for the appropriate schedule.

***Note:** To migrate Alert successfully, you must configure "Web Application Outgoing E-Mail Settings" for the Alert in your Central Administration of SharePoint 2010.

7.2.2.6 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 2003 to 2010

(7-41) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 03 to 10

Source	Type	Status
Libraries	Document Library	Supported
	Form Library	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status
Communications List	Announcements	Supported
	Contacts	Supported
	Discussion Board	Supported
Tracking Lists	Links	Supported
	Calendar	Supported
	Tasks	Supported
	Issue Tracking	Supported
	Survey	Supported
Custom Lists	Custom List	Supported
	Custom List in Datasheet View	Supported
	Import Spreadsheet	Supported
Web Pages	Basic Page	Supported
	Web part Page	Supported
	Sites and Workspaces	Supported
Alerts		Supported
My Alerts	My Alerts in SP 2003 Personal Site	Supported
Metadata	Single line of text	Supported
	Multiple lines of text	Supported
	Choice (menu to choose from)	Supported
	Number	Supported
	Currency	Supported
	Date and Time	Supported
	Look up	Supported
	Yes/No	Supported
	Person or Group	Supported
	Hyperlink or Picture	Supported
	Calculated	Supported
Security & Properties	Version settings	Supported
	Column Settings	Supported
	Permissions	Supported
Version Histories	Documents	Supported
	Lists	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status
Site template	Team site	Supported
	Blank site	Supported
	Document workspace	Supported
	Basic meeting workspace	Supported
	Blank meeting workspace	Supported
	Decision Meeting workspace	Supported
	Social Meeting workspace	Supported
	Multipage Meeting workspace	Supported
	My Links	Supported
	Personal site	Supported
	Area (03side)	Supported
Portal listing		Supported
My Profile		Supported
Archiver	All archived stubs (03 side)	Unsupported

***Note:** It supports migrating data from SharePoint 2003 to the Extender / Connector of SharePoint 2010.

7.2.3 SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migrator

SharePoint 2007 to 2010 migration provides a way for administrators to migrate SharePoint 2007 data to SharePoint 2010.

***Note:** When you migrate links to content only, the license quota will be calculated by the full amount of content (the original item size).

7.2.3.1 Installation

To make sure the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration module is installed, follow the steps below on the SharePoint 2010 machine:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-42) Installation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab verify that the *SharePoint Migration* option is selected.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will allow the front-end machine to appear on the DocAve GUI as a destination agent.

7.2.3.2 Un-installation

To uninstall the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration module, follow the steps below:

(7-43) Un-installation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab, uncheck the **SharePoint Migration** option.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will remove the Migration tool capabilities from this agent.

7.2.3.3 Basic Settings

In this area, you can set some basic options, and apply these settings in both the Plan mode and Live mode.

There are two tabs in the settings: Mapping Setup and Filter.

Mapping Setup

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

In this area, there are four kinds of configurations, Common Setting, Permission Configuration, List Level Configuration, and Site Level Configuration. You can apply the profile both in live mode and plan mode.

To setup these mappings, follow the steps below:

(7-44) Mapping Setup

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2007 to 2010 > Settings > Mapping Setup.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click New and enter a name in the field next to the Profile Name.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">3</td><td colspan="2">Click Common Setting tab, you can set up the common permission setting in this section.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Site Collection / Site	Under *Site Collection / Site* tab, there are four options. • *Change existing SharePoint sites to use the new experience* : It will change SharePoint 2007 experience to SharePoint 2010 experience on destination. •*Preserve customized pages, but update template and application pages to use the new UI* : It will update the customized pages of SharePoint 2007 experience to SharePoint 2010 experience after the migration. •*Reset all customized pages to their original templates.* : It will change SharePoint 2007 experience to SharePoint 2010 experience on destination, but not update the customized pages to SharePoint 2010 experience. • *Preserve the look and feel of existing SharePoint sites, and allow end users to update their sites' user experience* : It will keep the SharePoint 2007 experience on destination side. • *Promote site to site collection* : Promote the selected site in source to site collection after the migration and keep the hierarchy of its sub sites. • *Migrate sites under a site* : Demote the selected site in source to the sub site of specified site in destination after the migration and keep the hierarchy of its sub sites.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List	Under *List* tab, there are two options. • *Reset the version number* : It will reorder the version number and make it start with the specified number. To use this option, you need to set up the Version filter first. For more information on setting up version filter rule, please refer to the Section Filter of this Manual. • *Preserve NULL column values* : It will keep the column value as none for the selected content after the job is complete if the source column value is null. If you do not select this option, the value will be the default column value. • *Allow individual item checkboxes* : It will enable the *Allow individual item* feature so that you can select multiple list items to perform operations in bulk.
	Permission	Within *Permission* tab, there are six Permission Restore options. • *Restore all permissions* : It will restore all the permissions. • *Only restore site permissions* : It will only restore the site level permissions. • *Only restore list permissions* : It will only restore the list level permissions. • *Only restore folder permissions* : It will only restore the folder level permissions. • *Only restore item permissions* : It will only restore the item level permissions. • *Do not restore any permission* : It will not restore any permission.
	Alerts	Within *Alerts* tab, you can select *Migrate alert of the list,library,folder,item and document levels* option to restore all Alerts in SharePoint 2007.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Characters</td><td>Within Characters tab, you can limit the maximum length of the SharePoint URL and the folder/ file name.

Check the boxes under the Characters Length Settings, then input the maximum length you want to limit for URL and the folder/file name. By default, the maximum length of them is 255, 128 and 128 respectively.

If the folder/file name or the SharePoint URL exceeds the byte length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra bytes. The truncated folder/file name or SharePoint URL will be recording the Job Report.

*Note: The filename length includes the extension.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Click Save. It will be listed under the Mapping Setup Profiles on the right column.

After the profile was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this profile with another name. If you do not change the profile name, the name will be added with “(1)”.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">5</td><td colspan="2">There are two options under the Permission Configuration: Domain Mapping and User Mapping.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Domain Mapping</td><td>You can map the Domain from the source to destination by using this setting.

1. Check the box next to Domain Mapping.

2. Enter the Source Domain Name and the Destination Domain Name into the corresponding text box.

3. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	User Mapping	When you want to migrate user from SharePoint 2007 to SharePoint 2010 within different domains, this setting can be used. This allows users to convert from DomainA\user1 to DomainB\user1 or DomainA\user1 to DomainB\user2. 1. Check the box next to User Mapping. 2. Enter the destination default username into the text box. If the source user cannot be found in destination but you want to migrate the metadata of this user to destination, you can set a destination default user. The destination default user will be added into destination SharePoint automatically and the source user will be mapped to the default user during migration. Then the metadata of the source user will be migrated to destination SharePoint. The mapped user will not be added into the destination AD. ***Note:** The destination default user must exist in destination AD and not be used neither in source SharePoint nor destination SharePoint. 3. Enter the Source Username into the text box, the domain and user information is that in SharePoint 2007. 4. Input the destination username into the text box, the domain and user information is to be migrated in SharePoint 2010. 5. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it. ***Note:** To ensure the User Mapping effectively, you must select the site collection node because the user information is saved in the site collection node.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">6</td><td colspan="2">Under the List Level Configuration tab, you can configure the three settings: Field Mapping Replace Settings, List Templates Replace Settings, and Content Type Mapping Replace Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Field Mapping Replace Settings</td><td>You can map the Field in the List in the source to the specified Field in the destination. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.
1. Check the box next to Field Mapping Replace Settings. Enter the Source Template ID in the text box.
2. Enter the Source's List Title, * can be used to represent all lists. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.
3. Enter the source column internal name and destination column internal name into the Source Name and Destination Name boxes. Select Column Type from the drop-down list and the default one is Same Type. Please note this option is optional, you can setup the display name instead of it. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.
4. Enter the display name of the source column and destination column into the corresponding box. Select Column Type from the drop-down list and the default one is Same Type. This option is optional, but you should select at least one between Name and Display Name.
*Note: If you select the Change to Managed Metadata Column Type, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration. It also supports mapping KWizCom category to Managed Metadata.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Field Mapping Replace Settings	5. If you want to map the value of the column, you should specify the value for the source and destination into the matching box. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.
	List Templates Replace Settings	This setting allows you change the List Template and Source List Title when migrating the list from source to destination. 1. Check the box next to *List Templates Replace Settings.* 2. Input the List Template ID you want to migrate in the source in the Source Template ID box. Input the List Template ID you want to use to build the List in the destination in the Destination Template ID box. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it. 3. Input the List Title you want to change in the source into the Source List Title box. 4. Input the List Title you want to change to in the destination into the Destination List Title box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Content Type Mapping Replace Settings	This option allows you to map a specific content type in destination for the migrated content. 1. Check the box next to *Content Type Mapping Replace Settings*. Enter the Source Template ID in the text box. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. 2. Enter the Source's List Title, * can be used to represent all lists. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. 3. Enter the source name and destination name into the Source Name and Destination Name boxes. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. ***Note:** To map the content type correctly, for custom content types, the content types both in the source and the destination must have the same build-in parent content type; for the build-in content types, they must be the same kind of content type.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">7</td><td colspan="2">Under the Site Level Configuration tab, you can configure the three settings: Field Mapping Replace Settings, Site Templates Replace Settings, and Content Type Mapping Replace Settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Field Mapping Replace Settings</td><td>You can map the Field in the List in the source to the specified Field in the destination. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.
1. Check the box next to Field Mapping Replace Settings. Enter the Source Template ID in the text box.
2. Enter the Source's List Title, * can be used to represent all lists. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.
3. Enter the source column internal name and destination column internal name into the Source Name and Destination Name boxes. Select Column Type from the drop-down list and the default one is Same Type. Please note this option is optional, you can setup the display name instead of it. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.
4. Enter the display name of the source column and destination column into the corresponding box. Select Column Type from the drop-down list and the default one is Same Type. This option is optional, but you should select at least one between Name and Display Name.
*Note: If you select the Change to Managed Metadata Column Type, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration. It also supports mapping KWizCom category to Managed Metadata.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Field Mapping Replace Settings	5. If you want to map the value of the column, you should specify the value for the source and destination into the matching box. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it.
	Site Template Replace Settings	This setting allows you map the template from the source to destination. 1. Check the box next to *Site Template Replace Settings.* 2. Input the Source Template name you want to migrate in the source in the Source Template box. Input the Destination Template name you want to use to build the Site in the destination in the Destination Template box. 3. Input the Site Template ID you want to change in the source into the Source Template ID box. 4. Input the Site Template ID you want to change to in the destination into the Destination Template ID box. Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.
	Content Type Mapping Replace Settings	This option allows you to map a specific content type in destination for the migrated content. 1. Check the box next to *Content Type Mapping Replace Settings*. Enter the Source Site URL in the text box. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. 2. Enter the source name and destination name into the Source Name and Destination Name boxes. You can click the icon to add a new item and icon to delete it. ***Note:** To map the content type correctly, for custom content types, the content types both in the source and the destination must have the same build-in parent content type; for the build-in content types, they must be the same kind of content type.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Click **Save.** After saving successfully, the profile will list under the *Mapping Setup Profile* column on the right. After the profile was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this profile with another name. If you do not change the profile name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Filter

The filter allows you to limit content based on modified / created dates.

(7-45) Filter

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint Migration* > *SharePoint 2007 to 2010* > *Settings* > *Filter*.
2	Click **New**, and then input a new filter name.
3	Within the *Time Range* tab, there are two rules: Created Time and Modified Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.
4	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.
5	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From to* : Specify a interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select *Before* or *After* from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select a interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.
7	Under the Version Filter, there are two options: Major and Minor Versions and Major Versions Only. • *Major and Minor Versions* : It will migrate all the versions to the destination. • *Major Versions Only* : It will only migrate the major versions to the destination.
8	Click **Save** to save this filter. A list of saved filters will appear on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

7.2.3.4 Live Mode

The Live Mode Migration process enables a seamless, real-time transfer of data from SharePoint 2007 to SharePoint 2010.

There are two methods to migrate: Import from Staging and Migrate from SharePoint 2007 directly.

***Note:** If you use third party BLOB providers, DocAve will migrate the content as real data.

Import from Staging

To import from the Staging, please follow the steps below:

(7-46) Import from Staging

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2007 to 2010 > Live Mode*.
2	Select the **Import from staging** radio button.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Select a Logical Device from the drop-down box.

*Note: For more information about setting up a logical device, please refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select a mapping profile from the Mapping Setup drop-down box.

*Note: You can click the Mapping Setup's name to go to the setting interface. For more information about setting up a Mapping, please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select the Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Select a migration option by clicking the corresponding radio button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Select a Job ID from the drop-down box. Select the *Include detailed job report for all items in this plan* option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan. Select *Include Job(s) with partial export data* check box if you want to migrate the available data in failed backup jobs. ***Note:** Before you import content, you need to run a backup job. The Job ID is the backup job's ID.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">8</td><td colspan="2">If you want to migrate workflow, there are three options as follows.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Do not migrate</td><td>Do not migrate any definition and state of relevant workflow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate definition</td><td>Only migrate the definition of relevant workflow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate definition and state</td><td>Migrate the definition and state of relevant workflow.

There are two attributes which will affect the migration of workflow state, you can go to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010 on SharePoint 2010 environment and modify the DocAve.SP2010.LS.SPWorkflow.Configuration.xml file if necessary.

• SkipRunningInstance : The default value is false, it indicates the running workflows will be migrated to destination, including the tasks and histories. If you do not want to migrate running workflows to destination, find the xml file referred above and add SkipRunningInstance="true" under Configuration node.

• HistoryOnly : The default value is true, it indicates the running workflows will be cancelled after the migration, but all histories and tasks will be migrated to destination. If you want the running workflows can be still continued on destination after the migration, find the xml file referred above and add HistoryOnly="false" under Configuration node. In this situation, only the built-in workflows can be continued properly on destination after the migration.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Select a SharePoint agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen.
10	Expand the data tree to the level you wish to select as the destination. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used, and at the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
11	Click on the source content name. Drag and drop it to the destination location. ***Note:** Please make sure the level the source content is lower than the destination.
12	It will generate an ID for this job; you can view this in the Queue window at the bottom of the GUI.
13	Click the button to start the job and click the button to delete the job. And you can click **Start All** to start all jobs one by one.

Live Mode

To run Migration from SharePoint 2007 to 2010, please follow the steps below:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-47) Migrating Content by Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2007 to 2010 > Live Mode*.
2	Select the radio button next to *Agent*.
3	Select your source SharePoint 2007 agent from the drop-down list marked Agent.
4	Select a Profile you created in the Mapping Setup Settings from the Mapping Setup drop-down list. Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual for instructions on this process.
5	Select the Filter and Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the corresponding check box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Select Not Overwrite, Overwrite or Append as the Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Select the Include detailed job report for all items in this plan option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Select Exclude empty lists or libraries check box if you do not want to migrate the empty lists or libraries.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">9</td><td colspan="2">If you want to process DocAve Archived Data, there are three options as follows.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Do not migrate</td><td>It will not migrate the archived data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate links to content only</td><td>It will migrate links to the destination side only.

*Note: Copying/Moving stubs only may result in orphaned stubs in SharePoint (stubs with no corresponding BLOB data) because they still point to the original BLOB location. This can occur if the pruning option remove data when stub is deleted is used, or when retention policy is used on the source side. It is recommended disabling this option to support duplication of stubs. For more details, please refer to section Stub Retention Policy of this manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate the original content</td><td>It will copy the data from the source database to the SQL database at the destination. You can also click the icon to select the module where the archived data are.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">*Note: When you migrate Pages Library to destination, DocAve will migrate real data to destination no matter using Migrate links to content only or Migrate the original content.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">If you want to migrate workflow, there are three options as follows.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Do not migrate</td><td>Do not migrate any definition and state of relevant workflow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate definition</td><td>Only migrate the definition of relevant workflow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate definition and state</td><td>Migrate the definition and state of relevant workflow.

There are two attributes which will affect the migration of workflow state, you can go to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010 on SharePoint 2010 environment and modify the DocAve.SP2010.LS.SPWorkflow.Configuration.xml file if necessary.

• SkipRunningInstance : The default value is false, it indicates the running workflows will be migrated to destination, including the tasks and histories. If you do not want to migrate running workflows to destination, find the xml file referred above and add SkipRunningInstance="true" under Configuration node.

• HistoryOnly : The default value is true, it indicates the running workflows will be cancelled after the migration, but all histories and tasks will be migrated to destination. If you want the running workflows can be still continued on destination after the migration, find the xml file referred above and add HistoryOnly="false" under Configuration node. In this situation, only the built-in workflows can be continued properly on destination after the migration.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Click on the **+** icon in front of the Database name to expand the tree to the content you wish to select.
12	Select a SharePoint agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen.
13	Expand the data tree to the level you wish to select as the destination. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used, and at the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
14	Click on the source content name. Drag it to the destination location. ***Note:** Please make sure the level the source content is lower than the destination.
15	It will generate an ID for this job; you can view this in the Queue window at the bottom of the GUI.
16	Click the button to start the job and click the button to delete the job. And you can click **Start All** to start all jobs one by one.

***Note:** SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migrator does not support migrating the differential backup data to the destination directly. If you want to migrate differential backup data immediately, you can navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *Data Management* > *Data Manager* > *Data Coalescing* to convert the differential backup data to full backup data, and then do the migration. For more details, you can refer to Control Panel section.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** When migrating site collection to destination, the *Site Lock Information* and *Site Quota Information* cannot be migrated to destination. If the destination site collection is locked, the migration job will complete with exception, you can view the corresponding information in Job Monitor.

7.2.3.5 Plan Mode

There are two methods to do the migration from SharePoint 2007 to 2010: Live migration and backup migration. During Live migration, you can do the migration from SharePoint 2007 Agent to SharePoint 2010 Agent directly. Using backup migration, you can back up export SharePoint 2007 data to a staging location, and then import it from staging into the SharePoint 2010 environment.

***Note:** If you use third party BLOB providers, DocAve will migrate the content as real data.

Live Migration

To run a backup migration, follow the steps below:

(7-48) Migrating Content by Live Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint Migration* > *SharePoint 2007 to 2010* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New** and input a name in the field next to the Plan Name.
3	Select a Filter, Mapping Setup, and a Filter Policy from the corresponding drop-down box.
4	Select *Exclude empty lists or libraries* check box, if you do not want to migrate the empty lists or libraries.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">5</td><td colspan="2">If you want to process DocAve Archived Data, there are three options as follows.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Do not migrate</td><td>It will not migrate the archived data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate links to content only</td><td>It will migrate links to the destination side only.

*Note: Copying/Moving stubs only may result in orphaned stubs in SharePoint (stubs with no corresponding BLOB data) because they still point to the original BLOB location. This can occur if the pruning option remove data when stub is deleted is used, or when retention policy is used on the source side. It is recommended disabling this option to support duplication of stubs. For more details, please refer to section Stub Retention Policy of this manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate the original content</td><td>It will copy the data from the source database to the SQL database at the destination. You can also click the icon to select the module where the archived data are.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">*Note: When you migrate Pages Library to destination, DocAve will migrate real data to destination no matter using Migrate links to content only or Migrate the original content.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">If you want to migrate workflow, there are three options as follows.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Do not migrate</td><td>Do not migrate any definition and state of relevant workflow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate definition</td><td>Only migrate the definition of relevant workflow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate definition and state</td><td>Migrate the definition and state of relevant workflow.

There are two attributes which will affect the migration of workflow state, you can go to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010 on SharePoint 2010 environment and modify the DocAve.SP2010.LS.SPWorkflow.Configuration.xml file if necessary.

• SkipRunningInstance : The default value is false, it indicates the running workflows will be migrated to destination, including the tasks and histories. If you do not want to migrate running workflows to destination, find the xml file referred above and add SkipRunningInstance="true" under Configuration node.

• HistoryOnly : The default value is true, it indicates the running workflows will be cancelled after the migration, but all histories and tasks will be migrated to destination. If you want the running workflows can be still continued on destination after the migration, find the xml file referred above and add HistoryOnly="false" under Configuration node. In this situation, only the built-in workflows can be continued properly on destination after the migration.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Under the Reporting tab, you can select an email notification rule. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for this instructions on this process.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Under the Schedule tab, you can set two schedules for a plan. Uncheck No Schedule to enable it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Specify a start time by click the calendar icon. And select a migration option. You can set an interval for each schedule. The choices are: Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, and Month.Input a positive integer in the field.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">10</td><td colspan="2">You can select a Migration Type for the migration job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all content from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from SharePoint 2007 to SharePoint 2010, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in SharePoint 2007 appear as duplicate items in SharePoint 2010. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies only the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">11</td><td colspan="2">Select Not Overwrite, Overwrite or Append as the Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content(Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.

*Note: It will not update the Home Page and the List view in destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>If the content which is the Site Collection/Site/list level already exist in the destination, it will update the content in the destination. If the content which is the Item/Attachment level already exist in the destination, it will delete the content in the destination and create a new item/attachment in destination to migrate the content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>It will create a new item and restore the data to it whatever the item exists in the destination.

*Note: This option is only used for Item level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select the Include detailed job report for all items in this plan option, if you want to view the detailed job report for all items of this plan.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">Select an agent from the drop-down list on the left as the source agent.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
15	The 2007 information should load up. Select the Items, Site Collections, Sites, etc. you would like to migrate over to 2010 by clicking on the check box next to the item. You can also open up the file browser using the icon, and check off the appropriate items from there.
16	Once you have selected what you would like to migrate, select a SharePoint 2010 agent from the Agent down menu on the right. The structure should appear beneath it.
17	You can select the language mapping in the corresponding drop-down box. You can refer to Section Language Mapping of this Manual for instructions on this process.
18	Select your destination location by clicking on the radio button. You can also create a destination location by selecting the blank destination option and typing in the appropriate location. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication (FBA) is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the radio button has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; select the language you want to specify for the new site collection. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
19	Click **Save** to save this plan. This plan will be listed in the Plan Viewer under the corresponding farm name. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
20	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the **Job Report** to view the process.

Backup Migration

To perform a backup migration, it needs two processes. First, you should back up export SharePoint 2007 to the staging. Then, restore the backup data to SharePoint 2010.

(7-49) Backup from SharePoint 2007

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2007 to 2010 > Plan Builder.*
2	Check the radio button next to *Export to staging*.
3	Under the *Data Manager* tab, select a Logical Device from the drop-down box. Please refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual for instructions on this process. It is a mandatory option.
4	Select a Filter and a Filter policy from the corresponding drop-down box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">If you want to process DocAve Archived Data, there are three options as follows.

*Note: When you migrate Pages Library to destination, DocAve will migrate real data to destination no matter using Migrate links to content only or Migrate the original content.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Do not migrate</td><td>It will not migrate the archived data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate links to content only</td><td>It will migrate links to the destination side only.

*Note: Copying/Moving stubs only may result in orphaned stubs in SharePoint (stubs with no corresponding BLOB data) because they still point to the original BLOB location. This can occur if the pruning option remove data when stub is deleted is used, or when retention policy is used on the source side. We recommend disabling this option to support duplication of stubs. For more details, please refer to section Stub Retention Policy of this manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate the original content</td><td>It will copy the data from the source database to the SQL database at the destination. You can also click the icon to select the module where the archived data are.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Select Exclude empty lists or libraries check box if you do not want to migrate the empty lists or libraries.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Under the Data Configuration tab, you can specify whether the encryption and compression will be carried out when backing up the data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Under Reporting tab, select an Email Notification from the drop-down box. You can refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Under *Schedule* tab, you can define a start time, by default Now is selected.
10	Select an agent from the drop-down box on the left of the screen. Then expand the tree to the content you wish to backup. Select the corresponding nodes.
11	Click **Go** to run this job immediately or wait for the appropriate schedule. The specified data in the SharePoint 2007 will be backed up to the logical device.

After backing up the data to the local, you can restore the data to SharePoint 2010.

(7-50) Restore to SharePoint 2010

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *SharePoint Migration* > *SharePoint 2007 to 2010* > *Plan Builde*r.
2	Check the radio button next to **Import from staging**. You can view two tabs above it, *Migration Settings* and *Schedule*.
3	Under *Migration Settings* tab, you should select a logical device from the drop-down box. For more information, you can refer to Section Device Manager of this Manual.
4	You can select a mapping profile from the drop down box.The mapping Profile has been set up in Mapping Setup under the setting section. Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual for instructions on this process.
5	Select the and Filter Policy you want to use while migration from the corresponding check box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">If you want to migrate workflow, there are three options as follows.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Do not migrate</td><td>Do not migrate any definition and state of relevant workflow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate definition</td><td>Only migrate the definition of relevant workflow.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Migrate definition and state</td><td>Migrate the definition and state of relevant workflow.

There are two attributes which will affect the migration of workflow state, you can go to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010 on SharePoint 2010 environment and modify the DocAve.SP2010.LS.SPWorkflow.Configuration.xml file if necessary.

• SkipRunningInstance : The default value is false, it indicates the running workflows will be migrated to destination, including the tasks and histories. If you do not want to migrate running workflows to destination, find the xml file referred above and add SkipRunningInstance="true" under Configuration node.

• HistoryOnly : The default value is true, it indicates the running workflows will be cancelled after the migration, but all histories and tasks will be migrated to destination. If you want the running workflows can be still continued on destination after the migration, find the xml file referred above and add HistoryOnly="false" under Configuration node. In this situation, only the built-in workflows can be continued properly on destination after the migration.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Under the *Schedule* tab, Select the radio button next to now or specify a start time by clicking the calendar icon.
8	Select a Job ID from the drop-down box under **Import from Staging** as the source. Select *Include Job(s) with partial export data* checkbox if you want to migrate the available data in failed backup jobs. ***Note:** For import Item-level incremental backup data in SharePoint 2007, it will be supported in the future version of DocAve.
9	Select an agent from the drop-down box on the right of the screen. Expand the tree to the location you wish to. Select the corresponding node. ***Note:** If you select a web application level as the destination for migration and only Forms Based Authentication is used for this web application, you must create a User Mapping for this job. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the radio button has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; select the language you want to specify for the new site collection. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** When you want to create a new site collection in the destination web application that only uses the Forms Based Authentication (FBA), you must input a FBA user to be the Site Collection Administrator next to Site Collection Administrator.
10	You can select the language mapping in the corresponding drop-down box. You can refer to Section Language Mapping of this Manual for instructions on this process.
11	Click **Go** to run this job immediately or wait for the appropriate schedule.

***Note:** To migrate Alert successfully, you must configure Web Application Outgoing E-Mail Settings for the Alert in your Central Administration of SharePoint 2010.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migrator does not support migrating the differential backup data to the destination directly. If you want to migrate differential backup data immediately, you can navigate to *DocAve v5 > Control Panel > Data Management > Data Manager > Data Coalescing* to convert the differential backup data to full backup data, and then do the migration. For more details, you can refer to Control Panel section.

7.2.3.6 Helpful Notes on SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration

Migrating my site from SharePoint 2007 to 2010

In order to successfully migrate My Site from SharePoint 2007 to SharePoint 2010, you must ensure that your destination environment meets all of the conditions necessary for creating a My Site. To do this, you must set up a New User Profile Service Application on the destination server. Follow the instructions below.

(7-51) Preparation for creating my site

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *Central Administration > Manage services on server* in SharePoint 2010, and start the *User Profile Service*.
2	Navigate to *Central Administration > Application Management > Manage service applications*. On the *Service Applications* tab, click **New** and select *User Profile Service Application* to create a user profile.
3	In the *Create New User Profile Service Application* pop-up window, input the relevant information for creating a user profile. For My Site Host URL, the site template must be My Site Host, and it is recommended you use an Explicit Inclusion Managed Path for this site. Make sure there is a root site collection whose Managed Path is "/" in the Web Application where the My Site Host exists.
4	Click **Create** to finish the setup.

In some cases, there will be multiple user profiles in a web application. In such cases, you must specify a default user profile for this web application. Follow the steps below to set a user profile as default.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-52) Set a default user profile

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *Central Administration* > *Application Management* > *Manage web applications*, select the web application for which you want to specify a default user profile, and click **Service Connections** in the Manage group on the Ribbon.
2	Select **Custom** from the corresponding drop-down box. Choose the user profile that you want to apply and click **set as default** to specify a default user profile. Click **OK** to save the configuration.
3	Reset IIS.

***Note:** If you want to create a My Site for a user, the user must have the following permissions: db_owner role of SharePoint database, farm administrator of Central Administration.

***Note:** If you want to achieve the My Site migration from SharePoint 2007 to SharePoint 2010, it is recommended you select the source site collection of the My Site that you want to migrate and you choose the Web Application where the My Site Host exists in the destination.

***Note:** If the source domain and the destination domain are different, you must configure the Domain Mapping or User Mapping before the migration.

Nintex Workflow Migration

It allows to migrate the workflows of the third party tool Nintex from SharePoint 2007 to SharePoint 2010. The Nintex workflow information which can be migrated is as follows:

- Nintex Workflow Definition
- Nintex Workflow History
- Nintex Workflow User and E-mail information
- Nintex Workflow with initial state

***Note:** After the In Progress workflow is migrated to destination, the workflow status is Canceled. To satisfy the requirement that migrating Nintex Workflow with initial state, restart the workflow instead of clicking Canceled to activate it after migration.

***Note:** If the source SharePoint 2007 and the destination SharePoint 2010 are not in the same domain, you must set the domain mapping or user mapping from DocAve > Migration > SharePoint Migration > SharePoint 2007 to 2010 > Settings > Mapping Setup > Permission Configuration.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-53) Migrating the Nintex Workflow

Step	Action
1	Go to *…|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2010|* on SharePoint 2010 side to find the the configuration file **DocAve.SP2010.LS.SPWorkflow.Configuration.xml**.
2	Find the *HistoryOnly="True"* and *ProcessMarkOnlyWorkflow="True"* attribute in the *<Configuration>* node. • *HistoryOnly* : This property is set to **True** by default. If the value is set to **True**, the running workflow instances will be stopped when migrating. If the value is set to **False**, the status of the source workflow instances will be kept when migrating. • *ProcessMarkOnlyWorkflow* : This property is set to **True** by default. If the value is set to **True,** the users and Emails in SPD/Nintex workflows will be migrated when migrating. If the value is set to **false**, only the users and Emails in the built-in workflows will be migrated when migrating. The users and Emails in other workflows will not be replaced.
3	Configure the Email mapping if the source Email address is different from the destination Email address. Find the *<EmailMappings>* node and add the following content within it: *<EmailMapping destinationEmail="" sourceEmail=""/>* Set the destination Email address as the value of the *destinationEmail* property and set the source Email address as the value of the *sourceE-mail* property.
4	Save the modifications to the configuration file and run a migration job by selecting the *Migrate defination and state* checkbox in the GUI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.2.3.7 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 2007 to 2010

(7-54) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for SharePoint 07 to 10

Source	Type	Status
Site Collection	Team	Supported
	Blank	Supported
	Document Workspace	Supported
	Wiki Site	Supported
	Blog	Supported
	Basic Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Blank Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Decision Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Social Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Multipage Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Document Center	Supported
	Record Center	Supported
	Site Directory	Supported
	Report Center	Supported
	Search Center with Tabs	Supported
	My Site Host	Supported
	Search Center	Supported
	Collaboration Portal	Supported
	Publishing Portal	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status
Site	Team	Supported
	Blank	Supported
	Document Workspace	Supported
	Wiki Site	Supported
	Blog	Supported
	Basic Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Blank Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Decision Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Social Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Multipage Meeting Workspace	Supported
	Document Center	Supported
	Record Center	Supported
	Personalization Site	Supported
	Site Directory	Supported
	Report Center	Supported
	Search Center with Tabs	Supported
	Search Center	Supported
	New Site	Supported
	Publishing Site	Supported
	Publishing Site with Workflow	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status
Libraries	Document Library	Supported
	Form Library	Supported
	Wiki Page Library	Supported
	Picture Library	Supported
	Data Connection Library	Supported
	Report Library	Supported
	Translation Management Library	Supported
	Slide Library	Supported
Communications List	Announcements	Supported
	Contacts	Supported
	Discussion Board	Supported
Tracking Lists	Links	Supported
	Calendar	Supported
	Tasks	Supported
	Project Task	Supported
	Issue Tracking	Supported
	Survey	Supported
	Agenda	Supported
Custom Lists	Custom List	Supported
	Custom List in Datasheet View	Supported
	KPI List	Supported
	Languages and Translators	Supported
	Import Spreadsheet	Supported
	Attendees	Supported
	Decisions	Supported
	Objectives	Supported
	Text Box	Supported
	Things To Bring	Supported
	Master Page Gallery	Supported
	User Information List	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status
Web Pages	Basic Page	Supported
	Web part Page	Supported
	Publishing Page	Supported
Content Type		Supported
Navigation & Master Page		Supported
Web Part		Supported
Site Collection & Site Features		Supported
User Alert		Supported
Welcome Page		Supported
Metadata	Single line of text	Supported
	Multiple lines of text	Supported
	Choice (menu to choose from)	Supported
	Number	Supported
	Currency	Supported
	Date and Time	Supported
	Look up	Supported
	Yes/No	Supported
	Person or Group	Supported
	Hyperlink or Picture	Supported
	Calculated	Supported
	Full HTML content with formatting and constraints for publishing	Supported
	Image with formatting and constraints for publishing	Supported
	Hyperlink with formatting and constraints for publishing	Supported
Security & Properties	Version settings	Supported
	Column Settings	Supported
	Permissions	Supported
	Permission Level	Supported
Version Histories	Documents	Supported
	Items	Supported
My Site& My Profile		Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Type	Status
Archived Data		Supported
Extender Data		Supported
Connector Data		Supported

***Note:** When migrating SharePoint objects under the Project Web App service application, Microsoft Project Server 2010 must be installed in the destination SharePoint 2010. The followings list the supported status of the additonal components after installing the Project Server.

(7-55) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements in Project Web App service application for SharePoint 07 to 10

Source	Type	Status
Site Collection	Project Workspace	Supported
	Project Web Access Site	Unsupported
Site	Project Workspace	Supported
List	Project Documents	Supported
	Issues	Supported
	Deliverables	Supported
	Risks	Supported

7.2.4 Helpful Notes on SharePoint Migration

Include/Exclude Newly Added Content in SharePoint When Migrating

DocAve supports to include/exclude newly added SharePoint content when migrating the content. If you want to include/exclude the specified content, please refer to the instructions below:

- *To include newly added SharePoint content* : Select the corresponding node on the tree in SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migrator's Plan Builder/ SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migrator's Plan Builder/ SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migrator's Plan Builder.
- *To exclude newly added SharePoint content* : If you want to exclude the newly added SharePoint content, you need to expand the corresponding node on the tree in SharePoint Migrator's Plan Builder first. Then if you click the triangle symbol at the bottom right corner of the node once, all the expanded nodes under the node you are configuring will exclude the newly added SharePoint content. And if you click the tri-

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

angle symbol at the bottom right corner of the node again, the node you are configuring will exclude the newly added SharePoint content.

7.3 Lotus Notes Migration

DocAve's Lotus Notes Migration allows you to migrate content from your Lotus Notes to SharePoint 2007 / SharePoint 2010. In order to perform this migration, you must be running Lotus Notes version 6.5.4 or above.

You can also use the Migration pre-scan tool to scan the source information and set up some mappings for the migration job. For more information about this tool, please refer to Lotus Notes Migration Section.

7.3.1 Installation

To perform a migration from Lotus Notes to SharePoint 2007 / SharePoint 2010, a DocAve agent must be installed on both the Lotus Notes and SharePoint machines. To make sure the Lotus Notes Migration module is installed on both, follow the steps below:

(7-56) Installation

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">1</td><td colspan="2">After performing all installation steps on both the Lotus Notes and SharePoint 2007/2010 machines for the DocAve Agent, navigate to the Agent Configuration Tool in each environment.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Lotus Notes Machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check Lotus Migration for Lotus Agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint 2007/ 2010 Machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check Lotus Migration for SharePoint 2007/2010 Agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click Confirm and restart the Agent services.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Start the DocAve Manager application and navigate to Control Panel.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Open the Agent Monitor under Agent Services and navigate to the new agent and click the corresponding Configure button.
5	Enter the Notes Domain, Username, and Password in the given input fields. ***Note:** If the Lotus machine has no domain, use . in this field instead.
6	Click **Save** (for each agent).

This will allow the front-end machine to appear on the GUI as a destination agent.

7.3.2 Uninstallation

To uninstall the Lotus Notes module, follow the steps below:

(7-57) Uninstallation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on the SharePoint agent.
2	Under the *Migration* tab, uncheck the **Lotus Migration** for SharePoint 2007/2010 Agent option.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services

This will remove the Migration tool capabilities from this agent.

7.3.3 Using Lotus Notes Migration

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.3.3.1 Basic Settings

You should configure the basic settings before performing the Lotus Notes migration. The basic setting has five parts: Notes Management, Mapping Setup, Filter, Export Location and DocLinks Location.

Notes Management

This will allow you to setup a connection profile for the Domino Database / Notes environment.

(7-58) Notes Management

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Lotus Notes* > *Settings*.
2	Under the *Notes Management* tab, click **New**.
3	Input the Profile Name in the corresponding text box.
4	Input Notes. INI file URL in the corresponding field. If this field is empty, it will set C:\Program Files\lotus\notes\notes.ini as the default path to find the.ini file.
5	Select an agent in the Agent drop-down box. ***Note:** The agents listed in the drop-down box are installed in the machine on which Notes is installed.
6	Select a user ID file in the drop-down box next to User ID File Name. ***Note:** The drop-down box list the user ID ever imported into Notes.
7	Input the corresponding password in the password text box.
8	Select the corresponding Lotus language from the drop-down box.
9	Select a QuickPlace Version of the environment from the drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Click **Save** to save the configuration. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Notes Management Profiles column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
11	If edit the configuration, you should select the profile and click **Save** to save the modification.

Mapping Setup

The Mapping setup tab has three kinds of configurations: Content Configuration, Content Type Configuration and Permission Configuration.

(7-59) Mapping Setup

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Lotus Notes* > *Settings*.
2	Select the *Mapping Setup* tab, click **New**.
3	Input the Profile Name in the corresponding text box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
4	Within *Common Setting* tab, you can configure the following options.	
	Document Options	• *Only extract attachments into Document library(Overrides document conversion)* : If this option is checked, only the attachments of the selected documents can be migrated to the destination which can be a document library or a general list. • *Extract embedded images into Document Library* : If this option is checked, only the attachments and the embedded images in documents can be migrated to the destination which should be document library. ***Note:** This function will not work if the destination is a general list. • *Migrate attachment to separated Document Library* : If the destination you specified is not a document library, it will create a new document library named as you specified to save the attachment. • *Migrate documents into folders created from category field(s)* : It will create a folder according to the specified category to save the corresponding documents. If you enter a "*" into the provided field, it will execute it with all category. You can separate the category names by using semicolon.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Document Options	• *Create folder for the migrated documents in destination(For migrate to Document Library)* : Creates a folder to the documents in the destination if you migrate a document library. If you select the "Migrate reply documents into subfolder of main topic" option, it will create a subfolder under the main topic for the documents. • *Create multiple lists during migration when the number of list items exceeds* : Creates a new list to save the items once the number of the items exceeds the number you specified. • *Migrate the following objects to SharePoint Calendar (For Notes Mailbox database)* : Selects the following options, and this will migrate the selected objects to the SharePoint Calendar or Announcement list.
	Permission Options	• *Inherit Parent List Permission* : The item will inherit its parent list permission automatically. • *Inherit Parent Site Permission* : The list will inherit its parent site permission automatically.
	Convert Options	• *Convert Notes documents to other format* : It will convert the Notes documents to the format you specified, and save it as an attachment for an item in destination.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">5</td><td colspan="2">In “Content Configuration”, you can set List Mapping and the Illegal characters replace setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>List Mapping</td><td>1. Check the box next to List Mapping to enable this option.
2. Input Lotus Notes Database Name or Place (Room) and SharePoint List Name in the corresponding fields. Select a SharePoint List Template ID from the drop-down box. These three are required option in this setting.
3. Input a SharePoint List Creator, Lotus Notes Column Name and SharePoint Column Name in the corresponding fields and select a SharePoint Column Type from the drop-down box.
4. Click the icon next to the rule table to add a new row of the Lotus Notes Column Name, SharePoint Column Name, and SharePoint Column Type and icon to delete it.
5. Click the icon next to List Mapping to add a new rule and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Illegal characters replace setting</td><td>This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters.
You need configure the illegal characters replace setting for three level: Group Level, Folder Level, and File Level.
Click More Characters, a pop-up a window will appear. Select the character by checking the corresponding box, and click Add to add a new row.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	In Content Type Configuration, you can set Content Type Mapping. You can select either Automatic creation of Content Type mappings or Manual creation of Content Type mappings by clicking the corresponding radio button. If you select the Automatic creation of Content Type mappings option to run a content type mapping, it supports you use the mapping file which is created by the Migration Tool. Please refer to Lotus Notes Migration for more information. There are two method for the mapping file: • *Not Overwrite Existing Mappings* : it will use the default mapping profile directly. • *Overwrite Existing Mappings* : it will use the new mapping profile. If you select the Manual creation of Content Type mappings option, please follow the steps below to configure it. 1. Check the box next to Content Type Mapping to enable this option. 2. Input Lotus Notes Content Type and SP Content Type in the corresponding fields. These three are required option in this setting. 3. Enter the Lotus Notes Content Type and SP column Name into the corresponding box, and select a SP Column Type from the drop-down box. Click the Add icon next to the rule table to add a new row of the Lotus Notes Column Name, SP Column Name, and SP Column Type and Remove icon to delete it. 4. Click the icon next to Content Type Mapping to add a new rule and icon to delete it. ***Note:** If you select the *Managed Metadata* SharePoint Column Type from the drop-down box, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">7</td><td colspan="2">In Permission Configuration, you can set User Mapping, Group Mapping and Permission Mapping.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>User Mapping</td><td>This option allows you map the Lotus Notes user to SharePoint.
Check the box next to User Mapping to enable this option.
Input Lotus Notes Username and SharePoint Username.
Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Group Mapping</td><td>You can map the Lotus Notes group to SharePoint by using this setting.
Check the box next to Group Mapping to enable this option.
Input Lotus Notes Group name and SharePoint Group name in the corresponding fields.
Click the icon to add a new row and icon to delete it.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Permission Mapping</td><td>It allows you map the permission from the Lotus Notes to SharePoint.
Check the box next to Permission Mapping to enable this option.
Select the SharePoint permission for the corresponding Lotus Notes Permission from the drop-down box.
Click New SharePoint Permission, you can configure a new SharePoint permission for the Permission Mapping.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">8</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as a xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration file, the user have different selection depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Setting interface.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn’t to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save the configuration. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Mapping Profiles column area on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with “(1)”.</td></tr>
</table>

Filter

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

The filter allows you to limit content based on modified / created dates.

(7-60) Filter

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5> Migration> Lotus Notes> Settings*.
2	Select the *Filter* tab.
3	Click **New**, and then input a new filter name.
4	The Time Range includes two rules: Created Time and Modified Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.
5	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.
6	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From… To…* : Specify a interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select Before or After from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select a interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.
7	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Click **Save** to save this filter. A list of saved filters will appear on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Export Location

In order to run an import/export plan, you must first define a location to place the temporary content. One export path must be saved both by the Lotus Notes agent and the SharePoint agent so as to setup a staging location that the source agent and the destination agent both have access to.

(7-61) Export Location Setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Lotus Notes* > *Settings* > *Export Location*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name on the **Profile Name Field** to create a new profile.
3	Select a Lotus Notes agent from the Agent drop-down box.
4	Input the **Username**, **Password** and **Path** in the corresponding field according to the example provided.
5	Click **Test** to test the path you input.
6	If test path successfully, click **Save** to save it. You can see this profile on the right hand of the screen under the corresponding agent name. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
7	Save the export path again using a SharePoint agent.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocLinks Location

This database stores the DocLinks for all migrated data between Lotus Notes and SharePoint, and is required to support this feature during migration projects.

(7-62) DocLinks Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Settings* > *DocLinks Location*.
2	Click **New** and enter a profile name into the provided field.
3	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
4	There are two kinds of devices: Local and UNC. • *Local* : To specify a DocLinks Database Location to load the DocLinks database from a local location. • *UNC* : To specify a path to load the DocLinks database from a network location, you need to input the Username as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data have be written to and stored.
5	Click **Save** to save the configuration. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

ContentConfiguration.xml

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

You can modify this configuration file according to your need. This configuration file includes the information for name mapping, template mapping, column mapping and special character mapping from Notes to SharePoint.

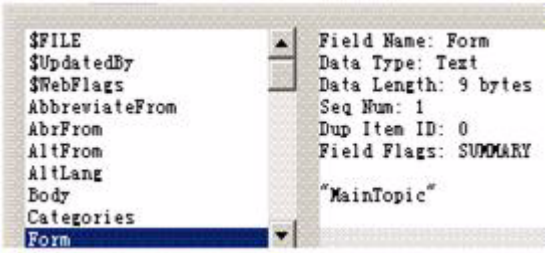
```
- <ContentConfigurations>
  - <ListMapping>
    - <List lotusNotesDatabaseName="forQA" MOSSListName="forQADISS" MOSSListTemplateID="108">
      - <ColumnMapping>
          <Column lotusNotesColumnName="Form" MOSSColumnName="MossForm" />
        </ColumnMapping>
      </List>
    </ListMapping>
    <WebOrSiteLanguageID LanguageID="1033" />
  - <Characters>
    - <FolderCharacter>
        <character sourceCharacter="&" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter=">" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="<" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter=""" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="'" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="{" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="}" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="|" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="?" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="/" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="\" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter=":" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="~" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="#" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="%" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="*" destinationCharacter="_" />
      </FolderCharacter>
    - <FileCharacter>
        <character sourceCharacter=">" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="<" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter=""" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="?" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="/" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="\" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter=":" destinationCharacter="_" />
        <character sourceCharacter="*" destinationCharacter="_" />
      </FileCharacter>
    - <GroupCharacter>
        <character sourceCharacter=">" destinationCharacter=" " />
```

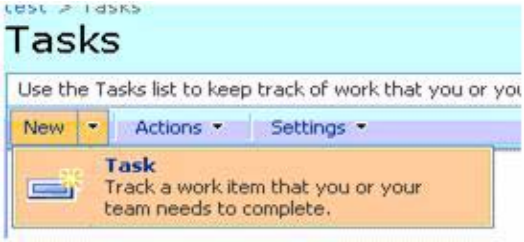
From the picture above, we migrate database "forQA" to a list "forQADISS" in SharePoint. And set the template "108" for this list. (From the note in the mapping configuration file, we find the 108 means "discussion board" list)

ContentTypeConfiguration.xml

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This configuration file is used to map the Content Type. DocAve sets the value of the item Form as the content type in Lotus Notes, maps them to Content Type in SharePoint.






```
- <ContentTypeConfigurations>
  - <ContentTypeMapping>
      <ContentType lotusNotesContentType="MainTopic" MOSSContentType="Task" />
    </ContentTypeMapping>
  </ContentTypeConfigurations>
```

From the picture above we can see that document whose Form value is MainTopic in Lotus Notes will map the item whose content type is Task in SharePoint.

PermissionConfiguration.xml

In this configuration file, you can do the user mapping, group mapping and permission mapping.

***Note:** Please make sure the user has existed in SharePoint. Otherwise, the user mapping will fail.

```
- <UserMapping>
    <User lotusNotesUserLoginName="Domino\notes" MOSSUserLoginName="Avepoint\coby" />
  </UserMapping>
- <GroupMapping>
    <Group lotusNotesGroupName="OtherDomainServers" MOSSGroupName="avepoint" />
  </GroupMapping>
```

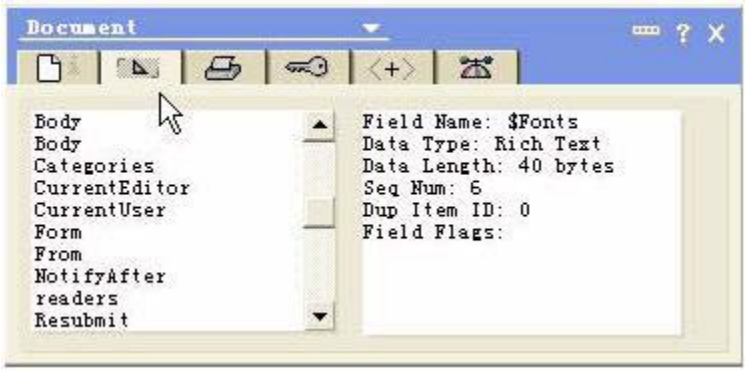
From the picture above, we can see this configuration will map user Domino\notes in Lotus Notes to Avepoint\coby in SharePoint. Map the group OtherDomainServers in Lotus Notes to avepoint in SharePoint. For default mapping for basic permissions in Lotus Notes, please refer to the following lines.

```
- <RoleMapping>
    <Role lotusRoleName="ACLLEVEL_NOACCESS" MOSSRoleName="View Only" />
    <Role lotusRoleName="ACLLEVEL_DEPOSITOR" MOSSRoleName="View Only" />
    <Role lotusRoleName="ACLLEVEL_READER" MOSSRoleName="Read" />
    <Role lotusRoleName="ACLLEVEL_AUTHOR" MOSSRoleName="Contribute" />
    <Role lotusRoleName="ACLLEVEL_EDITOR" MOSSRoleName="Design" />
    <Role lotusRoleName="ACLLEVEL_DESIGNER" MOSSRoleName="Design" />
    <Role lotusRoleName="ACLLEVEL_MANAGER" MOSSRoleName="Full Control" />
  </RoleMapping>
```

***Note:** The node name of the notes in mapping configuration file should be unique. And this configuration file supports case sensitive.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Document by Notes @Formula



You can refer to Notes Document properties, use notes search option: *(paras="value"|paras="value"),(paras="value"&paras="value"), (paras<"value"&...|...)*

For example: *(Subject="..."&readers=""%Body="...")*

7.3.3.2 Live Mode

To run a live mode migration, please follow the steps below:

(7-63) Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Lotus Notes* > *Live Mode*.
2	Select a Lotus Agent in the Source Agent drop-down box.
3	Select a User Profile from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The User Profile has been set up in Notes Management under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Notes Management of this Manual.
4	Select a Mapping Setup from drop-down box next to it. ***Note:** The mapping profile has been set up in Mapping Setup under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Mapping Setup of this Manual.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select a Filter from drop-down box next to it.

*Note: The filter profile has been set up in Filter under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Filter of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Select a link mode in the corresponding drop-down box. There are two options here: Automatically redirect users to target document and always show document information page.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Automatically redirect users to target document</td><td>If the documents you want to migrate have the doclink, databaselink or viewlink, this will go to the target item page when clicking the doclinks, databaselink or viewlink in the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Always show document information page.</td><td>If the documents you want to migrate have the doclink, this will go to the document information page when clicking the doclinks, databaselink or viewlink in the destination.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">7</td><td colspan="2">Migration options include four options: Not Overwrite, Overwrite, Append and New Version.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The contents (lists / folders / documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (lists / folders / documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3... And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report. The URL and Name for this file in Notes and SharePoint will be included in this report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>New Version</td><td>This option is for the purpose of creating versions. It copies content from the source to the destination, but in the case when the same name already exists in the destination, an additional copy will be created as a newer version.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Select a Lotus Domino Server you want to migrate in the drop-down box.

*Note: It lists the Domino Server which the specified user in the Notes Management section had logged in.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">9</td><td colspan="2">Select a browsing Notes policy in the drop-down box next to the Filter Option.

There are two browsing policies: Database or View and Document by Notes @Formula.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Database or View</td><td>This policy allows you browse view.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Document by Notes @Formula</td><td>Input the search criteria in the field beside this option. Then the corresponding search results will be loaded in the tree.

The criteria should be inputted in the format, for example: Reader= “”| From= “”&Category= “”. “|” and “&” are supported in the criteria rule.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Check the Show System Databases check box to show the Lotus system database. By default, the check box is unchecked. If you uncheck the check box, it will only display the custom database.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">Select a destination agent from the drop-down box. Click on the plus sign before the agent name to expand the tree to the location you want to migrate to. You can select the Show All Lists option to show all lists in the data tree.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Select a DocLinks location from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The DocLinks location has been set up in DocLinks Location under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the Section DocLinks Location of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select a list template from the drop-down box next to Default List Template. It defines the default template of the manually inputted list.

If you select the Calendar list from the drop-down box, the source database you selected must be the Notes Mailbox database. If the source is not the Notes Mailbox database, the Calendar migration will be skipped.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Click on the plus sign before the source agent name to expand the tree and select the content you wish to migrate. Drag the content to the destination location. ***Note:** The destination locations are available from root web to folder.
15	After dragging the content to the destination location, the job will list in the Queue Window. Enter a positive number for the Maximum number of concurrent running jobs and click **Save** to limit the concurrent running jobs. You can click the button to begin the job. If you pause the job, you can click the button. You can also click **Start All** to start all jobs.

7.3.3.3 Plan Builder

There are two methods to do the Lotus Notes migration in Plan Builder: Standard migration and backup migration. During Standard migration, you can do the migration from Lotus Notes to SharePoint directly. Using backup migration, you can export Lotus Notes backup data to a staging location and then import it from staging into SharePoint environment.

Backup migration is designed for the situation when the connection between Lotus Notes and SharePoint is poor. In such cases, you can backup the Lotus Notes data to a machine, the connection of which to SharePoint is good and then import the staged data to SharePoint.

Standard Mode

To configure a plan mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-64) Standard Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Lotus Notes* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select Standard from the drop-down list next to Mode.
3	Click **New**, and enter a new **Plan Name** in the corresponding text box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Under the Notes Settings tab, select a Mapping Setup from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The mapping profiles has been set up in Mapping Setup under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Mapping Setup of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select a Filter from drop-down box next to it.

*Note: The filter profiles has been set up in Filter under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">6</td><td colspan="2">Select a link mode in the corresponding drop-down box. There are two options here: Automatically redirect users to target document and Always show document information page.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Automatically redirect users to target document</td><td>It will directly redirect users to the specified location by clicking the doclinks, dblinks or other links in the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Always show document information page.</td><td>A link address will pop up after clicking the doclinks, dblinks or other links in the destination.Click the link address, the link location will be jumped to.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Select the Reporting tab to choose an email notification profile. You can refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Select the Schedule tab. If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule checkbox.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on only once, hour, day, week, or month schedule</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">There are two migration types: Full and Incremental.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">11</td><td colspan="2">Migration options include four options: Not Overwrite, Overwrite, Append and New Version.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not migrate the content if it already exists on the destination.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will migrate the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there is a file with the same name existing in the Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report. The URL and Name for this file in Notes and SharePoint will be included in this report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>New Version</td><td>DocAve will not overwrite the data if it already exists on the destination. It will migrate the restored data as a new version of the original data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the basic options, you should select a Lotus Agent in the Source Agent drop-down box.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">Check the Show System Databases check box to show the Lotus system database. By default, the check box is unchecked. If you uncheck the check box, it will only display the custom database.</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td colspan="2">Select a User Profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The User Profile has been set up in Notes Management under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Notes Management of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td colspan="2">Select a Lotus Domino Server you want to migrate in the drop-down box.

It lists the Domino Server which the specified user in the Notes Management section had logged in.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">17</td><td colspan="2">Select a browsing Notes policy in the drop-down box next to the Filter Options.

There are two browsing policies: Database or View and Document by Notes@Formula.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Database or View</td><td>This policy allows you browse view.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Document by Notes@Formula</td><td>Select this one, you should input the search criteria in the field beside this option. Then the corresponding search results will be loaded in the tree.

The criteria should be inputted in the format, for example: Reader= “”| From= “”&Category= “”. “|” and “&” are supported in the criteria rule.</td></tr>
<tr><td>18</td><td colspan="2">Click on the agent name to expand the tree and check a box to specify content to be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>19</td><td colspan="2">Select a destination agent from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
20	Select a DocLinks location from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The DocLinks location has been set up in DocLinks Location under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the Section DocLinks Location of this Manual.
21	Select a list template from the drop-down box next to Default List Template. It defines the default template of the manually inputted list. If you select the Calendar list from the drop-down box, the source database you selected must be the Notes Mailbox database. If the source is not the Notes Mailbox database, the Calendar migration will be skipped.
22	Click on the agent name to expand the tree and specify the location you want to migrate to. You can select the Show All Lists option to show all lists in the data tree.
23	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
24	You can click **Test Run** to test whether the file you want to migrate is in use. You can view the amounts of the items which can be migrated successfully and cannot migrated successfully as well as the unsuccessful result.
25	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.
26	You can click **Delete all plans** to delete all plans you set up.

Backup Mode

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To perform a backup migration, it needs two processes. First, you should export the Lotus Notes data to the staging. Then, import the data from the staging to SharePoint.

(7-65) Export to Staging

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Lotus Notes* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select Export to Staging from the drop-down list next to Mode.
3	Click **New**, and enter a new **Plan Name** in the corresponding text box.
4	Under the *Notes Settings* tab, select a Mapping Setup from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The mapping profiles has been set up in Mapping Setup under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Mapping Setup of this Manual.
5	Select a Filter from drop-down box next to it. ***Note:** The filter profiles has been set up in Filter under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.
6	Select the *Reporting* tab to choose an email notification profile. You can refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
7	Select the *Schedule* tab. If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule checkbox.
8	Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on only once, hour, day, week, or month schedule

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">9</td><td colspan="2">There are two migration types: Full and Incremental.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the basic options, you should select a Lotus Agent in the Source Agent drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Check the Show System Databases check box to show the Lotus system database. By default, the check box is unchecked. If you uncheck the check box, it will only display the custom database.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select a User Profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The User Profile has been set up in Notes Management under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Notes Management of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">Select a Lotus Domino Server you want to migrate in the drop-down box.

It lists the Domino Server which the specified user in the Notes Management section had logged in.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">15</td><td colspan="2">Select a browsing Notes policy in the drop-down box next to the Filter Options.

There are two browsing policies: Database or View and Document by Notes@Formula.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Database or View</td><td>This policy allows you browse view.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Document by Notes@Formula</td><td>Select this one, you should input the search criteria in the field beside this option. Then the corresponding search results will be loaded in the tree.

The criteria should be inputted in the format, for example: Reader= “”| From= “”&Category= “”. “|” and “&” are supported in the criteria rule.</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td colspan="2">Click on the agent name to expand the tree and check a box to specify content to be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>17</td><td colspan="2">Select an Export Location to save the backup data from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The Export Location has been set up in Export Location under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the Section Export Location of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>18</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with “(1)”.</td></tr>
<tr><td>19</td><td colspan="2">If you want to run the plan immediately, click Run Now. Select a Migration type, and enter a description for this plan. Click Run.

You can go to the Job Report to view the process.</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td colspan="2">You can click Delete all plans to delete all plans you set up.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-66) Import from Staging

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Migration > Lotus Notes > Plan Builder.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Select Import from Staging from the drop-down list next to Mode.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Click New, and enter a new Plan Name in the corresponding text box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select a destination agent from the drop-down list next to Destination Agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">Under the Notes Settings tab, select a link mode in the corresponding drop-down box. There are two options here: Automatically redirect users to target document and Always show document information page.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Automatically redirect users to target document</td><td>It will directly redirect users to the specified location by clicking the doclinks, dblinks or other links in the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Always show document information page.</td><td>A link address will pop up after clicking the doclinks, dblinks or other links in the destination.Click the link address, the link location will be jumped to.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Select the Export Location where the backup data you want to migrate to SharePoint is saved from the corresponding drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Select the Job ID from the drop-down box next to Restore Detail. The Job ID is generated during the Export to Staging migration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Select the Reporting tab to choose an email notification profile. You can refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on only once, hour, day, week, or month schedule</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">There are two migration types: Full and Incremental.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save signifi-cant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the basic options, you should specify a destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select a DocLinks location from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The DocLinks location has been set up in DocLinks Location under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the Section DocLinks Location of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">Select a list template from the drop-down box next to Default List Tem-plate. It defines the default template of the manually inputted list.</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td colspan="2">Click on the agent name to expand the tree and specify the location you want to migrate to. You can select the Show All Lists option to show all lists in the data tree.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
17	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration type, and enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.
18	You can click **Delete all plans** to delete all plans you set up.

7.3.3.4 QuickPlace Live Mode

To run a live mode migration, please follow the steps below:

(7-67) Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > Lotus Notes > QuickPlace Live Mode*.
2	Select a QuickPlace Agent in the Source Agent drop-down box.
3	Select a User Profile from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The User Profile has been set up in Notes Management under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Notes Management of this Manual.
4	Select a Mapping Setup from drop-down box next to it. ***Note:** The mapping profile has been set up in Mapping Setup under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Mapping Setupof this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select a Filter from drop-down box next to it.

***Note:** The filter profiles has been set up in Filter under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Filter of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">6</td><td colspan="2">Migration options include four options: Not Overwrite, Overwrite, Append and New Version.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The contents (lists / folders / documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (lists / folders / documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report. The URL and Name for this file in Notes and SharePoint will be included in this report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>New Version</td><td>This option is for the purpose of creating versions. It copies content from the source to the destination, but in the case when the same name already exists in the destination, an additional copy will be created as a newer version.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Select a QuickPlace Server you want to migrate in the drop-down box.
8	On the right side of the screen, select a destination agent from the drop-down box. You can select the Show All Lists option to show all lists in the data tree. Click on the plus sign before the agent name to expand the data tree to the location you want to migrate to. You can create a new folder by inputting the folder name into the blank input field next to the folder icon. Select a Default List Template from the corresponding drop-down box to define the template of the manually inputted list. You can drag the content to the new folder directly. After running this job, the selected data will be migrated to this new folder.
9	Click on the plus sign before the source agent name to expand the tree and select the content you wish to migrate. Drag the content to the destination location. ***Note:** The destination locations are available from root web to folder.
10	After dragging the content to the destination location, the job will list in the Queue Window. Enter a positive number for the Maximum number of concurrent running jobs and click **Save** to limit the concurrent running jobs. You can click the button to begin the job. If you pause the job, you can click the button. You can also click **Start All** to start all jobs.

7.3.3.5 QuickPlace Plan Builder

To configure a plan mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-68) Plan Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > Lotus Notes > QuickPlace Plan Builder*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Click **New**, and enter a new **Plan Name** in the corresponding text box.
3	Under the QuickPlace Settings tab, select a Mapping Setup from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The mapping profile has been set up in Mapping Setup under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Mapping Setup of this Manual.
4	Select a Filter from drop-down box next to it. ***Note:** The filter profile has been set up in Filter under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Filter of this Manual.
5	Select the *Reporting* tab to choose an email notification profile. You can refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
6	Select the *Schedule* tab. If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule checkbox.
7	Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on only once, hour, day, week, or month schedule

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">8</td><td colspan="2">There are two migration types: Full and Incremental.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source data is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">9</td><td colspan="2">Migration options include four options: Not Overwrite, Overwrite, Append and New Version.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not migrate the content if it already exists on the destination.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will migrate the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there is a file with the same name existing in the Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report. The URL and Name for this file in Notes and SharePoint will be included in this report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>New Version</td><td>DocAve will not overwrite the data if it already exists on the destination. It will migrate the restored data as a new version of the original data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the basic options, you should select a QuickPlace Agent in the Source Agent drop-down box.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	Select a User Profile from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The User Profile has been set up in Notes Management under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Notes Management of this Manual.
13	Select a QuickPlace Server you want to migrate in the drop-down box.
14	Click on the agent name to expand the tree and check a box to specify the content to be migrated.
15	Select a destination agent from the drop-down box. Click on the agent name to expand the tree and check the location you want to migrate to. You can select the Show All Lists option to show all lists in the data tree. You can create a new folder by inputting the folder name into the blank input field next to the folder icon. You can select a Default List Template from the corresponding drop-down box to define the default template of the manually inputted list. You can also define the template of the specified list by clicking the icon next to the inputted list name.
16	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
17	You can click **Test Run** to test whether the file you want to migrate is in use. You can view the amounts of the items which can be migrated successfully and cannot migrated successfully as well as the unsuccessful result.
18	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
19	You can click **Delete all plans** to delete all plans you set up.

7.3.4 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Lotus Notes

(7-69) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Lotus Notes

Database in Lotus Notes	List in Lotus Notes	Supported Template in SharePoint	Supported List in SharePoint
Database Library	Databases Librarians	Unsupported	
Design Synopsis	Synopsis	Unsupported	
Discussion - Notes &web	Main Topic	Team site Basic Meeting Workspace Document Center Collaboration portal	Discussion board Document Library Contacts General list Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library
Doc Library - Notes & web	Documents Author profile Interest profile	Team site Basic Meeting Workspace Document Center Collaboration portal	Discussion board Document Library Contacts General list Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library
DOLS Restore Template	DOLS Resource Database	Unsupported	
Domino Web Access Redirect	Server UI Application	Unsupported	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Database in Lotus Notes	List in Lotus Notes	Supported Template in SharePoint	Supported List in SharePoint
Domino Web Access	Memo	Team site	General list Discussion board Document Library Contacts Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library
Extended Mail	Memo Junk mail Rules Stationery	Team site	General list Discussion board Document Library Contacts Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library
iNotes Web Access	Memo Rules Stationery	Team site	General list Discussion board Document Library Contacts Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library
Lotus SmartSuite Library	Documents	Team site	General list Discussion board Document Library Contacts Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library
Mail	Memo Junk mail Rules Stationery	Team site	General list Discussion board Document Library Contacts Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Database in Lotus Notes	List in Lotus Notes	Supported Template in SharePoint	Supported List in SharePoint
Microsoft Office Library	Documents	Team site	General list Discussion board Document Library Contacts Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library
Personal Address Book	Contacts Groups Accounts Certifier Connections International MIME Setting Location	Unsupported	Contacts
Personal Journal	Journal Entry	Team site	General list Discussion board Document Library Contacts Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Database in Lotus Notes	List in Lotus Notes	Supported Template in SharePoint	Supported List in SharePoint
TeamRoom	Team mem-ber(nonsupport) Subteam(nonsup-port) Event(nonsupport) Documents Response Response to response Newsletter pro-file(nonsupport) Individual status report Announcement Team status	Team site Basic Meeting Work-space Document Center Collaboration portal	General list Discussion board Document Library Contacts Announcements Form Library Calendar Wiki Page Library

(7-70) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for QuickPlace

Source	Destination	Status
Place	Site Collection Site/Subsite List(Document Library/List/ Discussion Broad)Folder	Supported
Room	Site Collection Site/Subsite List Folder	Supported
Folder	List Folder	Supported
Blog	N/A	Unsupported
Wiki	N/A	Unsupported
Page	Item Discussion Document	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Destination	Status
Draft page	N/A	Unsupported
Workflow	N/A	Unsupported
Version	Item	Supported
Calendar page	Calendar	Supported
Task	Task	Supported
Lotus Notes Data	Extender	Supported
	Connector	
QuickPlace Data	Extender	Supported
	Connector	

7.4 eRoom Migrator

DocAve's eRoom Migrator allows you to migrate all files that eRoom saves on the file server or local file system (file store), and all metadata of the content database from your eRoom environment to SharePoint 2007 / SharePoint 2010. This module includes eRoom Migration and ERM Migration. In order to perform eRoom migration, you must be running eRoom version 6.x or 7.x. For ERM Migration, you must make sure that ERM supported version is 6.x or 7.x.

You can also use the Migration pre-scan tool to scan the source information and setup some mappings for the migration job. For more information about this tool, please refer to eRoom Migration Section.

7.4.1 Installation

To perform a migration from eRoom to SharePoint 2007 / SharePoint 2010, a DocAve agent must be installed on both the eRoom and SharePoint machine. To make sure the eRoom Migrator module is installed on both, follow the steps below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-71) Installation

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">1</td><td colspan="2">After performing all installation steps on both the eRoom and SharePoint 2007 / SharePoint 2010 machines for the DocAve Agent, navigate to the Agent Configuration Tool in each environment.

*Note: If your environment is Windows Server 2000 with SP4, you need to add the account to the Local Administrators group with the "account act as part of operation system" and the "replace a process level token" permissions.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>eRoom Machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check eRoom Migration for eRoom agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint 2007 Machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check eRoom Migration for SharePoint 2007 agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint 2010 Machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check eRoom Migration for SharePoint 2010 agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click Confirm and restart the Agent services.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Start the DocAve Manager application and navigate to Control Panel.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Open the Agent Monitor under Agent Services, select the SharePoint/ eRoom agent you want to configure and then click the button from the column on the left.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to Account Configuration tab and enter the SharePoint/ eRoom Domain, Username, and Password in the provided fields.

*Note: If the SharePoint/eRoom machine has no domain, use "." in this field instead.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click Save (for each agent).</td></tr>
</table>

This will allow the front-end machine to appear on the GUI as a destination agent.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** The user you specified for eRoom Agent must have permission to access the installation directory of eroom Agent in net share mode.

7.4.2 Uninstallation

To uninstall the eRoom Migrator module, follow the steps below:

(7-72) Uninstallation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on the SharePoint agent.
2	Under the *Migration* tab, uncheck *the eRoom Migration for SharePoint 2007 Agent* option. ***Note:** In SharePoint 2010 environment, under the *Migration* tab, uncheck the *eRoom Migration for SharePoint 2010 Agent* option.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will remove the Migration tool capabilities from this agent.

7.4.3 Using eRoom Migrator

The eRoom migration tool will allow you to import content from your eRoom to your SharePoint 2007 / SharePoint 2010 environments. When importing items from eRoom, the following mapping will occur:

- *Notes* : Announcements
- *Calendar* : Calendar
- *Poll* : Survey
- *Project Plan* : Task
- *Link* : Link
- *Database* : Custom List
- *Discussion* : Discussion Board
- *File/Folder* : Folder/Document Library

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Inbox* : Document Library

There are three options for migration: Normal, Stage, and Restore.

- *Normal* : You can migrate the data from eRoom to SharePoint directly.
- *Stage* : Export the data from eRoom to the Export Location.
- *Restore* : Import the data from the Export Location to SharePoint.

7.4.3.1 Basic Settings

You should configure the basic settings before performing the migration. The basic setting has five parts: Common Configuration, Mapping Setup, Stage Destination Configuration, Export Location, and Filter.

(7-73) Basic Setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *Settings*.
2	Click **New** and input the profile name in the provided field under the *Common Configuration* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td colspan="2">In the Configuration section within the Common Configuration tab, you can configure the basic setting for each level.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Site Collection/ Site</td><td>There are several options you can setup.
Managed Path : If need to create a site collection, the content you entered will be the managed path for the site. By default, the managed path is “Sites”.
Create Site Template : This option allows you to select a template for the creating site collection or site.
Create Site Language : This option allows you to select a language for the creating site collection or site.
Add the site name to top link bar of the parent site when creating a site : If you select this option, it will add the new site to the top link bar of its parent site.
Add the site name to quick launch of the parent site when creating a site : If you select this option, it will add the new site to the quick launch bar of its parent site.
Inherit top link bar of the parent site when creating a site : The new site will inherit its parent site’s top link bar.
Add the corresponding SharePoint link in eRoom : It will add a link to the SharePoint in eRoom after migrating the room to SharePoint.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List/Item	There are several options you can setup. • *Limit the maximum number of versions to be migrated* : This option allows you specify the maximum file version number for the migration job. • *Restore Version to File* : This option allows you restore version to a file. • *Restore Mail Page attachment as .eml attachment* : It will restore the mail page attachment in the source as an email attachment. • *Restore Notifications* : It will restore the eRoom notification settings. • *Check file data integrity* : It will check the file data before migration and after the migration, if there are some changes for the file data, it will list the changes in the job report. ***Note:** For the Office files, SharePoint will make some changes on it after uploading and it will always be considered as changes by this option, so there will be some conflict report in the job report. There is no influence for the migration job, but it is recommended you use this option. • *Migrate owner column* : Migrate owner column to destination as the following mode as necessary. • *As text column* : Migrate owner column to text column. • *As user column* : Migrate owner column to SharePoint user column. • *Migrate the grouping view of the database* : SharePoint does not support create group view for each user, so only the default grouping view of the database can be migrated.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
		• *Migrate Comment as Discussion Topic* : SharePoint does not allow you create comment for list or item, so it will migrate the comment of list or item as Discussion Topic in SharePoint. • *Migrate Vote as Survey* : SharePoint does not allow you create vote for list or item, so it will migrate the vote of list or item as survey in SharePoint. • *Create content type for the folders to migrate the folder's descriptions and links* : It will create the content type for the folders to migrate the description and the object's link of the folder in SharePoint.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Hierarchy	There are three options you can setup. • *Remove Folder Hierarchy* : It will remove the hierarchy of the folder. When the folder structure is removed, DocAve will create a column named SourcePath in the destination. This column lists the source path from the root folder of the content you have merged. You will need to go to view > modify this view to add the Source-Path column. • *Restore My Rooms to My Links* : This option will map the My Rooms in the source to My Links in the destination. • *Create a column for links after migrating the following eRoom objects to SharePoint* : For some limited of SharePoint, there will be some structure changes if migrate the Note, Link, Attachment, Comment, and Vote to SharePoint, so it need to add a link to the parent node for these objects.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Permission	There are four options you can setup. • *Break permission inheritance* : This option allows breaking the inherited permissions of any List/ Item/ File/ Folder and migrate the content according to the Access Control on eRoom. It will make the Access Control restore precisely, but the restore inefficiently. We recommend that you use this option when you have a strict access control. • *Migrate eRoom roles to SharePoint groups* : It will migrate eRoom roles to SharePoint groups. It will affect the Permission Replace Settings and Group Name Replace Settings with this option selected. • *Restore user* : It will map the users to the destination. • *Restore deactivated user* : It will map the inactivated user to destination.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">4</td><td colspan="2">Within the Characters section within the Common Configuration tab, there are two kinds of settings: Characters length setting and Illegal characters replace setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Characters length setting</td><td>you can control the filename's maximum length. There are three qualifications: The maximum length of folder names, The maximum length of file names and The maximum length of the SharePoint URL.By default, the maximum length of the file/folder name and SharePoint URL is 80, 60 and 255. You can define the length of the folder/file name in the range of 1 to 128 and the SharePoint URL in the range of 1 to 260.

If the folder/file name or the SharePoint URL exceed the byte length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra bytes. The truncated file name will be recorded in the zip package in the Job Report.

*Note: The filename length should be adjusted to include the extension.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Illegal characters replace setting</td><td>This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters.

You need configure the illegal characters replace setting for three level: Group Level, Folder Level, and File Level.

Click More illegal character, a pop-up a window will appear. Select the character by checking the corresponding box, and click Add to add a new row.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Within the Security section within the Common Configuration tab, you can configure the Permission Replace Settings, Group Name Replace Settings, the Build In Group Name Replace Settings, Domain Mapping, User Mapping, and Email Replace Settings. For the permission replace setting, group name replace setting and the build in group name replace, we recommend you do not change the default matching. For more information about the Security restore, please refer to the Section Security Restore of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3"></td><td>Domain Mapping</td><td>It is used to map the domain from eRoom to SharePoint, if the users in eRoom are the same as the users in SharePoint, but in different domains.
eRoom Domain Name : It needs to be the same as the URL of pickup directory.
SharePoint Domain Name : It is the domain name in SharePoint. Please note it does not include the host name of domain controller.
*Note: If you configure one user in the Domain Mapping and the User Mapping in the same profile, it will map the user according to the User Replace Settings</td></tr>
<tr><td>User Mapping</td><td>This is for mapping of eRoom users to SharePoint users. The username in this configuration must be login name, not display name. The SharePoint username you typed must be in Active Directory, otherwise SharePoint cannot find the user.
*Note: If the eRoom username is the same as that for SharePoint, the user will be map automatically.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Email Replace Settings</td><td>This maps eRoom users who have specific email addresses.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">6</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as a xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration file, the user have different selection depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Setting interface.

*Note: If the xml file you upload has a different language with the GUI, you will cannot merge the xml file into one xml profile.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn’t to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save the configuration. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Common Configure Profile column area on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with “(1)”.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Go to Mapping Setup. Click **New** and enter a profile name into the corresponding field.
9	In the Configuration File Setting section within the *Mapping Setup* tab. You can create a new rule according the following steps.
10	In the Template Replace Setting field, you can select the template in SharePoint to replace the specified template in eRoom. In the List Name Replace Setting field, input the SharePoint list name desired and specify the list name in eRoom, the SharePoint list name will replace the eRoom list name during the migration. In the Column Replace Setting field, you can select a SharePoint Column or replace the specified eRoom column by typing the column name into corresponding text. Click icon to add new row and click icon to delete it. Please note this mapping is case sensitive. ***Note:** If you select the Managed Metadata Column Type from the drop-down box, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">11</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as a xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration file, the user have different selection depending on different conditions.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn’t to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Click Save. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Configuration Profile Name column area on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with “(1)”.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Go to Configuration Profile section under the Mapping Setup tab. Click New and then enter the desired name in the corresponding text.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Select source language, destination language and the configuration Profile Name which you configure in the Configuration File Setting in the corresponding drop-box.
15	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Mapping Profile column area on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
16	Click the *Stage Destination Configuration* tab, click **New** and then enter the desired name in the corresponding text.
17	This configuration is used in offline migration to generate editable xml files. Please specify the destination location in order to generate the proper files. These files can then be edited to modify mapping before import to the destination. You can specify the storage destination from the Site Collection to item. Input the **Web Application** into the text box and then enter the name of Managed Path, Site, Subsite, List, Folder and Content Type if needed.
18	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the right column area. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
19	Go to Export Location, click **New** and then enter the desired name in the corresponding text.
20	Select the eRoom agent, and set a location to save the exported data from eRoom in Data location Setting.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
21	You should input the Username as domain\username format, Password and the Path. For example: \\IP Address\disk driver $\path.
22	After setting up the location, click **Test** to test the path. If tested successfully, click **Save** to save the profile. It will be displayed under the corresponding agent in the location setup column on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
23	Go to *Filter* tab, you can set the filter to limit content based on modified / created dates, as well as file size and other parameters.
24	Click **New** and enter a name in the field to provide a name for this filter.
25	Input the filter criteria in the field. It supports "*" as the filter criteria. **+** means the files you input will be included. **-** means the files you input will be excluded. Click the this icon to switch it. Click **Add** to add a new line.
26	Check the checkbox in front of the File Size, you can select greater than, less than or equal to from the drop down box. Enter a positive number in the text box and select KB, MB or GB from the drop-down box.
27	The Time Range includes two rules: Created Time and Modified Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.
28	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
29	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From… To…* : Specify a interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select Before or After from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select a interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.
30	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.
31	Click **Save**. After the filter has successfully been saved, it will be displayed on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Truncated File or Folder Names

SharePoint is limited by two conditions:

- *File and Folder Names* : These cannot be greater than 128 characters, including the file's extension. To compensate, DocAve truncates file and folder names during migration. You can configure this parameter in the <path> "Characters" setting. By default the folders are truncated at 60 characters and files at 80 characters.
- *Overall URL Character Limit* : Any full URL of SharePoint files or folders is limited to 255 characters. To compensate these cases, DocAve will automatically adjust the structure of the eRoom contents, moving the file/folder to the destination's parent folder level. If the file/folder is moved to the root folder but its URL still exceed the limitation, the migration will fail. For example: The eRoom URL is …/folderA/folderB/contents.txt and the SharePoint target destination is …/folder1/folder2/:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- If the migration to the path …/folder1/folder2/folderA/folderB/contents.txt encounters the limit, we will first migrate the contents as:
  i. …/folder1/folder2/folderA/
  ii.…/folder1/folder2/folderB/contents.txt
- If the migration to the path …/folder1/folder2/folderB/contents.txt still exceeds the character limit, DocAve will adjust the migration to:
  i. …/folder1/folder2/folderA/
  ii.…/folder1/folderB/contents.txt
- In the event that …/folderB/contents.txt still exceeds the character limit, assuming this is now in the root folder, the migration will fail.

In order to see a report of all migration results, including the source path and destination, with the results of any truncating actions taken, please download the detailed Job Report in the job monitor.

***Note:** Although SharePoint limits folder URLs to 255 characters and files to 260, some API may count the "%20" encoded version of the blank space in the URL towards this limit.

7.4.3.2 Security Restore

This section will describe the security restore of some components in eRoom.

How to restore eRoom Role

Before you restore the Role of eRoom, you should navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *Settings* > *Common Configuration* > *Security* > *Permission Replace Settings* to setup the matchings. If the SharePoint Permission Level you configured is existing, it will not create an eRoom role in Destination. If the SharePoint Permission Level you configured is inexistent, it will create an eRoom role with the permission you configure in the "Permission Replace Settings".

For the Customer role in eRoom, by default, we do not match any permission for it, but create a permission level named as the name of eRoom customer role in destination, it has the permission of the customer role based on the role's permission. For example, the customerRole1 is created by Coordinator, and the Coordinator match the Full Control permission. We will create a permission level named customerRole1 with the Full Control permission in destination. If you want match the permission directly, you can configure it in *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *Settings* > *Common Configuration* > *Security* > *Permission Replace Settings*.

How to restore eRoom Group

You can match the group in *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *Settings* > *Common Configuration* > *Security* > *Group Name Replace Settings*. If you map the eRoom group to an existing group in SharePoint, it will not create a new group in destination, and add the users of the eRoom group to the group in SharePoint directly. If you map the eRoom group to an inexistent

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

group in SharePoint, it will create a new group named as the matched name in destination, and add the users of the eRoom group to the group in destination directly.

How to restore eRoom build in group

eRoom stores all users into the three internal group according to the role (Coordinator/ Participant/ Observer). You can configure the matching in *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *Settings* > *Common Configuration* > *Security* > *Build In Group Name Replace Settings*.

How to restore eRoom User

The Site Administrators and Community Administrators have the high level permission in eRoom, so whether they are in the Member List in eRoom or not, it will be found and restore as Coordinator.

For Deactivated User, you can configure whether restore it or not in *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *Settings* > *Common Configuration* > *Permission* > *Restore Deactivated User*.

***Note:** As the limitation of Microsoft SharePoint itself, eRoom migrator doesn't support migrating the picture in question of Poll to SharePoint 2007/2010.

7.4.3.3 eRoom Live Mode

To run a live mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-74) eRoom Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *eRoom Live Mode*.
2	Select your Source Agent from the drop-down box. This will populate the drives on the local machine.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">3</td><td colspan="2">Choose from the list of Migration Options”</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content (Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder’s content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (Lists / Folders / Documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename “+”_1, 2, 3... And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite On Modify Time</td><td>If the file exists in the destination with the same created time, the conflict resolution will then refer to “modified time”.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select a Common Profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The Common Profile has been set up in the Common Configure under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select a Mapping Setup from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The Mapping Setup has been set up in the Mapping Setup under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual.
6	Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual.
7	If you select the *Global Security* checkbox, all securities of the content you selected in the tree will be migrated to the specified SharePoint.
8	On the right side of the screen, select a destination agent from the drop-down box. Click on the plus icon before the agent name to expand the tree to the location you want to migrate to. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used. After you drag and drop the source content to this manual input URL, a pop-up window will appear and you can specify the template, content database and the site collection administrator you want to specify for the new site collection. For the site collection administrator, if the authentication of the web application is FBA, you must specify a FBA user for it. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** If the destination site you wish to create is Form Based Authentication, you should input a FBA user to be the Site Collection owner next to *Site Collection Administrator*. Or else, it will fail to create a new site collection.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	On the left side of the screen, click on the plus icon before the source agent name to expand the tree and select the content you wish to migrate. Drag the content to the destination location. When you drag the content, it will have a tab to prompt you of the type of the content and the destination location. ***Note:** The destination locations are available from root web to folder.
10	After dragging the content to the destination location, it will popup a dialog box. Select a content type in the drop-down box, it will use this specified type when you restore the content. You can click the **Cancel** button to cancel the job.
11	After clicking **OK**, the job will list in the Queue Window. Enter a positive number for the Maximum number of concurrent running jobs and click **Save** to limit the concurrent running jobs. You can click the button to begin the job. To pause the job, you can click the button. You can also click **Start All** to start all jobs.

7.4.3.4 Normal Mode Migration

To configure a normal mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-75) Normal Mode Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *eRoom Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New**, and then input a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
3	Select Normal from the Migration Mode drop-down box under the *eRoom Settings* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select the Mapping Setup in the corresponding drop-down box. You can use it to map the columns from eRoom to SharePoint. For more information about this setting, please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual. This is optional.
5	Select a common profile you want to use during this migration in the corresponding drop-down box. This is a mandatory option. ***Note:** it has been set up in the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Basic Settings of this Manual.
6	Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual. This is optional.
7	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can set Email Notification for this migration job. These profiles are set up in the Control Panel. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
8	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box under the *Schedule* tab.
9	Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, or Month schedule.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">Specify a Migration type by selecting the radio button. There are two migration type: Full and Incremental.(This only applies to Standard Migration, configured below).</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from eRoom to SharePoint, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in eRoom appear as duplicate items in SharePoint. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save signifi-cant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">11</td><td colspan="2">Choose from the list of Migration Options. (This option only applies to Standard Migration and Migrate with Metadata File).</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content (Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (lists / folders / documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3... And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite On Modify Time</td><td>If the file exists in the destination with the same created time, the conflict resolution will then refer to "modified time".</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">12</td><td colspan="2">In the Mapping Options drop-down box, you can specify which form of migration will be run.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Standard Migration</td><td>This will run the migration in Normal Mode, where the source content is transferred to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Create Metadata</td><td>Create Metadata will run the play by creating a new metadata.xml file. This will not migrate any data, it will only provide a master file for future migration.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Migrate with Metadata File</td><td>This option will allow you to migrate based on the metadata.xml mapping file created using the Create Metadata option.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">For multiple schedules, select the "Schedule B" tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td colspan="2">After setting up these basic configurations, select your Source Agent from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td colspan="2">In the Global Security drop-down box, it includes four options: Tree Select, Not Restore Any Security, Restore All Security, and Only Restore Security.

If you select Restore All Security, all the securities in the folders you selected will be migrated to the specified SharePoint site.

If you select Tree Select, all the securities for the nodes you have selected in the tree will be migrated to the SharePoint environment.

If you select Not Restore Any Security, it will not restore any security.

If you select Only Restore Secutiry, it will only restore the security.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
17	Click on the agent name to expand the tree in the left of the screen. All of the communities found in eRoom will be listed.
18	Browse the tree structure to find the folder you are looking to import content from. In order to see the files inside the content, open the file browser by clicking on the icon after the URL. You can find the content you want to migrate by clicking the icon after the URL and it will pop-up the advance search window. Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click the Add button add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** * represents random characters; ? represents one character. For case sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.
19	Once you have found the content you would like to migrate, select it by checking off the appropriate files on the file browser, or by selecting the folder from the tree browser by clicking the radio button next to it.
20	On the right side of the screen, select your Destination Agent from the drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th>Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>21</td><td>
Navigate through the tree structure of the SharePoint environment to find your destination for the files. Click on the corresponding radio next to the document library to select it.

You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it.

*Note: There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click Configure to select the Template content database and site collection administrator you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. For the site collection administrator, if the authentication of the web application is FBA, you must specify a FBA user for it. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient.

*Note: If the destination site you wish to create is Form Based Authentication, you should input a FBA user to be the Site Collection owner next to Site Collection Administrator. Or else, it will fail to create a new site collection.

If you select a list, you can click Load to load the content type of this list and define the content type for the migrating files by selecting a content type from the drop-down box.

Please note that migrated content will map according to the behaviors below:
<table>
<tr><th>If...</th><th>Then...</th></tr>
<tr><td>List</td><td>All contents will be migrated to the destination Site Collection, Site or List.

*Note: You cannot migrate to the Web Application level.</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Room	When Migrating to: • *Web Application* : It will create a new site collection using the same name as the room. • *Site Collection* : It will create a new site with the same name as the room. • *Site* : All of the room's content will be migrated to the destination.
	Facility	When Migrating to: • *Web Application* : It will migrate the rooms of this facility as new site collection. • *Site Collection* : It will migrate the rooms of this facility as new sites.
	Community	When migrating to: • *Web Application* : It will migrate the rooms of this community as new site collections • *Site Collection* : It will migrate the rooms of this community as new sites.
22	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan Viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".	
23	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.4.3.5 Pre-Scan Users

You can click **Pre-scan users** to check the User which have not been matched in eRoom after saving a Plan. This process might take considerable time, so you can do other operations after pressing this button. You can load this plan at any moment and click this button. Once it is completed, you can click **Download** to download all non-matching users or click **Start** to run Pre-Scan User operation again. If it did not complete, it will prompt the operation process. You can set these user mappings in the User replace settings (Migration > eRoom > Settings >Common Configure >Configuration).

7.4.3.6 Creating and Using metadata.xml

After setting up the individual mapping files in the section Basic Settings, use the eRoom migrator GUI to create the master Metadata.xml file.

(7-76) Creating and Using metadata.xml

Step	Action
1	Using DocAve's eRoom migrator GUI, select the content you wish to migrate from the source and the destination.
2	Select the migration mode as Normal.
3	Using the drop-down menu under the destination agent, select the content type you desire and click **Load**.
4	Click **Save** to create a new plan. You cannot apply a schedule to this plan.
5	Click **Run Now**, in the popup window, select Create Metadata as the mapping option. After running this job, you will find a new file called metadata.xml according to the generated path in the job report.
6	Open Microsoft Excel 2007. Under Excel Options, check the Show Developer tab in the Ribbon option. Please refer to your Microsoft Excel guide for details.
7	Under the Developer tab, press the **Import** button under the XML group. Choose the metadata.xml file.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">The first two columns will show the eRoom source URL and the destination URL (configured in DocAve). To modify the destination, edit this cell.

*Note: You cannot edit the source field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">The third column shows the content type, which can be changed to any type available in the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">Proceed to the next step.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Any Changes were made</td><td>1. Export the XML file in Excel.
2. Using the Run tool under the Start Menu, open a command prompt by typing cmd.
3. Enter the tool location, followed by the metadata.xml location separated by a space:…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\eRoomMappingTool.exe …\Agent\data\Migrator\eRoomMigrator\<*PLAN ID*>\metadata.xml

*Note: Fill in the "…" with your installation directory and <*PLAN ID*> with the appropriate information.
4. Run the command and wait several minutes. After report.txt has been created in the metadata.xml path, the update has completed.
5. Open the metadata.xml file again.</td></tr>
<tr><td>No changes</td><td>Proceed to step 12.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">The ServerFilePath column net share path can be modified using the following syntax:

\\ IP Address\ disk driver $\ file path</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	The MOSS Field column is generated by the customized column mapping. This cannot be modified.
13	Entries to the Value columns can be modified. They are obtained from the eRoom directly.
14	After configuring these settings, you can now choose to run a plan using Migrate with Metadata File under the Mapping Options screen.

***Note:** If you delete some rows in metadata.xml, DocAve will not restore the deleted rows. You can also run multiple plans using the same metadata.xml file, or choose to create a new one.

7.4.3.7 Stage Mode Migration

This kind migration allow you export the data the a specify location from eRoom.

(7-77) Stage Mode Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > eRoom > eRoom Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New,** and then input a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
3	Select Stage in the Migration Mode drop-down box under the *eRoom Settings* tab.
4	Select the Mapping Setup from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** The Profile has been set up in the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Basic Settings of this Manual.
5	Select a Destination Configuration profile from the drop-down box. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select the Stage Data File check box, the files which are stored in the eRoom file server will be exported together. Otherwise, you should export these files manually. ***Note:** It is not recommended when there are many files in the data you wish to export. It will cost much time to export.
7	Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual.
8	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can set setting for Email Notification for this migration job. These profiles are set up in the Control Panel section. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instruction on this process.
9	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box under the *Schedule* tab.
10	Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, or Month Schedule.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">11</td><td colspan="2">Specify a Migration Type by selecting the radio button. There are two migration type: Full and Incremental.(this only applies to Standard Migration, configured below).</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from eRoom to SharePoint, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in eRoom appear as duplicate items in SharePoint. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save signifi-cant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">12</td><td colspan="2">In the Mapping Options drop-down box, you can specify which form of migration will be run.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Standard Migra-tion</td><td>This will run the migration in the standard mode, where the source content is transferred to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Create Metadata</td><td>Create Metadata will run the plan by creating a new metadata.xml file. This will not migrate any data, it will only provide a master file for future migration.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	You may enter a **Description** in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
14	For multiple schedules, select the *Schedule B* tab.
15	After setting up these basic configurations, select your Source Agent from the drop-down box.
16	Select a location from the Export Location drop-down box, this location need to setup for the eRoom agent in the location setup section under the settings. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual. The data will export to this location.
17	In the *Global Security* drop-down box, it includes three options: Tree Select, Not Restore Any Security, and Restore All Security If you select the *Restore All Security,* all the securities in the folders you selected will be migrated to the specified SharePoint site. If you select *Tree Select*, all the securities for the nodes you have selected in the tree will be migrated to the SharePoint environment. If you select *Not Restore Any Security* it will not restore any security.
18	Click on the agent name to expand the tree in the left of the GUI. All of the communities found in eRoom will be listed.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
19	Browse the tree structure to find the folder you are looking to import content from. In order to see the files inside the folder, open the file browser by clicking on the icon after the URL. You can find the content you want to migrate by clicking the icon after the URL and it will pop-up the Advance Search window. Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click **Add** to add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.
20	Once you have found the content you would like to migrate, select it by checking off the appropriate files on the file browser, or by selecting the folder from the tree browser by clicking the radio button next to it.
21	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent.
22	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. You can go to the job report to view the process.
23	After finishing this job, the selected content will be exported to the location below: (Data Location Setting)\eRoom Stage Data\PlanName.

7.4.3.8 Restore Mode Migration

This migration allows you restore the exported data to the SharePoint.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-78) Restore Mode Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *eRoom Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New**, and then input a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
3	Select Restore in the Migration Mode drop-down box under the *eRoom Settings* tab.
4	Copy the exported data (eRoom Stage Data folder and the content) to the path which is set in the Data Location. ***Note:** If you did not select the Stage Data File option when you exported the data, you should copy the files in eRoom file server (Path: eRoom file server path\facilityName\roomName) to the following location: (Data Location Setting)\eRoom Stage Data\PlanName\Data\FacilityName\roomName.
5	Select a destination agent from the drop-down box, it will load the related options.
6	Select a location from the Export Location drop-down box, this location need to setup for the SharePoint agent in the location setup section under the settings. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual. ***Note:** In order to do the migration successfully, the path of the location for SharePoint agent must be the same with the one for eRoom agent.
7	Select the drop-down box next to the Restore Detail, all exported data are listed in it. Select the data you want to restore. You can select multiple data to restore.
8	Select the Common Profile from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** This Profile has been set up in the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Basic Settings on the Basic Settings in this user guide.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual.
10	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can set setting for Email Notification for this migration job. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
11	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box under the *Schedule* tab.
12	Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">13</td><td colspan="2">Choose from the list of Migrate Options. (This option only applies to Standard Migration and Migrate with Metadata File).</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The contents (Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (lists / folders / documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite On Modify Time</td><td>If the file exists in the destination with the same created time, the conflict resolution will then refer to "modified time".</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td colspan="2">On the right side of the screen, select your Destination Agent from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td colspan="2">Select a destination. If you have already configured the stage destination, you must select the same destination Web Application as The Web Application you configured.

You can create a new Site Collection/Site/List/Library/Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it.

*Note: There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click Configure to select the template, the content database and enter the site collection username you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. For the site collection username, if the authentication of the web application is FBA, you must specify a FBA user for it. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient.

*Note: If the destination site you wish to create is Form Based Authentication, you should input a FBA user to be the Site Collection owner next to Site Collection Administrator. Or else, it will fail to create a new site collection.

If you select a list, you can click Load to load the content type of this list and define the content type for the migrating files by selecting a content type from the drop-down box.

Please note that migrated content will map according to the behaviors below:

<table>
<tr><th>If...</th><th>Then...</th></tr>
<tr><td>List</td><td>All contents will be migrated to the destination Site Collection, Site or List.

*Note: You cannot migrate to the Web Application level.</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Room	When Migrating to: • *Web Application* : It will create a new site collection using the same name as the room. • *Site Collection* : It will create a new site with the same name as the room. • *Site* : All of the room's content will be migrated to the destination.
	Facility	When Migrating to: • *Web Application* : It will migrate the rooms of this facility as new site collection. • *Site Collection* : It will migrate the rooms of this facility as new site.
	Community	When migrating to: • *Web Application* : It will migrate the rooms of this facility as new site collection. • *Site Collection* : It will migrate the rooms of this facility as new site.
17	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".	
18	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. You can go to the job report to view the process.	

***Note:** If you select Create Metadata when you export the data, you should configure the Metadata.xml as the following:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Copy (Data Location Setting)\eRoom Stage Data\PlanName\JobID\matadata_JobID.xml to the machine which installed SharePoint on. If there are several job folders, you should configure each matadata_JobID.xml. You can use Excel 2007 to import it. If you did not configure the Destination Config, you should enter DestinationURL and content type manually. More details for configuration please refer to Creating and Using metadata.xml. After your configuration, copy matadata_JobID.xml to the original path.

7.4.3.9 ERM Live Mode

To perform ERM migration, you should export the room or facility to.erm (or. erf) file first. Unzip these files. Copy them to the ERM stage location. You should select the specific destination SharePoint agent when you set the ERM stage location.

Example: If the stage location is \\server\c$\folderA, you should unzip your file erm1.erm to \\server\c$\folderA\erm1.

(7-79) ERM Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > eRoom > ERM Live Mode*.
2	Select a destination agent from the drop-down box.
3	Click the agent name to expand the tree to the destination.
4	Select the Export Location you set in the Settings from the drop-down box.
5	Select the Common Profile from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** This Profile has been set up in the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Basic Settings on the Basic Settings in this user guide.
6	Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">7</td><td colspan="2">Select a Migration Option from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not migrate the content if it already exists on the destination.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will migrate the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report. The URL and Name for this file in eRoom and SharePoint will be included in this report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite on Modify Time</td><td>If the file exists in the destination with the same created time, the conflict resolution will then refer to modified time.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">You can select a mapping file from the drop-down box next to "Mapping Setup". Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual for instructions on this process. This is an optional.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">Checking the Global Security will migrate all securities from stage location to SharePoint.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Click Plus icon in front of the ERM location name to expand the tree. Locate the content you wish to migrate.
11	Select a destination agent from the drop-down box, and click the plus icon next to the agent name to expand the data tree.
12	Drag this content to the destination.
13	After dragging the content to the destination location, the job will list in the Queue Window. Enter a positive number for the Maximum number of concurrent running jobs and click Save to limit the concurrent running jobs. You can click the button to begin the job. If pause the job, you can click the button. You can also click **Start All** to start all jobs.

7.4.3.10 ERM Plan Builder

(7-80) ERM Plan Builder

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *eRoom* > *ERM Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New** to create a new profile.
3	Input a name in the profile name field.
4	Under *eRoom Settings* tab, select a Export location from the drop-down box. This location can be set in the Settings. Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual.
5	You can select a mapping file from the drop-down box next to Mapping Setup. Please refer to Section Basic Settings of this Manual for instructions on this process. This is an optional.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Select the Common Profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: This Profile has been set up in the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Basic Settings on the Basic Settings in this user guide.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Basic Settings of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Under the Reporting tab, you can set setting for Email Notification for this migration job. These profiles are set up in the Control Panel section. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instruction on this process.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box under the Schedule tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">11</td><td colspan="2">Select a migrate option from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not migrate the content if it already exists on the destination.

For example, if an entire folder’s content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will migrate the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Append	This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added. If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report. The URL and Name for this file in eRoom and SharePoint will be included in this report.
	Overwrite on Modified Time	If the file exists in the destination with the same created time, the conflict resolution will then refer to modified time.
12	You can enter some descriptions in the corresponding field to distinguish this job from others.	
13	In the *Global Security* drop-down box, it includes four options: Tree Select, Not Restore Any Security, Restore All Security, and Only Restore Security. If you select *Restore All Security*, all the securities in the folders you selected will be migrated to the specified SharePoint site. If you select *Tree Select*, all the securities for the nodes you have selected in the tree will be migrated to the SharePoint environment. If you select *Not Restore Any Security*, it will not restore any security. If you select *Only Restore Secutiry*, it will only restore the security.	
14	Click plus icon next to the stage location name to expand the tree. Select the content you wish to migrate.	
15	Navigate to Destination Agent, click the agent name to expand the tree. If you select a list as the destination, and this list has several content types in it. You can click **Load** and select one content type from drop-down box.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	Click **Save** to save this plan. You can view this plan on the right of screen under the corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
17	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.
18	For Pre-scan Users, please refer to Pre-Scan Users section of this Manual.

7.4.4 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for eRoom

(7-81) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for eRoom

Source	Destination	Status	Known Issues
Discussion	Discussion	Supported	
All Notes	Announcements	Supported	
All Links	Links	Supported	
Project Plan	Project Tasks	Supported	
Poll	Survey	Supported	
Database	Custom List	Supported(database, database process, enterprise database) Unsupported(enterprise database overview)	
Inbox	Document Library	Supported	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Destination	Status	Known Issues
Home Folder	Document Library	Supported	
Security & Properties	Version Settings	Supported	
	Column Settings	Supported	
	Permissions	Supported	
Calendar	Calendar	Supported	
The vote in the list	Survey	Supported	
The version in the list attachment	N/A	Unsupported	
Manual inserted picture in the list	N/A	Unsupported	
DashBoard	N/A	Unsupported	
The replied title in Discussion	Reply body	Supported	
Recycle		Unsupported	
Site template	Team site	Supported	
	Blank site	Supported	
	Document workspace	Supported	
	Basic Meeting workspace	Supported	
	Blank Meeting workspace	Supported	
	Decision Meeting workspace	Supported	
	Social Meeting workspace	Supported	
	Multipage Meeting workspace	Supported	
eRoom/ERM Data	Extender	Supported	
	Connector		

eRoom Migration 6.x limitation

- Unsupported the Exception Event of Recurrence Event in Calendar.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

ERM Migration limitation

- Unsupported the Exception Event of Recurrence Event in Calendar.

7.5 Exchange Public Folder

This section allows you migrate the data in Exchange Public Folder to SharePoint 2007 and SharePoint 2010.

You can also use the Migration pre-scan tool to scan the source information and setup some mappings for the migration job. For more information about this tool, please refer to Public Folder Migration Section.

7.5.1 Installation

To make sure the Public Folder Migration Module is installed, follow the steps below:

(7-82) Installation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab verify that the Public Folder to SharePoint 2007/2010 Migrator option is checked.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will allow that front-end machine to appear on the GUI as a destination agent.

7.5.2 Uninstallation

To uninstall the Public Folder Migration module, follow the steps below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-83) Uninstallation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on Agent machine.
2	Under the *Migration* tab verify that the Public Folder to SharePoint 2007/2010 Migrator option is not checked.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will remove the Migration capabilities from this agent.

7.5.3 Using Exchange Public Folder Migrator

The basic requirement for Public Folder Migrator is remote access to the source Exchange server and local destination SharePoint server.

***Note:** The source Exchange server and target SharePoint server can be installed on a same server, but the conversion of .eml to .msg in this circumstance is not supported due to a Microsoft limitation. We recommend that: a) Install Exchange Server and SharePoint server on one server without installing Outlook. b) Install Exchange Server on one server, and install SharePoint and Outlook on another server. c) Install Exchange Server on one server, and SharePoint server on another one.

Outlook Web Access (OWA) Compatibility

Public Folder Migrator is programmed to migrate data from Exchange, so OWA is not mandatory. However, an Exchange IIS Virtual directory need to be set up as a URL DocAve required for reference. If OWA is not used, it is possible to set up the IIS Virtual directory without exposing that information to the end users.

As an added security measure, the HTTPS protocol can be utilized to IP restriction so that the DocAve migration agent can solely access the Virtual directory.

Please refer to your Microsoft Exchange documentation for details.

Before migrating content from Exchange into SharePoint, please note the destination types for your exchange content. Below is a table showing a few examples:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-84) Destination Type

Exchange Folder	SharePoint List / DocLib
Mail Folder	Document library (MSG files), Generic list (Items with attachments) and Discussion board (Keep message threading)
Contact Folder	Contact List
Calendar Folder	Calendar
Task Folder	Tasks List
Journal Folder	Generic List Document Library
Note Folder	Generic List

7.5.3.1 Basic Settings

You should configure the basic settings before performing the Exchange Public Folder migration. These basic settings have four parts: Exchange Connection, Migration Settings, Filter, and Mapping Setup.

Exchange Connection

Exchange Connection is used to configure a connection of Exchange.

(7-85) Exchange Connection

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Exchange Public Folder* > *Settings* > *Exchange Connection*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name for the connection profile.
3	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
4	Input the **Username** as domain\username format and **Password** to set up access of the Exchange.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select an access method to access to the Exchange server. There are two kinds of methods: WebDAV, which only supports Exchange 2000, 2003 and 2007: and Web Services method, which supports Exchange 2007 and 2010.
6	Specify an Exchange URL you want to migrate to SharePoint. Click **Test** to verify the connection.
7	After test successful, click **Save** to save this profile. A list of saved connection will appear on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Migration Settings

This section will describe how to set up the Migration Settings.

If Site is selected as the target type:

- *Create Root Folder* : After migration, the content selected from the source will be located in a root folder under the destination List in SharePoint.
- *Treat level 1 Folder as Root Folder* : After migration, the selected folder and the second level folder in it will both be created as root folders in the destination. The structure under the second level folder will not change.
- *Use Full Path As Target Name* : Each individual Folder / Subfolder in the source will be migrated to the new list in the destination as separate folders. The names of each separated folder will contain the original path name from the source.
- *Use unicode MSG File* : The default format for messages is ANSI MSG, which is readable for all Outlook versions, but non-ANSI characters may be changed to "?" in unsupported versions. Unicode MSG is readable from Outlook versions 2003 and above, and can support non-ANSI characters.
- *Set Outlook Home Page Url* : This will add the appropriate SharePoint URL to Outlook, redirecting the Exchange content to the corresponding SharePoint location. If this option is not selected during the initial migration, the migration plan can be opened at a later time and an incremental migration can be performed with this option selected. Doing such a migration will both update the SharePoint content with any changes that have occurred within Exchange since the original migration and enable redirection of the Exchange content to the corresponding SharePoint location.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Delete the source files which have been migrated to destination* : After migration, the selected content in the Exchange Public Folder on the source will be deleted.
- *Use Pre-defined SharePoint Content Type* : If this option is selected, it will use the pre-defined SharePoint content type when migration, and the new content type and the new row set up in Mapping Setup will invalid.
- *Minimum file name length to keep when truncating* : Specify a number in the provided field, and it will keep the file name accordingly.
- *Remove Outlook Home Page URL* : This option is for removing the set Outlook Home Page URL in the source only. Actual migration will not be performed.

If List is selected as the target type:

- *Create Root Folder* : After migration, the content selected from the source will be located in a root folder under the destination List in SharePoint. If unchecked, the items in the selected folder will be saved directly under the list.
- *Enforce Source Type Compatibility Check* : If this option is selected, before the migration is run, a type compatibility check will be performed between the source and the destination.
- *Use unicode MSG File* : The default format for messages is ANSI MSG, which is readable for all Outlook versions, but non-ANSI characters may be changed to ? in unsupported versions. Unicode MSG is readable from Outlook versions 2003 and above, and can support non-ANSI characters.
- *Set Outlook Home Page Url* : This will add the appropriate SharePoint URL to Outlook, redirecting the Exchange content to the corresponding SharePoint location. If this option is not selected during the initial migration, the migration plan can be opened at a later time and an incremental migration can be performed with this option selected. Doing such a migration will both update the SharePoint content with any changes that have occurred within Exchange since the original migration and enable redirection of the Exchange content to the corresponding SharePoint location.
- *Delete the source files which have been migrated to destination* : After migration, the selected content in the Exchange Public Folder on the source will be deleted.
- *Use Pre-defined SharePoint Content Type* : If this option is selected, it will use the pre-defined SharePoint content type when migration, and the new content type and the new row set up in Mapping Setup will invalid.
- *Minimum file name length to keep when truncating* : Specify a number in the provided field, and it will keep the file name accordingly.
- *Remove Outlook Home Page URL* : This option is for removing the set Outlook Home Page URL in the source only. Actual migration will not be performed.
- *Use Conversation As Discussion Threads* : If you select this option when you choose a Discussion Board as the destination, the original email will be migrated to be a topic and the emails which replied to or forwarded this email will be migrated to be the

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

items of this topic. If this option is not selected, each email will be migrated to be an individual topic.

Filter

The filter allows you to limit content based on modified / created dates.

(7-86) Filter

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Exchange Public Folder* > *Settings*.
2	Select the *Filte*r tab.
3	Click **New**, and then input a new profile name.
4	The Time Range includes five rules: Created Time, Modified Time, Received Time, Start Time, and Due Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.
5	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.
6	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From… To…* : Specify a interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select Before or After from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select a interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.
8	Click **Save** to save this filter. A list of saved filters will appear on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Mapping Setup

(7-87) Mapping Setup

Step	Action	
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > Exchange Public Folder > Settings> Mapping Setup*.	
2	Click **New** and enter a profile name for the mapping rule.	
3	Select an access method for the Exchange Property Type in the drop-down box.	
4	Under *Mapping Setup*tab, you can configure the SharePoint content type, exchange properties, content type mapping, folder mapping, illegal character mapping, user mapping, and security mapping.	
	If...	**Then...**

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	SharePoint Content Type	This setting is used to define a content type for migration. It will map all the items you set up in the list. To migrate some item to SharePoint, there are some required properties for specific item. 1. There are two columns of the table: • *Content Type Name* : This field indicates the name that will be used for this new content type in SharePoint (i.e. ExchangeDocument, ExchangeEvent, etc.). • *Basic Type Name* : Entries to this field should be a defined content type in SharePoint already (i.e. Document, Message, Task, Event, etc.). 2. Select the content type by clicking the corresponding radio button. Click **Edit** to setup the properties of the elements in the pop-up window. There are four columns for edit, and you can click **Add** icon or **Remove** icon to add a new property or remove a property. • *Name* : This will indicate the name of the property. • *Type* : Configuring the type will specify the type of field this will be converted to after importing to SharePoint (i.e. Text, Note, User, DateTime, etc.). If you click **Edit** button, you can select the Managed Metadata type from the drop-down box, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration. • *Display Name* : This will be the name displayed by SharePoint for this property. • *Build-in* : This will specify whether the property is a standard SharePoint property, or a custom specification.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	SharePoint Content Type	3. Click **OK** to save the modification and exit the pop-up window. 4. To add or remove the content type, you can click the **Add** icon or **Remove i**con.
	Exchange Properties	Exchange property allows you to set the relationship between the alias name and internal name of the various Exchange properties. There are two columns need to setup. • *Display Name* : This column is the alias name given to the property. This name will come up again in the Item Mapping section. • *Exchange Property Tag* : This column is the internal property name given in Exchange. To add or remove the exchange property, you can click the Add icon or Remove icon.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Content Type Mapping	This setting is used to define a content type mapping for migration. It will map all the items you set up in the list. 1. There are three columns of the table: • *Exchange Message Class* : In this column it list the content type in Exchange. • *SharePoint Content Type* : This column is used to define the corresponding content type in SharePoint. • *SharePoint List Template* : Select a SharePoint list template for the mapping. 2. Select the content type by clicking the corresponding radio button. Click **Edit** to setup the properties of the elements in the pop-up window. There are two columns for edit. • *Exchange Column Name* : This is the column name in Exchange. You can click "..." button to indicate the name of the property in the pop-up window. Click **Define Macro**, you can map the property by macro. For example, enter the macro [title] by [Author], it will map the author in source to title in destination. • *SharePoint Column Name* : This lists the corresponding column name in SharePoint. 3. Click **OK** to save the modification and exit the pop-up window. 4. To add or remove the content type, you can click the Add icon or Remove icon.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Folder Mapping	This setting is used to define the folder type mapping for migration. There are two columns: • *Exchange Folder type* : This column is the folder type in Exchange, you cannot edit it. • *SharePoint List Template* : This column is used to specify the list template for the Exchange folder type in SharePoint. All the list template can be used for the corresponding Exchange folder type is listed in the drop-down list.
	User Mapping	This mapping is used to map some information of the users' from Exchange to SharePoint. There are three mapping options: • *User Mapping* : This option allows you map the Exchange user/group to SharePoint. • *Domain Mapping* : This option allows you map the domain of the Exchange user's to SharePoint domain. • *Destination Default User* : This option allows you to specify a user in SharePoint as the destination default user.
	Illegal Character Mapping	This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters. You need configure the illegal characters replace setting for two level: Folder Level and Item Level. Click **More illegal character**, a pop-up a window will appear. Select the character by checking the corresponding box, and click **Add** to add a new row.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Security Mapping	This mapping is used to map some permission from the Exchange to SharePoint. By default, it will map all the items you set up in the list. 1. There are two columns of the table: • *Exchange Permission* : In this column it list the permission in Exchange. • *SharePoint Permission Level* : This column lists the permission in Share-Point. 2. Select the SharePoint permission from the corresponding drop-down box. 3. If you do not map the specific permission, you need to select the No Mapping option. 4. You can setup a new SharePoint permis-sion level by clicking **New SharePoint Permissions.** 5. Enter a name in the pop-up window. You may enter a **Description** in the field pro-vided to help distinguish this permission. 6. Select the permission for the SharePoint Permission level by checking correspond-ing check box. 7. Click **OK** to save the modification and exit the pop-up window.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">5</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as a xml file by using the Download and Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration file, the user have different selection depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Setting interface.

*Note: The Folder Mapping and Security Mapping unsupported the Merge feature.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the content which the existing file hasn’t to the existing file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current selected one.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save this profile. A list of saved Mapping Profile will appear on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with “(1)”.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Required Fields for content type mapping

(7-88) Required Fields for content type mapping

Source	Destination	Required fields
ExchangeDocument	Document	Title, ExchangeID
ExchangeMessage	Message	Title, ExchangeID
ExchangeContact	Contact	Title, ExchangeID
ExchangeEvent	Event	Title, ExchangeID
ExchangeTask	Task	Title, ExchangeID
ExchangeNote	Message	Title, ExchangeID
ExchangeActivity	Message	Title, ExchangeID
ExchangeDiscussion-Reply	Message	Title, ExchangeID, PostReply

7.5.3.2 Plan Builder

In order to migrate information from Microsoft Exchange to SharePoint follow the steps below:

(7-89) Plan Builder

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > Exchange Public Folder > Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New** and enter a name for the plan.
3	Under *Migration Settings* tab, you can setup the basic settings for the migration.
4	Select a migration setting from the drop-down box called Common Settings. ***Note:** For more information of the Migration Setting, you can refer to the Section Migration Settings of this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select a Filter from drop-down box next to it. It is not a required field. ***Note:** The user Profile has been set up in Filter under the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Filter on the Basic Setting in this user guide.
6	Select a Mapping setup profile from the drop-down box. ***Note:** If you select a WebDAV mapping profile, the Exchange 2010 agent cannot be loaded. ***Note:** For more information of the Migration Setting, you can refer to the Section Mapping Setup of this Manual.
7	Select the *Reporting* tab to choose an email notification. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
8	Select the *Schedule* Tab.
9	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box.
10	Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, or Month schedule. To create a second schedule, select the *Schedule B* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">11</td><td colspan="2">There are two migration types: Full and Incremental.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all content from the source to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies only the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">12</td><td colspan="2">Migration options include two options: Not Overwrite and Overwrite.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content (Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder’s content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the content from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (Lists / Folders / Documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	After setting up these basic configurations, select the Agent then Exchange connection profile from the drop-down box. This will populate the folder content of Exchange. ***Note:** If you select Exchange 2010, only the Web Services kind profile can be selected in the Mapping Setup option.
15	Click the content name to expand the data tree. It can list the folder content by selecting the Display folder content option.
16	Select the appropriate items from the public folder by checking the check boxes.
17	Click the destination agent name on the right screen to expand the data tree. You can create a new folder by inputting the folder name into the blank input field next to the folder icon.
18	You can find the content you want to migrate by clicking the button after the URL and it will pop-up the Advance Search window. Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click **Add** to add the criteria. It will be listed underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.
19	Select the destination by clicking the corresponding radio button. Exchange folder structure will be maintained for mail folders if moved to a document library. If the subfolder type is different from the parent folder, a new list or document library will be created for the subfolder and a link item will be created in the parent list or document library pointing to the new list. To make it easier, it's best to organize the public folder structure to be consistent before the migration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
20	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now.** Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run.** You can go to the Job Report to view the process.
21	You can click **Delete all plans** to delete all plans you set up.

Many To Many Migration

You can also run a many to many migration by using DocAve Exchange Public Folder Migration.

(7-90) Many to Many Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > Exchange Public Folder > Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New** and input a name in the field next to the Plan Name.
3	Select a Common Settings, Mapping Setup, and Filter from the corresponding drop-down box.
4	Select the Import Migration Mapping option, and then click **Download XSD** to download the mapping profile.
5	Open a new excel file, and open the Excel Options window to select the *Show Developer* tab in the Ribbon option.
6	Select the Source feature within the *Developer* tab, and the XML Source window will be listed on the right.
7	Click **XML Maps...** to load the mapping profile you download. The mapping list will list in the right column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Drag the connectionName and destinationAgent, and enter the appropriate content into the corresponding cell. • *connectionName* : You need to enter a connectionName into the corresponding cell, it is the Connection Profile Name you have set under Exchange Connection tab of Settings in Exchange Public Folder migration. • *destinationAgent* : Enter the destination agent host full name or the IP address into the corresponding cell, it needs to be uniform with the content you setup in Agent Configuration Tool. ***Note:** You can only specify one source name and one destination agent.
9	Drag the content under the source from the right column. You need to specify the source content you want to migrate one by one. • *path* : It is the public folder path. • *security* : It represents whether you migrate the permissions of the folder to the destination. True is for migrating, or else, it is False.
10	Drag the content under the destination from the right column. You need to specify the destination you want to migrate to one by one. • *webAppURL* : It is the full URL of Web Application. • *siteCollectionURL* : It is the full URL of Site Collection. • *siteName* : It is the name of the Site. • *listName* : It is the name of the List.
11	Click **Export** to save the configurations as an XML file.
12	Go back to DocAve GUI and click **Upload** to upload the mapping profile.
13	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can select an email notification rule. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for this instruction on this process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Under the Schedule tab, you can specify scheduled plan if you don't want to run the plan immediately. You can refer to the Plan Builder (7-84) table for the detailed information.
15	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now.** Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run.** You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

7.5.4 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Public Folder Migration

(7-91) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Public Folder Migration

Source	Destination	Status
Note Items	Root web	Supported
	Subsite	
	Task	
	Calendar	
	Contacts	
	Custom (Matching Type)	
	Discussion Board	
	Share Documents	
	Announcements	
Journal Items	Root web	Supported
	Subsite	
	Task	
	Calendar	
	Contacts	
	Custom (Matching Type)	
	Discussion Board	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Destination	Status
Journal Items	Share Documents	Supported
	Announcements	
Calendar Items	Root web	Supported
	Subsite	
	Task	
	Calendar (Matching Type)	
	Contacts	
	Custom	
	Discussion Board	
	Share Documents	
	Announcements	
Contact Items	Root web	Supported
	Subsite	
	Task	
	Calendar	
	Contacts (Matching Type)	
	Custom	
	Discussion Board	
	Share Documents	
	Announcements	
Mail Items	Root web	Supported
	Subsite	
	Task	
	Calendar	
	Contacts	
	Custom (Matching Type)	
	Discussion Board (Matching Type)	
	Share Documents (Matching Type)	
	Announcements (Matching Type)	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Destination	Status
Task Items	Root web	Supported
	Subsite	
	Task (Matching Type)	
	Calendar	
	Contacts	
	Custom	
	Discussion Board	
	Share Documents	
	Announcements	
Public Folder Data	Extender	Supported
	Connector	

***Note:** If the destination type isn't the matching type of source side, you need to navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Exchange Public Folder* > *Settings* > *Migration Settings* > *List*, and then uncheck *Enforce Source Type Compatibility Check* option. During the migration, it will create a matching type and generate a link in the destination type, and then the destination type will link to the matching type.

7.6 Livelink Migration

DocAve Livelink Migrator can migrate the content on the Livelink Server to SharePoint 2007 and SharePoint 2010. In order to perform Livelink migration, you must be running Livelink version above 9.x.

You can also use the Migration pre-scan tool to scan the source information and setup some mappings for the migration job. For more information about this tool, please refer to Livelink Migration Section.

7.6.1 Installation

To perform a migration from Livelink to SharePoint 2007 or SharePoint 2010, a DocAve agent must be installed on both the SharePoint Front-End Server machine and the machine which can connect to the Livelink machine. To make sure the Livelink Migration module is installed on both, follow the steps below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-92) Installation

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">1</td><td colspan="2">After performing all installation steps on the two machines for the DocAve Agent, navigate to the Agent Configuration Tool in each environment.

*Note: Before you install the Livelink agent, you need to install the Microsoft Visual J#.net Redistributable Package 2.0, which can be downloaded from the Microsoft Website at: http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/vjsharp/bb188598.aspx. If you use Oracle Database, the Oracle client must be installed on the Livelink agent machine, and the Oracle client must be installed on 32 bit operation system. Or else, you cannot access to the database.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint Front-End Server machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check Livelink Migration for SharePoint 2007/2010 agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The machine which can connect to the Livelink machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check Livelink Migration for Livelink agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click Confirm and restart the Agent services.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Start the DocAve Manager application and navigate to Control Panel.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Open the Agent Monitor under Agent Services and navigate to the new agent and click the corresponding Configure button.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Enter the domain, username, and password in the given input fields.

*Note: If the machine has no domain, use “.” in this field instead.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click Save (for each agent).</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** The user you specified for Livelink Agent must have permission to access the installation directory of LiveLink Agent in net share mode.

7.6.2 Uninstallation

To uninstall the Livelink module, follow the steps below:

(7-93) Uninstallation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on the SharePoint agent.
2	Under the *Migration* tab, uncheck the Livelink Migration for SharePoint 2007 Agent option.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will remove the Migration tool capabilities from this agent.

7.6.3 Settings

Livelink Migration allows you import content from your Livelink agent to your SharePoint 2007 and SharePoint 2010 environments. When importing items from Livelink, the following mapping will occur:

(7-94) Item Mapping

Source	Destination
Workspace	Site Collection
Appearance	Document Library or Folder
Appearance Workspace Folder	Folder
Category	List and version -> Content Type
Channel	Announcements List
Compound Document	Document Library or Folder
Discussion	Discussion Board

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Destination
Document	Document In Document Library List
Folder	Document Library or Folder
Poll	Survey
Project	Site Collection or Site
Short Cut	Link to Document Content Type In Document Library List
Task List	Project Task
Task Group	Folder in Task List
Task	Task Item
Text Document	Document
URL	Link to Document Content Type In Document Library List
XML DTD	Document

7.6.3.1 Livelink Connection

You need to configure the Livelink connection to make sure the DocAve agent can connect to the Livelink server.

Setting Up a Livelink Connection Without The HTTP Tunneling

(7-95) Setting Up Livelink Connection

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Livelink* > *Settings* > *Livelink Connection*.
2	Click **New**, and then enter a connection profile name into the provided field.
3	Select an agent you want to use to connect to Livelink server.
4	Uncheck the Use HTTP Tunneling box. By default, this option is not selected.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Enter the hostname of the Livelink server into the provided field and specify the corresponding port. By default, the port number is 2099.
6	Enter the Livelink domain, if you want to access to the Livelink system domain, you need to leave this option blank.
7	Specify the Livelink username and the password to setup access to the Livelink server.
8	You can also select the Livelink Database Connection option, you should configure the Livelink database information. To view the detailed information about it, you can navigate to *Linklink Administration* > *Database Administration* > *Maintain Current Database*, and then enter the appropriate information. ***Note:** Livelink stores all the data in the database, but we can load most of data by using the API(Application Programming Interface). If you do not configure the Livelink database connection, the following content cannot be migrated. • Best Bets Value\ Best Bets Expiry • Poll Results
9	Click **Test** to verify the connection, and click **Save** to save the configuration. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

Setting Up a Livelink Connection Using the HTTP Tunneling

(7-96) Setting Up Livelink Connection

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Livelink* > *Settings* > *Livelink Connection*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Click **New**, and then enter a connection profile name into the provided field.
3	Select an agent you want to use to connect to Livelink server.
4	Check the Use HTTP Tunneling box, and some options will appear underneath.
5	You should select whether use proxy server to access to Livelink. If you do not want to use proxy server, you should select the Web Server option.
6	Enter the hostname of the proxy server/web server(if you select to use the Web Server) into the provided field and specify the corresponding port. By default, the port number is 80.
7	If select to use the proxy server, you need enter an entire livelink CGI URL. If select to use the web server, a relative CGI URL is enough.
8	Enter the Livelink domain, if you want to access to the Livelink system domain, you need to leave this option blank.
9	Specify the Livelink username and the password to setup access to the Livelink server.
10	Specify the HTTP username and the password to setup access to the web server.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	You can also select the Livelink Database Connection option, you should configure the Livelink database information. To view the detailed information about it, you can navigate to *Linklink Administration* > *Database Administration* > *Maintain Current Database*, and then enter the appropriate information. ***Note:** Livelink stores all the data in the database, but we can load most of data by using the API(Application Programming Interface). If you do not configure the Livelink database connection, the following content cannot be migrated. • Best Bets Value\ Best Bets Expiry • Poll Results
12	Click **Test** to verify the connection, and click **Save** to save the configuration.

7.6.3.2 Common Configuration

In this section, you can setup some common configurations for the migration job.

(7-97) Configuration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Livelink* > *Settings* > *Common Configuration*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td colspan="2">Within the Configuration tab, there are three levels to setup.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Site Collection/ Site</td><td>There are several options you can setup.
Managed Path : If need to create a site collection, the content you entered will be the managed path for the site. By default, the managed path is “sites”.
Create Site Template : This option allows you to select a template for the creating site collection or site.
Create Site Language : This option allows you to select a language for the creating site collection or site.
Add the site name to top link bar of the parent site when creating a site : If you select this option, it will add the new site to the top link bar of its parent site.
Add the site name to quick launch of the parent site when creating a site : If you select this option, it will add the new site to the quick launch bar of its parent site.
Inherit top link bar of the parent site when creating a site : The new site will inherit its parent site’s top link bar.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List/Item	There are several options you can setup. • *Create content type for the folders to migrate the folder's properties* : There is no folder properties in SharePoint, you can select this option to specify a content type for the folder's properties. • *Migrate root file to document library* : It will migrate the root file under the workspace. • *Migrate Categories to destination* •It will migrate the categories to the destination as a separate Category list and it will add a link in the doc columns for all the documents which are relative to the Category. • *Migrate Categories as Content Type* : If you select this option, the category will be set to be a content type in the destination. • *Do not create top level folder on destination* : If you select this option, it will only migrate the content under the top folder to destination. • *Migrate shortcuts to destination* : It will migrate the shortcuts to the destination. • *Migrate Compound Documents as Document Sets* : It will migrate the Compound Documents to the destination as Document Sets in SharePoint 2010. ***Note:** If this option is unchecked, the Compound Documents will be migrated to the destination as folders.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List Mapping	You can setup the template mapping, column mapping for the list by select the List Mapping option. 1. Select the template for the Livelink and SharePoint you want to setup the mapping from the drop-down box. 2. Enter the list name into the Livelink Name box to specify the lists you want to do the template mapping and column mapping. Enter the name into the SharePoint Name column, it will run a name mapping on the appropriate lists. ***Note:** If you enter the "*" into the Livelink Name and SharePoint Name columns, it will run the template mapping and column mapping on all the list with the specified template. 3. Enter the column name of the Livelink and SharePoint, and specify the column type. It will map the column accordingly. If there is no column you specified in SharePoint, it will create the new column in SharePoint. ***Note:** If you select the Managed Metadata SharePoint Column Type from the drop-down box, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Permission	There are two options you can setup. • *Break permission inheritance* : This option allows breaking the inherited permissions of any List/ Item/ File/ Folder and migrate the content according to the Access Control on Livelink. It will make the Access Control restore precisely, but the restore inefficiently. We recommend that you use this option when you have a strict access control. • *Restore user* : It will map the users to the destination.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Within the Characters section within the Common Configuration tab, there are two kinds of settings: Characters length setting and Illegal characters replace setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Characters length setting</td><td>You can control the filename's maximum length. There are three qualifications: The maximum length of folder names, The maximum length of file names and The maximum length of Share-Point URL.

If the folder or filename exceed the byte length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and auto-matically prune the extra bytes. The truncated file name will be recorded in the zip package in the Job Report

*Note: The filename length should be adjusted to include the extension.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Illegal characters replace setting</td><td>This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters.

You need configure the illegal characters replace setting for three level: Group Level, Folder Level, and File Level.

Click More illegal character, a pop-up a window will appear. Select the character by checking the corresponding box, and click Add to add a new row.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">4</td><td colspan="2">Within the Security section within the Common Configuration tab, you can configure the domain mapping, group mapping, user mapping, and permission mapping.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Domain Mapping</td><td>This option allows you to map the domain of the Livelink to SharePoint's</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Group Mapping	This option allows you to map the group of the Livelink to that of SharePoint.
	User Mapping	This option allows you map the Livelink user to SharePoint. You must enter the login name for Livelink and SharePoint
	Permission Mapping	You can setup the permission mapping on the four levels (Workspace, List, Folder, and File/ Item). • *Workspace Level* : DocAve restore the user privilege as a group in SharePoint, and assign the permission to the group. If there are several users with the same privileges, you can restore them to one group and assign the relative permission by selecting the LiveLink Privileges, SharePoint Group and SharePoint Permission in the corresponding drop-down boxes.You can also create a new LiveLink/ SharePoint Group/ SharePoint Permission by clicking the corresponding buttons. Click icon to add new row and click icon to delete it. • *List level/ Folder Level/File/Item Level* : You can map the LiveLink Permission to the SharePoint Permission by selecting the SharePoint permission in the corresponding drop-down box. You can create a new SharePoint permission by clicking **New SharePoint Permission.**
5	Click **Save** to save the configurations. The profile will be listed on the right column. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.6.3.3 Export Location

To export the data in Livelink to the local, you need to setup an export location first.

(7-98) Setting up Export Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Livelink* > *Settings*.
2	Go to *Export Location* tab, click **New** and then enter the desired name in the corresponding text.
3	Select an agent, and set a location to save the exported data from Livelink in Data location Setting.
4	You should input the **Username** as domain\username format, **Password** and the **Path**. For example: \\IP Address\disk driver $\path.
5	After setting up the location, click **Test** to test the path. If tested successfully, click **Save** to save the profile. It will be displayed under the corresponding agent in the Export Location column on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

7.6.3.4 Filter

In this section, you can set the filter to limit content based on modified / created dates, as well as file size and other parameters.

(7-99) Setting up Filter Policy

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Livelink* > *Settings* > *Filter*.
2	Within File Filter, and click **New** and enter a name in the field to provide a name for this filter.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Input the filter criteria in the field. It supports * as the filter criteria. **+** means the files you input will be included. **-** means the files you input will be excluded. Click the this icon to switch it. Click **Add** to add a new line.
4	Check the checkbox in front of the File Size, you can select greater than, less than or equal to from the drop down box. Enter a positive number in the text box and select KB, MB or GB from the drop-down box.
5	Within the Time Range, you can setup a filter policy to filter the content by the created time and modified time.
6	The Time Range includes two rules: Created Time and Modified Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.
7	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.
8	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From… To…* : Specify a interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select Before or After from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select a interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.
9	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">Click Save. After the filter has successfully been saved, it will be displayed on the right.

After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">11</td><td colspan="2">Within the Version Filter tab, you can setup a version filter policy. You can apply the version filter to two kinds items: Documents and Compound Documents.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Documents</td><td>Enter a version number you want to migrate to the destination for each document into the text box. If you leave this box blank, it will migrate all version to the destination.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Compound Documents</td><td>You can specify the number of the latest release and revision to migrate.

For example, the release and revision of the Compound Document in Livelink is 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 2.0, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 3.0, and 3.1.

• If setup the Release number is 2, the Revision number is 2, the 2. 0, 2.3, 3.0, and 3.1 will be migrated.
• If setup the Release number is 1, the Revision number is 2, the 2.3, 3.0, and 3.1 will be migrated.
• If setup the Release number is 1, and leave the Revision empty, the 3.0, and 3.1 will be migrated.
• If setup the Release number is 2, and leave the Revision empty, the 2. 0, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 3.0, 3.1 will be migrated.
• If leave the Release number empty, all the release and revision will be migrated.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	Click **Save**. After the filter has successfully been saved, it will be displayed on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

7.6.4 Live Mode

To run a live mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-100) Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > Livelink > Live Mode*.
2	Select your Livelink server from the Livelink drop-down box, it will be listed underneath.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Choose from the list of Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content (Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (Lists / Folders / Documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3... And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select a Common Profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The Common Profile has been set up in the Common Configuration under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Common Configuration of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Select the workspace from the Workspace Filter drop-down box, and the workspace you select will be listed underneath.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	If you select the *Global Security* checkbox, all securities of the content you selected in the tree will be migrated to the specified SharePoint.
8	On the right side of the screen, click on the plus icon before the agent name to expand the tree to the location you want to migrate to. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used.After you drag and drop the source content to this manual input field, a pop-up window will appear, you can select the template, content database and enter the site collection administrator you want to specify for the new site collection. If the authentication of the web application is FBA, you must specify a FBA user for it. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** If the destination site you wish to create is Form Based Authentication, you should input a FBA user to be the Site Collection owner next to *Site Collection Administrator*. Or else, it will fail to create a new site collection.
9	On the left side of the screen, click on the plus icon before the source server name to expand the tree and select the content you wish to migrate. Drag the content to the destination location. When you drag the content, it will have a tip to prompt you the destination location. ***Note:** The destination locations are available from root web to folder.
10	After dragging the content to the destination location, it will popup a dialog box. Select a content type in the drop-down box, it will use this specified type when you restore the content. You can click **Cancel** to cancel the job.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	After clicking **OK**, the job will list in the Queue Window. Enter a positive number for the Maximum number of concurrent running jobs and click **Save** to limit the concurrent running jobs. You can click the button to begin the job. To pause the job, you can click the button. You can also click **Start All** to start all jobs.
12	If the job failed, you can go to Job Monitor to resume the job. Select the failed job, and then click Resume button to continue the job.

7.6.5 Standard Mode Migration

To configure a standard mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-101) LiveLink Standard Mode Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Livelink* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New**, and then input a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
3	Select Standard from the Mode drop-down box.
4	Select a common profile you want to use during this migration in the corresponding drop-down box. This is a mandatory option. ***Note:** it has been set up in the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Common Configuration of this Manual.
5	Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Under the Reporting tab, you can set Email Notification for this migration job. These profiles are set up in the Control Panel. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box under the Schedule tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, or Month schedule.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">9</td><td colspan="2">Specify a Migration type by selecting the radio button. There are two migration type: Full and Incremental.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from Livelink to SharePoint, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in Livelink appear as duplicate items in SharePoint. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">10</td><td colspan="2">Choose from the list of Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content (Lists / Folders / Documents) will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents (lists / folders / documents) in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">For multiple schedules, select the Schedule B tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">After setting up these basic configurations, select your Livelink Connection from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">Select the workspace from the Workspace Filter drop-down box, and the workspace you select will be listed underneath.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
15	In the *Global Security* drop-down box, it includes three options: Tree Select, Not Restore Any Security, and Restore All Security. If you select *Restore All Security*, all the securities in the folders you selected will be migrated to the specified SharePoint site. If you select *Tree Select*, all the securities for the nodes you have selected in the tree will be migrated to the SharePoint environment. If you select *Not Restore Any Security,* it will not restore any security.
16	Click on the agent name to expand the tree in the left of the screen. All of the content found in Livelink will be listed.
17	Browse the tree structure to find the folder you are looking to import content from. In order to see the files inside the content, open the file browser by clicking on the icon after the URL. You can find the content you want to migrate by clicking the icon after the URL and it will pop-up the advance search window. Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click the Add button add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.
18	Once you have found the content you would like to migrate, select it by checking off the appropriate files on the file browser, or by selecting the folder from the tree by clicking the check box next to it.
19	On the right side of the screen, select your Destination Agent from the drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
20	Navigate through the tree structure of the SharePoint environment to find your destination for the files. Clicking on the corresponding radio button next to the document library to select it. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the template, the content database and enter the site collection administrator you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. For the site collection administrator, if the authentication of the web application if FBA, you must specify a FBA user for it. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. If you select a list, you can click **Load** to load the content type of this list and define the content type of the migrating files by selecting a content type from the drop-down box. ***Note:** If the destination site you wish to create is Form Based Authentication, you should input a FBA user to be the Site Collection owner next to *Site Collection Administrator*. Or else, it will fail to create a new site collection.
21	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan Viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
22	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
23	If the job failed, you can go to Job Monitor to resume the job. Select the failed job, and then click Resume button to continue the job.

7.6.6 Export Mode Migration

This kind migration allow you export the data the a specify location from Livelink.

(7-102) Export Mode Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Livelink* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New**, and then input a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
3	Select Export to Staging in the Migration Mode drop-down box.
4	Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.
5	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can set setting for Email Notification for this migration job. These profiles are set up in the Control Panel section. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instruction on this process.
6	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box under the *Schedule* tab.
7	Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, or Month Schedule.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">8</td><td colspan="2">Specify a Migration Type by selecting the radio button. There are two migration type: Full and Incremental.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from Livelink to SharePoint, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in Livelink appear as duplicate items in SharePoint. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">For multiple schedules, select the Schedule B tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">After setting up these basic configurations, select your Livelink Connection from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">Select the workspace from the Workspace Filter drop-down box, and the workspace you select will be listed underneath.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	Select a location from the Export Location drop-down box, this location need to setup for the Livelink agent in the location setup section under the settings. For more information, please refer to the Section Export Location of this Manual. The data will export to this location.
14	In the *Global Security* drop-down box, it includes three options: Tree Select, Not Restore Any Security, and Restore All Security. If you select *Restore All Security*, all the securities in the folders you selected will be migrated to the specified SharePoint site. If you select *Tree Select*, all the securities for the nodes you have selected in the tree will be migrated to the SharePoint environment. If you select *Not Restore Any Security* it will not restore any security.
15	Click on the agent name to expand the tree in the left of the GUI. All of the communities found in Livelink will be listed.
16	Browse the tree structure to find the folder you are looking to import content from. In order to see the files inside the folder, open the file browser by clicking on the icon after the URL. You can find the content you want to migrate by clicking the icon after the URL and it will pop-up the Advance Search window. Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click **Add** to add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
17	Once you have found the content you would like to migrate, select it by checking off the appropriate files on the file browser, or by selecting the folder from the tree browser by clicking the check box next to it.
18	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
19	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. You can go to the job report to view the process.
20	After finishing this job, the selected content will be exported to the location below: (Data Location Setting)\Livelink Stage Data\PlanName.
21	If the job failed, you can go to Job Monitor to resume the job. Select the failed job, and then click Resume button to continue the job.

7.6.7 Import Mode Migration

This migration allows you restore the exported data to the SharePoint.

(7-103) Import Mode Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *Livelink* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New**, and then input a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
3	Select Import from Staging in the Migration Mode drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Copy the exported data (Livelink Stage Data folder and the content) to the path which is set in the Export Location.
5	Select a destination agent from the drop-down box, it will load the related options.
6	Select a location from the Export Location drop-down box, this location need to setup for the SharePoint agent in the location setup section under the settings. For more information, please refer to the Section Export Location of this Manual.
7	Select the drop-down box next to the Restore Detail, all exported data are listed in it. Select the data you want to restore. You can select multiple data to restore.
8	Select the Common Profile from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** This Profile has been set up in the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Common Configuration on the Basic Settings in this user guide.
9	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can set setting for Email Notification for this migration job. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
10	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box under the *Schedule* tab.
11	Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">12</td><td colspan="2">Choose from the list of Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not migrate the content if it already exists on the destination.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will migrate the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report. The URL and Name for this file in eRoom and SharePoint will be included in this report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite on Modify Time</td><td>If the file exists in the destination with the same created time, the conflict resolution will then refer to "modified time."</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	Select a destination. If you have already configured the stage destination, you must select the same destination Web Application as The Web Application you configured. You can create a new Site Collection/Site/List/Library/Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the template, the content database and enter the site collection administrator you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. For the site collection administrator, if the authentication of the web application is FBA, you must specify a FBA user for it. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. If you select a list, you can click **Load** to load the content type of this list and define the content type of the migrating files by selecting a content type in the drop-down box. ***Note:** If the destination site you wish to create is Form Based Authentication, you should input a FBA user to be the Site Collection owner next to *Site Collection Administrator*. Or else, it will fail to create a new site collection.
15	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
16	Click **Run Now**. You can go to the job report to view the process.
17	If the job failed, you can go to Job Monitor to resume the job. Select the failed job, and then click Resume button to continue the job.

***Note:** You cannot run the import job on a schedule.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.6.8 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Livelink

(7-104) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for Livelink

Source	Destination	Status
Enterprise Workspace	Site Collection	Supported
My Workspace	Site Collection / My Site	Supported
Domain Workspace	Site Collection	Supported
Project	Site Collection/ Site	Supported (Unsupported Project Template)
Channel	Announcements list	Supported
Discussion	Discussion Board	Supported
Poll	Survey	Supported
Task List	Project Tasks	Supported
Task Group	Folder inside a Project Tasks List	Supported
Task	Task	Supported
Milestone	Content Type of Project Task List	Supported
Compound Document	Document Library/ Folder	Supported
Appearance	Document Library/ Folder	Supported
Appearance Workspace Folder	Folder	Supported
Folder	Document Library/ Folder	Supported
URL	Link to Document Content Type	Supported
Short Cut	Link to Document Content Type	Supported
Text Document	File in Document Library	Supported
Document(Version)	File in Document Library	Supported
XML DTD	File in Document Library	Supported
Category	Custom List	Supported
Category Version	Content Type of Custom List	Supported
Collection	N/A	Unsupported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Source	Destination	Status
Custom View	N/A	Unsupported
Live Report	N/A	Unsupported
Prospector	N/A	Unsupported
Workflow Map	N/A	Unsupported
Workflow Status	N/A	Unsupported
My Home	N/A	Unsupported
Livelink Data	Extender	Supported
	Connector	

Properties

(7-105) Properties

Properties	Status
General	Supported
Categories	Supported
Specific	Unsupported
Audit	Supported
Ratings	Unsupported
Reference	Supported
Presentation	Unsupported
Version	Only supported Document Version

Notification

(7-106) Notification

Notification	Status
Notification	Unsupported

Security

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-107) Security

Security	Status
User Privileges	Supported
Permission	Supported

Reserved

(7-108) Reserved

Reserved	Status
Reserved	Only Supported File

7.7 EMC Documentum

The EMC Documentum migration allows you to import content from your EMC Documentum to your SharePoint 2007 and SharePoint 2010 environments. When importing items from EMC Documentum, the following mapping will occur:

(7-109) Item Mapping

Source	Destination
Cabinet	SiteCollection or SubSite
Folder	Library or Folder
Document	Document In Document Library List
Type	Content Type

7.7.1 Installation

To perform a migration from EMC Documentum to SharePoint 2007 or SharePoint 2010, DocAve agents must be installed on the EMC Documentum and SharePoint machine respectively. To make sure the EMC Documentum Migrator module is installed on both, follow the steps below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-110) Installation

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">1</td><td colspan="2">After performing all installation steps on both the EMC Documentum and SharePoint 2007/2010 machines for the DocAve Agent, navigate to the Agent Configuration Tool in each environment.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>EMC Documentum Machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check EMC Documentum Migration for EMC Documentum agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SharePoint 2007/ 2010 Machine</td><td>Under the Migration tab, check EMC Documentum Migration for SharePoint 2007/2010 agent.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Click Confirm and restart the Agent services.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Start the DocAve Manager application and navigate to Control Panel.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Open the Agent Monitor under Agent Services and select the new agents from the column on the left.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click Save (for each agent).</td></tr>
</table>

This allows the front-end machine to appear on the GUI as a destination agent.

***Note:** The user you specified for EMC Documentum Agent must have permission to access the installation directory of EMC Documentum Agent in net share mode.

7.7.2 Uninstallation

To uninstall the EMC Documentum Migrator module, follow the steps below:

(7-111) Uninstallation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the **Agent Configuration Tool** on the SharePoint agent.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Under the *Migration* tab, uncheck the EMC Documentum Migration for SharePoint 2007/2010 Agent option.
3	Click **Confirm** and restart the Agent services.

This will remove the Migration tool capabilities from this agent.

7.7.3 Settings

You should configure the basic settings before performing the migration. The basic setting has Three parts: EMC Documentum Connection, Common Configuration, and Filter.

7.7.3.1 EMC Documentum Connection

You need to configure the EMC Documentum connection to make sure the DocAve agent can connect to the EMC Documentum server.

(7-112) Setting Up EMC Documentum Connection

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *EMC Documentum* > *Settings* > *EMC Documentum Connection*.
2	Click **New,** and then enter a connection profile name into the provided field.
3	Select an agent from the drop-down box. This lists all the agents which installed on the EMC Documentum machine.
4	Specify a user who can access the EMC Documentum, and the corresponding password in the **Login Name** and **Password** field.
5	Specify the repository name you want to access in the **Repository**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Enter the domain where the specified user belong to into the **Domain**.
7	Click **Test** to verify the connection, and click **Save** to save the configuration. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

7.7.3.2 Common Configuration

In this section, you can setup some common configurations for the migration job.

(7-113) Configuration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *EMC Documentum* > *Settings* > *Common Configuration*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td colspan="2">Within the Configuration tab, there are three levels to setup.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Site Collection/ Site</td><td>There are several options you can setup.
Managed Path : If need to create a site collection, the content you entered will be the managed path for the site. By default, the managed path is “sites”.
Create Site Template : This option allows you to select a template for the creating site collection or site.
Create Site Language : This option allows you to select a language for the creating site collection or site.
Add the site name to top link bar of the parent site when creating a site : If you select this option, it will add the new site to the top link bar of its parent site.
Add the site name to quick launch of the parent site when creating a site : If you select this option, it will add the new site to the quick launch bar of its parent site.
Inherit top link bar of the parent site when creating a site : The new site will inherit its parent site’s top link bar.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	List/Item	There are several options you can setup. • *Migrate root file to document library* : It will migrate the document in the Cabinet of EMC Documentum to the specified document library. • *Do not create top level folder on destination* : If you select this option, it will only migrate the content under the top folder to destination.
	List Mapping	You can setup the type mapping, column mapping for the list by select the List Mapping option. 1. Select the type for the EMC Documentum and SharePoint you want to setup the mapping from the drop-down box. 2. Select the content type in SharePoint for the EMC Documentum type from the drop-down box. 3. Enter the attribute name of the EMC Documentum and the column name of SharePoint, and specify the column type. It will map the column accordingly. If there is no column you specified in SharePoint, it will create the new column in SharePoint. ***Note:** If you select the Managed Metadata SharePoint Column Type from the drop-down box, a dialog box will pop up, and you can create corresponding column configurations in this page. Click button to edit the configuration or view the existed configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Permission	There are two options you can setup. • *Break permission inheritance* : This option allows breaking the inherited permissions of any List/ Item/ File/ Folder and migrate the content according to the Access Control on EMC Documentum. It will make the Access Control restore precisely, but the restore inefficiently. We recommend that you use this option when you have a strict access control. • *Restore user* : It will map the users to the destination.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Within the Characters section within the Common Configuration tab, there are two kinds of settings: Characters length setting and Illegal characters replace setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Characters length setting</td><td>You can control the filename's maximum length. There are three qualifications: The maximum length of folder names, The maximum length of file names and The maximum length of SharePoint URL.

If the folder or filename exceed the byte length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra bytes. The truncated file name will be recorded in the zip package in the Job Report.

*Note: The filename length should be adjusted to include the extension.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Illegal characters replace setting</td><td>This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters.

You need configure the illegal characters replace setting for three level: Group Level, Folder Level, and File Level.

Click More illegal character, a pop-up a window will appear. Select the character by checking the corresponding box, and click Add to add a new row.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">4</td><td colspan="2">Within the Security section within the Common Configuration tab, you can configure the domain mapping, group mapping, user mapping, and permission mapping.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Domain Mapping</td><td>This option allows you to map the domain of the EMC Documentum to SharePoint's</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Group Mapping	This option allows you to map the group of the EMC Documentum to that of SharePoint.
	User Mapping	Maps the EMC Documentum users to SharePoint users. The username in this configuration must be login name, not display name. The SharePoint username you typed must be in Active Directory, otherwise, SharePoint cannot find the user.
	Permission Mapping	You can setup the permission mapping on the four levels (Workspace, List, Folder, and File/ Item). • *Repository Level* : DocAve restore the user privilege as a group in SharePoint, and assign the permission to the group. If there are several users with the same privileges, you can restore them to one group and assign the relative permission by selecting the EMC Documentum Privileges, SharePoint Group and SharePoint Permission in the corresponding drop-down boxes.You can also create a new Documentum/ SharePoint Group/ SharePoint Permission by clicking the corresponding buttons. Click icon to add new row and click icon to delete it. • *Cabinet/ Folder Level/Document Level* : You can map the EMC Documentum Privilege to the SharePoint Permission by selecting the SharePoint permission in the corresponding drop-down box. You can create a new SharePoint permission by clicking **New SharePoint Permission**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Click **Save** to save the configurations. The profile will be listed on the right column. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

7.7.3.3 Filter

In this section, you can set the filter to limit content based on modified / created dates, as well as file size and other parameters.

(7-114) Setting up Filter Policy

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *EMC Documentum* > *Settings* > *Filter*.
2	Within File Filter, and click **New** and enter a name in the field to provide a name for this filter.
3	Input the filter criteria in the field. It supports "*" as the filter criteria. **+** means the files you input will be included. **-** means the files you input will be excluded. Click the this icon to switch it. Click **Add** to add a new line.
4	Check the checkbox in front of the File Size, you can select greater than, less than or equal to from the drop down box. Enter a positive number in the text box and select KB, MB or GB from the drop-down box.
5	Within the Time Range, you can setup a filter policy to filter the content by the created time and modified time.
6	The Time Range includes two rules: Created Time and Modified Time. Select a rule from the drop-down box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Click **Configure**, a pop-up window will appear.
8	There are three options in the pop-up window, you can select an option by clicking the corresponding radio button to configure the filter rule. • *From… To…* : Specify a interval by clicking the calendar icons. • *All Data* : Select Before or After from the drop-down box and select a time by clicking the calendar icon. It will filter the data before or after the specified time. • *Within* : Select a interval from the drop-down box. It will filter the data in the specified interval. Click **OK** to save the configuration, or click **Cancel** to clear the configuration.
9	After saving the configuration successfully, the detailed information of the filter will be listed in the table. You can view the Type and Time in corresponding column. Edit or delete the filter rule by clicking the **Edit** icon or **Delete** icon.
10	Click **Save**. After the filter has successfully been saved, it will be displayed on the right. After the plan was saved, you can click Save As if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".

7.7.4 Live Mode

To run a live mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-115) Live Mode

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Migration* > *EMC Documentum* > *Live Mode*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Select your Documentum Connection from the Documentum Connection drop-down box, it will be listed underneath.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">3</td><td colspan="2">Choose from the list of Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3... And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select a Common Profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

*Note: The Common Profile has been set up in the Common Configuration under the setting section. For more information, please refer to the Section Common Configuration of this Manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select the Cabinet from the Cabinet Filter drop-down box, and the Cabinet you select will be listed underneath.
7	If you select the *Global Security* checkbox, all securities of the content you selected in the tree will be migrated to the specified SharePoint.
8	On the right side of the screen, click on the plus icon before the agent name to expand the tree to the location you want to migrate to. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used. After you drag and drop the source content to the manual input field, a pop-up window will appear. Select the template, the content database and enter the site collection administrator you want to specify for the new site collection. If the authentication of the web application is FBA, you must specify a FBA user for it. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** If the destination site you wish to create is Form Based Authentication, you should input a FBA user to be the Site Collection owner next to *Site Collection Administrator*. Or else, it will fail to create a new site collection.
9	On the left side of the screen, click on the plus icon before the source server name to expand the tree and select the content you wish to migrate. Drag the content to the destination location. When you drag the content, it will have a tip to prompt you the destination location. ***Note:** The destination locations are available from root web to folder.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	After clicking **OK**, the job will list in the Queue Window. Enter a positive number for the Maximum number of concurrent running jobs and click **Save** to limit the concurrent running jobs. You can click the button to begin the job. To pause the job, you can click the button. You can also click **Start All** to start all jobs.

7.7.5 Plan Mode Migration

To configure a plan mode migration, follow the steps below:

(7-116) Plan Mode Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Migration > EMC Documentum > Plan Builder*.
2	Click **New**, and then input a new plan name in the corresponding text box.
3	Select a common profile you want to use during this migration in the corresponding drop-down box. This is a mandatory option. ***Note:** it has been set up in the setting section. For more information, you can refer to the section Common Configuration of this Manual.
4	Select a filter from the drop-down box. The filter rule can be set in the Settings section. For more information, please refer to the Section Filter of this Manual.
5	Under the *Reporting* tab, you can set Email Notification for this migration job. These profiles are set up in the Control Panel. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.
6	If you do not plan on running this job now, you can set it to run on a schedule by unchecking the No Schedule check box under the *Schedule* tab.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">Using the calendar icon next to the Start Time field, select a date and time for the migration job to run. Also, set an interval for recurring rules based on Only Once, Hour, Day, Week, or Month schedule.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">8</td><td colspan="2">Specify a Migration type by selecting the radio button. There are two migration type: Full and Incremental.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>This will copy all contents from the source to the destination.

*Note: When performing a full migration from EMC Documentum to SharePoint, it is recommended to use the Append option. This ensures that duplicate items in EMC Documentum appear as duplicate items in SharePoint. However, if you do not need duplicate items, please use the Not-Overwrite or Overwrite options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Incremental</td><td>This option copies the changes to the destination (including creating / updating the Document Library, Folder, or Document) that have been made to the source since the last migration job. In the event where the source site is large, choosing the incremental option will save significant time on migration.

*Note: If no full migration has been performed previously, the incremental option will perform a full migration by default.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">9</td><td colspan="2">Choose from the list of Migration Options.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>The content will be migrated from the source to the destination. If a file already exists, it will be ignored.

For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for migration, but only one document is missing from the destination folder, only the missing document will be migrated.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>Copies the contents from the source to the destination by overwriting any contents in the destination with the same name.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Append</td><td>This option will allow DocAve to update the destination with the selected data to be migrated. Data that already exists will not be deleted; data that is not already present will be added.

If there a file with the same name existed in Destination, its File name will be changed to filename "+"_1, 2, 3..." And this conflict for the file name will be recorded in the zip package in the job report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">You may enter a Description in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="2">For multiple schedules, select the Schedule B tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">After setting up these basic configurations, select your Documentum Connection from the drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Select the Cabinet from the Cabinet Filter drop-down box, and the cabinet you select will be listed underneath.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	In the *Global Security* drop-down box, it includes three options: Tree Select, Not Restore Any Security and Restore All Security. If you select *Restore All Security*, all the securities in the folders you selected will be migrated to the specified SharePoint site. If you select T*ree Select*, all the securities for the nodes you have selected in the tree will be migrated to the SharePoint environment. If you select *Not Restore Any Security*, it will not restore any security.
15	Click on the agent name to expand the tree in the left of the screen. All of the content found in EMC Documentum will be listed.
16	Browse the tree structure to find the folder you are looking to import content from. In order to see the files inside the content, open the file browser by clicking on the icon after the URL. You can find the content you want to migrate by clicking the icon after the URL and it will pop-up the advance search window. Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click the Add button add the criteria. It will list underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents random characters; "?" represents one character. For case sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower-left of the window. Click **OK** to search, the search result will under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.
17	Once you have found the content you would like to migrate, select it by checking off the appropriate files on the file browser, or by selecting the folder from the tree by clicking the check box next to it.
18	On the right side of the screen, select your Destination Agent from the drop-down box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
19	Navigate through the tree structure of the SharePoint environment to find your destination for the files. Clicking on the corresponding radio button next to the document library to select it. You can create a new Site Collection/ Site/ List/ Library/ Folder by inputting the new name into the blank input field. After running this plan, the selected data will be migrated to it. ***Note:** There is a blank field corresponding to each level in the URL tree. DocAve can create a new Site Collection, Site, or Folder/ List by providing a name in the blank field. Make sure that the box has been checked before typing. For a new site collection, the full URL should be used; click **Configure** to select the template, the content database and the site collection administrator you want to specify for the new site collection in the pop-up. If the authentication of the web application is FBA, you must specify a FBA user for it. At the site or folder/list level, just the name of the location is sufficient. ***Note:** If the destination site you wish to create is Form Based Authentication, you should input a FBA user to be the Site Collection owner next to *Site Collection Administrator*. Or else, it will fail to create a new site collection.
20	Click **Save** to save the plan. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Plan Viewer column area on the right under the corresponding agent. After the plan was saved, you can click **Save As** if you want to save this plan with another name. If you do not change the plan name, the name will be added with "(1)".
21	If you want to run the plan immediately, click **Run Now**. Select a Migration option and a Migration type, as well as enter a description for this plan. Click **Run**. You can go to the Job Report to view the process.

7.7.6 Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for EMC Documentum

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(7-117) Currently Supported and Unsupported Elements for EMC Documentum

Source	Destination	Status
Cabinet	Site Collection/ Subsite	Supported
Folder	Document Library/ Picture library/ Form library/ Wiki page library/ Data connection library/ Folder	Supported
Document	Document	Supported
Virtual Document	Folder	Supported
Snapshot	Folder	Supported
Type	Content Type	Supported
Workflow Template	N/A	Unsupported
Form	N/A	Unsupported
EMC Data	Extender	Supported
	Connector	

Properties

(7-118) Properties

Properties	Status
Info	Supported
Permissions	Supported
Version	Supported
Relationships	Supported
Renditions	Unsupported
History	Unsupported

Reserved

(7-119) Reserved

Reserved	Status
Reserved	Supported

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

7.8 Supported and Unsupported List for SharePoint 2010

Below is the supported and unsupported list of Migration module for SharePoint 2010.

(7-120) Supported and Unsupported List for SharePoint 2010

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
File System	Live Mode	√	
File System	Plan Builder	√	
File System\Stellent	Plan Builder	√	
File System\Vignette	Plan Builder	√	
File System\Settings	File System	√	
File System\Settings	Stellent	√	
File System\Settings	Vignette	√	
Lotus Notes	Live Node	√	
Lotus Notes	Plan Builder	√	
Lotus Notes	QuickPlace Live Mode	√	
Lotus Notes	QuickPlace Plan Builder	√	
Lotus Notes	Settings	√	
eRoom	eRoom Live Mode	√	
eRoom	eRoom Plan Builder	√	
eRoom	ERM Live Mode	√	
eRoom	ERM Plan Builder	√	
eRoom	Settings	√	
Exchange Public Folder	Plan Builder	√	
Exchange Public Folder	Settings	√	
Livelink	Live Mode	√	
Livelink	Plan Builder	√	
Livelink	Settings	√	
EMC Documentum	Live Mode	√	
EMC Documentum	Plan Builder	√	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
EMC Documentum	Settings	√	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

8. Compliance

DocAve's Compliance module can backup data from a SharePoint environment in immutable form to a selected Media Server. Compliance supplies a way to audit backup data, and download and view the file metadata, usage and audit reports in detail.

8.1 Vault

The *Compliance Vault* is designed to allow the archiving of any data off of the Microsoft SharePoint Database while meeting legal requirements like HIPAA, SEC, 402.5, SOX, and many more.

8.1.1 Vault Controller

Vault Controller is designed for the users to archive the data in various nodes at different levels (from web application to folder) by the plans. In order to use the *Compliance Vault* module, we recommend using an account with full administrative access to SharePoint and the SQL servers. However, backup and restore can still be performed using an account with the following access:

- Member of the local admin group (enough to access the files on the local SharePoint server)
- Member of the SharePoint farm admin group
- Member of the database owner group of the SharePoint content database.

8.1.1.1 Choosing Content

In order to select the data to archive, follow the steps below:

(8-1) Choosing Content

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *Vault* > *Vault Controller*.
2	Click **New** and enter a rule name into the provided field.
3	Select a Farm and Agent Group from the drop-down box. It will populate the content browser underneath.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Click the agent name to expand the tree.
5	For large SharePoint environments and known content (including Web Applications, Site Collections, Sites, Lists, Databases, and Folders), we recommend using the search icon for rapid navigation and management of settings.
6	Click icon after the URL, a pop-up Search window will appear.
7	Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click Add to add the criteria. They will be listed underneath. ***Note:** * represents random characters; ? represents one character.
8	If you want to match upper/lower case, you need to check the *Case Sensitive* box.
9	Click **OK** to search, the search result will populate under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot see any search results, please click icon to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.
10	There is a check box corresponding to each level on the tree which is by default unchecked. Check the check box next to the URL and the entire site contents will be selected. If you wish to backup only a top-site content, click the check box next to the URL twice until it becomes a triangle sign ( ). Also, for the new sites or lists, Compliance Vault now supports the Discover New function, indicating that you do not need to reload the tree and the newly-added object can be selected automatically. ***Note:** If you have already set up the auditor on the individual site, there will be a button after the site URL. Click this button, you can view the configuration in the *Auditor Settings* pop-up. You can edit the setting by clicking **Go To Auditor Settings**. It will skip to the *Auditor Controller*.

8.1.1.2 Basic Options

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After choosing the content, you need to select various options. Options available here should be configured ahead of time in the *Control Panel*. Refer to "Control Panel" of this manual for more clarification.

Each option is displayed as a drop-down box. Each selection in the drop-down box can be added or modified within the *Control Panel*.

Data Manager:

- *Logical Device* : Contains a list of logical drive profiles that will designate where the backup data will be stored. For more information on adding a new location for backup data, refer to the Section "Device Manager" of this Manual. Note that this option is mandatory. TSM devices is supported by Compliance Vault as its logical device now.
- *Retention Rule* : Shows the retention rules of the backup data configured in the Section "Retention Policy" of this Manual. Note that this option is mandatory.
- *Filter Rule* : Shows the data filter schemes configured in the Section "Filter Policy" of this Manual. Note that this feature is optional.
- *User Filter* : Shows all the user filter rule for the selected farm. For more information on setting up a user filter rule, refer to the Section User Filter of this Manual. This feature is optional.

Data Configuration:

- *Data Configuration* : This is where the administrator can specify where the encryption and compression will be carried out, whether on the Media Agent or the SP Agent.

Reporting:

- *Email Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, refer to the section "Email Notification" of this Manual. Note that this feature is optional.

Advanced:

- *Generate Index* : This option will generate an index for the content you selected in the vault plan. Then you can use the index to search the content when you browse the data. If you uncheck this option, the Index button of the corresponding job in the Job Monitor is enabled. You can click Index to generate an index.
- *Merge from versions for appended columns* : This option will merge the value of the columns whose appended property(Append Changes to Existing Text) is enabled for all versions. If this option is not selected, it will only display the column of the current version.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

8.1.1.3 Setting up the Schedule

After successfully determining the data to be archived, the next step is to set a schedule to archive this information. Using the *Scheduling*, the user can determine when, and how often the archiving should be performed.

(8-2) Setting Up A Schedule

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *Vault* > *Vault Controller*.
2	In the Schedule area, you can set up to six unique schedules associated with that plan at once. (each represented by one of the Clock icons at the top of the Schedule window.) Click on the clock icon and it will become highlighted in yellow.
3	Check the Schedule check-box to activate a schedule. The clock icon you set currently will be highlighted in green. When you configure other schedule, this active clock icon will be highlighted in blue.
4	Select a *Scan Type* for the current schedule. • *Full Item* : DocAve will scan every item for changes before archiving all the items. • *Folder Level Update* : DocAve will only scan folder-level changes and back up the uploaded or modified files. ***Note:** Using this method may miss some changes, but it has a substantial performance improvement.
5	Click on the calendar icon located to the right of the Start Time field.
6	Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**. Also for the users in the time zone regulated with daylight saving times, this calendar provides you an option "automatically adjust the clock for daylight saving time" to force the job runs by the daylight saving time.
7	Select a time zone in the *TimeZone* drop-down box. By default, it will be selected according to the Browser's.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Specify the interval at which the backup will occur. The basic intervals are: • *Only Once* : This plan will run at the specified time • *Every Hour, Day, Week or Month* : This plan will run over a specified interval. The *Advanced* intervals are as follows: • *Hourly* : You can set the plan to run during production hours only, specified in the time window(s) provided, or at specific hours set in the "Select Time Below" fields. • *Daily* : This will let you run the plan once a day on week-ends only or weekdays only. • *Weekly* : Specify the days of the week to run the plan on, and after how many weeks to recur. • *Monthly* : This will let you set up a custom monthly plan.
9	Specify a *Exclude* for this job under the Advanced schedule options. This will allow you to prevent plan from running during scheduled maintenance, holidays, etc.
10	Specify a for this job under the Advanced option. This will allow you to terminate the plan after a number of occurrences, or by an appointed date and time.
11	Repeat these steps to create additional schedules (if necessary).
12	Save the plan by clicking **Save**. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the column area on the right.
13	To run the plan immediately, click **Run now**. It will pop-up a window, select a scan type, and then click **Run** to run this plan. You can click the **Go to Job Report** button to Job Monitor to view the job's process, or click **Close** to return in the pop-up window.

8.1.2 Vault Browser

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

You can browse the vault data through the vault browser.

(8-3) Vault Browser

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Navigate to DocAve v5 > Compliance > Vault > Vault Browser.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Select a farm from the drop-down box, and it lists the farm that runs the Vault plan in Vault Controller.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Specify a time range for the data search by clicking the calendar icon.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Click on the calendar icon to the right of the From field to choose a start time. Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click OK.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click on the calendar icon to the right of the To field to choose an end time. Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click OK.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6</td><td colspan="2">Click OK, the web application with the archived content will be listed on the left side of the screen.

*Note: If the backup job you want to load is encrypted, it will require you to enter the corresponding password to access the data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Expand the tree level by level to the folder you want</td><td>Select the folder radio box, the files in this folder will be listed in the right side of the screen.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Click the search Button to search for the file</td><td>After clicking the search button ( ), it will pop-up a window. You can search the individual file by the restrictive selection. After searching, the results will be listed in the right side of the screen. For more information on search setting, refer to the section “Search Setting” in this Manual.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Select a desired file by checking the corresponding check-box, and then click **Update Review Status**; you can do the operations you want in the pop-up. Click the file name to view the pop-up for the file Info, Detail, Attachment, Review and Audit, you can edit the review status: Pending, Reviewed and Questioned, and add comment in the text box. ***Note:** If you select multiple files, you can only edit the review status and add comment to these files. Click **Cancel** to return.
8	Choose the files by checking box, click **Export** to export the files to a specific location, and then select a sortord from the drop-down box, there are two kinds of sortords: Sort By Character Field and Sort By Order.
9	Enter a Job Name and select a offline download location, after that click **Offline Download** to download the files. You can setup a download location in the section "Settings" of this Manual. ***Note:** This function allows the users with large environments to perform other operations while the results are downloading.
10	You can apply legal hold for the selected items. Click **Apply Legal Hold** and a pop-up window will appear. By "being held", the files cannot be deleted by the retention policy functions. When selecting **Apply Legal Hold**, you can detail the holding level within the following two options: • *Hold all instances of this object in the archive* : If you select this option, all the selected archive items will be held. • *It can be commented/reviewed* : If you select this option, all the selected archive items will be held, but it can be commented or reviewed.

8.1.2.1 Search Setting

Vault Brower allows you to search through all archived data using specified search scopes and settings. In order to use the Vault Brower to browse the data, you must first set the *Search*

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Scope below. *Offline Download Location* setup can also be implemented to allow you to view the data while offline.

(8-4) Search Setting

Step	Action
1	Click the icon after the URL, a search setting pop-up window will appear.
2	On the window, there are several options for the user to set up the search conditions: • *All of these words* : You can enter several words separated by the space, it will search the files with all of these words. It does not search it according to the words sequencing. Also, ensure that all the words input in this field are contained in the file content, which otherwise would not be searched out whatsoever. • *The exact phrase* : It will search the files with the specific phrase, there must be the exact phrase in the files. • *Any of these words* : You can enter several words separated by the space, it will search the files with one of the specific word. • *None of these words* : You can enter several words separated by the space, it will search the files which include none of these words. ***Note:** These fields allow you to search for keywords in the content selected. It will return all results for this keyword in either content or names. For more information about the keyword, please refer to the following section Keyword Usage Options.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	You can also use the following search conditions: • *Matching results* : Selecting either "content" or "metadata" will limit the keyword results returned to either content or metadata. • *SharePoint type* : Selecting either Document (under library) or item (under list) will limit the keyword results returned to either content or meta data. • *Archive date range* : This allows the user to specify the date range that the content was archived. Notice that by default, the date range is "Today", indicating that you have to ensure the data is archived in the time range. Otherwise, the data cannot be loaded even if you input the wildcard. • *Sampling* : Sampling will return either a random percentage of the content selected, or every specific number of files. This will allow you to randomly sample the SharePoint content. • *File Format* : Using this field, you can specify multiple file types to either be include or excluded from the search. Use the "Ctrl+click" to select multiple options. You can also specify a custom extension in the "Other..." field provided. • *Content type* : Using this field, you can specify multiple content types to either return or exclude from the search. Use the "Ctrl+click" to select multiple types. You can also specify custom content in the "Other..." field provided.
4	Click **More Metadata** for additional search options. Under the Built in Metadata tab, select the "Condition" from the drop-down boxes in the middle column. Enter the corresponding "Value" in fields provided. You can also go to the Customized Metadata tab to add search conditions for customized SharePoint metadata. Click **Add** and fill out the new field provided. You can add and delete from this list as much as necessary.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	You can click **Offline Search** to run an offline search. 1. Provide an offline search name in the text box. 2. Click **OK** to run this offline search. Other operations can be completed while the search is running. For job status, go to the *Report Center*.
6	Click **Search**, the search result will be display on the right.

Keyword Usage Options

There are some logic for the keyword. The following table is a keyword logic list.

(8-5) Keyword Usage Option

	Keyword	Description
Logic relation	b And c / +b+c	This serve as an "and" logic, all search results listed will include "b" and "c".
	b OR c / b c	This serve as an "or" logic, all search results listed will include "b" or "c".
	b AND NOT c / +b-c	This serve as an "and" logic, all search results listed will include "b" but exclude "c".
Wildcards	"*"	This wildcards represents random characters. Also, when only entering them in the words-related fields in Advanced Search, the corresponding search criterion does not function.
	"?"	This wildcards represents one character.
	Please note that the wildcards cannot place before the field.	
Field	title: "The Right Way"	This field represents to search the content whose title is "The Right Way".
All of These Words	The property or the content of the target document has to contain all the key words inputted however without strict input order.	
The Exact Phrase	The property or the content of the target document has to contain all the key words inputted and with the strict input order.	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

	Keyword	Description
Any of These Words	The property or the content of the target document can contain some of the key words inputted however without strict input order.	
None of These Words	The property or the content of the target document must not contain any of the key words inputted and without the strict input order.	

The Logic of the Illegal Characters

This section is dedicated to clarify the logic of the illegal characters when users are proceduring the words field in the Advanced Search pop-up. Such explanations are presented in the following table:

(8-6) The Logic of the Illegal Characters

Option	Logic
All of These Words	The illegal characters are ignored during the analysis.
The Exact Phrase	The illegal characters are identified and analyzed as the normal ones.
Any of These Words	The illegal characters are recognized as the way they are, with their unique meanings remained. These meanings can be expressed by turing the characters to normal ones with "\" added before.
None of These Words	The illegal characters are recognized as the way they are, with their unique meanings remained. These meanings can be expressed by turing the characters to normal ones with "\" added before.

8.1.3 Report

In the Report, you can view the offline search report and the offline download report.

8.1.3.1 Offline Search Report

The offline search report is generated for the users to check the records of the offline search. Likely to offline search, this report is available as long as the DocAve search service keeps functioning. Check the following steps to obtain the report.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(8-7) Offline Search Report

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve V5* > *Compliance* > *Vault* > *Report Center* > *Offline Search Report*.
2	Select the User and Status you want to view from the drop-down boxes.
3	You can also select the item number that will be displayed on per page from the drop-down box.
4	Click **View**. The data in the offline search will be displayed on the GUI.
5	You can select the target file to view the file Info, Detail, Attachment, Review and Audit information. You can change the file status and add comment therein by clicking **Update Review Status**. You can also edit the review status and add comment in this pop-up and export this file by clicking **Export** or run an offline download. Similar to the operations in Vault Browser, you can apply legal hold to the file chosen. If the file has been deleted in Vault Browser, its **Deleted** status will be Yes and you cannot do any operation on it.
6	Click **Back** to return to the report page.
7	The **Delete** button will help you delete the one(s) you no longer want.

8.1.3.2 Offline Download Report

After running offline downloads, you can view all offline download activities from the offline download report.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(8-8) Offline Download Report

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *Vault* > *Report Center* > *Offline Download Report*.
2	Select the User, Status you want to view from the drop-down box.
3	You can also select the item number to be displayed on a page from the Per Page drop-down box.
4	If the offline download failed, you can click **Download** to restart this offline download.
5	You can delete the plan by clicking **Delete**.

8.1.4 Settings

Before performing a compliance value, you should setup the basic settings.

8.1.4.1 Download Location

You can setup a destination for the offline download in this section.

(8-9) Setup a Download Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *Vault* > *Settings* > *Download Location*.
2	Click **New** and input a profile name into the corresponding text box.
3	Enter the username as domain\username format and password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored. Click **Test** to test the path. After testing successfully, click **Save** to save the configuration.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	After saving successfully, the location will be listed under the Location Profiles column on the right.

8.1.4.2 Password Setting

You can specify a security profile for the vault plan in this section so that the users have to input the password if he would like to gain access to Vault Browser.

(8-10) Password Setting

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *Vault* > *Settings* > *Password Setting*.
2	Select the farm you want to apply the security policy in the left column.
3	Select a security policy from the drop-down list, and click Apply to apply the password setting for the specific farm. For more information about security policy, please refer to Security Manager Section.

8.1.4.3 User Filter

The filter allows you to limit content based on **Modified by** or **Created by**.

(8-11) Setting up a User Filter

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *Vault* > *Settings* > *User Filter*.
2	Enter a **Profile Name** into the provided field.
3	Select a **Farm** where you want to apply the filter rule from the drop-down list.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Specify the user you want to filter into the provided fields. For example, specify the User1 into the **Items created by**, and the User2 into the **Items modified by**, it will filter all the items created by User1 or modified by User2. It now supports FBA users as well as domain users. For FBA 2007 and 2010 users, you can input in the follow formats respectively: FBA 2007 users: FBA provider name: Username FBA 2010 users: FBA provider name|Username. Multiple users must be separated by semicolon. ***Note:** Notice that here we only support the accurate username instead of fuzzy search.
5	Click **Save** to save the settings.

8.1.4.4 Index Location

You can set an index location for the specified farm before running a vault job to store the index of the archived files.

(8-12) Specify an Index Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Compliance > Vault > Settings > Index Location*.
2	Click the farm name in the left panel. Select the index logical device for this farm from the drop-down box. It will save the index in this device.
3	Click **Apply** to apply the setting on the specified farm.

8.1.5 The Expiration of Vault License

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

DocAve hereby provides the consequences in DocAve GUI as well as in the job running when the Vault license expiration is hit to you to make the proper countermeasure. The following table explains the consequences below:

(8-13) The Expiration of Vault License

Module	Expiration Consequence
Vault Control-ler	The job in this module stops.
Vault Browser Page	The warning messages appear when you perform Hold, Update Review Status and Delete operations.
Vault Report	The warning messages appear when you perform Hold, Update Review Status and Delete operations.

8.2 Auditor

Compliance Auditor is designed to audit the user operations at item, list and site level and report the data back to the administrators and the related owners.

8.2.1 Audit Controller

This function is specialized for obtaining the user operation at various levels from web applications down to folders by using DocAve and the functionally equal solution in SharePoint. You can scheme to or immediately apply the rule and then retrieve to get the audited data in DocAve. For the solution "AveAuditSolution.wsp/DocAve.SP2010.Compliance.AveAuditSolution.wsp", it is now segmented for the customizable deployment in "DocAve Solution Manager" in Control Panel. Such design aims to accelerate the installation and provide you with more flexibility. For the detailed deployment steps, please refer to " DocAve Solution Manager". From this version on, Auditor now supports FBA user.

8.2.1.1 Choosing Content

In order to select the data to audit, follow the steps below:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(8-14) Choosing Content

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* >*Auditor* > *Auditor Controller*.
2	Click **New** and input a Plan Name into the provided field.
3	Select a farm from the drop-down box. It will populate the content browser underneath.
4	Click the agent name to expand the tree.
5	For large SharePoint environments with large content (including Web Applications, Site Collections, Sites, Lists, Databases, and Folders), we recommend using the Search button for rapid navigation and management of settings.
6	Click the " " button after the URL, it will pop-up the Advanced Search window.
7	Input the exact content URL or use wildcards in the text box, and then click **Add** add the criteria. It will be listed underneath. ***Note:** "*" represents a group of unknown characters during a search (such as "*.exe", whereas using "?" represents one character. If two documents, ABC and AXC exist, a search on "A?C" will return both results.)
8	For case-sensitive searches, check the "Case Sensitive" box located in the lower-left of the window.
9	Click **OK** to search, the search result will be displayed under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the setting. ***Note:** If you cannot search any results, please press the " " button to refresh the tree, and then search the content you want to load again.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	There is a check-box corresponding to each level on the tree which is by default unchecked. Check the check-box next to the URL and the entire site contents will be selected. If you wish to backup only a top-site content, click the check-box next to the URL twice until it becomes a triangle sign ( ).
11	Select the site you want to setup, and then click the " ", it will pop-up the Current Auditor Setting window. Select a function to apply to this audit operation. • *Inherit parent settings* : It is a default option when checking any content lower than the Site Collection-level. This will automatically inherit the audit settings of its upper level. If you want to set the individual settings for selecting the report content, uncheck this option to activate the other options. You may select to view Audit Reports when any of the listed actions are taken on the selected content. • *Site Deletion* : This solution is required for auditing a site deletion. • *Trickle Down* : It will apply all rules to the current site-level and all of its contents. • *Log Source IP* : It will audit the IP address which access any item in SharePoint. ***Note:** By default, SharePoint will automatically "trickle down" all audit rules when applied on the site level. However, if the rule is set to run on another level, you must reapply the audit rules to track any new content added. In order to not miss any content required for auditing, we recommend reapplying rules on a daily schedule. Specific auditing features are listed below, you can select the audit operation for the corresponding site by checking the operation check-box.

8.2.1.2 Basic Options

After choosing the content, you need to select the various options. Options available here should be configured ahead of time in the "Control Panel" or in "Settings" of this chapter. Please refer to Section3 and 8.2.3 of this Manual for more clarification.

Data Manager

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Filter Rule* : This drop-down list shows the data exclusion schemes configured in the "Data Management". With the scheme selected, you can filter the corresponding user, list, AD profile, URL, content type, folder and file. Refer to Section "Filter Policy" of this Manual. Please note that this feature is optional.

Reporting

- *Email Notification* : This contains a list of profiles that have an associated email account. For more information on adding or editing new email reporting profiles, refer to the section "Email Notification" of this Manual. Note that this feature is optional.

Operation Settings

- *Audit Rule Option* There are two options in this drop-down box:

Overwrite: All the previous rules are updated by the new ones set in Current Settings.

Append: This option will allow DocAve to update the audit rules that are currently attached to the contents. All previous settings are kept with new ones set in Current Settings added to be applied.

- *Keep audit data in SharePoint for* : You can input a positive integer into the text box, it will keep the audit data in SharePoint for a specified number of days. Notice that once the data is deleted duly, it cannot be restored because the data is stored in the SharePoint database.
- *Retrieve IIS Logs* : Select this if you want to audit which items are accessed. DocAve will retrieve the available IIS logs, and report the information about the accessed items in SharePoint. This will slow down the Auditor job considerably, so this is only recommended if the IIS logs are absolutely necessary. Notice only the host names and IP addresses whose IIS logs and corresponding data transferred by DocAve agent match can be recorded by DocAve server.

8.2.1.3 Setting up the Schedule

After successfully determining what to be audited, the next step is to set a schedule to audit this information. The user can determine when, and how often, the archiving should be performed.

In this area, you need to setup two kinds of schedules: "Apply Rule Schedule" and "Retrieve Audit Data Schedule". You need to set the "Apply Rule Schedule" first, and then set the "Retrieve Audit Data Schedule".

You can setup the schedule as follow.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(8-15) Setting up the Schedule

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">In the schedule area, click the “Apply Rule Schedule” tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Uncheck the “No Schedule” check-box to activate a Schedule.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Click on the calendar icon to the right of the Start Time field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click OK.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Select a time zone in the “TimeZone” drop-down box.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">6</td><td colspan="2">Specify the interval at which the backup will occur. Choices are: Only Once; Minute; Every Hour; Day; Week; or Month.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Only Once</td><td>This will only run once at the specified time.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Minute</td><td>Set this plan to run every set number of minutes.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every Hour</td><td>Choose this plan to run every set number of hours.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every Day</td><td>Set the plan to run every set number of days.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every Week</td><td>Set the plan to run every set number of weeks.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every Month</td><td>You can choose this plan to run on every set number of months</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">To create the retrieve audit data schedule, go to the Retrieve Audit Data Schedule tab and repeat steps 2-6.</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">Save the plan by clicking Save. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the right column under the corresponding agent.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Click **Apply Rule** to apply the rule. If you have any changes on the specific site, you can click **Retrieve Audit Data** to retrieve auditor. In the popup, you can click **Go to The Job Report** to Job Monitor to view the job's process, or click **Close** to return.

8.2.1.4 Auditing Site Deletion

In order to audit site deletion, you must be running DocAve version 4.5.2.0 or higher. This solution is only required for auditing a top-level site deletion. All others will be audited automatically after checking the *Delete* box under *Actions to Audit*.

(8-16) Auditing Site Deletion

Step	Action
1	Using Windows Explorer, navigate to: *…|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin|SP2007ComArch|* Located under the main installation directory.
2	Locate the *INSTALL.cmd* file and run it. A command prompt should open showing *Operation completed successfully* after a few moments.
3	Using DocAve's SharePoint Administrator module, expand the farm tree to the *Solutions* level for the instance containing the installed file.
4	After highlighting the *Solutions* level, click on the *auditlogviewfeature.wsp* function under the Central Administration tab.
5	In the pop-up, select *Deploy Solution* from the top left corner.
6	This item can be deployed only globally. Select a time for deployment and press **OK**.
7	After this solution is deployed, you can check the *Delete* box under *Actions to Audit* for Compliance Auditor on the site level.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	To view results of this action from the *Audit Report* module, please select the *Others* check-box under the *Actions* tab of the report options. This option will also allow you to view the *site deletion* operation.

***Note:** If you do not have the SharePoint Administrator module from DocAve, you can also deploy this solution using SharePoint's *Central Administration -> Operations -> Global Management -> Solution Management* tab. Please consult your SharePoint user guide for more information.

***Note:** You do not need to deploy this solution manually in DocAve 5.5 and the later versions.

8.2.2 Audit Report

Auditor Report is designed for the users to view the actions taken by various users on the individual contents from sites down to documents and lists. It also renders several other options and criteria for the users to have the high accuracy of the report given.

(8-17) Audit Report

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve > Compliance > Auditor > Auditor Report*.
2	Select the farm you want to view from the drop-down box. You can also select all farms to display.
3	Click **New**, and then enter a plan name into the provided field.
4	Within the *Search Criteria*, you can setup some basic search setting for the report.
5	Select a time zone from the *Time Zone* drop-down box. By default, it will be selected according to the Browser's. Notice that the adjustment of the duration, the time range, or specific time is a must to obtain the according result you want.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Select a type from the drop-down box. There are seven options available: • All types • Site • Web • List • Item • Folder • Document
7	Select a filter in the drop-down box. The filter rule listed in the drop-down box is configured in the Section "Filter Policy" of this Manual.
8	Type a Username you wish to view into the *Only Include User* field, the search will only include the specified user(s).
9	Type the item name into the *Item* text box to load the item itself only. Also, the item URL is in red in the corresponding URL string.
10	You can check the *Exact Match Pertain* box, it means you need to input an exact username and the related reports will be displayed. Notice this option shall be used together with *Only Include User* to ensure that you can obtain the accurate result.
11	Select the duration from the drop-down list, or click the calendar icons next to the Start Time and End Time, or the most recent days/weeks/months/hours to specify a time range.
12	Click **Actions Filter**, and all available options are listed. Select the actions you want filter by checking the corresponding check-box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	Within the *Reporting* tab, you can setup several reporting settings. • *Email Notification* : Select a email notification profile from the drop-down box, and it will send an alert email to the recipients accordingly. • *Download Location* : Select a location for the report from the drop-down box. • *Report Format* : Select a format for the report according to your requirements.
14	After selecting the options you want, select a farm from the drop-down box under the Scope tab. Check the site you want to view and click **Search**, it will list the number of the contents of this site after the URL. ***Note:** Farm will not appear in the drop-down box unless audit data has been retrieved for SharePoint (see Audit Controller)
15	Click the site name, it will list the report about its information only under the "Result" tab. You can sort the report by clicking the column title. The information in this report includes URL, Type, User, Action, (Item) Title, Time, as well as Detail.
16	You can select the number of items to be displayed on a page from the Per Page drop-down box.
17	Click **Download**, you can download the audit report to the location you had specified in the Section "Download Location" of this Manual.

8.2.3 Settings

You can setup the basic configuration in this section. It has two settings: Download Location and Auditor Pruning.

8.2.3.1 Download Location

You can setup a destination for the download in this section.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(8-18) Setup a Download Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *Auditor* > *Setting* > *Download Location*.
2	Click **New** and input a profile name into the corresponding box.
3	Enter the Username as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored. Click **Test** to test the path. After testing successfully, click **Save** to save the configuration.
4	After saving successfully, the location will be listed in the Location Profiles column on the right.

8.2.3.2 Auditor Pruning

Auditor Pruning enables the users to delete the auditor reports within a certain period to lease the necessary storage space.

(8-19) Auditor Pruning

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve V5* > *Compliance* > *Auditor* > *Settings* > *Auditor Pruning*.
2	Click **New** and enter a Rule Name into the corresponding field.
3	Select an action under Data to Act On by clicking the corresponding radio box. When you run the pruning rule, the job reports will be checked; if the time generating the report is coincident with the time you specified, the appropriate data will be perform the corresponding action. There are three options: All data older than...; All data before...; and...of Data before....

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select a data under the Advanced Data Selection.
5	Click *Web Application* tab. Select a web application from the *Available Web Applications* field and click on the to add it into *Selected Web Applications* field. You can also remove the selected web applications by clicking .
6	Click *Site Collection* tab to select the site collections.
7	Enter the site collection name in the corresponding field, then click to select it. You can also remove the selected one by clicking .
8	Click *User* tab to select the user to get the related report.
9	Enter the Username and click . The users can also remove the selected one by clicking .
10	Click *Action* tab.
11	All the actions will be displayed in the left area. Select and add the actions by clicking , or click to remove the ones you selected.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">12</td><td colspan="2">Select action(s) to perform on the specific data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Delete Data</td><td>It will delete the appropriate data after run the rule.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Move Data</td><td>It will move the appropriate data to a specific location.

Select the location from the drop-down box, you can setup the location in the Section "Download Location" of this Manual.

Check the Compression box to compress the report.

Also this option allows you to restore the data from the "Pruning Log" tab.</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td colspan="2">Under the Schedule Interval, you can specify an interval running this plan and getting the report. Select a start time by clicking calendar icon, and then enter an integer number in the input field and select an interval. Select an interval from the drop-down box. The choices are: Only Once; Hour; Day; Week; and Month.</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">Click Save to save the rule, it will list on the right column.</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td colspan="2">Select the plan you want at the right column, and click Apply to activate this plan on schedule or click Run now to run this plan immediately.

Disable button can be clicked on when you decide to quit this plan.</td></tr>
</table>

Pruning Log

The Pruning Log provides a list of all the pruned log reports based on the criteria set in auditor pruning. The log provides you with the rule name, the result, the number of rows pruned, the time which the information was pruned, and the restore the data by clicking the corresponding **Restore** button.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

8.3 eDiscovery

"eDiscovery" is the capability to perform a sophisticated search among the massive SharePoint documents and to export the results of that search, maintaining the content, its metadata, and any other information available about that content such as auditor info, when exported. From DocAve 5.6, eDiscovery supports FBA users.

***Note:** By default, you can only search the file whose size is less than 16M. To change the size limitation, you can change the registry key in SharePoint.

8.3.1 Settings

Before performing an eDiscovery job, you need to setup the basic settings first.

Data Management

Before applying legal hold for the search result(s), you should perform a storage for the content you want to hold. Also, the logical device and index logic device here support the types of cloud, Netshare, TSM, and EMC.

(8-20) Setup a Storage

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *eDiscovery* > *Settings*.
2	Within the Data Management tab, you can setup a storage configuration for the farm of the search result.
3	Select the farm in the left column, all content in this farm will be saved to the storage while applying the legal hold.
4	Select a logical device, a retention rule, and an index logical device where to save the index from the corresponding drop-down box in the *Storage Manager* field.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	This is where the administrator can specify whether encryption and compression will be carried out; and if so, whether such activities will be carried out on the Media Agent or the SharePoint Agent. Note that by default, no Compression and Encryption is enabled. If you select the encryption option, the Security Policy drop-down box will be activated It contains a list of Security policy profiles.
6	Click **Apply** to save and function the configuration.

Export Location

Before downloading the search result(s), you should specify an export location.

(8-21) Setup a Download Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *eDiscovery* > *Settings*.
2	Within the Export Location tab, you can setup an export location for the search result.
3	Click **New**, and then enter a profile name into the provided field.
4	Enter the username as domain\username format and password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored to. Click **Test** to test the path. After testing successfully, click **Save** to save the configuration.
5	After saving successfully, the location will be listed under the Location Profiles column on the right.

Export Limitation

In this section, you can configure the maximum download size for the search result(s). Specify the size you want to limited, and click **Apply** to apply this configuration.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Permission Definition

This section is used for the legal hold feature, you can configure a permission profile for the file set up the legal hold feature. By default, the permission levels here are the same with the ones pre-defined in SharePoint.

(8-22) Permission Definition

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *eDiscovery* > *Settings* > *Permission Definition*.
2	Click **New**, and enter a profile name into the provided field.
3	Select the appropriate permission by checking the corresponding check-box.
4	Click **Save** to save the profile.

Crawling SharePoint Content Source

To perform a sophisticated search via DocAve, you need to crawl the SharePoint Server sites first.

(8-23) Crawling the SharePoint Content Source

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *Shared Services Administration: SharedServices1* > *Search Settings*.
2	Click **Content sources and crawl schedules** to go to the Manage Content Sources interface.
3	Click the site name and select "Start Full Crawl"/ "Start Incremental Crawl" option to start a crawl.
4	Once the crawl job finished, the status' value will be Idle. You can view the crawl log by clicking the **Crawl logs**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

8.3.2 Search

You can search the files with specific content by using this module.

(8-24) Search Files With Specific Content

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *eDiscovery* > *Search*.
2	Select a farm where you want to run the SharePoint search. The entire farm and the corresponding SSP will be displayed underneath.
3	Click the farm name to expand the data tree, and then select the content you want to perform a sophisticated search by checking the corresponding check-box.
4	Within the *Search Conditions* tab, enter the keyword to search the files which included in SharePoint. The wildcards are supported in this field. You can refer to Advanced Search Section to run an advanced search.
5	Select an export location for the schedule search from the drop-down box, and all the matched items will be downloaded to this location. For more information about setting up a export location, please refer to Export Location Section.
6	You can determine when and at what frequency the search job plan should run by the Schedule section. Uncheck the *No Schedule* check box to activate a schedule.
7	Click the calendar icon next to the Start Time field. A calendar pops up. Use the calendar to specify when the backup should begin. Also for the users in the time zone regulated with daylight saving times, this calendar provides you an option "automatically adjust the clock for daylight saving time" to force the job runs by the daylight saving time. Specify the interval at which the backup occurs: Only Once, By Hour, By Day, By Week, or By Month.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">After successfully scheduling the time and frequency at which the search plan should run, save the plan by clicking Save.

You can view the search job information in the Job Monitor. For the eDiscovery search job, you can save the detailed before deleting the job.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="2">If you want to run the search plan immediately, click Search, all the files matched the search condition will be listed underneath the Search Result tab.

Within the Search Result tab, you can view detailed information of the items which is matched with the conditions. For the Size column in the table, you can configure the size unit for displaying.

*Note: A new SharePoint crawling needs to be performed to reflect the up-to-date results lest some deleted items, which otherwise would be searched by eDiscovery.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">10</td><td colspan="2">Select the files by checking the corresponding check-box, and then you can apply legal hold for the file(s) or download the file(s).</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Apply legal hold	1. Select the file you want to download. 2. Click **Apply Legal Hold** and a pop-up window will appear. There are four options: • *Change the permission to... for all users/groups* : Select a permission you set up in Settings section from the drop-down box, it will change the permission of the users/groups to the permission you configure for the selected items or by default, the predefined permissions under SharePoint directly. • *Change the owners/administrators to* : You can specify a user/group or search the user/group by using the icons, and then it will delete all the users/groups of the selected item(s) and add the specified user/group(s) with full control permission for the item(s). 3. • *Add the SharePoint group "Legal Hold" to the permissions* : if you select this option, it will add the legal hold group for the selected item(s) in SharePoint • *Add metadata "legal Hold" in SharePoint* : if you select this option, it will add a column in SharePoint to display the legal hold status for the items.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Export	1. Select the files you want to download. 2. Click **Export**, and a pop-up window will appear. 3. Enter the file name for the exported zip file into the File Name box. 4. Select whether overwrite the file if there is a file with the same name in the export location from the *Option* drop-down box. If you select the *Not Overwrite*, it will prompt you to change the file name once the file already exists in the export location. 5. Select a export location from the drop-down box. For more information about setting up a export location, please refer to Export Location Section. 6. You can select *Export search results* to export the list of all search results to the specified location. 7. You can also choose to export only the selected contents or export all contents from all pages after selecting the *Export contents* check-box. By selecting "Export all contents from all pages", it indicates that the user can download all the contents without actually selecting them. 8. Setup an export schedule. There are two kinds export mode: Export now and Export later. • *Export Now* : You can download the file(s) immediately by using this option. • *Export Later* : You can download the file(s) at a specific time by using this option. Specify a job start time in the calendar window, it will download the file(s) to the specified location at the specified time.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Click **OK**. If you select to run the export job now, it will run this job immediately, and you can view the job process on the process bar after the *Export Now* option.

8.3.2.1 Advanced Search

To perform an advanced search, please follow the steps below.

(8-25) Advanced Search

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *eDiscovery* > *Search*.
2	Click the **Advanced Search Settings**, and a pop-up window will appear.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	There are several basic options you can configure. • *All of these words* : you can enter several words separated by the space, it will search the files with all of these words. It does not search it according to the words sequencing. • *The exact phrase* : it will search the files with the specific phrase, there must be the exact phrase in the files. • *Any of these words* : you can enter several words separated by the space, it will search the files with one of the specific word. • *None of these words* : you can enter several words separated by the space, it will search the files which do not include all of these words. ***Note:** These fields allow you to search for keywords in the content selected. It will return all results for this keyword in either content or names. For more information about the keyword, please refer to the following section Keyword Usage Options. • *Language* : you can select a kind language from the drop-down box, it will load all the specific language files. By default, it selects all items. • *Sampling* : Sampling will return either a random percentage of the content selected, or every specific number of files. This will allow you to randomly sample the SharePoint content. • *SharePoint type* : Selecting either Document or item will limit the keyword results returned to either content or meta data. • *File Format* : Using this field, you can specify multiple file types to either be include or excluded from the search. Use the "Ctrl+click" to select multiple options. You can also specify a custom extension in the "Other..." field provided. • *Content type* : Using this field, you can specify multiple content types to either return or exclude from the search. Use the "Ctrl+click" to select multiple types. You can also specify custom content in the "Other..." field provided.
4	You can click **More Metadata** to add new search metadata.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">5</td><td colspan="2">In the setting window, you can configure the search metadata by using specific property or customize some metadata mapping.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Metadata Restrictions</td><td>You can use the SharePoint default properties to perform a search.
*Note: For the Size property, the unit for the value is B. For the Created By and the Last Modified By properties, you need to run the eDiscoveryTool.exe(...|Program Files|AvePoint |DocAve5|Agent|bin), and then crawl the site first.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Customized Metadata Mapping</td><td>You can also customize the search metadata within the Customized Metadata Mapping tab.
Field : You need to enter the column name, it will search the files with the specific column.
Type : Select the column type from the drop-down box. It is different from the SharePoint, if search Single line of text column, you need to select the text option.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click OK to save the settings, and the setting can be used for the next time directly, if you want to change the search conditions, you can click Reset.
Click Search to perform a sophisticated search.</td></tr>
</table>

8.3.3 Offline Export Report

After running offline downloads, you can view all offline download activities from the offline download report.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(8-26) Offline Download Report

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Compliance > eDiscovery > Offline Export Report*.
2	Select the user and status you want to view from the drop-down boxes. You can also select the item number that will be displayed on per page from the drop-down box.
3	It will display the status, detailed information for the appropriate items underneath.
4	You can delete the plan by clicking **Delete**.

8.3.4 The Expiration of eDiscovery License

DocAve hereby provides the consequences in DocAve GUI as well as in the job running when the eDiscovery license expiration is hit to you to make the proper countermeasure. The following table explains the consequences below:

(8-27) The Expiration of eDiscovery License

Module	Expiration Consequence
Search Page	The job in this module stops.
Job Monitor	The warning messages appear when you perform Hold, Update Review Status and Delete operations.

8.4 Hold Manager

This feature is designed for the users to search for, release, and export the held items functioned in Compliance Vault as well as SharePoint. Also, the users could thereby verify the held items found in eDiscovery to record them. From this version on, Hold Manager supports FBA users.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

8.4.1 Settings

You can setup a location for the exported data.

(8-28) Setup An Export Location

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve V5* > *Compliance* > *Hold Manager* > *Settings*.
2	Click **New** and input a profile name into the corresponding box.
3	Enter the Username as domain\username format and Password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored. Click **Test** to test the path. After testing successfully, click **Save** to save the configuration.
4	After saving successfully, the location will be listed in the Location Profiles column on the right.

8.4.2 Data Browser

Data Browser can help you to view the items with legal hold in Compliance Vault or SharePoint, release the hold and export the files. Also, it allows to record the held items found in eDiscovery for the future use.

(8-29) Hold Manager

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Compliance* > *Hold Manager* > *Data Browser*.
2	Select a farm from the drop-down box, and then expand it to the content you want to view.
3	Select the content you want to view by checking the corresponding check-box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Select the data source you want to view.
Compliance Vault : All the items held in Compliance Vault will be listed.
SharePoint : All the items field in SharePoint will be listed.
Verify Item in SharePoint : The held items found in eDiscovery are verified for the further record.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">You can select the Verify item in SharePoint to check whether the item is modified after held.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">Click Search, all matching items will be listed underneath, you can view the detailed information of them.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">7</td><td colspan="2">Checking the corresponding check-box for the hold items, you can release the hold or export them.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Release legal hold</td><td>Select the file you want to release the legal hold by checking the corresponding check-box.
Click Release Legal Hold and a pop-up window will appear. You can release all instances of the selected objects by checking the corresponding check-box. Click OK to confirm the release. For Compliance Vault, it indicates that those released items can meet the retention policy; and for eDiscovery, those items are back to the unheld status.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action	
	Export files	1. Select the files you want to download. 2. Click **Export**, and a pop-up window will appear. 3. Select a export location from the drop-down box. For more information about setting up a export location, please refer to Export Location Section. 4. You can select *Export search results* to export the list of all search results to the specified location. 5. You can also choose to export only the selected contents or export all contents from all pages after selecting the *Export contents* check-box. 6. Setup an export schedule. There are two kinds export mode: Export now and Export later. • *Export Now* : You can download the file(s) immediately by using this option. Select the export location from the drop-down box, and then select the content you want to export(the search results list or the file). • *Export Later* : You can download the file(s) at a specific time by using this option. Enter a job name for the download job, and then specify a job start time in the calendar window. Select the export location from the drop-down box, and then select the content you want to export(the search results list or the file), it will download the file(s) to the specified location at the specified time.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

8.4.3 Offline Export Report

After running offline downloads, you can view all offline download activities from the offline download report.

(8-30) Offline Download Report

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Compliance > Hold Manager > Offline Export Report*.
2	Select the user and status you want to view from the drop-down boxes. You can also select the item number that will be displayed on per page from the drop-down box.
3	It will display the status, detailed information for the appropriate items underneath.
4	You can delete the plan by clicking **Delete**.

8.4.4 The Expiration of Hold Manager License

DocAve hereby provides the consequences in DocAve GUI as well as in the job running when the Hold Manager license expiration is hit to you to make the proper countermeasure. The following table explains the consequences below:

(8-31) The Expiration of Hold Manager License

Module	Expiration Consequence
Data Browser (1)	When only one Data Source option is selected, then only the corresponding license would be checked. If it hits the expiration, then a warning message would appear to inform the user of the expiration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Module	Expiration Consequence
Data Browser (2)	When both of the Data Source options are selected, then the license expiration would be checked in the following ways:If one license is expired, A warning message would appear to inform the user that the license of the selected data to be released is expired. If both of the licenses are expired,A warning message would appear to inform the user that the licenses are expired.

8.5 The Supported and Unsupported List of SharePoint 2010

The following table explains how Compliance supports SharePoint 2010:

(8-32) Supported and Unsupported List of Compliance (SharePoint 2010)

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
Vault	Vault Controller	Supported	
	Vault Browser	Supported	
	Report	Supported	
	Settings	Supported	
Auditor	Auditor Controller	Supported	
	Auditor Report	Supported	
	Settings	Supported	
eDiscovery	Search	Partially Supported	SharePoint_Fundation_2010 is unsupported
	Offline Export Report	Partially Supported	SharePoint_Fundation_2010 is unsupported
	Settings	Partially Supported	SharePoint_Fundation_2010 is unsupported
Hold Manager	Data Browser	Supported	
	Offline Export Report	Supported	
	Settings	Supported	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

9. Storage Optimization

The key to optimal SharePoint performance and productivity is efficient SQL storage management. DocAve's Storage Optimization solutions provide the tools you need to keep your SQL resources optimized with intelligent archiving, real-time BLOB offloading, and migration-free SharePoint connectivity to file share content.

With DocAve Archiver, you can offload content to tiered storage based on fully-customizable business rules or on an on-demand basis, all without effecting end user accessibility via SharePoint.

With DocAve Connector, you can attach any supported network or cloud file share directly to SharePoint, taking advantage of all of the SharePoint content management and presentation features without any migration.

With DocAve Extender, you can directly offload BLOB content to file-based storage, relieving your SQL servers of such content while still providing end user access via SharePoint.

When combined, these tools deliver the industry's most comprehensive and robust SharePoint storage optimization and performance solution.

As with all AvePoint software, the storage optimization solutions leverage only fully supported Microsoft methodologies and API's.

9.1 Settings

Before performing the storage optimization actions, you must configure the following settings first to ensure the Storage Optimization can be used properly. In order to utilize the DocAve Storage Optimization capabilities, you must first enable EBS/RBS for the SharePoint Farm and set it to use the DocAve external storage. Stub Retention Policy setup can also be configured to allow you to delete the orphaned data automatically, and the Cache Settings allows you to specify a temporary storage location for the storage optimization jobs.

9.1.1 External Blob Storage Provider Settings

Before utilizing any of DocAve's Storage Optimization capabilities, you must enable External Blob Storage (EBS) for the SharePoint Farm and set it to use the DocAve external storage. If you did not select any Storage Optimization agents during the Agent Installation or you are not sure if the farm has the DocAve External Blob Storage enabled, you may run the tool:

...*AvePoint**DocAve5**Agent**bin*\ and run the tool **Blob Com Tool.exe**.

In SharePoint 2010 environment, browse to the path *…**AvePoint**DocAve5**Agent**bin*\ and run the tool **DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSProviderTool.exe**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After the tool opens, click the Check EBS button. The status of EBS for your SharePoint farm will then be displayed on the field on the right. You can also install the Archiver Blob Com module from this tool, a BLOB communication device which will be explained in greater detail in the Archiver section.

The External BLOB Storage (EBS) interface was added to offload SharePoint content from SQL server storage. The DocAve Storage Optimization module utilizes the EBS interface to achieve this function. The DocAve BLOB Provider interacts with SharePoint for all stub related operations:

- If a user accesses a stub, SharePoint will ask the BLOB Provider for the data stream. The BLOB Provider will load data from the Media Service by DocAve Archiver Agent.
- For the Extender module, if a user uploads a file SharePoint will transfer the data stream to the BLOB Provider, which in turn sends the data to a DocAve Media Service by the Extender Agent.

Installing BLOB

You must install the BLOB Provider on all front-end web servers and the central administration server in the SharePoint farm before enabling the EBS option. By default, the BLOB Provider can be installed during the agent installation. To install the BLOB Provider only, see the following steps:

(9-1) Install BLOB

Step	Action
1	*Run the DocAve Agent Installation Program.*
2	Select the **Install BLOB Com Service Only** option in the welcome page.
3	Enter your Name, Organization, and the location from where you purchased the software. Click **Next**.
4	Review the license agreements and click **I accept the terms in the license agreement**. Click **Next**.
5	Choose a directory for the installation. The default path is: C:\Program Files\AvePoint You can change this location by clicking **Browse**. The Feature Description will give you the hard drive size requirement for this installation.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Choose **Next** and review the options selected in the previous steps. If any changes must be made, click **Back**; otherwise, click **Install** to proceed with the installation.
7	Once the installation is complete, click **Finish**.

Enabling EBS

To enable EBS, complete the following steps:

(9-2) Enabling EBS

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Storage Optimization > Settings > EBS & RBS Provider Settings*.
2	In the Farms field to the left, select the farm you want to enable this feature on. Then you can see the current EBS status and the appropriate information of the servers on the right hand side of the screen.
3	You can click **Refresh** to update the farm's information. If the status in the Install Blob Com column is Installed, the BLOB Provider is already installed. ***Note:** If the status in the Install Blob Com column is Uninstalled, the BLOB Provider is not enabled. Check whether you have installed the DocAve agent with the Storage Optimization agent type properly, or confirm the information in Agent configuration tool again.
4	Click the **Enable** button to enable EBS, or the Disable button to disable it. When EBS is enabled, the Enable button will be grayed.

9.1.1.1 Remote Blob Storage Provider Settings

For SharePoint 2010 farm, you can select to enable Remote Blob Storage (RBS) and set it to use the DocAve external storage before utilizing any of DocAve's Storage Optimization capabilities.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** RBS is a library API set that is incorporated as an add-on feature pack for Microsoft SQL Server. It can be run on the local server running Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2, SQL Server 2008 , SQL Server 2008 R2 Express or SQL Server 2008 R2 Developer edition. To run RBS on a remote server, you must be running SQL Server 2008 R2 Enterprise edition. RBS is not supported for Microsoft SQL Server 2005.

(9-3) Enable Remote Blob Storage Provider

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Settings* > *EBS & RBS Provider Settings*.
2	Select the desired farm from the left panel. If the selected farm is a SharePoint 2010 farm, you will see the *EBS* and *RBS* radio buttons in the panel on the right.
3	Select the *RBS* radio button. Within the *General* tab, you can view the RBS Provider status of the selected farm.
4	Within *Settings* tab, select the web application and the appropriate database you want to install the RBS provider by checking the corresponding check-box.
5	If you want to install the RBS Provider for the new databases of a specific web application, you can select the web application and set a schedule for it. Use the calendar icon next to the Start Time field to select a date and time for the installation job to run. You may also optionally set an interval for the Archiving job to run on an only once, hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly basis.
6	Click **Apply** to apply the settings. If you want to run the installation immediately, click **Run Now**.

***Note:** Once you have installed the Remote Blob Storage(RBS) Provider on the specific farm, EBS cannot be installed on this farm.

Check RBS Status Tool

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

In the SharePoint 2010 environment, you can check the RBS status of the content databases which have installed RBS using the **DocAve.SP2010.Storage.CheckRBSStatusTool.exe** tool in the installation path of the Agent which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin by default.

***Note:** The Agent Account must be used to run the tool.

(9-4) Check RBS Status Tool

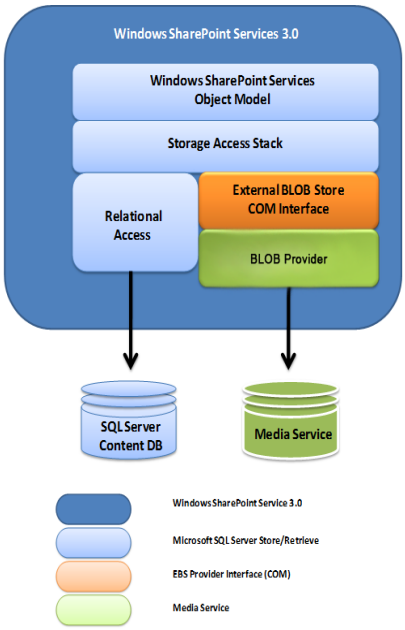
Step	Action
1	Navigate to the installation path of the Agent which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin by default.
2	Double click the **DocAve.SP2010.Storage.CheckRBSStatusTool.exe** file to run the tool and the following information will be shown in the command line interface: • *Content Database Name* : The name of the content database. • *Active Provider Name* : The RBS Provider which is in use. • *Minimum Blob Storage Size* : It is the Document Size configured in Extender module. If the Document Size is not configured, the value will be 9223372036854775807. The unit of this value is Byte.
3	Press **Enter** to exit the tool after it completes.

SharePoint EBS vs. BLOB Provider

Although Microsoft SQL Server is a highly efficient resource manager for structured data in a SharePoint content database, a large proportion of content files are represented as unstructured binary large object (BLOB) data files. SQL Server is designed to store structured data and does not store binary data as well. As such, by using EBS and an external data store to house your binary data files you can save on costs for your SharePoint farm.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After enabling the DocAve BLOB Provider, SharePoint can invoke the DocAve BLOB Provider by EBS, and save the unstructured binary related with the SharePoint File to media as shown in the image below.



EBS vs. RBS

The followings are the differences between EBS and RBS, and a brief explanation of where to use EBS or RBS.

- RBS can only be used in SharePoint 2010; EBS can be used in both SharePoint 2007 SP1+ and 2010, but will be no longer supported in the next SharePoint version.
- EBS must be enabled at SharePoint farm level; RBS can be enabled at content database level.
- EBS can allow Extender settings at granularity of site collection; RBS is at content database level.

9.1.2 Stub Retention Policy

The Stub Retention Policy, also called an Orphan Retention Policy, enables you to set up rules to remove archived data after deleting its stub in SharePoint at the Web Application level. Typically you will set a rule in this section to delay the deletion of content in the archive until a certain period after the stub has been removed in SharePoint.

To apply a stub retention policy for a specific web application, complete the following steps:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-5) Stub Retention Policy Creation

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Settings* > *Stub Retention Policy*.
2	Select a farm from the column on the left-hand side.The applicable web applications will be listed in the Web Application column under the Deletion Settings section.
3	Select to remove either Extender data, Archiver Data, or both in this stub retention policy by checking the corresponding checkbox(es). ***Note:** If you select *Remove Extender Data* or *Remove Archiver Data* in *If a stub is deleted from SharePoint* field, the archived data will be deleted when a stub is deleted from SharePoint. But some stubs may still point to the archived data and become orphaned stubs. So it is recommended disabling the *Remove Extender Data* or *Remove Archiver Data* option to support duplication of stubs.
4	Specify the *Remove Deleted Data* time for the Archiver or Extender data. Select a time zone from the drop-down list, then specify a time and the interval at which the data should be deleted.
5	You may also select to delay the deletion of content by a specified time. This option should be selected when you wish to delay the deletion of actual content from your archives after the stubs have been deleted from SharePoint. This means that after the stub is removed by an end user in SharePoint, the content will remain in the archive until the time specified in this field. ***Note:** We recommend enforcing a minimum delay time to ensure contents are not inadvertently deleted by SharePoint users. ***Note:** You can also set the *Delay deletion by* option for SharePoint 2010 RBS environment.

Storage Orphan Stub Clean Tool

The **DocAve.SP2010.Storage.OrphanStubCleanTool.exe** and **DocAve.SP2007.Storage.OrphanStubCleanTool.exe** tool locate in the installation path of the Agent which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\ by default in the corresponding environment.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

For the **DocAve.SP2007.Storage.OrphanStubCleanTool.exe** tool, you can refer to the corresponding user guide in DocAve's installation path.

In the SharePoint 2010 RBS environment, you can use the tool to perform the following actions:

- Search for the orphan stubs and record the result in the specified .csv file.
- View the orphan stubs' information from the specified .csv file and delete the corresponding files from SharePoint.

To run the tool, complete the following steps:

(9-6) Run the Storage Orphan Stub Clean Tool

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the installation path of the Agent which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\ by default.
2	Double click **DocAve.SP2010.Storage.OrphanStubCleanTool.exe** to run it.
3	Enter the command RBSOrphanCleanUp –Help to view the detailed information of all parameters.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action

4	Below is the detailed information of all the parameters:
	• *RBSOrphanCleanUp* : It is mandatory, and must be input before entering the other parameters.
	• *-Action* : It is mandatory and is the operation to be executed.
	  ◦ If *-Action Report* is used, it will search for the RBS orphan stubs and write the result to a CSV file. The path of the CSV file should be specified in the mandatory *-File* parameter which follows *-Action Report*.The format of the path is C:\test\result.csv
	  ◦ If *-Action Clean* is used, the corresponding files in SharePoint will be deleted according to the orphan stubs' information in the CSV file. The path of the file should be specified in the mandatory *-File* parameter which follows *-Action Clean*. The format of the path is C:\test\result.csv
	• *-WebApp(it is used for -Action Report)* : The URL of the web application where you want to search for the orphan stubs. The format is: http://test:4000. Please note this option is mandatory.
	• *-ContentDB(it is used for -Action Report)* : The content database where you want to search for the orphan stubs. If you skip it, the tool will search in all the content databases of the specified web application. The content database specified here must belong to the web application specified in *-WebApp*.
	• *-SiteCollection(it is used for -Action Report)* : The site collection where you want to search for the orphan stubs. If you skip it, the tool will search in all the site collections. The site collection specified here must belong to the web application specified in *-WebApp*. If the *-ContentDB* parameter is used, the site collection should also belong to the specified content database.
	• *-AfterTime* : It is mandatory if you have specified the parameter *–Action Report*. All the stubs which created after this specified time will be searched out. The format is: year-month-day.
	If parameter's value is invalid, the interface will prompt you to enter it again.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Press any key to exit when the job is finished.

To run the tool in the command line interface, complete the following steps:

(9-7) Run the Storage Orphan Stub Clean Tool

Step	Action
1	Click **Start** and click **Run...**, enter cmd in the *Open* textbox.
2	Click **OK** to open the command line interface.
3	Use the command below to navigate to the installation path of the Agent which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\ by default. cd C:\Program Files\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin
4	Enter the corresponding command to run the tool. DocAve.SP2010.Storage.OrphanStubCleanTool.exe RBSOrphan-CleanUp -webapp http://test:4000 -action report -file c:\test.csv -aftertime 2011-05-18 DocAve.SP2010.Storage.OrphanStubCleanTool.exe RBSOrphan-CleanUp -action clean -file c:\test.csv Refer to the first table in Storage Orphan Stub Clean Tool for the detailed information of the parameters.
5	You can view the progress in the tool interface and press any key to exit when the job is finished.

9.1.3 Cache Settings

Cache Settings provides a central interface to set up a location for the Storage Optimization Cache, and configure either a retention time for the data in the cache or set the maximum size of the cache folder before the new data block comes in and overwrites the oldest one(s).

Click **Apply** once you have changed configurations in this page.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** You can also change the configuration of the cache setting by modifying the *VCEnv.cfg* file in the following path:*...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data*. Please find the *hitFrequency="100/7"* attribute, by default, if one stub has been visited 100 times in 7 days, the corresponding data blocks will be copied to the cache location and you can modify the attribute's value accordingly.

9.1.4 Device Settings

In order to use Storage Optimization, the device settings for the farm where you want to perform the Archiver or Extender job must be set up first.

(9-8) Set up Devices for Storage Optimization

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Settings* > *Device Settings*.
2	Select the farm you want to apply the settings in the left panel.
3	Select the index device for Archiver or Extender from the corresponding drop-down box. ***Note:** Only the Net Share logical devices can be used to store the indexes for Archiver and Extender.
4	Specify the default logical device to make sure that the old Archiver data can be accessed normally.
5	Click **Apply** to save the settings.

9.1.4.1 Supported Logical Device Types for Storage Optimization Module

Here are the supported logical device types of the Storage Optimization module:

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-9) Supported Logical Device Types for Storage Optimization Module

Module	Logical Device Types
Archiver	Net Share
	TSM
	EMC Centera
	Cloud Storage(RackSpace Cloud Files/ MSFT Azure/Amazon S3/EMC ATMOS/ AT&T Synaptic)
	Dell DX Storage
Extender	Net Share
	Cloud Storage(RackSpace Cloud Files/ MSFT Azure/Amazon S3/EMC ATMOS/ AT&T synaptic)
	Dell DX Storage
Connector	Net Share
	Cloud Storage(RackSpace Cloud Files/ MSFT Azure/Amazon S3/EMC ATMOS)

9.2 Archiver

DocAve Archiver is a business-rule enabled item-level archiving engine that seamlessly moves SharePoint content off the production SQL servers and on to external storage drives while still allowing that content to be indexed, searched, viewed, and accessed from within the SharePoint environment. Archiver will move the archived content off the SQL databases (where SharePoint normally writes data) in to a data file that can be stored on a local or network drive, file system, or on SAN.

Archiver can be utilized in two ways: by configuring archiver plans or by installing and enabling the end user archiving feature, which will allow users to individually archive items directly from SharePoint.

In order to utilize Archiver, we recommend using an account with full administrative access to SharePoint and the SQL servers. However, Archival Backup and Restore can still be performed using an account with the following minimum access rights:

- Member of the local admin group (be able to access the files on the local SharePoint server)
- Member of the SharePoint farm admin group
- Member of the database owner group of the SharePoint content DB

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** Archiver must be installed on all front-end servers housing content you wish to archive and the Central Administrator server for the farm.

9.2.1 Installation

Before using Archiver, an Administrator must confirm that Archiver is enabled on the DocAve Agent Host and for the SharePoint farm.

As a result of installing Archiver, the following line will be added to the *web.config* file(this line will be removed after uninstalling):

<SafeControl Assembly= "ArchiveBrowser, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=96367027d75ad34b" Namespace= "ArchiveBrowser" TypeName= "" Safe= "True" />*

***Note:** To clear the DocAve external storage setting in the farm, you can run: *...|Program Files|Avepoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin|DocAveCheckRBS.exe -clear*. When uninstalling the agent or unchecking the Archiver module in the agent configuration, you will remove the DocAve external storage from the farm.

9.2.1.1 Enabling Archiver on DocAve Agent Host

To confirm that the Archiver module is enabled on the DocAve Agent Host, complete the following steps:

***Note:** Enabling the Archiver module will require an IIS Reset.

***Note:** Archiver module can only be run on SharePoint farms that have Service Pack 1 (or higher) installed.

(9-10) Enabling Archiver

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *Start > All Programs > AvePoint DocAve v5 > DocAve v5 Agent tools* and run the **Agent Configuration Tool**.
2	Select the *Storage Optimization* tab in the configuration tool.
3	Check the **Archiver** check-box.
4	Click **Confirm**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

9.2.2 Settings

The Archiver feature needs to be enabled from the Archiver Settings module before Archiver rules can be created, we will also walk through the remaining configuration tabs in the Archiver Settings tab:

(9-11) Configurations for Archiver

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Settings*.
2	On the Password Setting tab, you can apply a pre-defined Security Policy for the archived plan. Select your SharePoint farm from the left column, and then choose the desired security policy from the drop-down box, and then click **Apply** to implement the policy for Archiver. For more information about defining Security Policies, please refer to Section Security Manager of this manual.
3	If you wish to allow for your archived data to be restored to the file system, you must configure the Export Location settings from the *Export Location* tab. This profile will then be selectable when performing an out of-place to File System restore from the Archiver Restore Controller.
4	Click **New** and enter a name in the Profile Name field to create a new profile.
5	Input the Username, Password and Path to access the location where you wish Archiver to restore the archived files to.
6	Click **Test** to test the path you entered.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	After you have tested the path successfully, click **Save** to save the location profile. The profile will now appear in the Location Profiles column on the right. If you click **Save As** and the profile name already exists, a suffix of (1),(2),(3)...will be automatically added to the original name of the location profile and then the new profile will be listed in the Location Profiles column on the right.

9.2.3 Archiver Plan Builder - Rule Based

The Plan Builder for Archiver allows you to configure an Archiver job to select the exact data you wish to archive, and manage the data once it has been archived. This is accomplished by setting the scope of the data, filtering the content, and then applying various business rules to archive the content.

***Note:** If you change the URL of one site after the site has been included in one Archiver plan, the original plan's settings will be affected and the stubs may not be accessible.

9.2.3.1 Setting the scope

The scope for the Archiver plans defines the areas of SharePoint that will be searched each time the plan runs. New content created in these selected areas will automatically be scanned as well.

(9-12) Setting the Scope of an Archiver Plan

Step	Action
1	From any screen in DocAve, navigate to *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Plan Builder*.
2	From the column on the left, select your farm from the Farm drop-down box.
3	Select an Agent Group from the Agent Group drop-down box. Please refer to Section Agent Groups of this Manual for instructions on configuring Agent Groups.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	You will now see your farm displayed underneath. Click on the farm name to expand the data tree.
5	Select the content using the checkboxes next to each corresponding level. There is a **Hide All The System Lists** option for SharePoint 2010 environment. If this option is selected for a list level job, the system lists will not be archived. Please note that for the site/site collection level archiver job, it will archive all lists including the system lists even if you select this option. Clicking once on a checkbox selects that item and all of its sub-items. Clicking twice on a checkbox selects that item but not its sub-items; this is indicated by a sideways arrow. You can then click individual sub-folders or sub-lists you wish to include in the scope. Select any folders containing content you wish to archive. You can filter out any content you do not want to archive by using the *Scope Filter* tab.

9.2.3.2 Basic Settings

After you have configured the scope of the data you wish to archive, you will next configure the Archiver Plan's basic settings.

(9-13) Archiver Plan Basic Settings

Step	Action
1	Continue from the Plan Builder module, after you have set the Archiver Plan scope.
2	In the Settings tab, you will see four options: Storage Manager, Configuration, Reporting, and Advanced.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Click on *Storage Manger*: You must specify a Logical Device where the archived content will be stored. It must be preconfigured in the Control Panel. Please refer to Logical Devices section of this Manual for instructions on this process. You must also specify a Retention policy from the corresponding drop-down box. It must also be preconfigured in the Control Panel. Please refer to the Retention Policy section of this Manual for instructions on this process.
4	Click on *Configuration*: You may optionally select to compress, encrypt, or perform both data manipulations from this tab. If you select either of the two options, you must specify whether to perform the option using the DocAve Media Service or the SharePoint Agent. Please note that by default, no Compression and Encryption is enabled. This is due to the heavy burden on performance resources these operations may place on your environment.
5	Click on *Reporting*: You may optionally select an Email Notification profile to apply to this Archiver plan. It must be pre-configured in the control panel. Please refer to Section Email Notification of this Manual for instructions on this process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Click on *Advanced*: You may optionally select any of the four properties described below. • **Create Stub** : When selected, Archiver creates a stub for the archived item in the same location in SharePoint. A stub is a place holder that can be indexed, searched, and you could open the document just as if it were still in Share-Point. You may also optionally select the corresponding option(s) to: change the SharePoint icon, add a metadata column *Content Archived*, and/or make the stub Read-Only. ***Note:** A configuration file must be configured if you want to make the stubs Read-Only in a SharePoint 2010 environment which is neither an English one nor a Japanese one. For more information, refer to Configuration File for Using Make Stub Read-Only section. • **Generate Full Text Index** : When selected, ensures that the archived content can be fully indexed and searched. • **Include data from Extender** : When selected, Archiver will archive any data in the scope of the plan that has been extended. This option can only be used for *Rule Based* mode. • **Include data from Connector** : When selected, Archiver will archive any data in the scope of the plan that has been uploaded to the Connector storage. This option can only be used for *Rule Based* mode.
7	You can configure a schedule for this Archiver Plan in the *Schedule* Panel. Use the calendar icon next to the Start Time field to select a date and time for the archiver job. You may also optionally set an interval for the archiver job to run on an only once, hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly basis.

In SharePoint 2010, the following feature enables you to move the archived data from one logical device to another. Refer to the steps below to achieve this function.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

1. On the SharePoint 2010 server with DocAve Agent installed, browse to the path *…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010* to find the configuration file **DocAve.SP2010.Storage.Env.cfg** and open it with notepad.
2. In the pop-up window, set **true** value for the parameter **moveArchContentBetweenDevices**.
3. Navigate to the *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Plan Builder* and select an existing Archiver plan. Edit this plan by applying the new logical device and save it as a new plan.
4. Click **Run Now** to run the plan. After the job finishes, the archived content stored in the original logical device is moved to the newly specified logical device.

Configuration File for Using Make Stub Read-Only

The configuration file SP2010.Common.LanguageMapping.xml is in the installation path of DocAve Agent, which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010 by default.

The content of the node for the German SharePoint environment is listed below.

```
<Language id="1031" name="German">
    <Lists>
        <Node key="Pages" value="Seiten" />
        <Node key="Pages/Default.aspx" value="Seiten/Default.aspx" />
        <Node key="Pages/default.aspx" value="Seiten/default.aspx" />
        <Node key="Pages/category.aspx" value="Seiten/category.aspx" />
        <Node key="Converted Forms" value="Konvertierte Formulare" />
        <Node key="Portal Listings" value="Portalauflistungen" />
    </Lists>
    <Columns />
</Language>
```

You must add the node listed below to the <Lists>...</Lists> field.

```
<Node key="Read" value="" />
```

Enter the corresponding word of *Read* in the specified language in the value field. For a German SharePoint environment, the node is <Node key="Read" value="Lesen" />.

9.2.3.3 Archiver Rules

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To further limit the scope of the archived data, you can assign archiver rules to the various levels of SharePoint components. Rules can be created using wildcards * or *.* in Document, Document version and Attachment rule.

***Note:** Please note that all the Archiver Rules works for both SharePoint 2007 environment and SharePoint 2010 environment.

***Note:** Before using the *Accessed Time* rule, SharePoint Auditor must be enabled for the corresponding SharePoint object. If SharePoint Auditor is not enabled when archiving using the *Accessed Time* rule, it will be enabled automatically by DocAve. However, no content will be archived in the first-time job.

***Note:** If you set up Archiver rules regarding a site collection or a site or a list, but the archiver job does not complete successfully, the corresponding site collection/site/list will be locked and it will not be archived again in future archiver jobs in order to prevent data redundancy. The corresponding archiver jobs will complete with exception and the reason will be specified in the job report in Job Monitor.

√ means the specified level could be used for Archiver Rule.

(9-14) Rules Regarding Site Collections, Sites, and Lists

	Site Collections	Sites	Lists
Name: Will include any item with the phrase specified here in the title of the item.	For site collections, you will filter by *Site URLs*	√	√
Except: Will exclude any item with the phrase specified here in the title.	√	√	√
Accessed Time: Includes any sites accessed since the time specified.	√	√	√
Modified Time: Includes any sites modified since the time specified.	√	√	√
Created Time: Includes any sites Created since the time specified.	√	√	√
Owner: Includes the specified owner set in SharePoint.	√	√	√
Template: Includes all sites with the template specified.	√	√	

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

	Site Collections	Sites	Lists
Site Size Trigger: Includes all sites larger than the size specified.	√		
How Long To Keep Stub: Specifies how long to keep the Archiver's stubs. When an Archiver job is run, all of the stubs that have existed for longer than the time frame specified here will be deleted from SharePoint.	√	√	√
Custom Property Set up the archiver rule as required	√	√	

Setting up the Custom Property rule

To set up the custom property rule, complete the following steps.

(9-15) Setup Custom Property Rule

Step	Action
1	Select the Site Collection or Site check box under the *Rules* tab.
2	Click the **Setting** button following Custom Property, and a pop-up window will appear.
3	To set the custom rules be case sensitive, you can select **Case Sensitive** box.
4	Enter a name of the property in the corresponding text box under the *Property Name* column, and then select from four conditions: *Contains*, *Is(exactly)*, *Word Starts With* and *Ends With*, finally, specify the value of the property in the corresponding text box under the *Value* column. Access the custom properties using the SharePoint Manager tool; the custom properties are listed under the **Properties** node.
5	Click the Add icon to add a new item or click the Remove icon to remove the specified item.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	After configuring the new property, click **OK** to save the rules and close the pop-up or click **Cancel** to close the pop-up without saving.

(9-16) Rules Regarding Item, Item Version, Document, Document Version, and Attachment

	Item	Item Version	Document	Document Version	Attachment
Name: Will include any items with the phrase specified here in the title of the item.	√	√	For document, you will filter by *Document Name*	For document Version, you will filter by *Document Name*	For attachment, you will filter by *Attachment Name*
Except: Will exclude any items with the phrase specified here in the title.	√	√	√	√	√
Accessed Time: Includes any items accessed since the time specified.			√		
Modified Time: Includes any items modified since the time specified.	√	√	√	√	
Created Time: Includes any items created since the time specified.	√		√		√
Owner: Includes the specified owner set in SharePoint.	√		√		√
Modifier: Includes the specified last modifier set in SharePoint.	√	√	√	√	

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

	Item	Item Version	Document	Document Version	Attachment
Document Size: Includes any file larger than the specified number			√	√	For attachment, you will filter by *Attachment Size*
How Long To Keep Stub: Specifies how long to keep the Archiver's stubs. When an Archiver job is run, all of the stubs that have existed for longer than the time frame specified here will be deleted from SharePoint.			√	√	√
Content Type: Includes any items with the specified content type.	√		√		
Column: Includes any column related to an item in the SharePoint environment.	√		√		√
Keep the newest: Will keep the newest items and archive the rest of the items according to the specified number.	√		√		
Keep History Version: Specify the number of past versions to keep on the SharePoint production server.		√		√	

√ means the specified level could use this Archiver Rule.

Setting up the Custom Property rule

To set up the column rule, complete the following steps.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-17) Setup Column Rule

Step	Action
1	Select the Item, Document or Attachment check box under the *Rules* tab.
2	Click the **Column Settings** button following Column, and a pop-up window will appear.
3	To set the custom rules be case sensitive, you can select **Case Sensitive** box.
4	On the *Built in Metadata* tab, you can set the condition and value for the specified field under the corresponding columns in the table. To set the custom rules be case sensitive, you can select **Case Sensitive** box.
5	On the *Customized Metadata* tab, click the Add icon to add a new item or click the Remove icon to remove the specified item.
6	Select the type of the field from the corresponding drop-down box in the *Type* column and then enter the name of the field in the corresponding text box under the *Field* column, then choose the condition from the corresponding drop-down box in the *Condition* column, and finally enter the value in the corresponding text box under the *Value* column. For Items and Documents, you can archive the content according to the Workflow Status, if you select *Customized* in the drop-down box under the *Value* column for the All Workflow Status, the customized value must be specified in the text box shown in the *Value* column.
7	After configuring the new property, click **OK** to save the rules and close the pop-up or click **Cancel** to close the pop-up without saving. You can save the settings on the current tab only by clicking **Apply**

9.2.3.4 Setting Archiving Plan Filters

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Under the Scope Filter tab, you can set the filters on Site Collection, Site and List level to set the scope for archiving. This can be done by typing either the exact URL or using wildcards (*) in the appropriate fields.

(9-18) Rules Regarding Site Collections, Sites, and Lists

	Site Collections	Sites	Lists
Name: Will include any items with the phrase specified here in the title of the item.	For site collections, you will filter by *URL*	√	√
Accessed Time: Includes any sites accessed since the time specified.	√	√	√
Modified Time: Includes any sites modified since the time specified.	√	√	√
Created Time: Includes any sites Created since the time specified.	√	√	√
Owner: Includes the specified owner set in SharePoint.	√	√	√
Template: Includes all sites with the template specified.	√	√	
Site Size Trigger: Includes all sites larger than the size specified.	√		
Site Quota Trigger: Starts the Archiver job at the upper bound and stops at the lower bound.	√		

***Note:** √ means the specified level could use this Filter Rule.

***Note:** If you select the site collection in the Scope Filter, then all levels below the Site Collection such as Site, List, Item and so on you set in the Rules will be limited for this scope filter. Only the content which matches the setting rules and are under the search scope will be archived.

9.2.3.5 Running an Archiving plan

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

If you have configured a schedule on a saved plan, it will run at the specified time and interval. Alternatively you can select the plan from the column on the right-hand side of the Plan Builder and click the **Run Now** button, which will run the plan immediately. You can also immediately run a newly configured plan by following the steps below:

(9-19) Running The Plan

Step	Action
1	After setting the scope, basic settings, rules, and the scope filter, you may now run your Archiver plan.
2	If you set rules on the Site Collection, Site or List level, you can click **Preview**. This will pop-up a window to display the content that will be archived.
3	Make sure that you have entered a Plan Name in the field at the top of the page for the plan you have configured. This is how the Archiver job will be identified in the Job Monitor.
4	Click **Save** to save the plan. By clicking **Save As**, if the plan name already exists, a suffix of (1)/(2)/(3)/... will be automatically added to the original name of the Archiving Plan and then it will be saved.
5	If you wish to begin the archiving process immediately, click **Run Now,** otherwise, wait for the scheduled start time and the plan will run automatically. You can click **Test Run**, it will show the size of the content that will be archived for this plan once the test plan is complete. The test run job only to test the size of the data that will be archived, not archive the content. ***Note:** The same content cannot be archived by two jobs at the same time. If there is one job archiving some SharePoint content and you set up another plan to archive the same content, the second job will be skipped when it runs.

9.2.4 Archiver Plan Builder - URL Based

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

URL Based plan builder allows you to archive a list of content explicitly, and does not require you to filter out any content you do not wish to be archived.

Instead of browsing the data tree as in the Rule Based mode, you could upload a customized list which includes all of the URLs of the content (site collection/site) you want to archive. The list must be in a usable format, which is an TXT file.

***Note:** If you change the URL of one site after the site has been included in one Archiver plan, the original plan's settings will be affected and the stubs may not be accessible.

(9-20) URL Based Plan Builder

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select the **URL Based** option from the *Mode* drop-down box.
3	Select the farm and agent group from the drop-down box.
4	Click **Import URL List**, and select the TXT file that contains the list of site collection or site URLs. All of the URLs specified in the file will be listed underneath. ***Note:** The defined URLs should be under the same farm which you have selected from the drop-down box.
5	Click **Verify URLs** to check the format and the availability of the URLs. The icon means that the URL can be archived, the icon means that it cannot be archived.
6	Configure the necessary settings for the archiver job in the Settings tab. For more information about the settings, please refer to the Basic Settings section in the Rule Based instructions.
7	Select the time when Archiver will run. By default, **Now** is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as the **Go** button is clicked. You can also set a scheduled date and time for the Archiver Jobs by clicking the calendar icon, selecting a date and time in the pop-up calendar window, and then clicking **OK**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Click **Go** and Archiver will run the job at the specified time.

9.2.5 Restoring the content

Although you can choose to allow individual users to restore archived content back to the SharePoint Site storage location, the Restore Controller is a quick way to restore archived documents from archive storage back into the SharePoint Storage location on a large scale. To execute an archive restore through the Restore Controller, complete the following steps:

(9-21) Restoring Archived Content with the Restore Controller

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Storage Optimization > Archiver > Restore Controller.*
2	Select your Farm from the drop-down box. The selected farm name will appear on the *Tree Mode* tab.
3	Click the farm name to expand the tree.
4	Browse the tree structure for the content you want to restore. In order to see the content inside a folder or list, you can click the icon after the URL.The content will be listed in the pop-up window. Select the documents to restore. You can also select all content under each level by checking the corresponding check-box to the left of each level. To view the item's detailed information, click the **Details** button. You can select the Property and Security options to restore all meta-data and permissions set of the specified file. You can also find the content you want to restore by clicking the button after the URL. By clicking the button, you can set up the Advanced Search. For Search details, please refer to the Section Searching and Downloading for Archived Content.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Select a restore setting in the drop-down box. You can select to restore **In Place** which will restore the archived item(s) back to the original location in SharePoint, or an **Out of Place- File System** restore which will restore the archived data to the specified *Restore Location* configured in the *Export Location* in the Archiver Settings.
6	Select an Agent Group to perform the restore.
7	Select a start time for the restore. By default, **Now** is selected and DocAve will run the process as soon as the Go button is clicked. You can also set a scheduled date and time for this archiving restore job by clicking the calendar icon, selecting a date and time in the pop-up calendar window, and then clicking **OK**.
8	Select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. Not Overwrite: DocAve will not restore the content if it already exists in the destination. For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for restore, but only one document has already been restored back to SharePoint, then all the content inside the folder except the document will be restored. Overwrite: DocAve will restore the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be restored. ***Note:** Selecting either of the two Restore Options will replace all the stubs in SharePoint with the real data. If you select the **Overwrite** option, the new columns and their values will not be overwritten. ***Note:** The real data of the content will be overwritten if you select the **Overwrite** option, So it is recommended selecting the Not Over-write option while performing the restore.
9	Enter a **Description** in the field provided. This is how the restore job will be referred to in the Job Monitor.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as **Now**, the restore job will run immediately; otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up. ***Note:** If the content database specified to restore the archived content is offline in SQL server, the Archiver Restore job will complete with exception and the reason will be specified in the Job Report.

9.2.5.1 Restoring the Archived Content by Specifying the Number of Items Per Page

When choosing the archived content to restore and there is huge number of archived content, you can configure the parameter**Z eus.ArchiverRestorePerPageNum** in the configuration file to change the items displayed per page. With this method, the restoring performance increases.

***Note:** DocAve Web Service must be restarted to make the change take effect.

(9-22) How to Use the Configuration File

Step	Action
1	On the SharePoint server with DocAve Manager installed, browse to *…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Manager\WasCE\repository\avepoint\zeus\1.0\zeus-1.0.war\WEB-INF* and find the configuration file named **zeus-web.properties**.
2	Open the file with Notepad and change the value of Z**eus.ArchiverRestorePerPageNum** to the number of items you want to display per page in DocAve interface. Save and close the configuration file. ***Note:** By default, the value of **Zeus.ArchiverRestorePerPageNum** is 10, which means 10 items will be displayed per page in the pop-up window after you click the in Archiver Restore Controller. ***Note:** The value of this attribute must be a positive integer. The value of this attibute must be smaller than 800.
3	Navigate to *DocAve > Control Panel > Manager Services > Manager Monitor* to find the corresponding web service and click **Restart** in the Control field to restart it.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Restore Controller*, select one farm from the drop-down box and load the tree. Click the icon next to one list node and the specified number of items will be displayed in the pop-up window.

9.2.5.2 Searching and Downloading for Archived Content

Restore Controller allows you to search through all the archived data using specified search scopes and settings in order to find the exact content you wish to restore. In order to use the Restore Controller to search for the archived data, you must first set the Search Scope as described below. Offline Download Location can also be configured to allow you to view the data while offline.

There are two kinds of Search in Archiver Restore Controller, please refer to the following steps for the details.

(9-23) Searching and Downloading the Content

Step	Action
1	Click located to the right of the URL for each object (when the node is moused over) within the data tree. A Search pop-up window will appear.
2	There are several options you may configure: • *Type* : The level at which you want to run the search. • *Criteria* : Input the exact content name or use wildcards in the text box, Click **Add** to add additional criteria. • *From…To…* : You can specify a time period to search the data in. • *Case Sensitive* : For case-sensitive searches, check the **Case Sensitive** box located in the lower-left of the window You can click **OK** to see the result in the *List Mode* tab, or click **Cancel** to cancel the search.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	For *Advanced Search*, click the icon of Advanced Search following the highest level URL that you wish to search within. A Search Settings pop-up window will appear.
4	There are several configuration options that will narrow search results: • *Keyword* : Returns all results for this keyword in either content or names. Multiple entries can be separated by entering a ; OR or - . For more information about keywords, please refer to the Keyword Usage Options section just below this section. • *Matching results* : Selecting either Content or Metadata will limit the keyword results returned to either content or metadata. • *SharePoint type* : Selecting either Document or Item will limit the keyword results returned to either SharePoint documents or items. • *Archive data range* : This allows the user to specify the date range during which the content was archived. • *Sampling* : Sampling will return either a random percentage of the archived content selected, or every specific number of archived files. This allows you to randomly sample the archived content. • *File format* : Using this field, you can specify multiple file types to either be included or excluded for the search. Use Ctrl+click to select multiple options. You can also specify a custom extension in the Other... field provided. • *Content type* : Using this field, you can specify multiple content types to either return or not return for the search. Use Ctrl+click to select multiple types. You can also specify custom content in the Other... field provided. ***Note:** The Advanced Search can only be performed for the archived job with the full text index.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Click the **More Metadata** button for additional search options. Under the Built in Metadata tab, select the Condition from the corresponding drop-down boxes in the middle. Enter the corresponding values in the fields provided. You can also go to the Customized Metadata tab to add search conditions for customized SharePoint metadata. Click the **Add** button and fill out the new field provided. You can add as many search options as necessary. You can also click the **Remove** button to delete it.
6	Click the **Search** button, the search result will be displayed under the *Search Mode* tab.
7	Select the item(s) you want to download by checking the corresponding checkbox(es). Click the **Export** button to export the item(s) immediately. If you want to download the items offline, click the **Offline Download** button, enter the job name and select an Export Location configured in the *Export Location* tab of the Archiver Settings for the item(s) in the pop-up window. Click **OK** to run the download job.

Keyword Usage Options

The following table is a keyword logic list.

(9-24) Keyword Usage Options

	Keyword	Description
Logic relation	b AND c / +b+c	This serves as an "and" logic, all search results listed will include "b" and "c".
	b OR c / b c	This serves as an "or" logic, all search results listed will include "b" or "c".
	b AND NOT c / +b-c	This serves as a "but" logic, all search results listed will include "b" but exclude "c".

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

	Keyword	Description
Wildcard	"*"	This wildcard represents one or several random characters.
	"?"	This wildcard represents one character.
Field	title: "The Right Way"	This field represents that DocAve will search for the content whose title is "The Right Way".

9.2.6 Convert Stubs to Content

You can convert the stubs of archived content into the actual content (housed in the original SharePoint location) using the **Convert Stubs to Content** Module. To convert stubs to content, follow the steps below:

(9-25) Convert Stubs to Content

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the *DocAve v5 > Storage Optimization > Archiver > Convert Stubs to Content.*
2	Select a Farm from the drop-down box.
3	Select an agent group from the drop-down box, the farm name will be displayed below.
4	You can select to additionally restore the stubs created by Extender by checking the corresponding check-box.
5	Click the farm name to expand the data tree. Select the content you want to restore by checking the corresponding box. In order to see the content inside, you can click icon after the URL.The content will be listed in the pop-up window; however, you cannot select individual items to restore. So the smallest unit you can select for restore is one folder.
6	You can also search for the content you want to restore by clicking the button after the URL.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Click **Go** to run the job, all of the selected stubs will be restored back to content in SharePoint.

9.2.7 End User Archiving

End User Archiving allows you to add an option in the context menu of a SharePoint component which allows end users with the necessary permissions to archive SharePoint content manually. If an end user initiates an archiving job, you can view the job process and detailed information in the Job Monitor. End User Archiving supports both SharePoint 2007 and SharePoint 2010 environment.

Installing the End User Archiving Feature

Before using this feature in SharePoint, you need to install it from DocAve:

(9-26) Installing the End User Archiving Feature

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Settings*.
2	In the *End User Archiving* tab, select the farm where you want to enable the End User Archiving Feature in the column on the left, this will list the Web Applications on the right side of the screen. If you do not deploy the solution, you can click the hyperlink *here* in *Note* to navigate to DocAve Solution Manager to deploy the corresponding solution. For the SharePoint 2007 environment, select the solution *AvePoint_EndUserArchiver.wsp*. For the SharePoint 2010 environment, select the solution *DocAve.SP2010.EndUserArchiver.wsp*. For the detailed information of deploying solutions, please refer to the DocAve Solution Manager section of this manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	The **Activate** button in the *Enable End User Archiving* column will now be enabled. Click the **Activate** button for the desired Web Applications. You can also navigate to *Central Administration > Application Management > Manage Web Application Features* to activate this feature.
4	Additionally, you must configure the settings under *End User Archiving Feature Settings*. • *Retention* : Sets the retention rules configured in the Control Panel. See the Retention Policy section of this Manual for more information. • *Data Configuration* : Sets whether encryption and compression will be carried out; and if so, whether such activities will be carried out by the Media Service or on the SharePoint Agent. • *Logical Device* : Sets the location where the archived data will be stored. For more information on adding a new logical device for the backup data, please refer to the Device Manager section of this Manual. This option is mandatory. • *Automatically Generate Full Text Index* : If selected, DocAve will generate the full text index for the content that users archive. You can then use the Advanced Search to search for the content when restoring. Click **Apply** to save the configuration.

Perform an End User Archiving in SharePoint

End Users can archive data at five levels: Site collection, site, list, folder, document and item.

To perform an End User Archiving at the Site Collection, Site or List level, the user should first go to the corresponding Settings page. For the Document or Item level, the user should select the appropriate object to archive it. If the user archives a folder, all of the content in this folder and its subfolders will be archived.

***Note:** End User Archiving jobs willcreate stubs automatically.

***Note:** If a user attempts to archive a document which is less than 1 kb or an empty folder, SharePoint will display an error and quit the archiving process.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

End User Archiving User Permissions

In order to perform an End User Archiving from SharePoint, the end user must have the appropriate permissions for each level:

- *Site Collection* : The user must have **Site Collection Administrators** permission.
- *Site* : The user must have **Full Control** permission or higher.
- *List* : The user must have **Full Control** permission or higher.
- *Folder* : The user must have **Contribute** permission or higher.
- *Document or Item* : The user must have **Contribute** permission or higher.

Use the Configuration File to Search the Archived Data

After configuring the parameters in the file, you can search the archived data accurately by using the **Advanced Search** in the *Archiver Restore Controller*.

On the SharePoint 2010 server with DocAve Agent installed, find the file **DocAve.SP2010.EndUserArchiver.cfg** in the Agent installation path *…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010\Arch*. Refer to the descriptions below for the detailed information of each node.

- *<LinkedListlistURL= “”>* : Enter the URL of the list where you want to get columns to display in the pop-up window when running an end user Archiver job. You must enter the complete list URL. For example, *http://hostname:port/sites/sitename/Lists/listname/AllItems.aspx*.
- *<Column columnName= “” displayName= “”/>* : Enter the original column name displayed in the list into the *columnName= “”* property and DocAve will display the column with the name specified in the *displayName= “”* property in the pop-up window when running end user Archiver jobs. Copy this node if you wish to add severals columns.

  ***Note:** The column name is case sensitive.
- *<ArchiverGroup Name= “”/>* : Enter the name of an existing SharePoint group. After adding the group into this node, the users in the specified group will have the full control permission on all the archived data. The users outside the specified group only have the full control permission on the data archived by themselves.

  ***Note:** You can only specify one group in this node.

Refer to the following table to do the search from DocAve.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-27) Search the Archived Data

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Restore Controller*. Expand the tree to the library which contains the archived documents and click the Advanced Search icon next to the library, and then navigate to More Metadata > Customized Metadata.
2	Click **Add** to add search conditions. Enter the column name or other field names into the Field column manually and set the conditions according to your requirements. Click **Search**.

9.2.8 Archive Browser Web Part

When DocAve Archiver archives a document, the file is moved out of the SharePoint Database, and is no longer searchable through the default SharePoint Search Engine. The DocAve Archive Browser Web Part will enable the searching and browsing of these archived files.

9.2.8.1 Installing the Web Part

From DocAve 5.6, DocAve will not automatically install the web part to SharePoint when the Archiver is installed in the Agent Configuration Tool. You can go to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *DocAve Solution Manager* to deploy the corresponding solution *Archive-Browser.wsp*(for SharePoint 2007 farm)/*DocAve.SP2010.Archive.Browser.wsp*(for SharePoint 2010 farm), for the detailed information of deploying solutions, please refer to section DocAve Solution Manager of this manual.

After deploying the solution, you can add the web part in SharePoint by following the instructions below:

(9-28) Adding the Web Part in SharePoint

Step	Action
1	Go to the *SharePoint Site* > *Site Actions* > *Edit Page.*
2	Click **Add a Web part**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Under the Miscellaneous group, check the box next to AvePoint Archive Browser and click **Add**. ***Note:** In SharePoint 2010 environment, before adding the DocAve Archive Browser web part to any site in one site collection, you need to go to the top level site of the site collection and then navigate to *Site Actions* > *Site Settings* > *Site Collection Administration* > *Site collection features* to activate the *DocAve Archive Browser* feature for this site collection.

9.2.8.2 Using the Data Browser

After the AvePoint Archive Browser Web Part has been added to the SharePoint site, you can now search for the archived content using the Data Browser or Data Search. Below is a description of the Data Browser.

(9-29) Using the Data Browser of the Web Part

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the SharePoint page with the web part added.
2	Select **Data Browser** to open the archived data browser.
3	Using the tree on the left, you can browse for the content you would like to view. You can either select an individual document on the right, or select all documents under a specific level using the corresponding check-box on the left.
4	By clicking on the file name link, a pop-up will display all metadata columns and their corresponding values. You can choose to Display the File using the corresponding button to view the content of the file. If there is no metadata associated with the file, a The column information cannot be found pop-up will occur.
5	Check the Security and Property checkboxes to restore all security and metadata information pertaining to the selected content.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">You can search for the specified content in Data Browser by clicking on the corresponding magnifying glass. An Advanced Search pop-up window will appear.

You can also do the search in Data Search, for the details, please refer to the section Using the Data Search of this manual.</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="2">There are several options you may configure:
Type : The level you want to run the search at.
Criteria : Input the exact content name or use wildcards in the text box, Click Add to add additional criteria.
From…To… : You can specify a time period to search the data in. You can only specify the end time point here.
Case Sensitive : For case-sensitive searches, check the Case Sensitive box located in the lower-left of the window
You can click OK to see the result in the List Mode tab, or click Cancel to cancel the search.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">8</td><td colspan="2">You can specify a Restore Option for the selected content</td></tr>
<tr><td>If…</td><td>Then…</td></tr>
<tr><td>Not Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will not restore the content if the real data of the content already exists in the destination. For example, if an entire folder's content is selected for restore, but only one document has already been restored back to SharePoint, then all the content inside the folder except the document will be restored.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Overwrite</td><td>DocAve will restore the content over whatever exists on the destination. This will delete the content on the destination and replace it with the content selected to be restored.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Click **Restore** to start the process, you can enter a description for the restore job in the Description text box to distinguish it from the other jobs in Job Monitor. Some detailed information of the job will then be displayed at the bottom of the window and you can check the status and process of the restore on the process bar.

9.2.8.3 Using the Data Search

After the AvePoint Archive Browser Web Part has been added to the SharePoint site, you can now search for archived content using the Data Browser or Data Search. Below is a description of the Data Search.

***Note:** Please ensure the Full Text Index is generated before you use the Data Search.

(9-30) Using the Data Search of the Web Part

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the SharePoint page with the web part added.
2	Click **Data Search**.
3	You can enter the URL for the search Scope in the field provided. By default, the URL of the site that the web part is installed to will be shown in this field.
4	Enter the search criteria in the Keyword field. Click **Search** to start the search. You can view the detailed information of one item by clicking on its name in the search results. ***Note:** Wildcards (*) are not accepted in this field.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Clicking the **Show Advanced Options** button, you can specify limits to the search based on: • *Matching result in* : Shows results from content and/or metadata • *Date Range* : Restricts the search to data archived Today, Yesterday, in the last few days, or in a specific range set by the From/To fields • *Sampling* : Sampling will return either a random percentage of the content selected, or every specific number of files. This allows you to randomly sample the SharePoint content. • *SharePoint Type* : The types of the archived content that will be included in the search, you can select from: Document, Item, Site, List and Folder. • *File Format* : Allows you to restrict the search to either include or exclude some specific extension(s). ***Note:** Multiple items can be selected using "Ctrl + click". • *Content Type* : Allows you to restrict the search to either include or exclude some specific type(s) of the archived content. ***Note:** Multiple items can be selected using "Ctrl + click".
6	You can also restrict the search to the Metadata Option Trivial Mode (Author and Last modified time), or to Entire Mode by selecting the Entire option from the corresponding drop-down box. You can specify the conditions and the corresponding values in the corresponding columns on the left, and/or use the **Add** button to create a list of customized metadata filters on the right. You can also click the **Delete** button to delete the corresponding filter.
7	Once you have set your filters, click **Search** to show the results. You can view the details of the results by clicking the corresponding file title.
8	In the panel which shows the searching results, you can click the icon to restore the specified content. You can also select several items and then click **Restore All Selected Files** to restore them.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

9.2.9 Federated Search Web Part

This web part can be used to search all data of the archived sites in a farm by using the Search Center. You could install this web part on Search Center in Search Server 2008 or a SharePoint site whose site template is Search Center.

***Note:** This Web Part is not supported for SharePoint 2010 environment.

The solution *DocAve_FederatedSearch.wsp* to your farm must be deployed first. For the detailed information of deploying solutions, please refer to section DocAve Solution Manager of this manual. You can also install the web part manually for the SharePoint 2007 environment by following the instruction below:

(9-31) Federated Search Web Part Installation

Step	Action
1	Go to agent installation path(*...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin|SP2007Arch*), open the FederatedSearchWebpart folder.
2	Run Install.bat.
3	After the Install.bat running completes, navigate to a result page of Search Center. Go to *Site Actions* > *Edit Page* > *Add a Web Part* > *All Web Parts*.
4	Select AvePoint Archive Federated Search, click **Add**.

You can retract the solution in DocAve Solution Manager or click Uninstall.bat in *...\|AvePoint\|DocAve5\|Agent\|bin\|SP2007Arch\|FederatedSearchWebpart* in the SharePoint 2007 environment to uninstall the web part from the farm.

(9-32) Federated Search Web Part Usage

Step	Action
1	Enter the keyword in the search field, click **Search** to skip to AvePoint Archive Federated Search Web Part page.
2	If there is no matching result, it will prompt you in this Web part. It also provides an Advanced Search hyper link, you can reset the search criteria.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	The search results will be displayed in the Web part. It displays 10 items on each page. You can use the Advance Search hyper link at the bottom of the Search Result Page.
4	Please refer to the Section Using the Data Search for more details about Advance Search.
5	The results will be displayed on the Result Page. You can click the item name to view its detailed information. On this page, you can also use the Basic Search and Advance Search.
6	For the uploaded files in SharePoint, you can download them in the Result Page.

***Note:** Federated Search Web part does not support permission control.

9.3 Extender

DocAve module invokes Microsoft's BLOB storage APIs to regular content being uploaded to SharePoint to either the SQL content database or to file-based storage based on a customizable file-size trigger.

For any site collection for EBS or content database for RBS which has the Extender rule applied, the file matched the Extender rule will be archived when being uploaded to the SharePoint site, and the original file will be saved in the specified physical device. EBS\RBS Settings must be enabled first.

9.3.1 Extender Settings

To configure Extender Settings, please follow the steps below.

***Note:** If you change the URL of one site after the site has enabled Extender, the original settings of Extender will be affected and the stubs may not be accessible.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-33) Configuring Extender Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Extender* > *Extender Settings*.
2	Select the farm from the drop-down list, and expand the data tree by clicking the farm name.
3	Select the site you want to enable the real time archiving feature by checking the corresponding check-box. If RBS provider was enabled for the selected farm, you can select the content database you want to enable Extender feature. The site collections in the content database can be viewed by clicking the *Browse Content* icon. ***Note:** If the database icon is *gray*, it means that this database has not enabled RBS and the Extender rule cannot be applied to this database. You need to navigate to EBS&RBS Provider Settings page to enable RBS for the application which you want to apply the Extender rule to. If the database icon is *yellow*, it means that this database has already enabled RBS and the Extender rule can be applied to this database. When checking a box to specify the content to be backed up, the folder icon will include a colored triangle ( ). The triangle indicates that all new data created in those site collections will be automatically picked up by the backup plan. This option is turned on by default. Clicking on the folder icon itself will remove the triangle, hence indicating that only content that is recognized at this current time will be backed up. ***Note:** It is recommended you to select the Discover New feature (making the folder icon with the triangle) when backing up the entire site collection. If you want to back up the entire site collection's content without any new content (removing the triangle), you must expand the data tree to the level you want to back up, otherwise, it will not back up the new site(s) under the site collection. You can click the Preview icon following the site's URL to view the current settings for this site. ***Note:** For SharePoint 2010 RBS environment, you can click the Preview icon following the content database URL to view the current settings for this content database.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Within the *Site Collection Property* Panel, if you want to extend all the existing content which complies with the Extender rule at a specified time, you can select the Extend existing contents option, and click the calendar icon to specify the time. You must set up the Extended Criteria for the target content: • *Document Size* : Specify the size for the document. If the size for the uploading document is larger than the specified one, the document will be extended while uploading. You can also select a Filter Option if necessary. If you specify an inclusion filter rule, it will only archive the specified type documents which exceeded the specified size; if you specify an exclusion filter rule, it will not archive the specified type documents which exceeded the specified size. For the information about how to set up a filter rule, please refer to Policy Settings. • *All Documents* : It will extend all uploading documents.
5	Select a logical device from the drop-down box. By Default, the *Use the default logical device* option is selected and the Default Logical Device you set up in the Device Settings will be used. You can also specify a customized logical device for the Extender.
6	You can specify whether the Compression and Encryption will be carried out, and if so whether such activities will be carried out by the Media Service or on the SharePoint Agent. Please note that by default, no Compression or Encryption is enabled.
7	Click the **Apply** button to save the settings. You can click the **Retract Settings** button to retract all the Extender Settings for the specific site/site collection. You can click **Test Run** to test whether the file you want to archive is in use. You can view the amounts of the items which can be archive successfully and cannot archive successfully as well as the unsuccessful result in the Job Monitor.

***Note:** If one database enabled RBS and set up the Extender Settings, once the RBS is disabled and then enabled again, the Extender Settings needs to be configured again in order to take effect.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

9.3.2 Convert Stubs to Content

To convert stubs to content, please follow the steps below.

(9-34) Convert Stubs to Content

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Extender* > *Convert Stubs to Content*.
2	Select a Farm from the drop-down box.
3	Select an agent group from the drop-down box, the farm name will be displayed in the area below.
4	You can select to restore the data from Archiver by checking the corresponding check-box.
5	Click the farm name to expand the data tree. Select the content you want to restore by checking the corresponding check-box. In order to see the content inside, you can click icon after the URL.The content will be listed in the pop-up window.
6	You can find the content you want to restore by clicking the button after the URL and it will pop-up the *Advance Search* window. Enter the exact content URL or use wildcards in the Criteria box. Click Add to add the criteria. It will be listed underneath. You can click the red cross in the Delete Column to delete the corresponding criteria if necessary. ***Note:** "*" represents a random number of characters; "?" represents one random character. For Case-sensitive searches, check the *Case Sensitive* check-box located in the lower left corner of the window. Click **OK** to start the search, the search result will be listed under the corresponding parent node. Click **Cancel** to cancel the search.
7	Click **Go** to run the job, all the stubs will be converted to content.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

9.3.3 Policy Settings

By using the Policy Settings, you can select to extend some specified types of documents or exclude them when extending.

***Note:** For SharePoint 2010 environment, only EBS supports filtering by the Document Type.

(9-35) Setting up a Filter Policy

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Extender* > *Policy Settings*.
2	Enter the **Policy Name** into the provided field.
3	Select Include or Exclude by clicking the corresponding radio button. • *Include* : The selected types of files will be extended when uploading. • *Exclude* : The selected types of files will not be extended when uploading.
4	Select the document type(s) by checking the corresponding check-box(es).
5	Click **Save** to save the settings. If you click **Save As** and the policy name already exists, an suffix of (1),(2),(3)... will be automatically added to the original name of the policy. The saved policies will be listed in the Policies column on the right of the page.

9.4 Helpful Notes on Archiver and Extender

Requirements on DocAve Components Installation on the SharePoint Servers

Refer to the list below for the requirements on the installation of DocAve components on the servers which use the Storage Optimization module. If multiple SharePoint services/applications co-exist on the same server, make sure all the corresponding requirements are met.

In EBS environment,

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Front-end Web server* : DocAve agent must be installed on the Front-end Web server in order to access stubs and upload files on the server.
- *The server which installs the Office Web App service* : DocAve agent must be installed on the server which installs the Office Web App service. Otherwise, the Office stubs may not be accessed on all the Front-end Web servers.

  ***Note:** Office Web App service includes Word Viewing Service Application, PowerPoint Service Application and Excel Calculation Services.
- *Central Administration server* : You must install Blob COM on the Central Administration server, otherwise, no site collection can be created in SharePoint.
- *The server which installs the SQL Reporting Service* : You must install Blob COM on the server which installs the SQL Reporting Service, otherwise, no files can be uploaded through the SQL Reporting service. If you want to trigger the Extender rules when uploading files through the SQL Reporting Service, the DocAve agent must be installed.

In RBS environment,

- *Front-end Web server* : DocAve agent must be installed on the Front-end Web server in order to access stubs and upload files on the server.
- *The server which installs the Office Web App service* : DocAve agent must be installed on the server which installs the Office Web App service. Otherwise, the Office stubs may not be accessed on all the Front-end Web servers.

  ***Note:** Office Web App service includes Word Viewing Service Application, PowerPoint Service Application and Excel Calculation Services.
- *The server which installs the SQL Reporting Service* : If you want to trigger the Extender rules when uploading files through the SQL Reporting Service, the DocAve agent must be installed.

Notifications When Performing the Operations Concurrently

The Archiver and Extender modules cannot be performed two operations at the same time on the same site collection. If you performed any forbidden pair of the operations, DocAve will fail or skip the second one of the two operations to prevent some problems.You must perform only one of the archived operation to the same site collection at the same time.

Access Stubs or Upload Files During Upgrading

In order to access stubs or upload the files during the DocAve upgrading, it is recommended you to upgrade DocAve service by following order.

Control service > Media service one by one > DocAve agent one by one.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

By using this method to upgrade DocAve, it should minimize the downtime of SharePoint to ensure you can access stubs and upload the files when upgrading DocAve.

Access Stubs When Control Service is Stopped

In order to access stubs when DocAve Control Service is stopped, configure the attribute below first.

***Note:** You must access one of the stubs generated by a specified Archiver/Extender job beforehand in order to access it when DocAve Control Service is stopped.

- *Zeus.RemoteInfoWithOutControl* : This attribute can be found in the zeus-media.properties file in DocAve's installation path. The default path is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Manager\ZeusMedia\etc. The value of this attribute must be true to enable the cache function on the Media Service. By default, the value is true.

The Media Mapping Cache is local to the Agent, and thus, will save time because it eliminates the need for the Control Service to communicate from the Web Front-end to the BLOB storage location. For a SharePoint 2007 environment, configure the feature as follows:

- *MediaMappingCache.config* : The cache of the Agent will be automatically saved to the MediaMappingCache.config file in the following path: ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2007. You can change the order of the <Media id="id" host="host" /> nodes to specify the Media Services' order to use when accessing the stubs.

For SharePoint 2010 environment, configure the following settings.

- *PreferredMediaServers.config* : You can specify the order of the Media Services in the PreferredMediaServers.config file. This order will be used when accessing the stubs and the Media Server at the top of the list will be used first. The ability to set which Media Service serves which content is especially useful when managing global farms that have servers in widespread locations. The PreferredMediaServers.config file must be added to the following path: ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010. The format of the configuration file is: <MediaInfo><Media port="12001" host="10.0.0.1"/></MediaInfo>.

  ***Note:** This order is only effective for the specified Agent host, if you want to use another order on a different server, you must create the PreferredMediaServers.config file again.

  ***Note:** You can create a new file in Windows Notepad and save it as PreferredMediaServers.config. Media port is the Media Service control port and host is the IP address of the Media Server.

- *LogicalDeviceMappingCache.config* : The cache of the Agent will be automatically saved to the LogicalDeviceMappingCache.config file in the following path: ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After the configuration files are configured for your environment and you have accessed one of the stubs generated by a specified Archiver/Extender job, the stubs of the specified job can be accessed when DocAve Control Service stops.

Include/Exclude New Content in SharePoint When Archiving

DocAve supports to include/exclude new SharePoint content when archiving the content. If you want to include/exclude the specified content, please refer to the instructions below:

- *To include new SharePoint content* : Select the corresponding node on the tree in Archiver's Plan Builder.
- *To exclude new SharePoint content* : To exclude the new SharePoint content, you need to expand the data tree under the specific node.
  Click the triangle symbol at the bottom right corner of the node icon **once**, all the expanded nodes except the top node will exclude the new SharePoint content. Click the triangle symbol at the bottom right corner of the node **twice**, all the nodes besides the top node will exclude the new SharePoint content.

Run Move-SPSite Command in SharePoint 2010 SP1

If there are some RBS stubs generated by former version of DocAve, such as DocAve 5.6.1.0 or earlier versions, you must complete the steps below before running the Move-SPSite command once upgrading your SharePoint to SharePoint 2010 SP1.

(9-36) Uninstall RBS and Reinstall RBS

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the bin folder of DocAve Agent's installation path, which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin by default.
2	Right click on the DocAve.SP2010.Storage.RBSTool.exe file and click **Run as administrator** to run it.
3	Click the **Uninstall** button in the pop-up to uninstall the RBS.
4	Click the **Install** button in the pop-up to install the RBS.
5	Repeat the steps above on all the servers which have installed RBS.

Influence on Archiver and Extender When the License Expired

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

The following table shows the influence on Archiver and Extender when the license expired.

(9-37) Influence on Archiver and Extender When the License Expired

Function		Influence on the function when the license expired
Archiver	Plan Builder	DocAve will not run the job.
	Restore Controller	There will be a corresponding prompt message which indicates that the license has already expired and DocAve will not run the job.
	Convert Stubs to Content	DocAve will not run the job.
Extender	Extender Settings	DocAve will not run the job.
	Convert Stubs to Content	DocAve will not run the job.
Settings	EBS&RBS Provider Settings	If the license for Archiver, Extender and Connector all expired for one farm at the same time, the farm will not be shown in the Farms field.
	Stub Retention Policy	DocAve will not run the job.
SharePoint Integrated Functions	Create a new site collection in a web application which has DocAve Extender enabled	DocAve Extender will not be enabled for the new site collection.
	Create a new content database in a web application which has DocAve Extender enabled	DocAve Extender will not be enabled for the new content database.
	Archive Browser Web Part	There will be a corresponding prompt message indicating that the license has already expired when you use this web part to do the restore job and DocAve will not run the job.

9.5 Connector

DocAve Connector empowers organizations to leverage SharePoint as the presentation layer for all of its file share content, thereby avoiding the burdens of migration and freeing up valuable space on SQL Servers. With full index and SharePoint search support, all file share content is seamlessly integrated into the SharePoint platform. By using DocAve Connector, organizations can truly unify the delivery of content within legacy data stores, and optimize end user productiv-

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

ity by exposing network and cloud file share data to all of SharePoint's powerful management and collaboration capabilities.

***Note:** DocAve Connector is supported in SharePoint 2010.

DocAve Provides a document about the types and members for working with a Connector Library, you can find it in DocAve installation path *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|documents|SDK|Connector* by default. There is a help file *DocAve.Connector.Documentation.chm* and a corresponding Example folder containing a *Sample.zip* file in the path.

9.5.1 Content Library

In the Content Library section, you can configure the file share or cloud storage content library in SharePoint.

9.5.1.1 Settings

Before installing the content library in SharePoint, you need to configure some mappings to make sure that the file in the specified location can be uploaded properly.

Net Share Settings

This section describes how to set up mappings from File System permissions, columns, and other information to SharePoint.

(9-38) Net Share Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5> Storage Optimization > Connector > Content Library > Settings*.
2	Select the *Net Share Settings* tab.
3	In order to setup a Settings Profile, the Function Settings, Properties Mapping, Common Mapping and Security Mapping must be configured and saved beforehand.
4	Within the *Function Settings* tab, you can configure some permission settings and the basic options for the content library. Click **New** and enter a profile name.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	In the Permissions area, click the **Configure**, and then you can specify the necessary permissions for the corresponding action.
6	There are two options you can configure in *Other Settings*. • *When loading a folder to SharePoint, the folder permission will be* : Specifies the permission for the users after loading the folder from the File System to the SharePoint library.
7	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Function Settings*.
8	Select the *Properties Mapping* tab, click **New** and enter a profile name.
9	Select the check-box next to the File System Properties which you want to load the corresponding properties in SharePoint for File System. You can also check the check-box next to File System Properties to select all options. If you uncheck the File System Properties check-box, no file system properties will be loaded to SharePoint. To search individual file system property, you can enter the property name into the corresponding text box, and click **Search** to find it. ***Note:** The search will not find the property unless you entered the exact name of the property into the text box, including the case. ***Note:** Though the search requires the exact match between the criteria and the name of the property, you could see a drop-down list which shows all the properties that match the criteria while entering. You can click on some property name in the list and then the property will be searched out.
10	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Properties Mapping*. After the configuration has been saved successfully, it will be displayed in the *Properties Mapping File* column on the right.
11	Select the *Common Mapping* tab and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are two options: *Character length setting*, and *Illegal characters replace setting*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	Check the check-box(es) under *Characters length setting* and you can control the maximum length of the folder's/file's name. By default, the maximum length of the file/folder name is 60 and 80. You can define the length of the folder/file name in the range of 1 to 128. If the folder/file name exceeds the length that is defined, the system will automatically prune the extra characters and save the name according to the length defined. The folder/file name will be pruned according to the following rules. • For the pruning of one file name, the length of the file extension name will be counted. For example, if the maximum length you specified is 8, for a file whose extension name is .exe, the maximum length of the file's name is 4. • DocAve will start the pruning from the middle part of the file name. For example, if the maximum length of the file name is 4 and the original file name is *abcde*, the file name after pruning will be *abde*. • The latter character will be deleted and if there is already a same name in SharePoint, a suffix (which is a number) will be added to the original name of the file/folder when pruning. ***Note:** In SharePoint 2010, if loading the file/folder whose URL is longer than 256 characters, the extra part of the name will be pruned and the original file/folder's name will be shown in the title column. You can manually add this column to the current view to check the information.
13	Select the *Illegal characters replace setting* box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which is _ by default. ***Note:** If there are multiple replace settings for a single illegal character, only the last replace setting will be used and shown in the *Illegal characters replace setting* field.
14	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Common Mapping*. After the configuration profile has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Common Mapping File column on the right. ***Note:** There is already a Default Common Mapping profile on the right column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
15	Select the *Security Mapping* tab, click **New** and enter a profile name. It allows you to map the permissions from the file system to SharePoint.
16	Select a SharePoint Permission for the corresponding File System Permission from the drop-down box.
17	If you want to configure a new SharePoint Permission for the permission mapping, click the **New SharePoint Permission** button, and a pop-up window will appear. • *Name* : Enter a name for the new permission in the provided text box. • *Description* : You may enter a description in the Description field to help distinguish this permission from the others. • Select the detailed permissions for the new SharePoint Permission by clicking the corresponding check-box. You can select *Select All* if you want to include all the permissions. • Click **Save** to save the settings of the permission, and it will be listed in the *Permission Level Profile* column on the right of the pop-up. • You can click the **Clear** button to remove your configuration.
18	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Security Mapping*, and then it will be displayed in the *Security Mapping File* column on the right.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">19</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as an xml file by clicking the Download or Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration file, the user has different selection depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Settings interface. It may cause some unexpected error if editing or removing the configuration in the xml file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options:
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the missing content which is not configured in the existing file. The settings which are in both of the profiles will not be changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file with a different name is uploaded</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current one.

*Note: Only the Common Mapping supports merging the xml files.</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the four profiles, you should go to the Settings Profile.</td></tr>
<tr><td>21</td><td colspan="2">Click New and input a new profile name.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
22	You can specify each setting for the profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, DocAve uses the Default settings.
23	Click **Save** to save this profile. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Net Share Settings Profiles* column on the right. When configuring the settings for the Net Share Connector Type in the Install section, you can select this profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

Cloud Storage Settings

This section describes how to set up mappings from Cloud Storage permissions and other information to SharePoint.

(9-39) Cloud Storage Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5> Storage Optimization > Connector > Content Library > Settings*.
2	Select the *Cloud Storage Settings* tab.
3	In order to setup a Settings Profile, the Function Settings and Common Mapping must be configured and saved beforehand.
4	Within the *Function Settings* tab, you can configure some permission settings and the basic option for the content library. Click **New** and enter a profile name.
5	In the Permission area, click **Configure**, and then you can specify the necessary permission for the corresponding action.
6	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Function Settings*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Select the *Common Mapping* and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are two options: *Character length setting*, and *Illegal characters replace setting*.
8	Check the box next to Characters length setting; you can control the file/folder name and SharePoint URL's maximum length. By default, the maximum length of the file/folder name and SharePoint URL is 80, 60 and 255. You can define the length of the folder/file name in the range of 1 to 128 and the SharePoint URL in the range of 1 to 260. If the folder/file name or the SharePoint URL exceed the length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra characters. The truncated file/folder name or SharePoint URL will be recorded in the Job Report. The folder/file name will be pruned according to the following rules. • For the pruning of one file name, the length of the file extension name will be counted. For example, if the maximum length you specified is 8, for a file whose extension name is .exe, the maximum length of the file's name is 4. • DocAve will start the pruning from the middle part of the file name. For example, if the maximum length of the file name is 4 and the original file name is *abcde*, the file name after pruning will be *abde*. • The latter character will be deleted and if there is already a same name in SharePoint, a suffix (which is a number) will be added to the original name of the file/folder when pruning.
9	Select the *Illegal characters replace setting* box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which is _ by default.
10	Click **Save**. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Common Mapping File* column area on the right. ***Note:** There is already default common mapping file on the right column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">11</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as an xml file by clicking the Download or Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration profile, the user has different selections depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Settings interface. It may cause some unexpected error if editing or removing the configuration in the xml file.

*Note: If there are multiple replace settings for a single illegal character, only the last replace setting will be used and shown in the Illegal characters replace setting field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>he xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options

• Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.

• Merge : It will add the different content which is not configured in the existing file. The settings which are in both of the profiles will not be changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file with a different name</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current one.

*Note: Only the Common Mapping supports to merging the xml files.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the two profiles, you can now navigate back to the Settings Profile tab.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	Click **New** and input a new profile name.
14	You can specify the mappings for this profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, it selected the default mapping.
15	Click **Save** to save this profile. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Cloud Storage Settings Profiles* column on the right. When configuring the settings for the Cloud Storage Connector Type in the Install section, you can select this profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

Third Party Storage Settings

This section describes how to set up mappings from Third Party Storage permissions and other information to SharePoint.

***Note:** To use third party storage for the Connector Library (Content Library\Media Library), please ensure the corresponding dll file is copied to DocAve's installation path, which is *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin* by default, before you modify the Third Party Storage Settings.

(9-40) Third Party Storage Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5> Storage Optimization > Connector > Content Library > Settings*.
2	Select the *Third Party Storage Settings* tab. In order to setup a Settings Profile, the DLL and Parameters, Function Settings and Common Mapping must be configured and saved beforehand. For more information about how to create the corresponding DLL file, please click **Download Quick Start Guide** button to view the guide.
3	Within the *DLL and Parameters* tab, you can configure the dll information and basic parameters for the content library. Click **New** and enter a profile name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	On the *DLL Information* tab, you can configure the following settings according to the settings for the dll file: • *DLL Name* : The full name of the dll file which is copied to DocAve installation path. • *DLL NameSpace* : The namespace used by the dll file. • *Connection Class Name* : The name of the class which is used to get connection to the storage media. • *File Class Name* : The name of the file class. • *Folder Class Name* : The name of the folder (or some familiar structure which has the same functions) class. On the *Basic Parameters* tab, you can configure the basic parameters which will be displayed in the content library settings page in SharePoint. You can click **Add** icon to add one row and click **Remove** icon to remove the corresponding row. There are three columns in one row: • *ID* : The key of the parameter of the Connection Class constructor. It must be the same as the value you set up in the DLL file. • *Name* : The display name in the content library settings page in SharePoint. • *Encryption* : Select this option to encrypt the information when displaying and transferring. ***Note:** These parameters are the basic information used to connect to the third storage.
5	Click **Save** to save the profile of *DLL and Parameters*.
6	Within the *Function Settings* tab, you can configure some permission settings and the basic option for the content library. Click **New** and enter a profile name.
7	In the Permissions area, click the **Configure** button in the *Configure* column, and then you can specify the necessary permissions for the corresponding action.
8	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Function Settings*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Select the *Common Mapping* tab and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are two options: *Characters length setting*, and *Illegal characters replace setting*.
10	Check the check-box(es) under *Characters length setting* and you can control the maximum length of the folder's/file's name. By default, the maximum length of the file/folder name is 60 and 80. You can define the length of the folder/file name in the range of 1 to 128. If the folder/file name exceeds the length that is defined, the system will automatically prune the extra characters and save the name according to the length defined. The folder/file name will be pruned according to the following rules. • For the pruning of one file name, the length of the file extension name will be counted. For example, if the maximum length you specified is 8, for a file whose extension name is .exe, the maximum length of the file's name is 4. • DocAve will start the pruning from the middle part of the file name. For example, if the maximum length of the file name is 4 and the original file name is *abcde*, the file name after pruning will be *abde*. • The latter character will be deleted and if there is already a same name in SharePoint, a suffix (which is a number) will be added to the original name of the file/folder when pruning.
11	Select the *Illegal characters replace setting* box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which is _ by default.
12	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Common Mapping*. After the configuration profile has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Common Mapping File* column on the right. ***Note:** There is already a Default profile for *Common Mapping* listed in the column on the right.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">13</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as an xml file by clicking the Download or Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration profile, the user has different selections depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Settings interface. It may cause some unexpected exceptions if editing or removing the configuration in the xml file.

*Note: If there are multiple replace settings for a single illegal character, only the last replace setting will be used and shown in the Illegal characters replace setting field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>The name of the xml file to be uploaded does not exist</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has the same name with some profile</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the missing content which is not configured in the existing file. The settings which are in both of the profiles will not be changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file with a different name</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current one.

*Note: Only the Common Mapping tab supports merging the xml files.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	After setting up the three profiles, you can now navigate back to the *Settings Profile* tab.
15	Click **New** and input a new profile name.
16	You can specify each setting for the profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, DocAve uses the Default settings.
17	Click **Save** to save this profile. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Third Party Storage Settings Profiles* column on the right. When configuring the settings for the Third Party Storage Connector Type in the Install section, you can select this profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

9.5.1.2 Installer

The Content Library Connector feature needs to be installed from the Settings before create it in SharePoint.

(9-41) Install the Content library Connector Feature

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Connector* > *Content Library* > *Installer*.
2	Select a Farm from the left column, it will list the Web Applications on the right side of the screen. If the corresponding solution is not installed, you need to click the hyperlink *here* in *Note* to navigate to DocAve Solution Manager to deploy the corresponding solution *AvePointSPFileConnector.wsp*(for SharePoint 2007 environment)/*DocAve.SP2010.Connector.ContentLibrary.wsp*(for SharePoint 2010 environment). For the detailed information of deploying solutions, please refer to section DocAve Solution Manager of this manual.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	To configure the Net Share Server for the specified farm, click the **Configure** button under *Net Share Server Configuration*. You can select to make the Access Authority public or private. In the public mode, you must specify your username and password when setting up the library in SharePoint. ***Note:** The user you specified in the public mode must be a local administrator to ensure the Net Share path can be accessed successfully. In the private mode, you only need to enter your password when setting up the library in SharePoint. ***Note:** The user for the private mode should have the Full Control permission for the File System folder(s).
4	Click **Activate** to active the feature on the corresponding web application.
5	Click **Configure** in the *Connector Type* column to select the Settings Profile set up in the Settings. ***Note:** If you want to use the Third Party Storage in the content library in SharePoint, you need to select the corresponding *Third Party Storage* check box and then select the corresponding setting from the *Third Party Storage Settings* drop-down box to enable the corresponding Content Library Template.
6	Click the clock icon in the *Sync Data* column, and it will Synchronize the data from the File System to SharePoint at the specified time.

9.5.2 Media Library

In the Media Library section, you can install the file share or cloud storage media library in SharePoint.

***Note:** This feature is supported in a SharePoint Foundation environment from DocAve 5.6.

9.5.2.1 Settings

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Before installing the media library in SharePoint, you need to configure some mappings to make sure that the file in the specified location can be loaded properly.

Net Share Settings

This section describes how to set up mappings from File System permissions, columns, and other information to SharePoint.

(9-42) Net Share Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5> Storage Optimization > Connector > Media Library > Settings*.
2	Select the *Net Share Settings* tab.
3	In order to setup a Settings Profile, the Function Settings, Properties Mapping, Common Mapping and Security Mapping must be configured and saved beforehand.
4	Within the *Function Settings* tab, you can configure some permission setting and the basic options for the content library. Click **New** and enter a profile name.
5	In the Permission area, click **Configure**, and then you can specify the necessary permission for the corresponding action.
6	There are two options you can configure in *Other Settings*. • *When loading a folder to SharePoint, the folder permission will be* : Specifies the permission for the users after loading the folder from the File System to the SharePoint library.
7	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Function Settings*.
8	Select the *Properties Mapping* tab, click **New** and enter a profile name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	You can select the corresponding properties of the File System to load to SharePoint. If you uncheck the File System Properties checkbox, no file system properties will be loaded to SharePoint. To search individual file system property, you can enter the property name into the text box, and click **Search** to find it. ***Note:** The search does not find the property unless you entered the exact property name into the text box, including the case. ***Note:** Though the search requires the exact match between the criteria and the property name, you could see a drop-down list which shows all the properties that match the criteria while entering. You can click on the property name in the list and then the property will be searched out.
10	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Properties Mapping*. After the configuration has been saved successfully, it will be displayed in the *Properties Mapping File* column on the right.
11	Select the *Common Mapping* tab and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are two options: *Character length setting*, and *Illegal characters replace setting*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	Check the box next to Characters length setting; you can control the file and folder name maximum length. By default, the maximum length of the file/folder name is 80 and 60. You can define the length of the folder/file name in the range of 1 to 128. If the folder/file name exceeds the length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra characters. The folder/file name will be pruned according to the following rules. • For the pruning of one file name, the length of the file extension name will be counted. For example, if the maximum length you specified is 8, for a file whose extension name is.exe, the maximum length of the file's name is 4. • DocAve will start the pruning from the middle part of the file name. For example, if the maximum length of the file name is 4 and the original file name is *abcde*, the file name after pruning will be *abde*. • The latter character will be deleted and if there is already a same name in SharePoint, a suffix (which is a number) will be added to the original name of the file/folder when pruning.
13	Select the *Illegal characters replace setting* box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which is _ by default. ***Note:** If there are multiple replace settings for a single illegal character, only the last replace setting will be used and shown in the *Illegal characters replace setting* field.
14	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Common Mapping*. After the configuration profile has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the Common Mapping File column on the right. ***Note:** There is already a Default profile for *Common Mapping* listed in the column on the right.
15	Select the *Security Mapping* tab, click **New** and enter a profile name. It allows you to map the permissions from the file system to SharePoint.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	Select a SharePoint Permission for the corresponding File System Permission from the drop-down box.
17	If you want to configure a new SharePoint Permission for the permission mapping, click the **New SharePoint Permission** button, and a pop-up window will appear. • Enter a name for the new permission in the provided text box. • You may enter a description in the **Description** field to help distinguish this permission. • Select the permission for the new SharePoint permission by clicking the corresponding check box. You can select Select All if you want to include all the permissions. • Click **Save** to save the permission, and it will be listed in the Permission Level Profile column area on the right. • You can click the clear button to remove your configuration.
18	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Security Mapping*, and then it will be displayed in the *Security Mapping File* column on the right.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">19</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as an xml file by clicking the Download or Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration profile, the user has different selections depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Settings interface. It may cause some unexpected error if editing or removing the configuration in the xml file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the different content which is not configured in the existing file. The settings which are in both of the profiles will not be changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file with a different name</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current one.

*Note: Only the Common Mapping tab supports merging the xml files.</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the four configurations, you should go to the Settings Profile.</td></tr>
<tr><td>21</td><td colspan="2">Click New and input a new profile name.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
22	You can specify the mappings for this profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, it selected the default mapping.
23	Click **Save** to save this profile. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Net Share Settings Profiles* column on the right. When configuring the settings for the Net Share Connector Type in the Install section, you can select this profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

Cloud Storage Settings

This section describes how to set up mappings from Cloud Storage permissions and other information to SharePoint.

Cloud Storage Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5> Storage Optimization > Connector > Media Library > Settings*.
2	Select the *Cloud Storage Settings* tab.
3	In order to setup a Settings Profile, the Function Settings and Common Mapping must be configured and saved beforehand.
4	Within the *Function Settings* tab, you can configure some permission setting for the content library. Click **New** and enter a profile name.
5	In the Permission area, click **Configure**, and then you can specify the necessary permission for the corresponding action.
6	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Function Settings*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Select the Common Mapping and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are two options: Character length setting, and Illegal characters replace setting.
8	Check the box next to Characters length setting; you can control the file/folder name and SharePoint URL's maximum length. By default, the maximum length of the file/folder name and SharePoint URL is 80, 60 and 255. You can define the length of the folder/file name in the range of 1 to 128 and the SharePoint URL in the range of 1 to 260. If the folder/file name or the SharePoint URL exceed the length that is defined, the system will save the name as the defined length according to priority, and automatically prune the extra characters. The truncated file/folder name or SharePoint URL will be recorded in the "Job Report". The folder/file name will be pruned according to the following rules. • For the pruning of one file name, the length of the file extension name will be counted. For example, if the maximum length you specified is 8, for a file whose extension name is .exe, the maximum length of the file's name is 4. • DocAve will start the pruning from the middle part of the file name. For example, if the maximum length of the file name is 4 and the original file name is *abcde*, the file name after pruning will be *abde*. • The latter character will be deleted and if there is already a same name in SharePoint, a suffix (which is a number) will be added to the original name of the file/folder when pruning.
9	Select the *Illegal characters replace setting* box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which are all _ by default.
10	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Common Mapping*. After the configuration profile has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Common Mapping File* column on the right. ***Note:** There is already a Default profile for *Common Mapping* listed in the column on the right.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">11</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as an xml file by clicking the Download or Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration profile, the user has different selections depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Settings interface. It may cause some unexpected error if editing or removing the configuration in the xml file.

*Note: If there are multiple replace settings for a single illegal character, only the last replace setting will be used and shown in the Illegal characters replace setting field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>There is no xml profile in the Profile list</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload is with the same name as the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the different content which is not configured in the existing file. The settings which are in both of the profiles will not be changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has a different name with the existing one</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current one.

*Note: Only the Common Mapping tab supports to merge the xml files.</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">After setting up the three configurations, you should go to the Settings Profile.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	Click **New** and input a new profile name.
14	You can specify the mappings for this profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, it selected the default mapping.
15	Click **Save** to save this profile. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Cloud Storage Settings Profiles* column on the right. When configuring the settings for the Cloud Storage Connector Type in the Install section, you can select this profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

Third Party Storage Settings

This section describes how to set up mappings from Third Party Storage permissions and other information to SharePoint.

***Note:** To use third party storage for the Connector Library (Content Library\Media Library), please ensure the corresponding dll file is copied to DocAve's installation path, which is ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin by default, before you modify the Third Party Storage Settings.

(9-43) Third Party Storage Settings

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5> Storage Optimization > Connector > Media Library > Settings*.
2	Select the *Third Party Storage Settings* tab. In order to setup a Settings Profile, the DLL and Parameters, Function Settings and Common Mapping must be configured and saved beforehand. For more information about how to create the corresponding DLL file, please click **Download Quick Start Guide** button to view the guide.
3	Within the *DLL and Parameters* tab, you can configure the dll information and basic parameters for the content library. Click **New** and enter a profile name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	On the *DLL Information* tab, you can configure the following settings according to the settings for the dll file: • *DLL Name* : The full name of the dll file which is copied to DocAve installation path. • *DLL NameSpace* : The namespace used by the dll file. • *Connection Class Name* : The name of the class which is used to get connection to the storage media. • *File Class Name* : The name of the file class. • *Folder Class Name* : The name of the folder (or some familiar structure which has the same functions) class. On the *Basic Parameters* tab, you can configure the basic parameters which will be displayed in the content library settings page in SharePoint. You can click **Add** icon to add one row and click **Remove** icon to remove the corresponding row. There are three columns in one row: • *ID* : The key of the parameter of the Connection Class constructor. It must be the same as the value you set up in the DLL file. • *Name* : The display name in the content library settings page in SharePoint. • *Encryption* : Select this option to encrypt the information when displaying and transferring. ***Note:** These parameters are the basic information used to connect to the third storage.
5	Click **Save** to save the profile of *DLL and Parameters*.
6	Within the *Function Settings* tab, you can configure some permission settings and the basic option for the content library. Click **New** and enter a profile name.
7	In the Permissions area, click the **Configure** button in the *Configure* column, and then you can specify the necessary permissions for the corresponding action.
8	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Function Settings*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Select the *Common Mapping* tab and click **New**. Enter a profile name. There are two options: *Characters length setting*, and *Illegal characters replace setting*.
10	Check the check-box(es) under *Characters length setting* and you can control the maximum length of the folder's/file's name. By default, the maximum length of the file/folder name is 60 and 80. You can define the length of the folder/file name in the range of 1 to 128. If the folder/file name exceeds the length that is defined, the system will automatically prune the extra characters and save the name according to the length defined. The folder/file name will be pruned according to the following rules. • For the pruning of one file name, the length of the file extension name will be counted. For example, if the maximum length you specified is 8, for a file whose extension name is .exe, the maximum length of the file's name is 4. • DocAve will start the pruning from the middle part of the file name. For example, if the maximum length of the file name is 4 and the original file name is *abcde*, the file name after pruning will be *abde*. • The latter character will be deleted and if there is already a same name in SharePoint, a suffix (which is a number) will be added to the original name of the file/folder when pruning.
11	Select the *Illegal characters replace setting* box. This option will replace any illegal SharePoint characters with valid characters which is _ by default.
12	Click **Save** to save the profile of *Common Mapping*. After the configuration profile has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Common Mapping File* column on the right. ***Note:** There is already a Default profile for *Common Mapping* listed in the column on the right.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">13</td><td colspan="2">You can download or upload the configuration as an xml file by clicking the Download or Upload buttons.

To download the configuration profile, click Download and specify the location you want to store it.

To upload the xml configuration profile, the user has different selections depending on different conditions.

*Note: It is recommended you edit or remove the configuration in the Settings interface. It may cause some unexpected exceptions if editing or removing the configuration in the xml file.

*Note: If there are multiple replace settings for a single illegal character, only the last replace setting will be used and shown in the Illegal characters replace setting field.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>The name of the xml file to be uploaded does not exist</td><td>The xml file will be uploaded as a new profile directly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file you want to upload has the same name with some profile</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. There are two upload options
Overwrite : It will replace the existing xml profile.
Merge : It will add the missing content which is not configured in the existing file. The settings which are in both of the profiles will not be changed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>The xml file with a different name</td><td>Click Upload, a pop-up window will appear. You can select to upload the xml file as a new profile or merge it into the current one.

*Note: Only the Common Mapping tab supports merging the xml files.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
14	After setting up the three profiles, you can now navigate back to the *Settings Profile* tab.
15	Click **New** and input a new profile name.
16	You can specify each setting for the profile in the corresponding drop-down box. By default, DocAve uses the Default settings.
17	Click **Save** to save this profile. After the configuration has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the *Third Party Storage Settings Profiles* column on the right. When configuring the settings for the Third Party Storage Connector Type in the Install section, you can select this profile from the corresponding drop-down box.

9.5.2.2 Installer

The Media Library Connector feature needs to be installed from the Settings before create it in SharePoint.

(9-44) Install the Media Library Connector Feature

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Storage Optimization* > *Connector* > *Media Library* > *Installer*.
2	Select a Farm from the left column, it will list the Web Applications on the right side of the screen. If the corresponding solution is not installed, you need to click the hyperlink *here* in *Note* to navigate to DocAve Solution Manager to deploy the corresponding solution *AvePointSPFileConnector.wsp*(for SharePoint 2007 environment)/*DocAve.SP2010.Connector.ContentLibrary.wsp*(for SharePoint 2010 environment). For the detailed information of deploying solutions, please refer to section DocAve Solution Manager of this manual.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	To configure the Net Share Server for the specified farm, select the **Configure** button under *Net Share Server Configuration*. You can select to make the Access Authority public or private. In the public mode, you must specify your username and password when setting up the library in SharePoint. ***Note:** The user you specified in the public mode must be a local administrator to ensure the Net Share path can be accessed successfully. In the private mode, you only need to enter your password when setting up the library in SharePoint. ***Note:** The user for the private mode should have the Full Control permission for the File System folder(s).
4	Click **Activate** to active the feature on the corresponding web application.
5	Click **Configure** in the *Connector Type* column to select the Settings Profile set up in the Settings. ***Note:** If you want to use the Third Party Storage in the media library in SharePoint, you need to select the corresponding *Third Party Storage* check box and then select the corresponding setting from the *Third Party Storage Settings* drop-down box to enable the corresponding Media Library Template.
6	Click the clock icon in the *Sync Data* column, and it will Synchronize the data from the File System to SharePoint at the specified time.

9.5.2.3 Videos/Audios/Pictures in Media Library

Refer to the following table for the recommended player for each video format.

(9-45) Recommended Player for Each Video Format

Format	Recommended Player
WMV	Windows Media Player
FLV	Flash Player

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Format	Recommended Player
AVI	Windows Media Player
RM	Real Player
RMVB	Real Player
DAT	Windows Media Player
MP4	Windows Media Player, QuickTime Player
MOV	QuickTime Player
MPEG	Windows Media Player
MPG	Windows Media Player
SWF	Not supported, click its name and it can be opened in Internet Explorer directly
ASF	Not Supported
3GP	Not Supported
VOB	Not Supported

Refer to the following table for the recommended player for each audio format.

(9-46) Recommended Player for Each Audio Format

Format	Recommended Player
WAV	Windows Media Player
MID	Windows Media Player
WMA	Windows Media Player
MP3	Silverlight Player
FLAC	Not Supported, but you can download the file
APE	Not Supported, but you can download the file
OGG	Not Supported, but you can download the file

Refer to the following table for the thumbnail information of each picture format.

***Note:** The thumbnail information works for both **All Video Thumbnails** view and **All Video Details** view.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-47) Thumbnail Information of Each Picture Format

Format	Whether the File Has a Thumbnail	Whether the File Can be Previewed in the Preview Field
BMP	Yes	Yes
GIF	Yes	Yes
JPEG/JPG	Yes	Yes
PNG	Yes	Yes
EXIF	Yes	Yes
ICO	Yes	Yes
TIFF	Yes	Yes
PCX	No	No
TIF	No	No
FPX	No	No
SVG	No	No
UFO	No	No
CDR	No	No
PCD	No	No
DXF	No	No
PSD	No	No

9.5.3 Creating the Connector Library in SharePoint

After installing the connector feature, you can go to SharePoint to create the connector library.

(9-48) Create a Connector Library in SharePoint

Step	Action
1	Navigate to the site where installed the connector feature.
2	Click the *Site Action* on the top right corner of the page and click **Create**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Under the *Libraries* list, you can see the Content Library/ Media Library. ***Note:** The kind of the library you can create depended on the type of the feature you installed. Click on the name of the library you want to create, and the corresponding configuration page will appear.
4	Enter the name of the library, and then the description if necessary, and then select the basic settings for the new library.
5	Select the library template from the corresponding drop-down box, there are several options: Net Share, Cloud Storage for Rackspace, Cloud Storage for Azure, Cloud Storage for Atmos, Cloud Storage for Amazon and Net Share with WMS.
6	Click **Create**, and the *Content/Media Library Settings* page will appear.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">7</td><td colspan="2">You can then specify the configuration in the corresponding Logon Settings field according to the detailed information below.</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Net Share</td><td>Specify the path you want to Synchronize with this library, and then enter the username and password to set up access to the path that data will be written to and stored.

After you select the Use Server Profiles option, you could also select from the server profiles you set up when configuring the feature. For the public mode server, you must specify your username and password when setting up the library. For the private mode server, you only need to enter your password when setting up the library.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cloud Storage for Rackspace</td><td>Specify the Container Name, the Storage Account you used to access the cloud storage, and the API Key you get.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cloud Storage for Azure</td><td>Specify the Container Name, the Storage Account you used to access the cloud storage, and the Access Key you get.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cloud Storage for Atmos</td><td>Specify the Path, the User ID you used to access the cloud storage, and the Secret you get.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cloud Storage for Amazon</td><td>Specify the Bucket Name, the Access Key ID you used to access the cloud storage, and the Secret Access Key you get.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Net Share with WMS</td><td>This template can only be selected for Media Library. Configure the information about the Windows Media Services 2008 in the Media Library Settings.</td></tr>
</table>

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	You can also set up the required permissions for the corresponding actions in the *Content/Media Library Permission Settings* field. ***Note:** If you setup the permission settings both in SharePoint and in DocAve, it will apply the settings configured in DocAve.
9	To load the content immediately, you can enable the *Basic Load Configuration* and select to load current folder only or to load the current folder and the sub folder(s). By default, you need to load the content manually after the configuration.
10	To load the permissions and the metadata from the File System, you can select the corresponding check-box(es). Selecting *Load Permission from SharePoint for WMS*, you can load permissions from SharePoint media library to the file system of WMS. which will add the AD user(s) and AD group(s) in the specific media library to the file system of WMS and assign the Read permission to the user(s) and group(s). Therefore, the user(s) will have the permission to watch the media file(s) in SharePoint after doing the synchronize operation. ***Note:** Only when the SharePoint and the WMS are in the same domain can the permissions be loaded from the SharePoint media library to the file system of WMS. To load the specified metadata, specify them in the configuration file. • *SharePoint 2007* : The configuration file **1033_FSDL_Setting.config** is under the path *…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2007\Connector\DefaultConfig\1033* on the server with DocAve Agent installed. • *SharePoint 2010* : The configuration file **DocAve.SP2010.Connector.ContentSettings.1033.config** is under the path *…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2010\Connector\DefaultConfig* on the server with DocAve Agent installed. Open the file and select the metadata you want to load and set the parameter's value as **true** in <MappingItem Include= "">. ***Note:** If you have used Properties Mapping in DocAve GUI, you cannot use the configuration file to specify the metadata here.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	You can select the corresponding options in the *Sync Settings for Deleting Files in File System* field to delete the files which have been stored to SharePoint or archived. • *Delete the files which have been stored to SharePoint for the synchronization* : All the files which have been stored to SharePoint will be deleted in the connected path after the synchronization operation. • *Delete the files which are not the connector type data for the synchronization* : All the files which have been archived or extended from the Content/Media Library will be deleted in the connected path after a corresponding synchronization operation.
12	To make the file name or folder name consistent between the Net Share/Cloud Storage and SharePoint, you can select **Yes** in the *Keep Name Consistent* field.
13	You can select the *Allow Link Large File (Larger than 2GB)* option in the *File Size Limitation* field to load data which is larger than 2GB from the storage device and synchronize them between the storage device and SharePoint. ***Note:** Due to SharePoint limitations, only a link will be uploaded to SharePoint for the item which is over 2GB in size. Users may experience the following issues. • The content type of the large file cannot be changed. • The large file cannot be renamed. • If you generate a version for the large file, it is only a link in SharePoint. The large file of this version will not be generated in the connected path. • The index will not be generated for the content of the large file during the SharePoint crawling. • You cannot copy or move the large file in Explorer View.
14	After configuring the basic settings, click **Save** to save the library settings, and the page will be redirected to the library page.

9.5.4 Using the Library

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After creating the library, you can go to the library page and manage your library. You can perform the following operations on it.

- *New* : You can click **New Document** to create a new document in the library, click **New Folder** to add a folder to the library. Both the new document and the new folder will be synchronized to the connected path.
- *Load* : If you do not select to load the content immediately, you need to click **Load** in the new library to load the content of the connected path for the first time entering, and all the files in the connected path will be loaded. Please note the file in SharePoint is just a stub, if you make any changes on the file in SharePoint, the file in the connected path will be changed accordingly.
- *Load Current Folder* : If you click **Load Current Folder**, all the files and the sub folders (only the sub folders can be loaded, the files inside the sub folders can not be loaded) in the specified folder will be loaded.
- *Load Current Folder and Sub Folder(s)* : If you click **Load Current Folder and Sub Folder(s)**, all the files inside the specified folder and all its sub folders (including the files inside the sub folders) will be loaded.
- *Upload* : You can upload one file or multiple files to this library. Please note that there is only the file's stub in the SharePoint library, the uploaded file(s) will be saved in the specified folder in the connected path. You can also click **Upload Large Documents** to upload documents which are larger than 2GB to the library.

  ***Note:** Upload Large Documents can only be used when the connected path is a Net Share. The version of Silverlight on the server where you upload the file should be higher than 4.0.50826.
- *Synchronization* : To Synchronize the files from the connected path to SharePoint, click the *Synchronize Current Folder or Synchronize Current Folder and Sub Folder(s)*.

  ***Note:** The files inside the existing subfolders of one loaded folder will not be synchronized unless they have already been loaded to the SharePoint Connector library.

  ***Note:** The files inside the new subfolders of one loaded folder will be synchronized even if they are not loaded to the SharePoint Connector library.
- *Store to SharePoint* : You can convert the stub to content by using this option in the drop-down list. It will convert the stub to real data in the database, thus any changes on the SharePoint file cannot affect the file in the connected path.
- *Store to File System* : You can move the file to the connected path by using this option.
- *Delete the file in SharePoint* : To delete one file in SharePoint, you can click **Delete** in the drop-down box.

  ***Note:** To delete one file in SharePoint, it will be moved to the Recycle Bin. As long as you do not empty the Recycle Bin, the synchronization between the connected

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

path and the SharePoint library will not synchronize the deleted file again. If you empty the Site Collection Recycle Bin after deleting one file, the corresponding file in the connected path will also be deleted.

- *Delete the library* : Before you delete the library, you need to delete the specified path in the Library Settings.
- *Delete the solution* : If you want to delete the library solution, you need to delete the corresponding libraries first.
- *History Version* : When you configure the Library Settings, a hidden folder named .fsdl will be created on the specified folder. It is used to save the history versions of the file.

  ***Note:** The .fsdl folder is used to store the configuration information, manage versions, and is used as a cache for the files. If you delete it, you will lose the data generated by the above functions and an error may occur while loading these configurations.
- *Connect to another .fsdl* : To set up anther connection for the library, you must disconnect the current connected folder, and copy the current folder to the folder you want to connect, and set up the next connection with the same .fsdl.
- *Player for Media Library* : If you create a Media Library, you can change the player for the video. There are several kinds of players you can select from: Flash Player, Windows Media Player, Silverlight Player Real Player, Quicktime Player, Play with WMS Server for the Net Share with WMS media library and Download to play.

  ***Note:** To play the video properly, you need to install the corresponding player application first.
- *Rating for the content in Media Library* : You can specify a rating for the content in Media Library in the *Rating* column.
- *View Thumbnails in Media Library* : To view the thumbnails of the content in Media Library, you can select the *All Video Thumbnails* view.

  ***Note:** If you are operating in an x32 environment, it is recommended to install the SMPlayer at *http://sourceforge.net/projects/smplayer/* or install ffmpeg and set the configuration file on all client machines in order to generate the thumbnails. For more information on installing and configuring SMPlayer or ffmpeg, refer to section Install and Configure SMPlayer or ffmpeg.

  ***Note:** If you are operating in an x64 environment and want to generate thumbnails, you must install the SMPlayer at *http://sourceforge.net/projects/smplayer/* or install ffmpeg and set the configuration file on all client machines. For more information on installing and configuring SMPlayer or ffmpeg, refer to section Install and Configure SMPlayer or ffmpeg.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** You must install the standard version of Adobe Acrobat to view the thumbnail of the PDF format file, and you must install Microsoft Office PowerPoint 2007 to view the thumbnail of the PPT format file on all client machines.

- *Player Size* : You can customize the size of the player screen in the Media Library Settings.
- *Enable Auto Play* : To let the video start playing automatically when clicking the video icon, you need to select this option in Media Library Settings.
- *Allow Link Large File(Larger than 2GB)* : If you want to load data which is larger than 2GB from the storage device, you must check this option in Media Library Settings. After this option is selected, you will see Link to Large Document under the *Content Types* field. In the Media Library, click **Modify this View** in the *View* field and select **Content Type** in the *Columns* field in the page coming out, after you finish the operations, if you load a file which is larger than 2GB, you can see this content type in the view.

  ***Note:** If you check this option in the Library Settings at first, it cannot be unchecked in the following use, and vice versa.

***Note:** When you check out one file in the Connector Library(Content Library/Media Library) in SharePoint, the original user permissions of the corresponding file stored in the Net Share Storage will be changed to Read Only to all users. After you check in the file or discard the check out, the original permissions will then be recovered in the Net Share Storage.

***Note:** If you are using the Net Share Storage, and then specify a quota limitation for the disk or the folder in Windows File Server Resource Manager, there may be some errors when continuing adding files to the connector library (Content Library\Media Library) in SharePoint if the size of the files in the Net Share Storage already exceeds the limitation.

Install and Configure SMPlayer or ffmpeg

Please refer to the following steps for installing and configuring the SMPlayer.

(9-49) Install and Configure SMPlayer

Step	Action
1	Download the installation package of the SMPlayer.
2	Choose **English** in the drop-down box when selecting the language.
3	Click **Next** and select *I accept the terms of the License Agreement* option. Click **Next**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Choose the **Typical** type of install in the drop-down box and click **Next**.
5	Specify the destination folder and then click **Install**.
6	Wait for the installation process to complete and click **Finish** to finish the installation process.

Please refer to the following steps for installing and configuring the ffmpeg.

(9-50) Install and Configure the ffmpeg

Step	Action
1	Download and unzip the **ffmpeg.zip** file to the installation path of the agent which is *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin* by default.
2	Navigate to the corresponding path below according to the SharePoint environment being used and find the configuration file to be modified: • *In SharePoint 2007 environment* : Find the ConnectorSnapshot.cfg file in the following path: *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2007|Connector*. • *In SharePoint 2010 environment* : Find the DocAve.SP2010.Connector.cfg file in the following path: *…|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2010|Connector*. Change the value of *getsnapshot exepath* to the full path of the ffmpeg.exe file. For example: *<getsnapshot exepath="C:|Program Files (x86)|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin|ffmpeg|ffmpeg.exe" interval="10" NetShareConflictFlag="-1"/>*
3	Navigate to *Start> All Programs> AvePoint DocAve v5> DocAve v5 Agent Tools*, click **Restart Service On Agent** and restart the Agent Service in the pop-up window.

Check the Permissions of the Net Share Path Used By Connector

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

You can use the tool located in the following path to check the permissions of the net share path used by Connector, by default the path is:

...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin|DocAve.Tool.ConnectorPermissionTestforNetSharePath.exe

Refer to the following steps for using the tool.

(9-51) Use the Check Permission Tool

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin| and find* DocAve.Tool.ConnectorPermissionTestforNetSharePath.exe*, double click the tool to run it.* ***Note:** You should right click on the tool and click *Run as administrator* to run the tool on the server running Windows Server 2008 or higher editions.
2	Enter one net share path whose permissions you want to check in the *Net Share Path* text box. The format of the path is: *||servername|c$|folder*. The servername could be the IP address or hostname of the corresponding server. ***Note:** The permissions of all the nested folders inside the specified folder will be scanned.
3	Enter the user name and password to connect to the path in the corresponding textboxes. The format of the user name is: domain\username.
4	Enter a local path in the *Report Location* textbox to save the job report. The path should be detailed to the name of the report. The format of the path is: *c:|report.txt*, and all the exceptions occurred during the check will be written to it.
5	Click **Run** to run the tool, the folder being checked will be shown in the *Directory* field below.

Many to Many File Mapping

If you want to create a batch of File Mappings from the File System to SharePoint, you can use DocAve.SP2007.Connector.CreateList.exe(Path:*...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin*) to assist you with this.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

You can find the tool DocAve.SP2010.Connector.CreateList.exe for the SharePoint 2010 environment in the following path: *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin*. And the corresponding.csv file *DocAve.SP2010.Connector.CreateList.Templates.csv* is in the following path: *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2010|Connector|BatchCreateLists*

***Note:** This function can only be used for storage locations of the File System.

(9-52) Many to Many File Mapping

Step	Action
1	Open the file *DocAve.SP2007.Connector.CreateList.Templates.csv* in the following path *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|data|SP2007|Connector|BatchCreateLists* to setup the mappings.
2	Set the values for the following attributes: • *List Title* : the name of the library you want to create and load the content to • *List Type* : the list type (Content Library\Media Library) you want to create, **0** means Content Library and **1** means Media Library. • *Web URL* : the URL of the site which contains the specified library • *List Relative URL* : the relative URL of the list • *On Quick Launch* : whether to show the library on the quick launch. **0** means yes and **1** means to hide the library from the quick launch, thus the library could only be seen after you click **View All Site Content.** • *Profile Name* : the name of the profile • *File System Path* : the location of the folder you want to load to the specified library • *Username* : the account who perform this action, and the account you specified in this field will be shown in the Username text box in the Logon Settings field of the Connector Library(Content Library/Media Library). Here are two examples: • *PersonalDocs,0,http://ave-sln-a:8003,PersonalDocsurl,0,Profile1,|d$|Docs|PersonalDocs,avec9|user001* • *PublicDocs,1,http://ave-sln-a:6000/sites/100,PublicDocsurl,1,Profile2,|PublicDocs,avec9|user002*

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Go to *Start* > *Run* to run the DocAve.SP2007.Connector.CreateList.exe, and you need to specify the location of the DocAve.SP2007.Connector.CreateList.Templates.csv, and the existing location where you want to save the Job Report. You should type the command in the following format: *DocAve.SP2007.Connector.CreateList.exe <Template file path> <Report directory path>*. For example, in the command line window, after you go to the bin path which contains the exe file (by default, it is *...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin*), you should enter: *DocAve.SP2007.Connector.CreateList.exe "C:\Program Files\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\data\SP2007\Connector\BatchCreateLists\DocAve.SP2007.Connector.CreateList.Templates.csv" C:\report*

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Setup the Settings for the library according to the prompts, you can also refer to the following detailed description of all the settings: • *Load the Root Folder Immediately* : Select the corresponding number to specify whether to load the root folder immediately and what to load if you want to load the root folder immediately. • *Load Permission from File System* : Select the corresponding number to specify whether to load permission from the file system and whose permission is going to be loaded if you want to permission from the file system. • *Load Metadata from File System* : Select the corresponding number to specify whether to load metadata from the file system. • *Keep the File Name of This Connector Library and Net Share Path Consistent* : Select the corresponding number to specify whether to keep the file name of this Connector Library and the Net Share path consistent. • *Synchronize the List If It Has Been Loaded* : Select the corresponding number to specify whether to synchronize the list if it has already been loaded. • *Please Enter the Threads Count(the Count Should Be A Number Between 1 And 5)* : Enter a number between 1 and 5 and the work will be done using the specified number of threads. • *Do you want to change your list settings* : Enter 0 and press **Enter** key to reset all the list settings and start again from the beginning, or enter 1 and press the **Enter** key to save the settings and start to create the lists, or enter 2 and press the **Enter** key to exit the tool without saving any setting.
5	After the job runs and completes, you can find two reports in the specified report directory path: • *detailreport.txt* : List all the errors occurred during the job. • *summaryreport.csv* : List the mapping result.

Enable Video in Rich Text for Entire Site

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This provides you one way to enable the video playing for each item of your site. The followings are the detailed steps to use this feature.

(9-53) Enable Video in Rich Text for Entire Site

Step	Action
1	Navigate to Media Library Settings page, and check the check-box next to *Enable Video in Rich Text for Entire Site*. Click **Save** to save the setting.
2	Create a column in the list that you want to add this feature to. ***Note:** This feature does not support library.
3	Select the *Multiple lines of text* and *Enhanced rich text (Rich text with pictures, tables, and hyperlinks)* options in the *Create Column* page.
4	Click **OK** to create this column.
5	Click **Modify this View** in the *View* field and select the column you just created in the *Columns* field in the page coming out and then click **OK** to save the setting.
6	After configuring these options, when you create a new item, you can see the icon . Click on it and a pop-up window will appear.
7	Configure the settings of the video in this window, including Alert Text, Video Source URL, Player Type and the Player Size. If you want the video to be automatically played, you can check the *Enable Auto Play* check-box.
8	Click **Save** to save the settings.

Video Web Part

The Video Web Part allows you to play streaming video from a web part in SharePoint 2007. To install this web part and use it, follow the steps below:

***Note:** The Video web part can only be used in the SharePoint 2007 environment.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-54) Video Web Part

Step	Action
1	Go to *SharePoint 2007 Site* > *Site Actions* > *Edit Page*.
2	Click **Add a Web part**.
3	Under the Miscellaneous group, check the box next to AvePoint Video Web Part and click **Add** to add the web part to this site.
4	To add a video, you should click edit and select **Modify Shared Web Part** in the drop-down box, and a window will appear in the right part of this page.
5	Under the *Player Settings* field, enter the URL of the video you want to add to this web part as well as the URL of the snapshot image.
6	You can also select a Video Player in the corresponding drop-down box and configure the player screen's size and whether to play the video automatically. Click **OK** to save the settings.
7	Click the start button in the player to play the video.

***Note:** If you upgrade your DocAve from DocAve v5.3.1.0 or DocAve v5.4.2.0 to DocAve v 5.5, you need to firstly uninstall Media Library feature in DocAve GUI, and then install it again and activate it on the web application(s) you specified.

***Note:** When upgrading DocAve Manager Services, all the stubs in the Connector Libraries (Content Library/Media Library) could be normally accessed. However, the stubs will be temporarily inaccessible during DocAve Agent's upgrade process.

Limitations for Connector

- The Cloud Storage container's name cannot contain the special characters.
- To avoid some unexpected exceptions on the history version, it is recommended that you only edit the un-office file(s) on the SharePoint Library.
- The Meeting site cannot be supported by the Content Library and the Media Library.
- The *Modified by* attribute of the file which is not a Microsoft Office file cannot be loaded.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- The *Title* attribute for the Media Library cannot be loaded.
- For the AVI format file in Media Library, it is recommended you download it to play.
- The *Store to SharePoint* and the *Store to File System* options can only be done at the item level.
- In RMS environment, if you use DocAve Archiver or Extender on a Connector Library (Content Library or Media Library), some of the files cannot be opened because the RMS environment will encrypt the data and then Connector could not load the data.

9.6 Upgrade SharePoint 2007 Stubs to SharePoint 2010 Stubs

In this section, it describe how to upgrade the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs to SharePoint 2010 stubs.

9.6.1 Upgrade SharePoint 2007 EBS Stubs to SharePoint 2010 EBS Stubs

If you attach one content database containing stubs of SharePoint 2007 EBS to a SharePoint 2010 environment, you need to upgrade SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs to SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs to ensure they can be used. Please refer to the detailed information below.

Before the Upgrade

Before the upgrade, please check the following settings.

- Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Settings* > *EBS&RBS Provider Settings*, select the corresponding SharePoint 2010 farm and enable the EBS setting on the specified SharePoint 2010 farm.
- Before the Upgrade of the SharePoint 2007 EBS Stubs of Connector, please ensure the corresponding SharePoint 2007 Connector Solution has been uninstalled and the SharePoint 2010 Connector Solution has been successfully installed.
- Please ensure the agents on both SharePoint 2007 environment and SharePoint 2010 environment are pointing to the same DocAve Manager and DocAve could connect to the appropriate Logical Device which stores the real data for the stubs.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Archiver

To upgrade the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs of Archiver module to SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-55) Upgrade EBS Stubs of Archiver

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select all the nodes which contain the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs, and set the corresponding plan settings. All the site collections and the content whose levels are below Site Collection must be selected. Select **Document**, **Document Version** and **Attachment** rules in the *Rules* tab and enter * in the *Except* textbox. ***Note:** Please ensure the Archive Rules are configured according to your requirements again after the upgrade job.
3	Click **Save** to save the plan, and click **Run Now** to run the plan. After the job completes successfully, the upgrade is completed. ***Note:** If you want to store different site collections into different Logical Devices, please create several separate plans.

By now, all the Archiver's SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs have been successfully upgraded to SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Extender

To upgrade the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs of Extender to SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs, please follow the steps below.

(9-56) Upgrade EBS Stubs of Extender

Step	Action
1	Open the *zeus-job.properties* file in the DocAve Manager Installation Path, which is *…| AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|etc|zeus-job.properties* by default.
2	Find the *Zeus.Extender.EBSUpgrade* attribute, and then change its value to 1. If there is no such attribute in the file, add it manually in the following format: *Zeus.Extender.EBSUpgrade=1*.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Extender* > *Extender Settings*.
4	Select all the nodes which contain the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs and then select the *Extend existing contents* option.
5	Configure the settings (Document Size, Filter Option, Logical Device and Data Configuration) according to your requirements.
6	Click **Apply** to apply the settings.
7	After the job completes successfully, change the value of the *Zeus.Extender.EBSUpgrade* attribute back to 0.

By now, all the Extender's SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs have been successfully upgraded to SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Connector

To upgrade the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs of Connector to SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs, please follow the steps below.

(9-57) Upgrade EBS Stubs of Connector

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *Start* >*Run* and enter cmd in the text box and click **OK**.
2	Enter the command: *cd C:|Program Files|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin* to navigate to DocAve's installation path, which is *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin* by default.
3	Run the tool by entering the following command: *DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -level <upgrade level> -url <URL>*. During the running process of the tool, the Event Handle feature will be restarted first and the schema of the Views will be upgraded.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	After the tool completes successfully, the path which stores the backup of the original attributes and the path which stores the corresponding logs will be shown.

***Note:** You can also enter the following command: *DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -help* to view the corresponding help file. Here are some examples of the command:

DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -level Farm

DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -level WebApp -url http://demo:3000

DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -level SiteCollection -url http://demo:3000/sites/test

By now, all the Connector's SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs have been successfully upgraded to SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs.

9.6.2 Upgrade SharePoint 2007 EBS Stubs to SharePoint 2010 RBS Stubs

For the SharePoint 2010 RBS environment which upgrades from the SharePoint 2007 EBS environment, the EBS stubs in SharePoint 2007 will be upgraded to SharePoint 2010 RBS stubs. Please refer to the detailed information below for the upgrade:

Before the Upgrade

Before the upgrade, please check the following settings.

- Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Settings* > *EBS&RBS Provider Settings*, select the corresponding SharePoint 2010 farm, and enable the EBS setting on the specified SharePoint 2010 farm.
- Before the Upgrade of the SharePoint 2007 EBS Stubs of Connector, make sure that the corresponding SharePoint 2007 Connector Solution has been uninstalled from the specified SharePoint 2010 farm and the SharePoint 2010 Connector Solution has been successfully installed.
- Please ensure the agents on both SharePoint 2007 environment and SharePoint 2010 environment are pointing to the same DocAve Manager and DocAve could connect to the appropriate Logical Device which stores the real data for the stubs.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Archiver

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To upgrade the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs of Archiver to SharePoint 2010 RBS stubs, please follow the steps below.

(9-58) Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Archiver

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Archiver* > *Plan Builder*.
2	Select all the nodes which contain the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs, and set the corresponding plan settings. All the site collection and the content whose levels are below Site Collection must be selected. Select **Document**, **Document Version** and **Attachment** rules in the *Rules* tab and enter * in the *Except* textbox. ***Note:** Please ensure the Archive Rules are configured according to your requirements again after the upgrade job.
3	Click **Save** to save the plan and click **Run Now** to run the plan. ***Note:** If you want to store different site collections into different Logical Devices, please create several separate plans.
4	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Settings* > *EBS&RBS Provider Settings*, select the corresponding SharePoint 2010 farm. Select the RBS option, and select all the Content Databases which contain the EBS Stubs in the *Settings* tab. Click **Apply**, then click **Run Now** to install RBS for the SharePoint 2010 environment.
5	After the job completes successfully, please refer to section Convert the Archiver/Extender/Connector Stubs to finish the upgrade.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Extender

To upgrade the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs of Extender to SharePoint 2010 RBS stubs, please follow the steps below.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(9-59) Upgrade EBS Stubs of Extender

Step	Action
1	Open the *zeus-job.properties* file in the DocAve Manager Installation Path, which is *…| AvePoint|DocAve5|Manager|ZeusJob|etc|zeus-job.properties* by default.
2	Find the *Zeus.Extender.EBSUpgrade* attribute, and then change its value to 1. If there is no such attribute in the file, add it manually in the following format: *Zeus.Extender.EBSUpgrade=1*.
3	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Extender* > *Extender Settings*. Select all the nodes which contain the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs, and select the *Extend existing contents* option.
4	Configure the settings (Document Size, Filter Option, Logical Device and Data Configuration) according to your requirements.
5	Click **Apply** to apply the settings.
6	After the job completes successfully, change the value of the *Zeus.Extender.EBSUpgrade* attribute back to 0.
7	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Settings* > *EBS&RBS Provider Settings*, select the corresponding SharePoint 2010 farm. Select the RBS option, and select all the Content Databases which contain the EBS Stubs in the *Settings* tab. Click **Apply**, then click **Run Now** to install RBS for the SharePoint 2010 environment.
8	Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Extender* > *Extender Settings*. Select all the nodes which contain the SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs.
9	Configure the settings (Document Size, Filter Option, Logical Device and Data Configuration) according to your requirements.
10	Click **Apply** to apply the settings.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	After the job completes successfully, refer to section Convert the Archiver/Extender/Connector Stubs to finish the upgrade.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Connector

To upgrade the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs of Connector to SharePoint 2010 RBS stubs, please follow the steps below.

(9-60) Upgrade EBS Stubs of Connector

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *Start >Run* and enter cmd in the text box and click **OK**.
2	Please enter the command: *cd C:|Program Files|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin* to navigate to DocAve's installation path, which is *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin* by default.
3	Run the tool by entering the following command: *DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -level <upgrade level> -url <URL>*. During the running process of the tool, the Event Handle feature will be restarted first and the schema of the Views will be upgraded.
4	After the tool completes successfully, the path which stores the backup of the original attributes and the path which stores the corresponding logs will be shown. Please refer to section Convert the Archiver/Extender/Connector Stubs to finish the upgrade.

***Note:** You can also enter the following command: *DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -help* to view the corresponding help file. Here are some examples of the command:

DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -level Farm

DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -level WebApp -url http://demo:3000

DocAve.SP2010.Connector.UpgradeTool.exe -level SiteCollection -url http://demo:3000/sites/test

Convert the Archiver/Extender/Connector Stubs

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After all the required steps of the stubs you would like to upgrade complete successfully, please follow the steps below to finish the upgrade process.

All the steps below should be executed only when you have finished the steps of section Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Archiver, section Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Extender or section Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Connector.

(9-61) Convert Stubs

Step	Action
1	Run Command Prompt using the agent account.
2	Navigate to DocAve's installation path, which is *...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin* by default, and find the *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSToRBSStubConvertTool.exe* tool.
3	Drag the tool into the command line interface and execute it to convert the EBS stubs to RBS stubs. You can also switch to the path first and then run the tool by entering its name and the corresponding parameters. There are several parameters you can select: • *-help* : The user can use this parameter to get more information. The format of the command is: *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSToRBSStubConvertTool.exe -help*. • *-preview* : The user can use this parameter to get the hierarchy of the site collections where the EBS stubs exist. Multiple URLs of the web applications can be entered when separated by semicolons. The format of the command is: *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSToRBSStubConvertTool.exe [-farm|-webapplication] –url <urls> -preview* The example of the command is: *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSToRBSStubConvertTool.exe -webapplication –url http://test1:4000;http://test2:5000 -preview* ***Note:** If the scope is -farm, no URL needs to be entered.
4	Enter Y to proceed with the convert process on the specified SharePoint content. Enter any other key to exit the convert process without running.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	After the tool finishes running, navigate to DocAve's installation path, which is *...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin* by default, and find the *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSProviderTool.exe* tool.
6	Double click the tool to run it.
7	Click **Check EBS** to check the status of the EBS setting.
8	If the EBS Status is enabled, click **Disable EBS** to disable the EBS setting.
9	After the EBS is disabled, click **Uninstall** to uninstall *Extension Archiver Blob Com*.

By now, all the SharePoint 2007 EBS stubs have been successfully upgraded to SharePoint 2010 RBS stubs.

9.6.3 Upgrade SharePoint 2010 EBS Stubs to SharePoint 2010 RBS Stubs

Please follow the steps below to upgrade the SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs to SharePoint 2010 RBS stubs.

Before the Upgrade

Navigate to *DocAve* > *Storage Optimization* > *Settings* > *EBS&RBS Provider Settings*, select the RBS option, and select all the Content Databases which contain the EBS stubs on the *Settings* tab. Click **Apply**, then click **Run Now** to install RBS for the SharePoint 2010 environment.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Archiver

For Archiver module, if the URL of the archived content changes, please go to Archiver Plan Builder, set up a new plan to include all the site collections whose URLs are changed and set the corresponding plan settings. After the plan is saved, please refer to section Convert the Archiver/Extender/Connector Stubs for the following steps. If the URL of the archived content does not change, please directly refer to section Convert the Archiver/Extender/Connector Stubs for the following steps.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** If you want to store different site collections into different Logical Devices, please create several separate plans.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Extender

To upgrade the stubs of Extender, please follow the steps below.

(9-62) Upgrade EBS Stubs of Extender

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve > Storage Optimization > Extender > Extender Settings*. Select all the nodes which contain the SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs.
2	Configure the settings (Document Size, Filter Option, Logical Device and Data Configuration) according to your requirements.
3	Click **Apply** to apply the settings.
4	After the job completes successfully, refer to section Convert the Archiver/Extender/Connector Stubs to finish the upgrade.

Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Connector

There is no need to modify the settings of Connector, refer to section Convert the Archiver/ Extender/Connector Stubs for the following steps.

Convert the Archiver/Extender/Connector Stubs

After all the required steps of the stubs you would like to upgrade complete successfully, please follow the steps below to finish the upgrade process.

All the steps below should be executed only when you have finished the steps of section Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Archiver, section Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Extender or section Upgrade the EBS Stubs of Connector.

(9-63) Convert Stubs

Step	Action
1	Run Command Prompt using the agent account.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Navigate to DocAve installation path, which is *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin* by default, and then find the *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSToRBSStubConvertTool.exe* tool.
3	Drag the tool into the command line interface and execute it to convert the EBS stubs to RBS stubs. You can also switch to the path first and then run the tool by entering its name and the corresponding parameters. There are several parameters you can select: • *-help* : The user can use this parameter to get more information. The format of the command is: *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSToRBSStubConvertTool.exe -help*. • *-preview* : The user can use this parameter to get the hierarchy of the site collections where the EBS stubs exist. Multiple URLs of the web applications can be entered when separated by semicolons. The format of the command is: *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSToRBSStubConvertTool.exe [-farm|-webapplication] –url <urls> -preview* The example of the command is: *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSToRBSStubConvertTool.exe -webapplication –url http://test1:4000;http://test2:5000 -preview* ***Note:** If the scope is -farm, no URL needs to be entered.
4	Enter Y to proceed with the convert process on the specified SharePoint content. Enter any other key to exit the convert process without running.
5	After the tool finishes running, navigate to DocAve's installation path, which is *...|AvePoint|DocAve5|Agent|bin* by default, and find the *DocAve.SP2010.Storage.EBSProviderTool.exe* tool.
6	Double click the tool to run it.
7	Click **Check EBS** to check the status of the EBS setting.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	If the EBS Status is enabled, please click **Disable EBS** to disable the EBS setting.
9	After the EBS is disabled, please click **Uninstall** to uninstall *Extension Archiver Blob Com*.

By now, all the SharePoint 2010 EBS stubs have been successfully upgraded to SharePoint 2010 RBS stubs.

9.7 Supported and Unsupported List for SharePoint 2010

Below is the supported and unsupported list of Storage Optimization module for SharePoint 2010.

(9-64) Supported and Unsupported List for SharePoint 2010

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
Archiver	Plan Builder	√	URL-based Archive mode and Archive Content Preview
	Restore Controller	√	N/A
	Convert Stubs to Content	√	N/A
	Settings	√	End User Archiving
Extender	Extender Settings	√	N/A
	Convert Stubs to Content	√	N/A
	Policy Settings	SharePoint 2010 EBS environment	SharePoint 2010 RBS environment
Connector/ Content Library	Installer	√	N/A
	Settings	√	N/A
Connector/ Media Library	Installer	√	N/A
	Settings	√	N/A

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Module	Function	Supported	Unsupported
Settings	EBS&RBS Provider Settings	√	N/A
	Stub Retention Policy	√	N/A
	Cache Settings	N/A	√
	Device Settings	√	N/A
–	Federated Search Web Part	N/A	√
Control Panel/ Data Management/Data Manager	Data Import	Only support SharePoint 2010 EBS environment	Import to another site collection and SharePoint 2010 RBS environment
	Data Export	Only support SharePoint 2010 EBS environment	SharePoint 2010 RBS environment

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10. Appendix

For additional information about DocAve, please reference the sections below.

10.1 FDCC Compatibility

DocAve recognizes that many of our customers adhere to FDCC standards for security (including the environments "Specialized Security Limited Functionality", "Enterprise", "SOHO", and "Legacy"). However, in order to access DocAve and ensure its full functionality in Windows XP, several steps must be taken. Please see the appropriate section below for details.

For more information on FDCC, please visit the website: http://fdcc.nist.gov

***Note:** The following sections only apply to the Windows XP environment.

10.1.1 Configuring the DocAve Manager for FDCC

By default, an FDCC compliant environment will block all standard ports that DocAve uses to communicate. Before applying the solution below, make sure that you are running the latest version of .NET Framework (3.0 or higher).

(10-1) Configuring Port / Firewall Information

Step	Action
1	In Windows, go to *Start* > *Run* and enter the command *gpedit.msc* in the popup.
2	In the Group Policy popup, use the tree view on the left-hand side and navigate to *Computer Configuration* > *Administrative Templates* > *Network* > *Network Connections* > *Windows Firewall*.
3	Using the Domain Profile and Standard Profile entries, perform the next steps on both levels.
4	After selecting a profile, locate the setting "Windows Firewall: Allow local port exceptions". Double click this field to open the properties. ***Note:** This field is typically the last one on the list.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	In the pop-up, select **Enabled** from the *Settings* tab.
6	Verify that the state under the settings list has changed to "Enabled" for this field and restart the computer.
7	After the system restart, navigate again to *Start* > *Control Panel* > *Windows Firewall*.
8	Navigate to the *Exceptions* tab and select Add Port….
9	In the pop-up, select the "TCP" option. Enter the name of the port and port number from the list below: • *Control Service Port* : 12000 • *Audit Service Port* : 12003 • *Media Service Port* : 12001 • *Web Service Port* : 8080 • *Web Service HTTPS Port* : 8443 (if https is enabled) • *Web Network Port* : 12002 • *Search Service Port* : 12004 • *Report Service Port* : 12005 Please repeat these steps to add all ports listed above. ***Note:** The ports given above are all the default settings. If you have made any changes to this list during the install, please reference the numbers in the DocAve Manager Configuration Tool.

10.1.2 For End-User Access Using HTTPS

If an Agent is running Windows XP, the Group Policy must be changed in order to allow https access to DocAve.

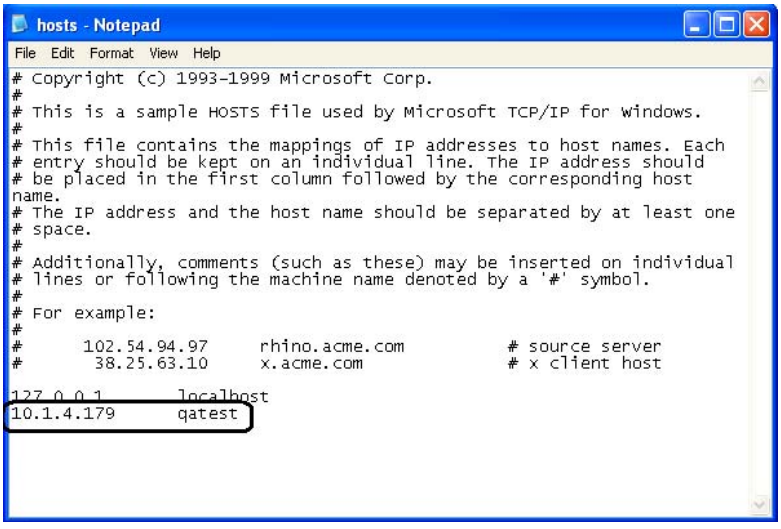
2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-2) Enabling HTTPS Access

Step	Action
1	In Windows, go to *Start* > *Run* and enter the command *gpedit.msc* in the popup.
2	In the *Group Policy* popup, use the tree view on the left hand side to navigate to *Computer Configuration* > *Administrative Templates* > *Windows Components* > *Internet Explorer* > *Internet Control Panel*.
3	Under this directory, locate the setting "Prevent ignoring certificate errors" in the left of the display. Double click on this setting to open the properties. ***Note:** This field is typically the last one on the list.
4	In the Popup, select **Enabled** from the *Settings* tab.
5	Verify that the state under the settings list has changed to "Enabled" for this field and restart the computer.

The agent should now be able to follow the steps to enable https access in Internet Explorer, listed in the installation section at the beginning of this document.

***Note:** If you plan on accessing the DocAve remote server using the Server Name and not the IP address you must edit the host file manually. Open the following file in notepad, adding a line with the IP address and Server Name: *c:|windows |system32|drivers|ETC|hosts*



 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.2 Compatibility with 3rd-Party SQL Tools

DocAve's SQL backup solutions (Platform-level backup and High Availability) can coexist with other SQL 3rd Party backup tools.

10.2.1 Background

Database backup types for SQL can be separated into three types: "Full", "Differential", and "Log (Incremental)". Most SharePoint databases automatically run full backups by default. In order to perform on these three levels of backup, differential will need a full backup, and a log backup will require both the previous full/differential backup and a complete sequence of logs.

10.2.1.1 Possible Conflicts

There are several possible conflicts that may occur.

The SQL server only allows one backup chain (Full > Differential > Log) per database. Having multiple tools backing up the same server may conflict with the SQL Server:

- If multiple tools attempt to backup with logs, neither will have a complete chain to use for restore.
- If multiple tools attempt to perform a full backup, followed by a differential, only the last tool to have run a full backup will have the correct differential information available.

SQL servers also allow only one mirroring session to another database. This will only require one full backup. However, log shipping will require full and log backups. Therefore, having multiple tools mirroring the same database may result in the following conflicts:

- Log shipping will require a full set of logs, but since other tools will also be performing log backups, this complete set will not be available.
- Mirroring also cannot work with other tools that require multiple full backups.

10.2.1.2 HA Standby Environment

High Availability will only replicate the most important data to the standby site. This usually includes the databases (content databases, SSO, SSP). High Availability will work on a standby environment using the following setup:

- SharePoint software must be installed on the standby front end server.
- The same customizations must be installed on the standby front end server.
- An empty standby farm should be created to serve as the container of the replicated data.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.2.2 Coexistence Considerations

There are two programs to consider coexistence conflicts with: Platform Level Backup and Restore, and High Availability.

10.2.2.1 Platform Level Backup

Platform Level Backup can conflict with third party tools:

- Backing up SQL on the platform level using full, differential, and logs means that other tools cannot be used for backing up the SharePoint database.
- Backing up SQL on the platform level using full and differential only could possibly coexist with other products, but ever full backup from a 3rd party tool must be followed by a platform level full backup.
- If other SQL tools are using full, differential, or log backups, platform level backup can use a "Copy Only" mode, where only full backups are used.

Platform Level Backup can coexist with High Availability using these implementations:

- Platform level backup and High Availability cannot simultaneously perform backup using log shipping for the reasons previously listed. However, High Availability can use the logs created during a Platform Level backup. HA will only use backup data generated by platform level backup.
- Platform level backup can coexist with High Availability if it is in mirroring mode. However, platform level backup must perform a full backup after mirroring has been set up.

10.2.2.2 High Availability

High availability can conflict with other third party tools:

- If the database is already being mirrored, High Availability's mirroring method cannot be used.
- If other tools have been implemented after HA's mirroring has been set up, a full backup for that tool will be required.
- If other tools have been implemented on the full, differential, and log level, HA cannot use log shipping. However, a work around for this conflict would be:
- Run a platform level backup of the SQL database, and use the "log shipping from Platform Level Backup" option.
- Sacrifice recovering flexibility of those tools by restricting them to full and differential only. However, the full backups must be performed after log shipping, the backup sizes may be large due to the lack of incremental backups, and that all logs not covered by HA will continue to fill up the disk. (The last problem can be remedied by manually running a log backup of the items that are not covered by HA)

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.3 Farm-level Backup & Restore

DocAve's Platform Level Backup and Restore solution in the Data Protection module allows people to backup their entire SharePoint farm, including all of the contents listed below (with corresponding limitations on "out-of-place restore"):

***Note:** You cannot restore the entire farm to SharePoint environment in the different domain.

(10-3) Supported In-Place and Out-of-Place Features for Platform Level Backup

Function	In-Place	Out-of-Place	Notes
Configuration Database	Yes		
SharePoint Web Service	Yes		Windows SharePoint Service Web Application and WSS Administrator
Central Admin Web Application	Yes		
Admin Content Database	Yes		
Web Application	Yes	Yes	
Content Database	Yes	Yes	
Shared Services Provider (SSP)	Yes	Yes	SSP Properties and Shared Service Database
SSP Osearch Index	Yes		This can only be backed-up and restored together with the SSP
SSP Project Server Application	Yes	Yes	PWA Site is backed-up and restored with the web application to which it belongs
Global Search Settings	Yes	Yes	Farm-level search settings and Crawler impact rules
SharePoint Help Search	Yes		
InfoPath Form Services	Yes	Yes	InfoPath Forms Services Settings and InfoPath Forms Services From templates
Single Sign On (SSO)	Yes	Yes	SSO database and some configurations in Manage Settings for Single Sign On

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Function	In-Place	Out-of-Place	Notes
FBA Databases	Yes		The FBA database and some configurations in the Web. Configurations under Web Application IIS Setting (i.e., Connection Strings, MemberShipProvider, RoleManagerProvider)
SharePoint Learning Kit (SLK)	Yes		SLK Database
Windows SharePoint Solutions	Yes	Yes	The uploaded Solution and its configuration in the Solution Management
Front End Web	Yes	Yes	1. IIS Settings, which can be set individually in the FEW server and not saved in SharePoint such as Form Authentication, SSL certification and so on. 2. SharePoint Template directory, it is the most important directory to record the IIS extension. Most useful files just like feature files and site definition files in the FEW all can be saved in this directory. 3. In addition, SPDR-PR also help backup and restore the file system in the front-end server.
Item-level Restore (after Platform Level Backup)	Yes		This feature has been implemented in 4.5.2 or above. If you want to do item level restore, you should generate index when you backup it. However, it will affect the backup performance. It is optional.

***Note:** Platform Level Backup cannot support other SharePoint applications which have not been included in the chart above. For example, custom web parts and MOSS applications based on ADFS are not supported.

Platform Level Backup is not intended to be used to create "Hot-Standby" environments in the event of a fail-over situation. For more information on creating fail-over environments using SQL mirroring, please see the section on DocAve's High Availability solution listed above.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.3.1 Full Farm

In order to use Platform Level Backup and Restore to backup data, the following items should be noted:

- A full farm restore should include at least the SharePoint Configuration database and the Central Administration database.
- The full farm backup data should be saved to a location outside of the current farm. You will still have access should your environment go down.
- For SSO, navigate to *DocAve* > *Control Panel* > *Control Services* > *Agent Monitor* and specify a user account to the SSO Service Log-on User.
- Backup and restore the "Front-End Web" (listed below) if the following issues apply to you:
  - *IIS Settings* : An IIS tool was used to update the IIS settings after either using SharePoint to create a basic site or editing the file information under the IIS path. (i.e.: After using web.config to configure Form Authentication). Some solutions and features will change the file information under the IIS Path and therefore the IIS settings in the FEW will need to be backed up as well.
  - *SharePoint Template* : Templates will need to be backed up in the event that custom features and site definitions change files in the path c:\program files\common files\microsoft shared\web server\extensions\12\template.
  - *Features and Site Definitions* : If custom operations were created for features and site definitions, these two nodes should be backed up.
  - *File System* : If necessary, any files can be backed up in the FEW file system.

10.3.1.1 Full Farm Backup

In order to perform a full farm backup, Platform Level Data Protection must be enabled. Please reference the corresponding Section 5.2.2.1 of the Manual for any details regarding this product. Be sure to check the box next to the farm's name from the data tree when creating a plan.

10.3.1.2 Full Farm Restore

Before restoring content to a new farm, please make sure the server name and topology are identical to the ones used before, and all of the pre-requisites listed below are met:

- Windows Server 2003 with Service Packs 1 and 2
- IIS with ASP.net enabled
- SQL 2000 or 2005 (the server disk layouts should be identical to original farm)
- .NET Framework 3.0
- MOSS 2007 installed (no configurations should be present; the version number and patch level should be identical to the original farm)
- DocAve v5 Agent Installed

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- The domain account used should be the same as the original farm

***Note:** If the "Restore Database Only" option is selected, you will only be able to restore the Configuration database and the Administration Content database. Other content like web applications will not be selected.

(10-4) Full Farm Restore

<table>
<tr><th>Step</th><th colspan="2">Action</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">1</td><td colspan="2">Since this restore using the Platform Level Restore Controller must be performed as an "in place" restore (same farm), evaluate the status of the farm below:</td></tr>
<tr><td>If...</td><td>Then...</td></tr>
<tr><td>Previously Deployed Farm</td><td>If the farm being restored is either currently or recently deployed (including re-installed environments), disconnect all front-end servers using the SharePoint Products and Technologies Configuration Wizard. See your SharePoint user guide for more details.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fresh Installation</td><td>Proceed to the next step</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Select the Database under the farm on the data tree, and select the Restore whole farm option in the Advanced Options. Please note if you select this option, the Restore Database Only option cannot be selected.

*Note: If you are setting up a Full Farm Restore on a SharePoint 2010 Environment, you must enter the Passphrase for the SharePoint Products farm in the text box which will appear when selecting the Restore whole farm option.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="2">Using the Platform Level Restore Controller (described in the user guide above), load the backup plan and data for this farm. Using the tree, choose the "Configuration DB" and "Admin Content DB".</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">Make sure that "In Place" restore is checked.</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="2">Click Go to start the restore process.</td></tr>
</table>

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Connect all SharePoint front-end servers to the Config DB restored in the previous step. You can use the SharePoint Products and Technologies Configuration Wizard mentioned above to perform this action. ***Note:** At least one front-end server should be used to host the Central Admin Web Application. When using the wizard above, select the "Use this machine to host the web site" option under Advanced Settings: Host Central Administration Web Application.
7	After connecting all front-end servers to the Config Database using the steps above, complete all additional steps below to finish the restore.
8	If any IIS settings have changed before performing this in place restore, they must be restored to their original values. Please confirm this before continuing. ***Note:** You can perform the restore using Platform Level Restore Controller, under the Front End Web. The section below describes this process in greater detail.
9	In order to ensure that all solutions have been properly deployed, select the "Windows SharePoint Solutions" node in the restore tree and run a restore. ***Note:** The Database Only option should **not** be used in this case.
10	For the features that apply to your environment, check that the following services are running in *Start* > *Administration Tools* > *Services*. • *Single Sign-On (SSO)* : Restart the "Microsoft Single Sign-on Service" under the "Services" popup. • *SPHelpSearch* : Restart the "Windows SharePoint Services Search" in the "Services" popup. • *Shared Services Provider (SSP)* : All features except the search index are already available. In order to restore this, make sure the "Office SharePoint Server Search" (OSearch) has been restarted in the "Services: popup. You will also need to restart this service in the *SharePoint Central Administration* > *Operations* > *Services* on Server list.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	To complete the restore of the index data for the SSP, select the corresponding nodes and children in the tree of the Platform Level Restore Controller tree and perform an in-place restore. Make sure you are not using the "Database Only" restore option. If this SSP is the parent of an inter-farm deployment, all children will take 5-10 minutes to establish a connection after the restore is complete. This will happen automatically. ***Note:** You can also manually re-crawl the SharePoint index. From Central Administration, choose to edit the properties and specify an index server for the SSP. Navigate to SSP admin site and choose *Search Setting > Restart Crawl Index Files*.
12	If any customizations have been installed using a 3rd party install wizard, re-run those installations to complete this.

10.3.1.3 FEW Restore Settings

Restoring customizations to your front-end web server for your farm can be performed using the Platform Level Recovery Controller as well. This can be used to restore:

- IIS Settings
- SharePoint Templates
- Custom Features
- SharePoint Site Definitions
- File system folders
- Miscellaneous other features

(10-5) FEW Restore Settings

Step	Action
1	Perform a backup of these settings using Platform Level Backup, including any of the nodes found under the "Front End Web Servers" level of the tree.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Using the restore controller, perform an in-place restore of any of the nodes listed under this level. For instance, if you only wish to restore IIS settings for a single web app (the only one with customizations), you could restore a single item from this tree. You could also take all customizations and return this all to the original settings.

10.3.2 Troubleshooting Tips

A few of the most common problems found when performing a full farm backup and restore are detailed in the sections as follows. For more detailed help, please contact our tech support line.

10.3.2.1 SharePoint Central Admin cannot be accessed after restore

You can recover the Central Admin by using one of the steps below:

- Make sure that the front-end servers were used to host the Admin web (described above). If not, disconnect a front end server, and reconnect it using the "Use to host Admin Web" option.
- Reset the application pool for the central admin.

10.3.2.2 If Index data is not accurate or corrupted

You can use one of the following methods to restore the index data:

- Use the Platform Level Restore Controller (without using the "Database Only" option) to restore the index records from the last available backup.
- Restart the Office SharePoint Server Search Services, set the Index server for the SSP, and Re-crawl the environment.

10.3.2.3 If a Web Application cannot be accessed after restore

If you wish to fix this issue, make sure the following is done first:

- If you customized features or Site-Definitions were used, please verify that all prereq-uisite steps for the front end web server were taken before performing the restore.
- Make sure that Web Site Status is started in the IIS Manager with the proper settings.
- Reset the password for the application pool and perform an IIS reset.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.3.2.4 If there are problems with user profiles and properties or search settings in SSP

Perform the following steps if you are having trouble with the SSP:

- Restore the SSP using Platform Level Recovery Controller.
- Restart the Office SharePoint Server Search Services, set the Index server for the SSP, and Re-crawl the environment.

10.4 Antivirus and Content Shield Database Backup & Restore

DocAve's Platform Level Backup and Restore solution in the Data Protection module allows people to backup the AvePoint Antivirus and Content Shield database.

10.4.1 Backup Antivirus and Content Shield Database

To backup the Antivirus and Content Shield Database, please follow the steps below.

(10-6) Backup Antivirus and Content Shield Database

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Data Protection* > *Custom Backup Builder* > *Platform Backup*.
2	On the backup tree builder window, name of the Agent Host selected should be displayed in the area directly underneath. Clicking on the Agent displays the SharePoint Farm topology.
3	Expand the data tree to the Antivirus and Content Shield database, and select the database by checking the corresponding check-box. If the tool you installed is Antivirus for Trend Micro, the database node will be *AvePoint Antivirus for Trend Micro Settings*, if you installed the both Antivirus for Trend Micro and Content Shield, the node name should be *AvePoint Antivirus for Trend Micro and Content Shield Settings*.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Select the logical device for the backup job. You can also set up other options for the backup job. For more information, please refer to Basic options of this manual for instructions.
5	Save the plan by clicking **Save**. After the plan has successfully been saved, it will be displayed in the column area on the right.
6	To run the plan immediately, click **Run now**. It will pop-up a window, select a backup type, and then click **Run** to run this plan. You can click **Go to The Job Report** to Job Monitor to view the job's process, or click **Close** to return in the pop-up window.

10.4.2 Restore Antivirus and Content Shield Database

To restore the antivirus and content shield database, see the following steps.

(10-7) Restore Antivirus and Content Shield Database

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *DocAve v5 > Data Protection > Restore Controller > Platform Restore*.
2	Select an agent from the drop-down box.
3	Choose the time range when running the backup job in the Time Window fields for *From* and *To*.
4	Click **Load Timeline**. It will display the time points which you run the backup jobs on the time line.
5	Clicking on the time point of the appropriate backup job, you can review the content of the job in the tree mode area.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Click the agent name to expand the tree, select the database by checking the corresponding check-box.
7	Select a *Restore Option* from the drop-down list. For more information, please refer to section Restore Options of this Manual.
8	Select a time for the restore job. By default, Now is selected and will run the process as soon as Go is clicked. You can set a scheduled date and time for this restore by pressing the calendar icon and select a date and time in the calendar pop-up window and click **OK**.
9	Select an **Email Notification** profile from the drop-down box, it will send the email to the recipient once the job result matched the Report Notification level.
10	You may enter a **Description** in the field provided to help distinguish this job in the Job Monitor.
11	Within *Advanced Options* tab, you can also select the advanced options if necessary. Please refer to Advanced Options of this Manual for instructions on this process.
12	Click **Go**. If you set the start time as now, it will run the restore job immediately, otherwise, it will run the job at the specified time. You can view the job report by clicking **Go to Job Report** in the pop-up, or click **Close** to close the pop-up.

10.5 DocAve Solution for Microsoft Office Project Server 2007

Project server is a popular integration element for the SharePoint Platform. In regards to DocAve's support for data protection of this element, please see the sections below.

10.5.1 About Project Server 2007

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Microsoft Office Project Server 2007 was designed by Microsoft to integrate easily to SharePoint.

10.5.1.1 Databases

The following four Project Server databases are included in their design:

- *Draft* : The "Draft" database contains tables for saving unpublished projects from Office Project Professional 2007. Project data in the "Draft" database is not accessible from the Office Project Web Access. All unpublished projects are stored in the "Draft" database and backed up to the "Archive" database.
- *Published* : The "Published" database contains all of the published projects. Published projects are viewable in Office Project Web Access. The "Published" database also contains tables that are specific to Office Project Web Access (i.e. timesheets, views, etc.) and global data tables (i.e. outline codes, security, and metadata). Settings corresponding to views, custom fields and lookup tables, calendars, groups and categories, and system settings are stored in the "Published" database. These settings are also backed up to the "Archive" database.
- *Archive* : The "Archive" database saves backup data and older versions of projects.
- *Reporting* : The "Reporting" database is the staging area for generating reports and OLAP cubes. Data in the "Reporting" database is comprehensive, optimized for read-only report generation, and is updated in near real-time.

10.5.1.2 Item in Project Server and Project Web Access

There are many items that pertain to the Project Server and Project Web Access (PWA):

- *View* : In PWA, view has many types, such as: project center, project, resource center, etc. Each view can be shared by different tables, fields and security categories. These views are stored in the "Published" database and backup to "Archive" database.
  In Project Server 2007, views use several different display formats. It is different from the views in PWA. These views are stored in the "Draft" database and are backed up to the "Archive" db.
- *Category* : Categories define common sets of data access needs and are shared by user and group. When creating a category, the permissions need to be set in order to manage the users' access to projects (activity, proposal and project).
- *Resource* : You can create the Enterprise Resource Pool that project managers will use when assigning resources to tasks in projects. When resources are created, the group, category and custom fields must also be set. The resource can be used in Project Server.
- *Calendar* : Calendars are shared between PWA and the Project Server.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *Custom Field* : When a Custom Field is created, an entity (project, resource, or task) and lookup table must be created. In the Project Server, custom fields can be chosen based on the entity user. They are shared between PWA and the Project Server.

10.5.1.3 Description of Item Level Objects

Below are the various items included in the Project Server 2007 which can be backed up on the Item Level:

- *Projects* : Includes Project Resources, Assignments, Tasks, Custom field values, and Baseline data
- *Enterprise Resource Pool/Calendars* : Includes Enterprise Resources and Enterprise Calendars
- *Enterprise Custom Fields* : Includes Enterprise Custom Field metadata, Enterprise Lookup Table Metadata, and Enterprise Lookup Table values
- *Enterprise Global Template* : Includes all Project Professional table, macro, and view definitions
- *View Definitions* : Includes Statusing, Project Center, Portfolio Analyzer, and Resource Center view definitions
- *System Settings* : Includes the Web settings table. These are all of your system settings choices but do not include OLAP cube options.
- *Category and Group Settings* : Includes settings for all Project Server categories and groups.

10.5.2 Backup and Restore for Project Server 2007

In DocAve, there are three ways to backup and restore the Project Server and Project Web Access:

- ***Data Protection*** : **Platform Level Backup and Recovery**

  DocAve's Platform Level Backup module can be implemented to perform the backup and restore of the four project server databases listed above (Draft, Published, Archive, Reporting).

  Platform Recovery can perform a full-fidelity, complete backup of an entire project server database, or of the four content databases individually.

- ***Data Protection*** : **Item Level Backup**

  Using DocAve's Item Level Backup solution, a backup and restore of Project Web Access (PWA) instances can be performed. DocAve's current Project Server item level

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

backup is confined to the item related to the SharePoint PWA sites (i.e. the site contents created in PWA for the single project, such as announcements, calendars, etc).

- ***Administrator*** : **STSADM GUI Interface**

  Using "stsadm.exe" (implemented as a graphical interface within DocAve), the backup and restore of Project Server databases and Project Web Access sites can be performed. However, this cannot change the path of the backup and restore, and we can only backup or restore all items at once.

  ***Note:** This method of backup/restore data does not require SQL Server 2000 or 2005 tools.

The backup and restore functionality is summarized in the table below:

(10-8) Backup and Restore Functionality

	Project Server Database	**Project Web Access Sites**
DocAve Platform-level	Yes	Yes
DocAve Item-level	No	Yes
STSADM.exe	Yes	Yes

For further details and explanations of performing the three levels of backup listed above, please refer to other sections of the DocAve v5 User Guide.

10.6 The template name/ID for common sites

The followings are the list of the site template name.

(10-9) The Template Name List

Display Template Name	**SharePoint 2003 Name**	**SharePoint 2007 Name**
Team Site	STS#0	STS#0
Blank Site	STS#1	STS#1
Document Workspace	STS#2	STS#2
Basic Meeting Workspace	MPS#0	MPS#0
Blank Meeting Workspace	MPS#1	MPS#1
Decision Meeting Workspace	MPS#2	MPS#2

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Display Template Name	SharePoint 2003 Name	SharePoint 2007 Name
Social Meeting Workspace	MPS#3	MPS#3
Multipage Meeting Workspace	MPS#4	MPS#4
Business Activity Services Team Site	BAS#0	N/A
SharePoint Portal Server Site	SPS#0	SPS#0
SharePoint Portal Server Personal Space	SPSPERS#0	SPSPERS#0
SharePoint Portal Server My Site	SPSMSITE#0	N/A
Contents area Template	SPSTOC#0	SPSTOC#0
Topic area template	SPSTOPIC#0	SPSTOPIC#0
News area template	SPSNEWS#0	N/A
News Home area template	SPSNHOME#0	N/A
Site Directory area template	SPSSITES#0	N/A
SharePoint Portal Server BucketWeb Template	SPSBWEB#0	N/A
Community area template	SPSCOMMU#0	N/A
Personalization Site	N/A	SPSMSITE#0
News Site	N/A	SPSNEWS#0
Publishing Site	N/A	CMSPUBLISHING#0
News Site	N/A	SPSNHOME#0
Site Directory	N/A	SPSSITES#0
Community area template	N/A	SPSCOMMU#0
Publishing Portal	N/A	BLANKINTERNETCON-TAINER#0

The following is the Template ID list of common sites

(10-10) Template ID for common sites

Site Template Type	Site Template ID
STS	1
MPS	2

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.7 Relationship Between SharePoint Actions and Auditor Actions

Refer to the following table for the detailed relationship.

(10-11) Relationship Between SharePoint Actions and Auditor Actions

Action to Audit in Audit Controller	Probable Action Performed in SharePoint	Action Shown in the Search Result of Auditor Report
View	Open or download documents, view items in lists, view file's/item's properties.	View
Copy	Copy and paste files in Explorer view.	Others
Move	Rename files, cut and paste files in Explorer view. Each *Move* action will generate two records.	Others
Update	Upload files, create new libraries/lists, update the column's value of the file/item.	Update
Delete	Delete items/folders/lists/sites. Each *Delete* action will generate two records.	Delete
Undelete	Restore items from the Recycle Bin.	Undelete
Delete Child(ren)	Delete items/folders/lists/sites. Each *Delete* action will generate two records.	Others
Check In	Check in files/items.	Check In
Check Out	Check out files/items.	Check Out
Workflow	N/A	Workflow
Search	Search the data in SharePoint after crawling.	Search
Profile Change	Create content types, edit the properties of the content type.	Others
Schema Change	Create columns, edit the properties of the column.	Others

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Action to Audit in Audit Controller	Probable Action Performed in SharePoint	Action Shown in the Search Result of Auditor Report
Security Change	Modify Site Settings > Site collection audit settings	Others
	Create a group for a SharePoint site collection.	Create Group
	Delete a group for a SharePoint site collection.	Delete Group
	Add a new user to a group which is associated with a SharePoint site collection.	Add Group Member
	Delete a user from a group which is associated with a SharePoint site collection.	Delete Group Member
	Break the permission inheritance.	Break Permission Inheritance
	Break the permission level inheritance.	
	Inherit the permissions.	Inherit Permission Setting
	Modify the permissions of a user or a group.	Change Permission
	Create a Permission Level.	Create Permission Level
	Delete a Permission Level.	Delete Permission Level
	Modify the settings of a Permission Level.	Change Permission Level
Site Deletion	Delete a site collection.	Others
N/A(Custom)	After deploying the solution *AveAuditSolution.wsp* for SharePoint 2007 environment or deploying *DocAve.SP2010.Compliance.AveAuditSolution.wsp* for SharePoint 2010 environment, create a site collection.	Others
N/A(EventsDeleted)	Deletion of audited events that are connected with the object from the SharePoint database.	Others

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.8 DocAve System High Availability

This feature is a system disaster recovery solution for DocAve. When the Control Service is down, you can change the media service to the other control service, and restore the backup data saved by the media service via the new one.

***Note:** For this instruction, you need at least two media services, and must add them to each logical device.

***Note:** Please make sure you have run a System Backup job in the primary DocAve Manager.

(10-12) DocAve System High Availability

Step	Action
1	Go to the machine you installed the secondary media service.
2	Navigate to *Control Panel* > *Add or Remove Programs* > *DocAve Manager* > *Change/Remove*.
3	Select DocAve Control Service and other services to install them, and then restart all the service of the secondary DocAve environment. ***Note:** You can also add the secondary media service to an existing DocAve Control Service.
4	Navigate to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *DocAve System* > *System Recovery* > *System Restore on the secondary DocAve Manager*.
5	Click the "Backup File" radio button and click **Browse** to select the primary DocAve system backup data, and then click **Restore** to restore it. ***Note:** Before you restore the primary DocAve system backup data, it is recommended you to run a system backup job on the secondary DocAve Manager. This operation will make you to find the primary DocAve system backup data successfully.
6	Go to *DocAve v5* > *Control Panel* > *Manager Services* > *Manager Monitor* to delete the Media Service, Auditor Service and the Search Service used by the primary DocAve Manager.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Go to the machine where DocAve Agent installed on to open the Agent Configuration Tool and enter the IP/hostname of the secondary DocAve Manager in the DocAve Control Service Name field.
8	After testing the DocAve Control Service Port successfully, restart all the services.
9	You can use the backup date backed up by the primary on the secondary now.

10.9 Migration Pre-scan Tool

Migration pre-scan tool allows you to scan the source information and setup some mappings for the migration job.

After you install the DocAve agent on the source, you can navigate to ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin to find the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file and execute it by double click it, and then you can select the modules you want to use.

10.9.1 File Migration

This tool tests the path of the net share and test run all legacy content selected for migration and examines properties or permissions of the source files. These results can be used to assist in SharePoint mapping and configurations of the DocAve migration plans. This tool has three main functions:

- *NetShare Test* : This feature can test the path of the Net Share as well as open/close the connection.
- *File Explorer* : This feature can explore the permissions and attribute information of files; Select a file and it will present the details and permissions of the file. The details such as size, type and status will be presented clearly.
- *File Migration Test* : It could filter contents based on file name, file size, last modified time and customized metadata, compile the statistics and test information of the files which need to be migrated and report the SharePoint URL, folder and file whose length exceeds its maximum length.
- *Security Mapping* : This feature supports Domain Mapping, Group Mapping, and User Mapping. For the mapping, it can filter users by Login Name, First Name, Last Name

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

and Display Name; filter groups by Group Name; generate XML file for mapping and enable to modify it manually.

Net Share Test

Net Share Test is used to test the NetShare connection. Please follow the steps below to perform a net share test.

(10-13) Net Share Test

Step	Action
1	Navigate to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **File Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **Net Share Test** to run a net share test job.
4	Enter a username, the corresponding password, and the path you want to use for the File System Migration into the corresponding text box.
5	Click **Open Connection** to open the connection with the path you specified. You can also click **Dispose Connection** to close the connection.

File Explorer

This feature is used to view the permission and attribute information of the files.

(10-14) File Explorer

Step	Action
1	Navigate to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select **File Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **File Explorer** to run a file explorer job.
4	Expand the tree in the left column, and select the folder where you want to view the file.
5	Select the file you want to view and all the information of the selected file will be listed underneath.

File Migration Test

It is the feature the same as the Test Run function in DocAve, and used to collection the files' information you want to migrate.

(10-15) File Migration Test

Step	Action
1	Navigate to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **File Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **File Migration Test** to run a file migration test.
4	Select the New Job from the Job Menu to start a test job.
5	Select a folder using the Browse Folder under the Browse menu, you can also select multiple folders by using the Browse Multiple Folder option.
6	After you select the folder, it will display the selected path in the Job Information area.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	If you want to filter the files using the file type, size, and modified time or configure a net share path, you should click the Config menu and select config to open the configuration window. If you specified a net share path in Network Drive, there is no need to browse the files by using the Browse menu and you can just click Job > Run Job to run a test job.
8	Click **Save Job** under the Job menu to save the test job.
9	Select **Run Job** to test the migration files, it will display all the test results of the folders or the files.
10	Click **Save Report** to save the test run result.

Security Mapping

In this feature, you this can map the users/groups from the same domain/different domains during the migration.

(10-16) File Migration Test

Step	Action
1	Navigate to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **File Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **Security Mapping** to configure a mapping.
4	Click **LDAP Configuration** to configure the source domain and destination domain.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
5	Click **Source Domain** radio button. Enter the IP address where install the domain controller into the **LDAP Path** field, and then enter the administrator account into the **LDAP Username** field as well as the corresponding password. After setting up all configurations, you can click **Submit** to ensure all information is correct.
6	Click **Destination Domain** radio button. Enter the IP address where install the domain controller into the **LDAP Path** field, and then enter the administrator account into the **LDAP Username** field as well as the corresponding password. After setting up all configurations, you can click **Submit** to ensure all information is correct.
7	Click **Save and Close** to save the configuration.
8	Select a domain which you want to map from Source Domains field and select a domain which you want to map to from Destination Domains field on the right. Click >> icon to add this mapping to Domain Mapping field on the right. You can click << icon to remove a selected mapping from the Domain Mapping field on the right.
9	If you want to set up a group mapping, Select *Source Group Filter* tab and click **Apply Filter** button to load all source groups. Select *Destination Group Filter* tab, and click **Apply Filter** button to load all destination groups. For filtering source groups and destination groups, you can set up a certain filter rule to filter the groups you want. • *All* : this option is selected by default, it will load all source/ destination groups in Source/Destination Groups area. • *Start With* : it will load the specified source/destination group which starts with the content you entered in corresponding field. • *Contains* : it will load the specified source/destination group which contains the content you enter in corresponding field. • *By Regex* : it will load the specified source/destination group which matches the certain regular expression.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Select a group which you want to map from Source Groups field and select a group which you want to map to from Destination Groups field on the right. Click >> icon to add this mapping to Group Mapping field on the right. You can click << icon to remove a selected mapping from the Group Mapping field on the right.
11	If you want to set up a user mapping, Select *Source Users Filter* tab and click **Apply Filter** button to load all source users. Select *Destination Users Filter* tab, and click **Apply Filter** button to load all destination users. For filtering source users and destination users, you can set up a certain filter rule to filter the users you want. • *All* : this option is selected by default, it will load all source/destination groups in Source/Destination Users area. • *Start With* : it will load the specified source/destination user which starts with the content you entered in corresponding field. • *Contains* : it will load the specified source/destination user which contains the content you enter in corresponding field. • *By Regex* : it will load the specified source/destination group which matches the certain regular expression. The rules above can be used on the user information, such as Login Name, First Name, Last Name, and Display Name. By default, it will filter by Login Name.
12	Select a user which you want to map from Source Users field and select a user which you want to map to from Destination Users field on the right. Click >> icon to add this mapping to User Mapping field on the right. You can click << icon to remove a selected mapping from the User Mapping field on the right.
13	Click **Save Mapping to XML File** to save the mapping profile as an xml file.

10.9.2 SharePoint 2003 Migration

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This tool is used to analyze the source information, scan the contents, setup a domain/user mapping, and check the URL.

The analyzed result can be saved as a CSV file and it will report the following content:

- Report site collection information including Database name, create time, modify time, size count, web count, and total size.
- Report list information including list count, list total size, item count and item total size.
- Report document information including document count, document total size, attachment count, and attachment total size.
- Report users, groups and securities.

The scanned result will report the following content:

- Report custom site template, list template, view and web part.
- Report areas whose title has invalid characters.

It supports Domain Mapping, Group Mapping, and User Mapping.

Analyze the source

(10-17) Analyze The Source

Step	Action
1	Navigate to ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **SharePoint 2003 Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **SharePoint Scan Tool** to run a scan job.
4	Click **Select**, and a pop-up window will appear.
5	Select a virtual server and all the site collections under it will be listed in the Site Collection drop-down box.
6	Select a site collection and click **OK**. The virtual server and the site collection will be displayed in the Virtual Server Selection area.
7	Click **Analyze**, the analyzer window will appear.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Click **Load Tree** and expand the tree to select the node you want to analyze in the Tree View area.
9	If you want to filter some special files, you can configure a analysis filter rule in the Analysis Filter area.
10	Click **Display** to run the analysis job, and the analysis report will be displayed in the pop-up window. You can also click Save to save the analysis report as a file to the appropriate location. If you want to generate a report of web level, select the Include Web option. However, this option will take effect only when you click Select and check the Whole Virtual Server check box.

Setup a Domain/ User Mapping

(10-18) Setup A Domain/ User Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select SharePoint 2003 Migration option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **SharePoint Scan Tool** to run a scan job.
4	Click **LDAP Configuration** to configure the destination AD account you want to migrate to.
5	Input the IP address where install the domain controller into the **LDAP Path** field, and then enter the administrator account into the **Login Name** field as well as the corresponding password. After setting up all configurations, you can click **Test** to ensure all information is correct.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
6	Click **OK** to save the configurations. All the configurations will be saved in the DocAveToolLdap.cfg file under the current folder; you can view the content in this file. Please note the password is encrypted.
7	Click **Start Domain/User Mapping** to setup the mapping for domain and user.
8	Click **Load Destination AD User** to load all the AD users in destination, and then you can setup the domain mapping or use mapping by selecting corresponding check-box.
9	Check the Domain Mapping, the user in the source which already has the matching user in destination will be listed in the appropriate column underneath automatically. If you want to save this mapping in the XML mapping file, you can check the check-box in the Select column. By default, the check-boxes in this column are selected.
10	Check the User Mapping, the users in the source which cannot find the matching domain user from destination will be listed in the appropriate column underneath automatically. There are three kinds of method to select a destination user for the source user. If you want to save this mapping in the XML mapping file, you can check the check-box in the Select column. By default, the check-boxes in this column are selected. You can select the destination user for the individual source user from the drop-down box in the Mapping User column. You can also double click the destination username on the left-hand column to add it to specific source user. The destination user will be listed in the Mapping User column. If you do not want to map the source user to the destination user by domain mapping, you can select the Double click to add user mapping option, and double click the mapping in Domain Mapping area, and then change the mapping user using the drop-down box.
11	Click **Save to XML** to save the mapping to a XML file.
12	You can download a saved mapping profile in DocAve, and then add the new mapping rule into this file.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	Save the new XML file, and then upload it into DocAve. Because this mapping file already exists in DocAve, you can select Merge option to add the new mapping rules to the original mapping profile.

Checking the URL

(10-19) Checking The URL

Step	Action
1	Navigate to ...\AvePoint\DocAve5\ Agent\bin and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **SharePoint 2003 Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **SharePoint Scan Tool** to run a scan job.
4	Click **Check URL**, a pop-up window will appear.
5	Click **Load Tree** to load the selected source site collection URL. Expand the tree and select the source node by checking the corresponding check-box.
6	Enter a destination URL and click **Migrator Test** to test the length of the destination URL. You can select to promote the site or restore as a subsite by checking the appropriate check-box.
7	If the URL length exceeds 255, the check job will failed, you can click **Export Result** to load the failed URL to view the detailed information.

10.9.3 Lotus Notes Migration

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This tool is used to analyze the source information, test the net share connection, setup a domain/user mapping for both Lotus Notes and QuickPlace.

10.9.3.1 Net Share Test

Net Share Test is used to test the NetShare connection. Please follow the steps below to perform a net share test.

(10-20) Net Share Test

Step	Action
1	Navigate to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\ Agent\bin and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **Lotus Notes Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **Net Share Test** to run a net share test job.
4	Enter a username, the corresponding password, and the path you want to use for the Lotus Notes Migration into the corresponding text box.
5	Click **Test Connection** to open the connection with the path you specified. You can also click **Dispose Connection** to close the connection.

10.9.3.2 Lotus Notes

This tool enables you to achieve the following functions. It supports Domino\Notes version 6.5.4 or later.

- *Show all Notes databases stored on Domino server and Local* : Display all Notes databases by category and by template including the following properties: Created, Last Modified, Document Counts, Total Size, Template, Category, and File Name.
- *Database Analyze and Report* : It will analyze Basic properties; Design Statistics for forms, views, agents, folders, pages, shared fields, script libraries and sub forms; ACL; Content statistics including report counts and sizes for documents, attachments, OLE objects and pictures; Data Elements and Design Elements Complexity; Replica Comparison. It will report Database Summary, Database ACLs, Database Data Ele-

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

ment, Database Replicas Comparison, and Database Design Element Comparison Report.

- *Content Type Mapping* : Map field name and field type; order field on destination; select the fields which you want to migrate; display NotesUID on destination; display Response to on destination; specify which column will be shown as destination item title; add column.
- *User Mapping* : Filter users by First Name, Last Name and Email Address; map users by First Name, Last Name and Email Address; generate XML file for user mapping and enable to edit it manually.
- *Notes form to Infopath form mapping* : Map notes content type to a pre-deployed Infopath form, and map fields.

Analyze the Source Database

(10-21) Lotus Notes Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to …\AvePoint\DocAve5\ Agent\bin and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **Lotus Notes Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **Lotus Notes** to setup a mapping profile for the Lotus Notes Migration.
4	Click **File** > New Database Connection on the top of the current window, and a pop-up window will appear.
5	Click "..." to select INI file and all the user IDs will be listed in the User ID drop-down box.
6	Enter the corresponding password after selecting the user ID file.
7	Click **Load** to load the Notes database, the available Domino Server will be listed in the drop-down box.
8	Select the language of the selected Notes from the drop-down box.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	If you would like to include the database which is not under the default directory (for example, ...\Lotus\notes\data or ...\Lotus\Domino\data), please select the corresponding check box of **Browse .nsf from local devices** and click **...** to select the database.
10	Click **Test** to test the connection with the Domino Server.
11	Click **Connect** to connect the Domino Server.
12	Expand the data tree in the left panel of the window and select the Domino Server by clicking its name.
13	Select the database by clicking its name in the right panel of the window. You can sort the databases listed in the right panel by selecting By Category or By Template in the data tree of the left panel.
14	Click Analyzer > Analyze Database on the top of the current window, and a pop-up window will appear to display the relevant information.

Content Type Mapping

(10-22) Content Type Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **Lotus Notes Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **Lotus Notes** to setup a mapping profile for the Lotus Notes Migration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
4	Expand the data tree in the left panel of the window and select the Domino Server by clicking its name. If there are no existing database connections displayed in the left panel of the window, you can establish new connections by referring to step 4 to 11 in the table (10-17 Lotus Notes Mapping)
5	Select the database by clicking its name in the right panel of the window. You can sort the databases listed in the right panel by selecting By Category or By Template in the data tree of the left panel.
6	Click Mapping > Notes-SharePoint Content Type Mapping > New Mapping. A pop-up window will appear to set the mapping. You can also click Mapping > Edit an Existing Mapping to edit an existing mapping profile, or click Mapping > Create Mapping for Multiple Databases to create a mapping for several databases.
7	Select the content type to be migrated by checking the corresponding check box in the left panel of the window.
8	Click **Uncheck All**, if you would like to exclude all the content types from migration.
9	Select the content type by double clicking its name in the left panel of the window, and all the relevant attributes will be listed in the right panel.
10	You can specify the content type name for SharePoint by entering the name into the **SharePoint Content Type** text box.
11	You can specify the title of the item by checking the check box Specified Title and inputting the name into the corresponding text box.
12	Click **Exclude All**, if you would like to exclude all the columns of a content type from migration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
13	If you want use this configuration as the default, you must select the Use Default option.
14	Select the check-box in the Included column, the column you select will be included in the mapping profile.
15	There are five column you can setup for the content type. **Notes Field/ Notes Field Type** These two columns are the field name and the field type in Notes. These two items cannot be edited. **SharePoint Column** This is the column name in SharePoint for the corresponding Notes field. Please note the columns cannot have the same column name for one content type. **Column Type** Select the column type for the field. You can map the Notes field to RichText in SharePoint if the content type is HTML. **Included** You can select to map the field by checking the Included check-box. **Order** You can specify the column order in SharePoint by using this option. **Hidden** You can make the column hidden by checking the corresponding check box. **Show in Default View** You can make the column show in the default view of a list by checking the corresponding check box.
16	Check the check box Show "Notes UID" to show the column of Notes UID.
17	Check the check box Show "Response To" to the column of Response To.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
18	You can click **Add Column** to add a new column, the **Delete Column** to remove the column from the mapping.
19	Click **Save** to save the mapping profile.
20	Click **Close** to close the current window.

User Mapping

(10-23) Setup User Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the "AvePointMigratorTool.exe" file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **Lotus Notes Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **Lotus Notes** to setup a mapping profile for the Lotus Notes Migration.
4	Expand the data tree in the left panel of the window and select the Domino Server by clicking its name. If there are no existing database connections displayed in the left panel of the window, you can establish new connections by referring to step 4 to 11 in the table (10-17 Lotus Notes Mapping).
5	Select the database by clicking its name in the right panel of the window. You can sort the databases listed in the right panel by selecting By Category or By Template in the data tree of the left panel.
6	Click Mapping > Notes-SharePoint User Mapping > Configure LDAP. A pop-up window will appear for the LDAP configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Input the IP address where install the domain controller into the **LDAP Path** field, and then enter the administrator account into the **LDAP Username** field as well as the corresponding password. After setting up all configurations, you can click **Test Connection** to ensure all information is correct.
8	Click **OK** to save the configuration.
9	Click Mapping > Notes-SharePoint User Mapping > New Mapping, the user mapping window will appear. The user under the selected Notes database will be listed in the User Mapping area on the right, and the SharePoint users will be listed in the left column. You can also click Edit an Existing Mapping to edit an existing user mapping profile, or click Configure FBA to set the FBA configuration, or click New FBA User Mapping to create a new FBA user mapping.
10	Double click the SharePoint user you want to map to the Notes user, it will be listed under the SharePoint User column.
11	Click **Change Mapping Condition** to setup a mapping mode and the user filter rule.
12	Select the check-box in the Included column, the column you select will be included in the mapping profile. You can also click **Include All** to select all the column.
13	You can click **Add Column** to add a new user, the **Delete Column** to remove the user from the mapping.
14	Click **Save** to save the mapping profile.

Infopath Mapping

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-24) Infopath Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **Lotus Notes Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **Lotus Notes** to setup a mapping profile for the Lotus Notes Migration.
4	Expand the data tree in the left panel of the window and select the Domino Server by clicking its name. If there are no existing database connections displayed in the left panel of the window, you can establish new connections by referring to step 4 to 11 in the table (10-17 Lotus Notes Mapping)
5	Select the database by clicking its name in the right panel of the window. You can sort the databases listed in the right panel by selecting By Category or By Template in the data tree of the left panel.
6	Click Mapping > Notes-Infopath Mapping, the setting window will appear.
7	Select a template file, you can select several files. All the selected templates will be listed in the Infopath Template drop-down list. The format of the template file should be XSN.
8	Double click the Infopath field you want to map underneath, it will be added into the Infopath Field column. The Rich Test type must match to the FIELD_RICHTEXT type.
9	Click **Start a new Notes-Infopath Mapping** to setup a mapping.
10	Select a Infopath template from the drop-down box, and all the Infopath fields will be listed underneath.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
11	Click **Generate Notes-Infopath Mapping Configuration** to generate the mapping profile.

10.9.3.3 QuickPlace

This tool can achieve Quick Place content type mapping and Quick Place user mapping. It supports Quick Place version 6.5, 7.0, 8.0.

- *Quick Place Content Type Mapping* : Map field name and field type; order field on destination; select the fields which you want to migrate.
- *Quick Place User Mapping* : It can filter and map Notes users by First Name, Last Name, and Email Address; generate .XML file for user mapping and enable to edit it manually.

(10-25) QuickPlace

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **Lotus Notes Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **QuickPlace** to setup a mapping profile for the Lotus Notes Migration.
4	You must select a source first.
5	Click **Select** in the Source area, and a pop-up window will appear.
6	Click **...** to select INI file and all the user IDs will be listed in the User ID drop-down box.
7	Enter the corresponding password after selecting the user ID file.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Select the language of the selected QuickPlace from the drop-down box.
9	Click **Load** to load the QuickPlace place or room, the data tree will be listed on the right.
10	Select the place you want to use, and then click **OK**.
11	Click **New QuickPlace content type mapping** in the QuickPlace Content Type Mapping area, and the configuration window will appear. You can also click Edit an existing content type mapping to edit an existing mapping profile.
12	Select the content type you want to map by checking corresponding check-box and double click the content type name to set the mapping.
13	You can specify the content type name for SharePoint by entering the name into the **SharePoint Content Type** text box.
14	If you want use this configuration as the default, you must select the Use Default option.
15	Select the check-box in the Included column, the column you select will be included in the mapping profile. You can also click **Include All** to select all the column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
16	There are five column you can setup for the content type. **Notes Field/ Notes Field Type** These two columns are the field name and the field type in Notes. These two items cannot be edited. **SharePoint Column** This is the column name in SharePoint for the corresponding Notes field. Please note the columns cannot have the same column name for one content type. **Column Type** Select the column type for the field. You can map the Notes field to RichText in SharePoint if the content type is HTML. **Included** You can select to map the field by checking the Included check-box. **Order** You can specify the column order in SharePoint by using this option.
17	You can click **Add Column** to add a new column, the **Delete Column** to remove the column from the mapping.
18	Click **Save** to save the mapping profile. You can also select to save it as default or a file with special name.
19	Click **Config LDAP settings** to configure the destination AD account you want to migration to.
20	Input the IP address where install the domain controller into the **LDAP Path** field, and then enter the administrator account into the **LDAP Username** field as well as the corresponding password. After setting up all configurations, you can click **Test Connection** to ensure all information is correct.
21	Click **Save and Close** to save the configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
22	Click **New QuickPlace user mapping**, the user mapping window will appear. The user under the selected place will be listed in the User Mapping area on the right, and the SharePoint users will be listed in the left column.
23	Double click the SharePoint user you want to map to the Notes user, it will be listed under the SharePoint User column.
24	Click **Change Mapping** to setup a mapping mode and the user filter rule.
25	Select the check-box in the Included column, the column you select will be included in the mapping profile. You can also click **Include All** to select all the column.
26	You can click **Add Column** to add a new user, the **Delete Column** to remove the user from the mapping.
27	Click **Save** to save the mapping profile, or **Save Default** to save the file as a default file.

10.9.4 eRoom Migration

This tool scans all legacy content from Community/Facility/Room selected for migration and configures eRoom user mappings and group mappings. For the mapping, you can filter users by Domain Name, First Name, Last Name, Mail Address and Display Name, generate XML file and enable to edit manually.

The scan result will report the following content:

- Report Last accessed user and time, number of local users and AD users, supported and unsupported contents, checked out files, content size, mapped users for each room.
- Report blocked files, checked out files, Mapped and Unmapped Users, and invalid characters.
- Report detailed information for supported contents, like metadata, version.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

These results can be used to assist in DocAve eRoom migration module. It supportes eRoom version 6.x and 7.x.

eRoom Scan Tool

(10-26) eRoom Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select eRoom Migration option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **eRoom Scan Tool** to scan the content in eRoom.
4	Enter the local username and the corresponding password into the provided fields, and then click Load eRoom Structure, the eRoom structure will be loaded in the left area. If you want to display the eRoom internal template, you can select the Show Template eRoom option.
5	Select the node you want to scan, and it will be listed in the Content scan area.
6	Within the Scan Config area, you must select the scan mode for the scan job, there are four option: Scan Not Supported items, Scan Checkout Files, Scan All Content and Users, and Scan User Mapping. If you want to select the Scan User Mapping option, the LDAP configuration is needed.
7	Click **Start Scan** to run the scan job, you can view the scan process in the current item field.
8	Once the scan job finished, you can view the detailed information about the content in scan result window.

Setup User Mapping

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-27) Setup User Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select eRoom Migration option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **eRoom Scan Tool** to setup the user mapping.
4	Enter the local username and the corresponding password into the provided fields, and then click **Load eRoom Structure**, the eRoom structure will be loaded in the left area. If you want to display the eRoom internal template, you can select the Show Template eRoom option.
5	Click **LDAP Setting** to configure the destination AD account you want to migration to.
6	Input the IP address where install the domain controller into the **LDAP Path** field, and then enter the administrator account into the **LDAP Username** field as well as the corresponding password. After setting up all configurations, click Submit to apply the configuration.
7	Click **Save and Close** to exit the setting window, and you can configure the user mapping and scan the users mapping.
8	Click Config User Mapping, and the configuration window will appear.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Select the eRoom user you want to setup the mapping, and then double click the SharePoint user you want to mapping to, and the user mapping will be listed in the User Mapping field on the right. • *Show Default Matched Users* : The eRoom and SharePoint users which have the same name will be matched automatically. These matched users will be displayed, if you select Show Default Matched Users by checking the corresponding check box. ***Note:** By default SharePoint Users area displays the users according to the filter rule of By eRoom User. ***Note:** If you want to delete a mapping in User Mapping area, please double click the mapping row.
10	You can also setup a filter rule for the eRoom and SharePoint users to filter the users you want to map in the SharePoint User Filter. • *SharePoint User Filter* : By eRoom User: If you select an eRoom user, SharePoint Users area will display the SharePoint user which has same name of the eRoom user. • *All* : SharePoint Users area will display all the SharePoint users. • *Start With* : SharePoint Users area will display the SharePoint users according to the starting letters of the SharePoint user name. • *Range* : SharePoint Users area will display the SharePoint users within the specified range. • *By Regex* : SharePoint Users area will display the SharePoint users which match the specified regular expression.
11	If the selected eRoom user belongs to a domain, the relevant domain info will display in the Domain Mapping area.You can configure the domain mapping in the Domain Mapping area. Show Domain Matched Users: The eRoom domain user will be automatically matched to the SharePoint domain user with the same name, if you have applied domain mapping. These domain user mappings are hidden by default. If you want them to be displayed, please select Show Domain Matched Users by checking the corresponding check box.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	Under the Group Mapping tab, all the eRoom groups will be listed in the column of eRoom Group, and you can set the mapping by inputting the corresponding SharePoint group name in the column of SharePoint Group. ***Note:** If you want to delete a mapping in Group Mapping area, please double click the mapping row.
13	You can save the mapping profile as a XML file by clicking the **Save Mappings to XML File**, or merger the mappings to the exported DocAve configuration file by clicking Merge to DocAve Config File.

10.9.5 Livelink Migration

This tool scans all legacy content from Enterprise workspace, personal workspace and domain workspace for migration and configures Livelink user mappings. For the mapping, you can filter users by Domain Name, First Name, Last Name, Mail Address and Display Name; generate the mapping as an XML file and enable to edit it manually.

The scanned result will report the following contents:

- Report supported and unsupported content, checked out files, Mapped and Unmapped Users, content size.
- Report detailed information for supported contents including metadata information, version count and version size.

It can also scan content for successfully mapped users; filter out the content being scaned by File Size, Time Range, and Metadata.

These results can be used to assist in DocAve Livelink migration module.

Livelink Scan Tool

(10-28) Livelink Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select **Livelink Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Livelink Connection Config** to verify the connection.
3	Input the name into the text box **Connection Profile Name**.
4	Normally you do not must select Use HTTP Tunneling. Please input the **Livelink Server**. **port**, **Livelink Username**, **Livelink Password**, **Livelink Domain** (if the domain function is enabled) into the corresponding text box. • *My Workspace* : My Workspace will be displayed, if you select My Workspace by checking the corresponding check box. If you keep this option unselected, Enterprise Work-space will be displayed.
5	If you have set proxy server or web server in your environment, you can select Use HTTP Tunneling by checking the corresponding check box. And then input the relevant information to set the configuration.
6	Click **Save** to save the connection profile. Click Save and Apply to save the connection profile and make it take effect.
7	The saved connection profiles are listed in Connection Profile area. You can import an existing connection profile by clicking **Connection Profile Browse**. You can select a connection profile in Connection Profile area and click **Delete** to delete it.
8	Close the current window, and the main window will appear for the fol-lowing configuration.
9	After the connection completed successfully, the Livelink structure will be displayed under the **Livelink Connection Config** button on the left-hand side.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
10	Select the content you want to scan, and then click **Start Scan** in the content scan field. If you want to select the Include User Mapping option, the LDAP configuration is needed.
11	Once the scan job finished, you can view the detailed information about the content in scan results window.

LDAP Setting

LDAP setting is used to get the AD users for the User Mapping by connecting to the SharePoint AD account environment. Please follow the steps below to configure it.

(10-29) LDAP Setting

Step	Action
1	Input the IP address where install the domain controller into the **LDAP Path** field.
2	Enter the administrator account into the **LDAP Username** filed, as well as the corresponding password.
3	After setting up all configurations, click **Submit** to apply the configuration.
4	If you want to use the trust domain, you must uncheck the SharePoint Domain box after configuring the SharePoint domain and submit the configuration again by clicking **Submit**. After submit the configuration, the trust domain will be listed in the Trust Domain area. If you want to use the trust domain, please make sure you already submitted the SharePoint Domain first.

SharePoint User Filter

There are five options under SharePoint User Filter to filter the users:

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *By Livelink user* : select the Livelink users in the Livelink Users area, and select the element you want to use in the Filter By area, it will filter the SharePoint users by the selected element that the specific Livelink users possessed.
- *All* : it will list all the SharePoint users and sort them by the option you select in the Filter By area.
- *Start with* : you can filter the SharePoint users by specifying the username whose name is started with the specific characters by this option.
- *Range* : this option is used to setup a range to filter the users.
- *By Regex* : This option is an advanced filter, you can filter the users by any words you specified. For example, the words with "admin" (admin, Administrator or My Administrator Account) can be found by entering "[W]*admin[W]*" .

Setup User Mapping

(10-30) Setup User Mapping

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **eRoom Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **Livelink Connection Config** to verify the connection.
4	After connecting the Livelink server successfully, the Livelink structure will be displayed under the **Config Livelink Connection** button on the left-hand side.
5	Click **LDAP Setting** to configure the destination AD account you want to migration to.
6	Input the IP address where install the domain controller into the **LDAP Path** field, and then enter the administrator account into the **LDAP Username** field as well as the corresponding password. After setting up all configurations, click **Submit** to apply the configuration.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
7	Click **Save and Close** to exit the setting window, and you can configure the user mapping and scan the users mapping.
8	Select the content you want to map in the Livelink tree and then click the User Mapping in the content scan field, and the configuration window will appear.
9	Select the Livelink user you want to setup the mapping, and then double click the SharePoint user you want to mapping to, and the user mapping will be listed in the User Mapping field on the right.
10	You can also setup a filter rule for the Livelink and SharePoint users to filter the users you want to map in the SharePoint User Filter. • *Show Default Marched Users* : The eRoom and SharePoint users which have the same name will be matched automatically. These matched users will be displayed, if you select Show Default Matched Users by checking the corresponding check box.
11	You can also configure the domain mapping in the Domain Mapping area. • *Show Domain Matched Users* : The eRoom domain user will be automatically matched to the SharePoint domain user with the same name, if you have applied domain mapping. These domain user mappings are hidden by default. If you want them to be displayed, please select Show Domain Matched Users by checking the corresponding check box.
12	You can save the mapping profile as a XML file by clicking the **Save Mappings to XML File**, or merge the mappings to the DocAve configuration file.

10.9.6 Public Folder Migration

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This tool scans all legacy content (Note Items, Journal Items, Calendar Items, Contact Items, Mail Items, and Task Items) selected for migration and finds exceptions or errors that may occur during the migration job.

The scanned result will report the following contents: folder counts, item counts, total size of selected nodes, folder count, total size for each type of folder, item count, total size for each type of item, and the contents which match with the following conditions.

- *Conditions for Folders* : Having more than...items, Having more than...levels in full path, Having more than...characters in full path, and Having invalid characters in path.
- *Conditions for Items* : Larger than...KB, Having more than...characters in subject, Having attachment(s) larger than...KB, Having more than...attachments, Having invalid characters in path, and Hidden items.

These results can be used to assist in SharePoint mapping and configurations of the DocAve migration plans. It supports Exchange 03/07 via WebDav, and does not support Exchange 2010 as it must be connected by webservice.

(10-31) Public Folder Migration

Step	Action
1	Navigate to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePointMigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select **Public Folder Migration** option in the welcome screen, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **EPF Scan Tool** to scan the content in Public Folder.
4	Enter the username and the corresponding password into the provided fields, and then specify the exchange URL you want to connect into the **Exchange URL** field.
5	Click **Save as Profile** to save the information as a profile, and it will be listed in the Profile drop-down list.
6	Click **Load** to load the public folder.
7	Click **Option**, you can setup a filter rule for the files in the public folder.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
8	Select the folder you want to scan, and click **Scan** to scan the folder.
9	After the scan job completed, it will list the scan result in the Scan Result area. You can also click Save to save the scan result as a file to the local.

10.9.7 EMC Documentum Migration

This tool scans all legacy content selected for migration in EMC Documentum, finds out whether the data can migrate to SharePoint or not and report both summary and detail information for the following items:

- Mapped users and unmapped users
- Supported content and unsupported content
- Checked out files
- Content size

The results can be saved as XML files.

It can also perform the following operations:

- User Mapping.
- Filter users by Domain, Login Name, First Name, Last Name, Mail Address, and Display Name.
- Generate XML file for mapping and allow manually modification.

The results can be applied in Settings of DocAve EMC Documentum Migration.

These results can be used to assist in SharePoint mapping and configurations of the DocAve migration plans.

EMC Documentum Scan Tool

(10-32) EMC Documentum Migration

Step	Action
1	Go to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePoint-MigratorTool.exe** to run the migration tool.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Select *EMC Documentum Migration* option in DocAve Migrator Tools page, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **EMC Documentum Tool** button in welcome page.
4	Click **EMC Documentum Connection Config** button, and then a dialog box will pop up. You can setup connection profile in this page.
5	Under *EMC Documentum Connection* page, input the connection profile name into *Connection Profile Name.*
6	Input the Login Name and Password in corresponding box. If you select the *My Home Cabinet* checkbox, only the Home Cabinet of the config user will be displayed in the host page.
7	Input the repository name into *Repository*, it is the database name in EMC Documentum. By default, it is documentum.
8	Input the domain name of EMC.
9	Click **Save** button to save the profile, and the profile will be displayed under Connection Profile field on the right. If you want to use existed connection profiles, you can click the **Connection Profile Browse** button to select the file. You can also click **Save and Apply** button, then it will verify the information and be displayed under *Connection Profile* field. If you want to delete any profile, you can select the profile from the *Connection Profile* field and then click **Delete** button.
10	Expand the tree to load data and select the node you want to scan.
11	Click **Start Scan** button to run the scan job, you can view the scan process in the current item field.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
12	Once the scan job finished, you can view the detailed information about the content in scan result window.

Setup User Mapping

(10-33) Setup User Mapping

Step	Action
1	Go to *...|AvePoint|DocAve5| Agent|bin* and double click the **AvePoint-MigratorTool.exe** file to run the migration tool.
2	Select *EMC Documentum Migration* option in DocAve Migrator Tools page, and then click **Next**.
3	Click **EMC Documentum Tool** button in welcome page.
4	Click **EMC Documentum Connection Config** button and then a dialog box will pop up. You can setup connection profile in this page.
5	Under *EMC Documentum Connection* page, input the connection profile name into the *Connection Profile Name*.
6	Input the Login Name and Password in corresponding box. If you select the *My Home Cabinet checkbox* option, only the Home Cabinet of the config user will be displayed in the host page.
7	Input the repository name into *Repository*, it is the database name in EMC Documentum. By default, it is documentum.
8	Input the domain name of EMC Documentum.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
9	Click **Save** button to save the profile, and the profile will be displayed under *Connection Profile* field on the right. If you want to use existed connection profiles, you can click the **Connection Profile Browse** button to select the file. You can also click **Save and Apply** button, then it will verify the information and be displayed under *Connection Profile* field. If you want to delete any profile, you can select the profile from the *Connection Profile* field and then click **Delete** button.
10	Click **LDAP Setting** button to configure the LDAP settings in the host page.
11	Under *LDAP Setting* page, if you want to set the domain as the main SharePoint domain, you should select *SharePoint Domain* checkbox in the LDAP Config field. It will be used to do the default user mapping.
12	Input the LDAP Path in format of *DomainName.com*, LDAP Username and Password in corresponding boxes.
13	Click **Submit** button to submit and verify the configurations, if you still want to do other configurations. Or else, click **Save and Close** button to verify the configurations and back to the host page. The destination domain's information will be displayed in *Destination Domain* field.
14	Expand the tree to load data and select the node you want to scan in the host page.
15	Click **User Mapping** button to start the mappings and then a dialog box will pop up.
16	Under *Mapping Config* page, the EMC Documentum users will be displayed in EMC Documentum Users field. If you select the root node of the tree, it will scan all the users in EMC Documentum. Or else, it will just scan the users with the access to the selected nodes.
17	The users in the domains configured in LDAP Setting will be displayed in SharePoint Users field.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
18	Select the EMC Documentum user you want to setup the mapping, and then double click the SharePoint user you want to mapping to. The user mapping will be listed in the User Mapping field on the right. • *Show Default Matched User* : The EMC Documentum and SharePoint users which have the same name will be matched automatically. These matched users will be displayed if you select **Show Default Matched Users** by checking the corresponding check box. By default, SharePoint Users area lists the users according to the filter rule of Filter By. If you want to delete a mapping in User Mapping area, please double click the mapping row.
19	You can also setup a filter rule to filter out the exactly users in SharePoint User Filter field. • *By EMC Documentum User* : SharePoint Users will be displayed by EMC Documentum User. • *All* : All the SharePoint users will be displayed in SharePoint Users area. • *Start With* : SharePoint users will be displayed in the SharePoint Users area according to the starting letters of the SharePoint user name. • *Range From* : SharePoint users will be displayed in the SharePoint Users area within the specified range. • *By Regex* : SharePoint users which match the specified regular expression will be displayed in the SharePoint Users area. The rules above can be used on the user information, such as Domain, Login Name, First Name, Last Name, Mail Address and Display Name. By default, it will filter by Display Name.
20	You can save the mapping profile as a XML file by clicking the **Save Mappings to XML File**, or merger the mappings to the exported DocAve configuration file by clicking **Merge to DocAve Config File**.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10 DocAve CLI

DocAve supports the administrator to run the DocAve plan by using CLI (Command line Interface) and PowerShell.

10.10.1 Helpful Notes on Migration CLI

This section will focus on several tips to fully utilize the Migration CLI solution.

- DocAve Control service can be connected through the network. The system time of the machine running the DocAve CLI is the same as that of the machine where DocAve Control Service is installed.
- If the parameter that you enter in the command line has blanks, enclose the parameter in double quotation marks. (For example, "c:\my folder\config.csv").
- The server for using command line or PowerShell requires the installation of Microsoft **.NET Framework 2.0 or higher**.
- For Command Line Usage, make sure that **DocAveCLI.exe**, **DocAveCLILibrary.dll** and **Microsoft.Web.Services3.dll** are in the same path. These files can be found in …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin.If you want to use DocAve CLI in other path or server, copy the files to the corresponding folder.
- For PowerShell, Microsoft.Web.Services3.dll needs to be copied to %SystemRoot%\assembly.
- How to load DocAveCLILibrary.dll in PowerShell?
  Execute the commands below
  [reflection.assembly]::loadfrom("c:\ DocAveCLILibrary.dll")
  c:\ DocAveCLILibrary.dll is the path where DocAveCLILibrary.dll is stored. This file can be found in …\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin
- How to create an instance of DocAve CLI in PowerShell?
  Execute the commands below:
  $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.FileMigration("control-host", 12011, "username", "password", "true")
  cli: An instance name, it can be specified as any other name. Like "mycli"
  DocAveCLILibrary.FileMigration: The class used for generating instances of each function, this is introduced in the above section.
  control-host: The name of the server where DocAve Control Service is installed
  12011: The port number of Manager Web Service
  username: The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be "domain\username"
  password: The password to login to DocAve
  enablessl: control the safe communication whether to be enabled, input "true" or "false"
- How to invoke the methods of DocAve CLI instance in PowerShell?
  Execute the commands below:
  $cli.getJobStatus("FM20091225110216")

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

cli: The name of CLI instance
getJobStatus: The method of this CLI instance
FM20091225110216: The parameter(s) for this method

- How to set up CLI timeout value?
  When using CLI, you can add a parameter **-timeout 120** into any command, it means the timeout value is set to 120 sec.
  In PowerShell, you can set the timeout value to 120 sec by executing **$cli.Time-Out=120**. -timeout is an optional parameter. By default, it is 5 min.
- How to input special characters in configuration file?
  For some characters, they are used for marking the structure of XML files. They cannot be directly input in the string value. When you need to use these characters, please find the corresponding string instead.

(10-34) Special Characters Replace

Special Characters	String for replacement
&	&
<	<
>	>
‘	'
“	"

10.10.2 File System Migration CLI

This section provides the detailed information about how to configure the File System migration plan by using the CLI.

10.10.2.1 Creating a Migration plan

Before running a File System migration plan, you can create a plan by CLI or PowerShell.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to create a plan for File System migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** filemigration **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\plan.xml

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run, for the File System Migration, you need to enter **filemigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a migration plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-planfile* : the path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

For PowerShell

To create a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-35) Creating a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use **DocAveCLILibrary.FileMigration** class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the File System migration plan, you can set up the following elements.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-36) Elements for File System Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
mapping-setup	Mapping Setup	It must be an existing mapping profile name, you can use default for a default mapping
filter	Filter	It must be an existing filter profile name, you can use none for not using filter policy
metadata-source	Metadata Source	1 – File System 2 - Custom Metadata File
do-not-create-top-level-folder-on-destination	Do not create top level folder on destination	true/false
generate-only-one-excel-file	Generate only one excel file	true/false
collapse-folder-structure	Collapse folder structure	true/false
email-notification-name	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can use none for not using email notification profile
global-security-for-folder	Global Security For Folder	0 - Default 1 - Restore no securities 2 - Restore all securities
global-security-for-file	Global Security For File	0 - Default 1 - Restore no securities 2 - Restore all securities
source > agent-name	Source Agent	
device		You can specify several device for one plan
device-name		It must be an existing device under the source device
folder		It must be an existing folder under the source device
file		It must be an existing file under the source device

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
path		The path of folder or file, use \ as separator
include-all-folders-under-this		only applicable for <folder> true - includes all sub folders under this folder false - not include all sub folders under this folder
include-all-files-under-this		only applicable for <folder> true - includes all files under this folder false - not include all files under this folder
checked		applicable for <folder> and <file> true - includes the specified folder/file false - excludes the specified folder/file
with-security	Security	
destination > agent-name	Destination Agent	
web-application-url		destination web application URL
site-collection-url		destination site collection URL
site-url-name		destination site relative URL, use / as separator, e.g. site1/site2 use .(dot) for root site
site-title		destination site title
list-name		destination list name
folders		destination folder name, use \ as separator. If no folder to specify, please leave this value blank

***Note:** File System Migration CLI only supports the Standard Migration mode, and the File System Metadata Source.

***Note:** File System Migration CLI does not support schedule plan.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.2.2 Running the Migration Plan

After creating the File System migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for File System migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** filemigration **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on File System.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the File System Migration, you need to **enter filemigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents not **overwrite**.
  1 represents **overwrite**.
  2 represents **append**.
  3 represents **new version**.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job

For PowerShell

To run a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-37) Running a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.FileMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "description",0,1) • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *description* : The description for the migration job. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **overwrite**. **2** represents **append**. **3** represents **new version**.

10.10.2.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the File System migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for File System migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** filemigration **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the File System Migration, you need to **enter filemigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-38) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.FileMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.2.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the File System migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for File System migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** filemigration **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the File System Migration, you need to **enter filemigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-39) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.FileMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.2.5 Getting the Plan

To get the plan for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Please execute the command below to get the plan for File System migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** filemigration **-o** getplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the File System Migration, you need to **enter filemigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **get-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-40) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.FileMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "c:\plan.xml") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

10.10.2.6 Deleting the Plan

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for File System migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** filemigration **-o** deleteplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the File System Migration, you need to **enter filemigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-41) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.FileMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan("agent-name","plan-name") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.3 Exchange Public Folder Migration CLI

This section provides the detailed information about how to configure the Exchange Public Folder Migration plan by using the CLI.

10.10.3.1 Creating a Exchange Public Folder Migration plan

Before running a Exchange Public Folder Migration plan, you can create a plan by CLI or Power-Shell.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to create a plan for Exchange Public Folder Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** epfmigration **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Exchange Public Folder Migration, you need to enter **epfmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a migration plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-planfile* : the path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

For PowerShell

To create a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-42) Creating a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EPFMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the Exchange Public Folder Migration plan, you can set up the following elements.

(10-43) Elements for Exchange Public Folder Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
common-settings	Common Settings	It must be an existing setting name, you can use none for not using common setting profile
mapping-setup	Mapping Setup	It must be an existing mapping profile name, you can use default for a default mapping
filter	Filter	It must be an existing filter name, you can use none for not using filter.
email-notification-name	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can use none for not using email notification profile
exchange-connection-name	Exchange Connection	an existing Exchange Connection name
folder		It must be an existing folder under the Exchange Connection
path		The path of folder or file, use \ as separator

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
checked		true - includes the specified folder false - excludes the specified folder
include-all-folders-under-this		only applicable for <folder> true - includes all sub folders under this folder false - not include all sub folders under this folder
with-security	Security	
destination > agent-name	Destination Agent	
web-application-url		destination web application URL
site-collection-url		destination site collection URL
site-url-name		destination site relative URL, use / as separator, e.g. site1/site2 use . for root site
site-title		destination site title
list-name		destination list name

***Note:** The Exchange Public Folder Migration CLI only support to Folder level, the item level is not supported.

***Note:** The Exchange Public Folder Migration CLI does not support schedule plan.

***Note:** The Import Migration Mapping option is not supported.

10.10.3.2 Running the DocAve Plan

After creating the migration plan, now you can perform the Exchange Public Folder Migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Exchange Public Folder Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** epfmigration **-o** runplan **-**

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

agentname agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Exchange Public Folder.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Exchange Public Folder Migration, you need to enter **epfmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **run-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **overwrite**.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job

For PowerShell

To run a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-44) Running a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EPFMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "description",0,1) • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *description* : The description for the migration job. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **overwrite**.

10.10.3.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Exchange Public Folder Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** epfmigration **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Exchange Public Folder Migration, you need to enter **epfmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-45) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EPFMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.3.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Exchange Public Folder Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** epfmigration **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Exchange Public Folder Migration, you need to enter **epfmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-46) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EPFMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.3.5 Getting the Plan

To get the plan for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the plan for Exchange Public Folder Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** epfmigration **-o** getplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Exchange Public Folder Migration, you need to enter **epfmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **get-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-47) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EPFMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "c:\plan.xml") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

10.10.3.6 Deleting the Plan

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for Exchange Public Folder Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** epfmigration **-o** deleteplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Exchange Public Folder Migration, you need to enter **epfmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-48) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EPFMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan("agent-name","plan-name") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

10.10.4 Livelink Migration CLI

This section provides the detailed information about how to configure the Livelink Migration plan by using the CLI.

10.10.4.1 Creating a Livelink Migration plan

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Before running a Livelink Migration plan, you can create a plan by CLI or PowerShell.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to create a plan for Livelink Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** livelinkmigration **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Livelink Migration, you need to enter **livelinkmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a migration plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-planfile* : the path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

For PowerShell

To create a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-49) Creating a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LivelinkMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the Livelink Migration plan, you can set up the following elements.

Livelink Migration Plan

(10-50) Elements for Livelink Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
common-profile	Common Settings	It must be an existing common settings profile name, you can use default for a default mapping
filter	Filter	It must be an existing filter profile name, you can use none for not using filter policy
email-notification	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can use none for not using email notification profile
workspace-filter	Workspace Filter	0 - Enterprise workspace 1 - My workspace 2 - All accessible workspace
global-security	Global Security	0 - Tree Select 1 - Not Restore Any Security 2 - Restore All Securities
livelink-connection-name	Livelink Connection	an existing Livelink connection name
folder		It must be an existing folder under the connection
file		It must be an existing file under the source device
path		The path of folder or file, use \ as separator, the path begins from the connection name

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
include-all-folders-under-this		only applicable for <folder> true - includes all sub folders under this folder false - not include all sub folders under this folder
include-all-files-under-this		only applicable for <folder> true - includes all files under this folder false - not include all files under this folder
checked		applicable for <folder> and <file> true - includes the specified folder/file false - excludes the specified folder/file
with-security	Security	
content-type	Content Type	
language-mapping-name	Language Mapping	an existing language mapping name
destination > agent-name	Destination Agent	
web-application-url		destination web application URL
site-or-site-collection		1 - migrate project as site 2 - migrate project as site collection
site-collection-url		destination site collection URL
site-url-name		destination site relative URL, use / as separator, e.g. site1/site2 use . for root site
site-title		destination site title
site-or-subsite		0 - migrate project as subsite 1 - migrate project to site
list-name		destination list name

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
folders		destination folder name, use \ as separator. If no folder to specify, please leave for this value blank

***Note:** Livelink Migration CLI only supports the Standard Migration mode.

***Note:** Livelink Migration CLI does not support schedule plan.

10.10.4.2 Running the DocAve Plan

After creating the migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Livelink Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** livelinkmigration **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Livelink
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Livelink Migration, you need to enter **livelinkmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **run-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **overwrite**.
  2 represents **append**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job

For PowerShell

To run a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-51) Running a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LivelinkMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "description",0,1) • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *description* : The description for the migration job. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **overwrite**. **2** represents **append**.

10.10.4.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Livelink Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** livelinkmigration **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Livelink Migration, you need to enter **livelinkmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-52) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LivelinkMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.4.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Livelink Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** livelinkmigration **-o** down-loadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Livelink Migration, you need to enter **livelinkmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-53) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LivelinkMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.4.5 Getting the Plan

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To get the plan for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the plan for Livelink Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** livelinkmigration **-o** getplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Livelink Migration, you need to enter **livelinkmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **get-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-54) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LivelinkMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "c:\plan.xml") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

10.10.4.6 Deleting the Plan

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for Livelink Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** livelinkmigration **-o** deleteplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Livelink Migration, you need to enter **livelinkmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-55) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LivelinkMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan("agent-name","plan-name") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

10.10.5 EMC Documentum Migration CLI

This section provides the detailed information about how to configure the EMC Documentum Migration plan by using the CLI.

10.10.5.1 Creating a EMC Documentum Migration plan

Before running a EMC Documentum Migration plan, you can create a plan by CLI or PowerShell.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to create a plan for EMC Documentum Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** emcdocumentummigration **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the EMC Documentum Migration, you need to enter **emcdocumentummigration**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a migration plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-planfile* : the path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

For PowerShell

To create a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-56) Creating a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EMCDocumentumMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the EMC Documentum Migration plan, you can set up the following elements.

(10-57) Elements for EMC Documentum Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
common-profile-name	Common Profile	Use default for a default mapping
filter-name	Filter	It must be an existing filter policy name, you can enter none for not using filter policy.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
email-notification-name	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification name, you can enter none for not using email notification profile
documentum-connection-name	Documentum Connection	It must be an existing documentum connection profile name.
global-security	Global Security	0 - Tree Select 1 - Not Restore Any Security 2 - Restore all securities
source > agent-name	Source Agent	
folder		It must be an existing folder, the Documentum, Connection, Cabinets, and folder all be considered as a folder by CLI.
type		The folder type is 0 - documentun Connection 1 - cabinets 2 - folder 3 - snapshot 4 - virtual document
file		It must be an existing file.
path		The path of folder or file, use \ as separator
include-all-folders-under-this		only applicable for <folder> true - includes all sub folders under this folder false - not include all sub folders under this folder
include-all-files-under-this		only applicable for <folder> true - includes all files under this folder false - not include all files under this folder

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
checked		applicable for <folder> and <file> true - includes the specified folder/file false - excludes the specified folder/file
with-security	Security	
destination > agent-name	Destination Agent	
web-application-url		destination web application URL
site-collection-url		destination site collection URL
site-url-name		destination site relative URL, use / as separator, e.g. site1/site2 use . for root site
site-title		destination site title
list-name		destination list name
folders		destination folder name, use \ as separator. If no folder to specify, please leave for this value blank

***Note:** EMC Documentum Migration CLI does not support schedule plan.

10.10.5.2 Running the DocAve Plan

After creating the migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for EMC Documentum Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** emcdocumentummigration **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-job-type** 0 **-joboption** 1

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on EMC Documentum Migration
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the EMC Documentum Migration, you need to enter **emcdocumentummigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **overwrite**.
  2 represents **append**.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job

For PowerShell

To run a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-58) Running a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EMCDocumentumMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "description",0,1) • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *description* : The description for the migration job. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **overwrite**. **2** represents **append**.

10.10.5.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for EMC Documentum Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** emcdocumentummigration **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the EMC Documentum Migration, you need to enter **emcdocumentummigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-59) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EMCDocumentumMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.5.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for EMC Documentum Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** emcdocumentummigration **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the EMC Documentum Migration, you need to enter **emcdocumentummigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-60) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EMCDocumentumMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.5.5 Getting the Plan

To get the plan for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the plan for EMC Documentum Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** emcdocumentummigration **-o** getplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the EMC Documentum Migration, you need to enter **emcdocumentummigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **getplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-61) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EMCDocumentumMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "c:\plan.xml") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

10.10.5.6 Deleting the Plan

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for EMC Documentum Migration.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** emcdocumentummigration **-o** deleteplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the EMC Documentum Migration, you need to enter **emcdocumentummigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-62) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.EMCDocumentumMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan("agent-name","plan-name") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

10.10.6 eRoom Migration CLI

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This section provides the detailed information about how to configure the eRoom Migration plan by using the CLI.

10.10.6.1 Creating a eRoom Migration plan

Before running a eRoom Migration plan, you can create a plan by CLI or PowerShell.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to create a plan for eRoom Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** eroommigration **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the eRoom Migration, you need to enter **eroommigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a migration plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-planfile* : the path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

For PowerShell

To create a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-63) Creating a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERoomMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan.

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the eRoom Migration plan, you can set up the following elements.

(10-64) Elements for eRoom Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
mapping-setup	Mapping Setup	It must be an existing mapping profile name, you can use none for not using any mapping profile
common-profile	Common Settings	It must be an existing common profile name, you can use default for a default mapping
filter	Filter	It must be an existing filter policy profile name, you can use none for not using filter policy.
email-notification-name	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can use none for not using email notification profile
source > agent-name	Source Agent	
global-security	Global Security	0 - Tree Select 1 - Not Restore Any Security 2 - Restore All Securities 3 - Only Restore Securities
eroom-folder		One folder in eRoom

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
path		The path of folder or file, use \ as separator, the Community, Facility, Room, Inbox, Database, and Folder are all considered as a folder by CLI.
checked		true - includes the specified folder/file false - excludes the specified folder/file
with-security		true - migrate security false - not migrate security
include-all-folders-under-this		true - includes all sub folders under this false - not include all sub folders under this
include-all-files-under-this		true - includes all files under this false - not include all files under this
eroom-file		The file in eRoom, File, Link, and Note are all considered as file by CLI
destination -> agent-name	Destination Agent	
web-application-url		destination web application URL
site-collection-url		destination site collection URL
site-collection-url -> template		If the specified site collection does not exist, the tool will use this template to create a site collec-tion.
site-url-name		destination site relative URL, use / as separator, e.g. site1/site2 use . for root site
site-url-name -> site-template		If the specified site does not exist, the tool will use this template to create a site.
site-title		destination site title

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
list-name		destination list name
list-name > template		if specified list does not exist, the tool will use this template to create a list.
folders		destination folder name, use \ as separator. If no folder to specify, please leave for this value blank

***Note:** The Migration Mode is Normal, it cannot be configured by CLI.

10.10.6.2 Running the DocAve Plan

After creating the migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for eRoom Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** eroommigration **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1 -**mapping** 0

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on eRoom Migration
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the eRoom Migration, you need to enter **eroommigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **overwrite**.
  2 represents **append**.
  3 represents **overwrite by modified time**.
- *-mapping* : The mapping option for the plan.
  0 represents **standard migration**.
  1 represents **create metadata**.
  2 represents **migrate with metadata file**.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job

For PowerShell

To run a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-65) Running a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERoomMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", 0,1,2, "description") • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *description* : The description for the migration job. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **overwrite**. **2** represents **append**. **3** represents **overwrite by modified time**. • *2* : The mapping option for the plan. **0** represents **standard migration**. **1** represents **create metadata**. **2** represents **migrate with metadata file**.

10.10.6.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for eRoom Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** eroommigration **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the eRoom Migration, you need to enter **eroommigration**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-66) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERoomMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.6.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for eRoom Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** eroommigration **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the eRoom Migration, you need to enter **eroommigration**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-67) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERoomMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.6.5 Getting the Plan

To get the plan for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the plan for eRoom Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** eroommigration **-o** getplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the eRoom Migration, you need to enter **eroommigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **get-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-68) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERoomMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "c:\plan.xml") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

10.10.6.6 Deleting the Plan

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for eRoom Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** eroommigration **-o** deleteplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the eRoom Migration, you need to enter **eroommigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-69) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERoomMigration class to create an instance of the Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan("agent-name","plan-name") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

10.10.7 ERM Migration CLI

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

This section provides the detailed information about how to configure the ERM Migration plan by using the CLI.

10.10.7.1 Running the DocAve Plan

After creating the ERM migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for ERM Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** ermmigration **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on ERM Migration
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the ERM Migration, you need to enter **ermmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **overwrite**.
  2 represents **append**.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job

For PowerShell

To run a migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-70) Running a Migration Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERMMigration class to create an instance of the ERM Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", 0, "description") • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *description* : The description for the migration job. • *0* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **overwrite**. **2** represents **append**.

10.10.7.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the ERM migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for ERM Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** ermmigration **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the ERM Migration, you need to enter **ermmigration**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-71) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERMMigration class to create an instance of the ERM Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.7.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the ERM migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for ERM Migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** ermmigration **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the ERM Migration, you need to enter **ermmigration**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-72) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ERMMigration class to create an instance of the ERM Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.8 SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration CLI

To run a SharePoint Migration CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.8.1 Create a migration Plan

Before running a migration plan, you can create a plan by CLI or PowerShell.

For Command Line

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Please execute the command below to create a plan for SharePoint 2003 to 2010 migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp03to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\pr-plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : The module you want to create plan for. For the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 migration, you must enter **sp03to10migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a backup plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-planfile* : the path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan

For PowerShell

To create a SharePoint 2003 to 2010 migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-73) Creating a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration ("control-host",12011, "username", "password", "true",0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the migration plan, you can set up the following elements.

Agent to Agent Migration

(10-74) Elements for SharePoint agent to agent Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
filter	Filter	It must be an existing filter profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no filter profile to be used
mapping-setup	Mapping Setup	It must be an existing mapping profile name, you can use **Default mapping(en)** for a english default mapping, or **Default mapping(jp)** for Japanese default mapping.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
filter-policy	Filter Policy	It must be an existing filter policy profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no filter policy profile to be used
exclude-empty-lists-or-libraries	Exclude empty lists or libraries	true/false
email-notification	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no email notification profile to be used.
source > agent-name	Source Agent	
node		
name		the node name or the agent name
checked		1 - select all content 2- select the node without the content under it leave blank - not select this node, this parameter is the default value
security	Security	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
property	Property	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
language-mapping	Language Mapping	It must be an existing language mapping profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no language mapping profile to be used.
destination > agent	Destination Agent	
language	Language	the language, for example, English
content-database	Content Database	It will configure a new destination node, you can use **default** to use the default database.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
site-collection-admin-istrator	Site Collection Adminis-tration	This node is used to configure a new destination node, you can use **default** for default.

***Note:** SharePoint Migration CLI does not support schedule plan.

***Note:** Some nodes cannot be configured the security and property, if you configure these nodes, it will be skipped.
In the following table, N represents the value cannot be configured, Y represents the value can be configured

(10-75) Node Type

Node Type	Security	Property
site collection	N	Y
folder	N	N

Export To Staging

(10-76) Elements for SharePoint Export to Staging Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
logical-device	Logical Device	
filter	Filter	It must be an existing filter profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no filter policy to be used
filter-policy	Filter Policy	It must be an existing filter policy profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no filter policy profile to be used
exclude-empty-lists-or-libraries	Exclude empty lists or libraries	true/false

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
data-configuration	Data Configuration	0 : Compression=unchecked Encryption=unchecked 4 : Compression=checked Encryption=unchecked 8 : Compression=unchecked Encryption=checked 12 : Compression=checked Encryption=checked
email-notification	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no email notification profile to be used.
source > agent-name	Source Agent	
node		
name		the node name or the agent name
checked		1 - select all content 2- select the node without the content under it leave blank - not select this node, this parameter is the default value
security	Security	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
property	Property	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
run-settings		
backup-type	Backup Type	0 - Full 1 - Incremental

***Note:** The default schedule setting is Now.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** Some nodes cannot be configured the security and property, if you configure these nodes, it will be skipped.
In the following table, N represents the value cannot be configured, Y represents the value can be configured

(10-77) Node Type

Node Type	Security	Property
site collection	N	Y
folder	N	N

Import from Staging

(10-78) Elements for SharePoint Import from Staging Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
logical-device	Logical Device	
mapping-setup	Mapping Setup	It must be an existing mapping profile name, you can use **Default mapping(en)** for an English default mapping, or **Default mapping(jp)** for a Japanese default mapping.
filter-policy	Filter Policy	It must be an existing filter policy profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no filter policy profile to be used
include-job-with-partial-export-data	Include Job(s) with partial export data	true/false
backup-job-id	Select a job	
source > agent	Source Agent	
node		
file		
name		the node name or the agent name

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
checked		1 - select all content 2- select the node without the content under it leave blank - not select this node, this parameter is the default value
security	Security	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
property	Property	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
language-mapping	Language Mapping	It must be an existing language mapping profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no language mapping profile to be used.
destination > agent	Destination Agent	
language	Language	the language, for example, English
content-database	Content Database	It will configure a new destination node, you can use **default** to use the default database.
site-collection-administrator	Site Collection Administration	This node is used to configure a new destination node, you can use **default** for default.
migration-option	Migration Option	0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Append 2 - Overwrite
send-item-level-report	include detailed job report for all items in this plan	true/false
description	Description	

***Note:** The default schedule setting is Now.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** Some nodes cannot be configured the security and property, if you configure these nodes, it will be skipped.
In the following table, N represents the value cannot be configured, Y represents the value can be configured

(10-79) Node Type

Node Type	Security	Property
site collection	N	Y
folder	N	N

10.10.8.2 Running the Migration Plan

After creating the SharePoint migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for SharePoint migration.

Run agent to agent migration plan

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp03to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1 **-senditemlevelreport** true

Run export to staging migration plan

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp03to10migration **-mode** 1 **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobtype** 0

Run import form staging migration plan

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp03to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1 **-senditemlevelreport** true

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Share-Point 2003 to 2010 migration

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp03to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **run-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **append**.
  2 represents **overwrite**.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job
- *-senditemlevelreport* : If set the value as true, it will send the item level job report.

For PowerShell

To run a SharePoint 2003 to 2010 migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-80) Creating a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan(“agent-name”,”plan-name”,0,1, “true”, “description”). • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **append**. **2** represents **overwrite**. • *true* : whether send the item level report. • *description* : The description for the migration job.

10.10.8.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the SharePoint migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for SharePoint migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp03to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp03to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-81) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.8.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the SharePoint migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for SharePoint migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp03to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp03to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-82) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration ("control-host",12011, "username", "password", "true",0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.8.5 Getting the Plan

To get the plan for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the plan for SharePoint migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp03to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** getplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp03to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **get-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-83) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "c:\plan.xml") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

10.10.8.6 Deleting the Plan

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for SharePoint migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp03to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** deleteplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp03to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-84) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP03To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan(“agent-name”,”plan-name”) • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

10.10.9 SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration CLI

To run a SharePoint Migration CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.9.1 Create a migration Plan

Before running a migration plan, you can create a plan by CLI or PowerShell.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to create a plan for SharePoint 2007 to 2010 migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp07to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\pr-plan.xml

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : The module you want to create plan for. For the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 migration, you must enter **sp07to10migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a backup plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-planfile* : the path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan

For PowerShell

To create a SharePoint 2007 to 2010 migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-85) Creating a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the migration plan, you can set up the following elements.

Agent to Agent Migration

(10-86) Elements for SharePoint agent to agent Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
filter	Filter	It must be an existing filter name; you can leave blank if there is no filter to be used.
mapping-setup	Mapping Setup	It must be an existing mapping profile name, you can use **Default mapping(en)** for an English default mapping, or **Default mapping(jp)** for a Japanese default mapping.
docave-archived-data	DocAve Archived Data	0 - Do not migrate 1- Migrate links to content only 2- Migrate the original content
from-archiver	From Archiver	true/false This element should be configured only when the value of archived-data is 2
from-extender	From Extender	true/false This element should be configured only when the value of archived-data is 2

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
from-connector	From Connector	true/false This element should be configured only when the value of archived-data is 2
exclude-empty-lists-or-libraries	Exclude empty lists or libraries	true/false
workflow	Workflow	0 - Do not migrate 1- Migrate definition 2- Migrate definition and state
email-notification	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no email notification profile to be used.
source > agent-name	Source Agent	
node		
name		the node name or the agent name
checked		1 - select all content 2- select the node without the content under it leave blank - not select this node, this parameter is the default value
security	Security	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
property	Property	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
language-mapping	Language Mapping	It must be an existing language mapping profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no language mapping profile to be used.
destination > agent	Destination Agent	
language	Language	the language, for example, English

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:** SharePoint Migration CLI does not support schedule plan.

Export To Staging

(10-87) Elements for SharePoint Export to Staging Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
logical-device	Logical Device	
filter	Filter	It must be an existing filter profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no filter profile to be used
docave-archived-data	DocAve Archived Data	0 - Do not migrate 1- Migrate links to content only 2- Migrate the original content
from-archiver	From Archiver	true/false This element should be configured only when the value of archived-data is 2
from-extender	From Extender	true/false This element should be configured only when the value of archived-data is 2
from-connector	From Connector	true/false This element should be configured only when the value of archived-data is 2
exclude-empty-lists-or-libraries	Exclude empty lists or libraries	true/false

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
data-configuration	Data Configuration	0 : Compression=unchecked Encryption=unchecked 4 : Compression=checked Encryption=unchecked 8 : Compression=unchecked Encryption=checked 12 : Compression=checked Encryption=checked
email-notification	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no email notification profile to be used.
source > agent-name	Source Agent	
node		
name		the node name or the agent name
checked		1 - select all content 2- select the node without the content under it leave blank - not select this node, this parameter is the default value
security	Security	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
property	Property	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
run-settings		
backup-type	Backup Type	0 - Full 1 - Incremental

Import from Staging

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-88) Elements for SharePoint Import from Staging Migration Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
logical-device	Logical Device	
mapping-setup	Mapping Setup	It must be an existing mapping profile name, you can use **Default mapping(en)** for an English default mapping, or **Default mapping(jp)** for a Japanese default mapping.
filter-policy	Filter Policy	It must be an existing filter policy profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no filter policy profile to be used
workflow	Workflow	0 - Do not migrate 1- Migrate definition 2- Migrate definition and state
email-notification	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no email notification profile to be used.
include-job-with-partial-export-data	Include Job(s) with partial export data	true/false
backup-job-id	Select a job	
source > agent	Source Agent	
node		
file		
name		the node name or the agent name
checked		1 - select all content 2- select the node without the content under it leave blank - not select this node, this parameter is the default value

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
security	Security	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
property	Property	1 - true leave blank - false, this parameter is the default value
language-mapping	Language Mapping	It must be an existing language mapping profile name, you can leave it blank if there is no language mapping profile to be used.
destination > agent	Destination Agent	
language	Language	the language, for example, English
content-database	Content Database	It will configure a new destination node, you can use **default** to use the default database.
site-collection-administrator	Site Collection Administration	This node is used to configure a new destination node, you can use **default** for default.
migration-option	Migration Option	0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Append 2 - Overwrite
send-item-level-report	include detailed job report for all items in this plan	true/false
description	Description	

10.10.9.2 Running the Migration Plan

After creating the SharePoint migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for SharePoint migration.

Run agent to agent migration plan

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp07to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1 **-senditemlevelreport** true

Run export to staging migration plan

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe -docavemanager control-host -port 12011 -user user1 -password u1pwd -enablessl false -docavemodule sp07to10migration -mode 1 -o runplan -agentname agent-name -planname plan-name -jobtype 0

Run import form staging migration plan

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe -docavemanager control-host -port 12011 -user user1 -password u1pwd -enablessl false -docavemodule sp07to10migration -mode 0 -o runplan -agentname agent-name -planname plan-name -jobdescription description -jobtype 0 -joboption 1 -senditemlevelreport true

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Share-Point 2007 to 2010 migration
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp07to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **run-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **append**.
  2 represents **overwrite**.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job
- *-senditemlevelreport* : If set the value as true, it will send the item level job report.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-waitforjobcomplete* : Whether or not to wait for the completion of the job. True represents the jobs will be run one by one, while False represents the jobs will be run simultaneously. If it is not specified, the default value is false.

For PowerShell

To run a SharePoint 2007 to 2010 migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-89) Creating a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name","plan-name",0,1, "true", "description", "false"). • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **append**. **2** represents **overwrite**. • *true* : whether send the item level report. • *description* : The description for the migration job. • *false* : Whether or not to wait for the completion of the job. **True** represents the jobs will be run one by one. **False** represents the jobs will be run simultaneously.

10.10.9.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the SharePoint migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for SharePoint migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp07to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp07to10migration**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-90) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus(“XX20100322154700”) • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.9.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the SharePoint migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Please execute the command below to get the job report for SharePoint migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp07to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp07to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-91) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport(“XX20100322154700”, “csv”, “c:\report.zip”) • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.9.5 Getting the Plan

To get the plan for the migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the plan for SharePoint migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp07to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** getplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp07to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **get-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-92) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration (“control-host”,12011, “username”, “password”, “true”,0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan(“agent-name”, “plan-name”, “c:\plan.xml”) • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.9.6 Deleting the Plan

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for SharePoint migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** sp07to10migration **-mode** 0 **-o** deleteplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the SharePoint Migration, you need to **sp07to10migration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-93) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration class to create an instance of the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration CLI. The command to run is $cli=new-object DocAveCLILibrary.SP07To10Migration ("control-host",12011, "username", "password", "true",0). The last paramater represents the mode of the SharePoint Migration. • *0* : Agent to Agent migration • *1* : Export to staging • *2* : Import from staging
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan("agent-name","plan-name") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

10.10.10 Lotus Notes Migration CLI

To run a Lotus Notes Migration CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.10.1 Running the Migration Plan

After creating the Lotus Notes migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Lotus Notes migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** lotusnotesmigration **-mode** 0 **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Lotus Notes
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Lotus Notes Migration, you need to **lotusnotesmigration**.
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan.
  0 represents the **standard Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **run-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **overwrite**.
  2 represents **append** (for standard and import from staging mode).
  3 represents **new version** (for standard and import from staging mode).
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job

For PowerShell

To run a Lotus Notes migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-94) Creating a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LotusNotesMigration class to create an instance of the Lotus Notes Migration CLI.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan(0, "agent-name","plan-name",0,1, "description"). • *0* : The mode of this migration plan. **0** represents the **Standard Migration**. **1** represents the **Export to Staging Migration**. **2** represents the **Import from Staging Migration**. • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **overwrite**. **2** represents **append**(for standard and import from staging mode) **3** represents **new version**(for standard and import from staging mode) • *description* : The description for the migration job.

10.10.10.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the Lotus Notes migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Lotus Notes migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** lotusnotesmigration **-o** get-jobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Lotus Notes Migration, you need to **lotusnotesmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-95) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LotusNotesMigration class to create an instance of the Lotus Notes Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.10.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for theLotus Notes migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Lotus Notes migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** lotusnotesmigration **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Lotus Notes Migration, you need to **lotusnotesmigration**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-96) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LotusNotesMigration class to create an instance of the Lotus Notes Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.11 Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration CLI

To run a Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.11.1 Running the Migration Plan

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

After creating the Lotus Notes Quick Place migration plan, now you can perform the migration plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Lotus Notes Quick Place migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** lotusnotesquickplace **-o** run-plan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-jobdescription** description **-jobtype** 0 **-joboption** 1

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration, you need to **lotusnotesquickplace**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a migration plan, you must enter **run-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan.
- *-planname* : The migration plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The migration type for the plan.
  0 represents **full** migration job.
  1 represents **incremental** migration job.
- *-joboption* : The migration option for the plan.
  0 represents **not overwrite**.
  1 represents **overwrite.**
  2 represents **append**.
  3 represents **new version**.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the migration job

For PowerShell

To run a Lotus Notes Quick Place migration plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-97) Creating a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LotusNotesQuickPlace class to create an instance of the Lotus Notes Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name","plan-name",0,1, "description"). • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *0* : The migration type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. • *1* : The migration option for the plan. **0** represents **not overwrite**. **1** represents **overwrite**. **2** represents **append** **3** represents **new version** • *description* : The description for the migration job.

10.10.11.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the Lotus Notes Quick Place migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Lotus Notes Quick Place migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** lotusnotesquickplace **-o** get-jobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration, you need to **lotusnotesquickplace**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a migration plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-98) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LotusNotesQuickPlace class to create an instance of the Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.11.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the Lotus Notes Quick Place migration job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Lotus Notes Quick Place migration.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** lotusnotesquickplace **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration, you need to **lotusnotesquickplace**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the migration job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-99) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.LotusNotesQuickPlace class to create an instance of the Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.12 Platform Backup CLI

To run a Platform Backup CLI, please see the sections below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.12.1 Creating a Backup plan

Before running a backup plan, you can create a plan by CLI or PowerShell.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to create a plan for Platform Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** platformbackup **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\pr-plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : The module you want to create plan for. For the Platform Backup, you must enter **platformbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a backup plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-planfile* : the path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan

For PowerShell

To create a backup plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-100) Creating a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.PlatformBackup class to create an instance of the Platform Backup CLI.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the backup plan, you can set up the following elements.

(10-101) Elements for Platform Backup Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
backup-method	Backup Method	2 - VSS 3 - VDI
Data-pruning-name	Data Pruning	An existing data pruning policy profile name. You can enter none for not using data pruning policy
logical-device	Logical Device	It must be an existing logical device

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
data-configuration	Compression and Encryption	0 - No Compression No Encryption 1 - Compression: SharePoint Agent No Encryption 2 - Compression: Media Service No Encryption 3 - No Compression Encryption: SharePoint Agent 4 - No Compression Encryption: Media Service 5 - Compression: SharePoint Agent Encryption: SharePoint Agent 6 - Compression: SharePoint Agent Encryption: Media Service 7 - Compression: Media Service Encryption: Media Service
security-policy-name	Security Policy	It must be an existing Security Policy name, you can enter none for not using security policy profile. Encryption must be enabled before setting a Security Policy.
email-notification-name	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can enter none for not using email notification.
advanced		0 - not select Perform copy-only full backups and not select Perform log backup after full backup 1 - only select Perform copy-only full backups 2 - only select Perform log backup after full backup
agent-name	Agent Host	
farm-data		

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
web-front-end-data		
path		The path of farm or WFE, use \ as separator
include-all-under-this		only applicable for data true - includes all contents under this folder false - not include data
discovery		Wether including the new content when load data

***Note:** Platform Backup CLI does not support schedule plan.

10.10.12.2 Running the Backup Plan

After creating the backup plan, now you can perform the backup plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Platform Backup module.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** platformbackup **-o** runplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-restorelevel** 1001 **-jobtype** 1 **-waitfor-jobcomplete** true

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Platform Backup
- *-docavemodule* : The module you want to run plan. For the Platform Backup, you must enter **platformbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a backup plan, you must enter **run-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the backup plan.
- *-planname* : The backup plan name which you want to perform.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-restorelevel* : The restore Granularity level of the job.
  1001 represents No Index
  1002 represents Site Collection
  1003 represents Site
  1004 represents Folder
  1005 represents Item
  1006 represents Item Version
- *-jobtype* : The job type for the plan.
  0 represents **Full** backup job.
  1 represents **Incremental** backup job.
  2 represents **Differential** backup job.
- *-waitforjobcomplete* : Confirm whether to show the process of the job. By default, its value is false.
  true represents show the process of the job.
  false represents not show the process of the job.

For PowerShell

To run a backup plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-102) Running a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.PlatformBackup class to create an instance of the Platform Backup CLI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", 1005,1,"true") • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the migration plan. • *plan-name* : The backup plan name. • *1005* : The restore Granularity level of the job. **1001** represents No Index **1002** represents Site Collection **1003** represents Site **1004** represents Folder **1005** represents Item **1006** represents Item Version • *0* : The backup type for the plan. **0** represents **full** migration job. **1** represents **incremental** migration job. **2** represents **Differential** backup job • *true* : Confirm whether to show the process of the job. By default, its value is false. **true** represents show the process of the job. **false** represents not show the process of the job.

10.10.12.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the backup job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Platform Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** platformbackup **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : For the Platform Backup, you must enter **platformbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a backup plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-103) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary. PlatformBackup class to create an instance of the Platform Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.12.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the backup job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Platform Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** platformbackup **-o** down-loadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : For the Platform Backup, you must enter **platformbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the backup job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-104) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.PlatformBackup class to create an instance of the Platform Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.12.5 Getting the Plan

To get the plan for the backup job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the plan for Platform Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** platformbackup **-o** getplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : For the Platform Backup, you must enter **platformbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **get-plan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-105) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.PlatformBackup class to create an instance of the Platform Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan("agent-name", "plan-name", "c:\plan.xml") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

10.10.12.6 Deleting the Plan

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for Platform Backup.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** platformbackup **-o** deleteplan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : For the Platform Backup, you must enter **platformbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the agent which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-106) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.PlatformBackup class to create an instance of the Platform Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan("agent-name","plan-name") • *agent-name* : The name of the agent which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

10.10.13 Granular Backup CLI

To run a Granular Backup CLI, please see the sections below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.13.1 Running the Granular Backup Plan

After creating the Granular Backup plan, now you can perform the Granular Backup plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Granular Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** granularbackup **-o** runplan **-farmname** "Farm(foo:bar)" **-planname** "plan1" **-jobtype** 0 **-includedetailedjobreport** false **-waitforjobcomplete** true

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Granular Backup
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Granular Backup, you need to **granularbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a Granular Backup plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-farmname* : The name of the source farm in the Granular Backup plan.
- *-planname* : The Granular Backup plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobtype* : The backup type.
  0 represents **Full**
  1 represents **Incremental**
  2 represents **Differential**
- *-includedetailedjobreport* : whether generate a detailed job report
- *-waitforjobcomplete* : Confirm whether to show the process of the job. By default, its value is false.
  true represents show the process of the job.
  false represents not show the process of the job.

For PowerShell

To run a Granular Backup plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-107) Creating a Granular Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.GranularBackup class to create an instance of the Granular Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("farm-name","plan-name", 0, "false","true"). • *farm-name* : The name of the source farm in the Archiver Backup plan. • *plan-name* : The Archiver Backup plan name. • *0* : The backup type. **0** represents **Full** **1** represents **Incremental** **2** represents **Differential** • *"false"* : whether generate a detailed job report • *"true"* : Confirm whether to show the process of the job. By default, its value is false. **true** represents show the process of the job. **false** represents not show the process of the job.

10.10.13.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the Granular Backup job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Granular Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** granularbackup **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Granular Backup, you need to archiverbackup.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a Granular Backup plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-108) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.GranularBackup class to create an instance of the Granular Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.13.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the Granular Backup job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Granular Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** granularbackup **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-jobreportformat** csv **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Granular Backup, you need to **granularbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-jobreportformat* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the Granular Backup job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-109) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.GranularBackup class to create an instance of the Granular Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "csv", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *csv* : The format for the report you want to save as. There are three formats you can select: csv, xls and txt. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.14 Replicator CLI

To run a Replicator CLI, please see the sections below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.14.1 Creating a Replicator plan

Before running a replicator plan, you can create a plan by CLI or PowerShell.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to create a plan for Replicator.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** replicator **-o** createplan **-planfile** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified as domain\username.
- *-docavemodule* : For the Replicator module, you must enter **replicator**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To create a replicator plan, you must enter **createplan.**
- *-planfile* : The path where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan

For PowerShell

To create a replicator plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-110) Creating a Replicator Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.Replicator class to create an instance of the Replicator CLI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **createPlan** method, $cli.createPlan("c:\plan.xml"). ***Note:** The path "c:\plan.xml" represents the location where save the configuration information for the plan. For more information about setting up the template please refer to Getting the Template for Creating Plan

Setting up the Elements in the XML file

In the XML file for the replicator plan, you can set up the following elements.

(10-111) Elements for Replicator Plan

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
plan-name	Plan Name	
replication-options	Replication Options	It must be an existing replication profile, you can use the Default Option.
conflict-options	Conflict Options	It must be an existing conflict profile, you can use the Default Option.
filter-option	Filter Options	It must be an existing filter profile. You can enter none for not using no filter policy.
user-mapping	User Mapping	It must be an existing user mapping profile. You can enter none for not using user mapping.
language-mapping	Language Mapping	It must be an existing language mapping profile, you can enter none for not using language mapping. You can enter the turn off to disable this setting.
enable-byte-level	Enable byte-level	true/false

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
data-configuration	Data Configuration	200 - No Compression No Encryption 201 - Compression No Encryption 202 - No Compression Encryption 203 - Compression Encryption
backup-before-replication	Backup Before Replication	true/false
logical-device	Logical Device	It must be an existing logical device. Please note this element is enabled when the value of <backup-before-replication> is true.
email-notification-name	Email Notification	It must be an existing email notification profile name, you can enter none for not using email notification.
network-control-profile	Network Control Profile	It must be an existing network control profile name, you can enter none for not using network control.
concurrent-thread	Concurrent Thread	1---4
source-farm	Farm(source)	The farm name
source-agent-group	Agent Group(source)	The agent group name
Mapping Settings		
use-plan-setting	Use Default Replication Options	true/false Please note is you set the value of this element is true, the following settings for the mappings will be ignored.
enable		true/false
auto-include-new-object(source)		true/false Replicate te new objects to the destination when performing a replucator job.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
object(source/detail/destination)		
web-app		Web Application URL
site-collection		Site Collection URL, if there is no site collection, please leave it blank.
site		Site name, use / as separator, e.g. site1/site2 use . for root site
list		List name, if there is no list, please leave it blank.
folder		Folder name, use / as separator, e.g. folder1/folder2
document-library-list		true/false: true - The list is a document. false - The list is not a document Please note, if the value for <list> is blank, this element will be skipped.
include-all-subsites		true/false: true - Include all subsites under this site. false - just include this site itself. Please note, if the object you set up is not a site, this element will be skipped.
object(detail)		Only the next level of the mapping level can be configured for this element. For example, if the mapping level is Web Application to Web Application, only the site-collection can be configured for it.
dest-farm	Farm (destination)	
dest-agent-group	Agent Group (destination)	
object (destination)		
Replicator settings		

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

XML Element	DocAve GUI Item	Comment
mapping-type	Mapping Type	One Way - One Way Two Way - Two Way If set the value as one way, the <source-language> will be skipped.
source-language	Source Language	
destination-language	Destination Language	
enable-real-time	Enable Real Time Replication	true/false
list-of-events-to-replicate	List of events to replicate	0 : Select All; 1 : New Folders/Items; 2 : Folder/Item Update; 3 : Folder/Item Deletion; 4 : Folder/Item Move; 5 : Check In; 6 : Check Out; 7 : Discard Check Out; 8 : List Column Changes; 9 : List Added (for 2010) 10 : List Deleted (for 2010) If there is more than one event, use , as separator. e.g. 1,5,8. Please note this element is enabled when the value of <enable-real-time> is true.

***Note:**

1. Replicator CLI does not support schedule plan.
2. If you set the value of the <language-mapping> as Turn Off or the mapping level is list or lower, the <source-language> and <destination-language> will be skipped.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.14.2 Running the Replicator Plan

After creating the replicator plan, now you can perform the replicator plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Replicator module.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** replicator **-o** runplan **-farmname** farm-name **-planname** plan-name **-replicationtype** 0 **-advanced** 24h **-modifications** false **-deletions** false **-jobdescription** description

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Replicator.
- *-docavemodule* : The module you want to run plan. For the Replicator, you must enter **replicator**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a replicator plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-farmname* : The name of the source farm in the replicator plan.
- *-planname* : The replicator plan name which you want to perform.
- *-replicationtype* : The job type for the plan.
  0 represents **Full** backup job.
  1 represents **Incremental** backup job.
- *-advanced* : Use a special reference time, there are three units for this parameter: m for minute(s), h for hour(s), and d for day(s). You can leave this value blank if you do not want to specify this time.
- *-modifications* : specify whether replicate the modifications.
  true represents replicating the modifications.
  false represents not replicating the modifications.
- *-deletions* : specify whether replicate the deletions
  true represents replicating the deletions.
  false represents not replicating the deletions.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the replication job.

For PowerShell

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To run a replication plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-112) Running a Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.Replicator class to create an instance of the Replicator CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("farm-name","plan-name",0,"24h","false","true", "description") • *farm-name* : The name of the source farm in the replication plan. • *plan-name* : The replication plan name. • *0* : The job type for the plan. **0** represents **Full** backup job. **1** represents **Incremental** backup job. • *-advanced* : Use a special reference time, there are three units for this parameter: m for minute(s), h for hour(s), and d for day(s). You can leave this value blank if you do not want to specify this time. For example, $cli.runPlan("farm-name", "plan-name",1, "24m",true,true, "description") or $cli.runPlan("farm-name", "plan-name",0, "","false,false, "") • *false* : specify whether replicate the modifications. **true** represents replicating the modifications. **false** represents not replicating the modifications. • *true* : specify whether replicate the deletions **true** represents replicating the deletions. **false** represents not replicating the deletions. • *description* : The description for the replication job.

***Note:**

1. For the **Full** replication job, there is no need to set up the advanced, modifications, deletions, description parameters.
2. You cannot set the start time for the replication job. By default the start time is now.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.14.3 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the replication job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Replicator.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** replicator **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : For the Replicator, you must enter **replicator**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a replication plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-113) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary. Replicator class to create an instance of the Replicator CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

10.10.14.4 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the replication job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Replicator.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** replicator **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : For the Replicator, you must enter **replicator**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **down-loadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the replication job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-114) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.Replicator class to create an instance of the Replicator CLI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.14.5 Getting the Plan

To get the plan for the replication job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the plan for Replicator.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** replicator **-o** getplan **-farm-name** farm-name **-planname** plan-name **-saveto** c:\plan.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : For the Replicator, you must enter **replicator**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **get-plan.**
- *-farmname* : The name of the farm which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to get.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the plan.

For PowerShell

To get the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-115) Getting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.Replicator class to create an instance of the Replicator CLI.
3	Invoke **getPlan** method, $cli.getPlan("farm-name", "plan-name", "c:\plan.xml") • *farm-name* : The name of the farm which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to get. • *c:\plan.xml* : The location where you want to save the plan.

10.10.14.6 Deleting the Plan

To delete the plan, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to delete the plan for Replicator.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** replicator **-o** deleteplan **-farmname** farm-name **-planname** plan-name

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : For the Replicator, you must enter **replicator**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **deleteplan.**
- *-farmname* : The name of the farm which holds the plan.
- *-planname* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

For PowerShell

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To delete the plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-116) Deleting the Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.Replicator class to create an instance of the Replicator CLI.
3	Invoke **deletePlan** method, $cli.deletePlan("farm-name","plan-name") • *farm-name* : The name of the farm which holds the plan. • *plan-name* : The name of the plan which you want to delete.

10.10.15 Front-End Deployment CLI

To run a Front-End Deployment CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.15.1 Running the Front-End Deployment Plan

After creating the Front-End Deployment plan, now you can perform the Front-End Deployment plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Front-End Deployment.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** frontenddeployment **-o** run-plan **-agentname** agent-name **-planname** plan-name **-version** 1.0 **-jobdescription** description

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Front-End Deployment

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Front-End Deployment, you need to **frontenddeployment**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a Front-End Deployment plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the Front-End Deployment plan.
- *-planname* : The Front-End Deployment plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the Front-End Deployment job

For PowerShell

To run a Front-End Deployment plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-117) Creating a Front-End Deployment Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.FrontEndDeployment class to create an instance of the Front-End Deployment CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-name","plan-name", "1.0", "description"). • *agent-name* : The name of the source agent in the Front-End Deployment plan. • *plan-name* : The migration plan name. • *1.0* : The version for the element you want to deploy to the destination. • *description* : The description for the Front-End Deployment job.

10.10.15.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the Front-End Deployment job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Front-End Deployment.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** frontenddeployment **-o** get-jobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Front-End Deployment, you need to **frontenddeployment**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a Front-End Deployment plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-118) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.FrontEndDeployment class to create an instance of the Front-End Deployment CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.15.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the Front-End Deployment job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Front-End Deployment.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** frontenddeployment **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module which you want to run. For the Front-End Deployment, you need to **frontenddeployment**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the Front-End Deployment job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-119) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.FrontEndDeployment class to create an instance of the Front-End Deployment CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.16 Archiver Backup CLI

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To run a Archiver Backup CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.16.1 Running the Archiver Backup Plan

After creating the Archiver Backup plan, now you can perform the Archiver Backup plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Archiver Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** archiverbackup **-o** runplan **-farmname** "Farm(foo:bar)" **-planname** "plan1"

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Archiver Backup
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Archiver Backup, you need to **archiverbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a Archiver Backup plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-farmname* : The name of the source farm in the Archiver Backup plan.
- *-planname* : The Archiver Backup plan name which you want to perform.

For PowerShell

To run a Archiver Backup plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-120) Creating a Archiver Backup Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ArchiverBackup class to create an instance of the Archiver Backup CLI.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("farm-name","plan-name"). • *farm-name* : The name of the source farm in the Archiver Backup plan. • *plan-name* : The Archiver Backup plan name.

10.10.16.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the Archiver Backup job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Archiver Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** archiverbackup **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Archiver Backup, you need to archiverbackup.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a Archiver Backup plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-121) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ArchiverBackup class to create an instance of the Archiver Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.16.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the Archiver Backup job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Archiver Backup.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** archiverbackup **-o** download-report **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Archiver Backup, you need to **archiverbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **down-loadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the Archiver Backup job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-122) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ArchiverBackup class to create an instance of the Archiver Backup CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.17 Content Manager CLI

To run a Content Manager CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.17.1 Running the Content Manager Plan

After creating the Content Manager plan, now you can perform the Content Manager plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Content Manager.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** contentmanager **-o** runplan **-mode** 1 **-agentname** "agent-host" **-planname** "plan1" **-jobdescription** "desc" **-restoreoption** 0 **-keepid** 0 **-action** 0 **-deletetype** 1

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Archiver Backup

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Archiver Backup, you need to **archiverbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a Archiver Backup plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-mode* : The mode you want to use to run the content manager plan.
  0 represents **Advanced**
  1 represents **Native**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source farm in the content manager plan.
- *-planname* : The content manager plan name which you want to perform.
- *-jobdescription* : The description for the Content Manager job
- *-restoreoption* : The restore option you want to use for this plan,
  0 represents **Not Overwrite**
  1 represents **Append**
  2 represents **Overwrite**
  3 represents **Replace**
- *-keepid* : This node can work when the node is Native.
  0 represents **false**
  1 represents **true**
- *-action* : There are two option you can select
  0 represents **Copy**
  1 represents **Move**
- *deletetype* : This node can work when the value of the -action is Move.
  1 represents **Manually delete source documents/items**
  2 represents **Automatically delete source documents/items**

For PowerShell

To run a Content Manager plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-123) Creating a Content Manager Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ContentManager class to create an instance of the Content Manager CLI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan(1,"agent-host","plan-name","desc",0,0,0,1). • *1* : The mode you want to use to run the content manager plan. **0** represents **Advanced** **1** represents **Native** • *"agent-host"* : The name of the source farm in the content manager plan. • *"plan-name"* : The content manager plan name. • *"desc"* : The description for the Content Manager job • *0* : The restore option you want to use for this plan, **0** represents **Not Overwrite** **1** represents **Append** **2** represents **Overwrite** **3** represents **Replace** • *0* : This node can work when the node is Native. **0** represents **false** **1** represents **true** • *0* : There are two option you can select **0** represents **Copy** **1** represents **Move** • *1* : This node can work when the value of the -action is Move. **1** represents **Manually delete source documents/ items** **2** represents **Automatically delete source documents/ items**

10.10.17.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the Content Manager job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Content Manager.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** contentmanager **-o** getjob-status **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Content Manager, you need to **contentmanager**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a Content Manager plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-124) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ContentManager class to create an instance of the Content Manager CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.17.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the Content Manager job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Content Manager.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** contentmanager **-o** downloadreport **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Content Manager, you need to **contentmanager**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the Content Manager job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-125) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.ContentManager class to create an instance of the Content Manager CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.18 Design Manager CLI

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

To run a Design Manager CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.18.1 Running the Design Manager Plan

After creating the Design Manager plan, now you can perform the Design Manager plan.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Design Manager.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** designmanager **-o** runplan **-agentname** "agent-host" **-planname** "plan1" **-mode** 1 **-level** 0 **-version** 2.3 **-versiondesc** "my description"

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Design Backup
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Design Backup, you need to **archiverbackup**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a Design Backup plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-agentname* : The name of the source agent in the Design manager plan.
- *-planname* : The Design manager plan name which you want to perform.
- *-mode* : The mode you want to use to run the Design manager plan.
  0 represents **Agent to Agent**
  1 represents **Export**
  2 represents **Import**
- *-level* : This node can be used only when the mode is Agent to Agent
  0 represents **full**
  1 represents **incremental**
- *-version* : This node can only be used when the mode is Export.
- *-versiondesc* : The description for the version

For PowerShell

To run a Design Manager plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-126) Creating a Design Manager Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.DesignManager class to create an instance of the Design Manager CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan("agent-host","plan-name",1,0,"2.3","my description"). • *"agent-host"* : The name of the source farm in the Archiver Backup plan. • *"plan-name"* : The Archiver Backup plan name. • *1* : The mode you want to use to run the design manager plan. **0** represents **Agent to Agent** **1** represents **Export** **2** represents **Import** • *0* : This node can be used only when the mode is Agent to Agent **0** represents **full** **1** represents **incremental** • *"2.3"* : This node can only be used when the mode is Export. • *"my description"* : The description for the version

10.10.18.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the Design Manager job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Design Manager.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** designmanager **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Design Manager, you need to designmanager.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a Design Manager plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-127) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.DesignManager class to create an instance of the Design Manager CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.18.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the Design Manager job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Design Manager.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** designmanager **-o** download-report **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Design Manager, you need to **designmanager**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the Design Manager job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-128) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.DesignManager class to create an instance of the Design Manager CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.19 Solution Center CLI

To run a Solution Center CLI, please see the sections below.

10.10.19.1 Running the Solution Center Plan

After creating the Solution Center plan, now you can perform the Solution Center plan.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to run a plan for Solution Center.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** solutioncenter **-o** runplan **-mode** 0 **-farmname** "Farm(foo:bar)" **-planname** "plan1" **-solutions** "sln1.wsp;sln2.wsp" **-option** 3

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : Specifies the user which has the permission to perform operations on Solution Center
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Solution Center, you need to **solutioncenter**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To run a Solution Center plan, you must enter **runplan.**
- *-mode* : The mode you want to use to run the Design manager plan.
  0 represents **deploy from farm**
  1 represents **deploy from file system**
  2 represents **deploy from solution store**
- *-farmname* : The name of the source farm in the Solution Center plan. This node can be used when the mode value is **0**.
- *-planname* : The Solution Center plan name which you want to perform.
- *-solutions* : The solution you want to deploy to the destination, and the order of the operation. Use semicolon(;) for seperating if you want to specify several solution.
- *-option* : The deployment option.
  1 - Overwrite solutions if they already exist, use upgrade solution method
  2 - Overwrite solutions if they already exist, use retract/re-deploy method
  3 - Not overwrite solutions if they already exist

For PowerShell

To run a Solution Center plan by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-129) Creating a Solution Center Plan

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Step	Action
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SolutionCenter class to create an instance of the Solution Center CLI.
3	Invoke **runPlan** method, $cli.runPlan(0,"farm-name","plan-name", "sln1.wsp;sln2.wsp",3). • *0* : The mode you want to use to run the Design manager plan. **0** represents **deploy from farm** **1** represents **deploy from file system** **2** represents **deploy from solution store** • *"farm-name"* : The name of the source farm in the Solution Center plan. This node can be used when the mode value is **0**. • *"plan-name"* : The Solution Center plan name which you want to perform. • *"sln.wsp;sln2.wsp"* : The solution you want to deploy to the destination, and the order of the operation. Use semicolon(;) for seperating if you want to specify several solution. • *3* : The deployment option. 1 - Overwrite solutions if they already exist, use upgrade solution method 2 - Overwrite solutions if they already exist, use retract/redeploy method 3 - Not overwrite solutions if they already exist

10.10.19.2 Getting the Job Status

To get the job status for the Solution Center job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job status for Solution Center.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control -host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** solutioncenter **-o** getjobstatus **-jobid** XX20100322154700

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Solution Center, you need to **solutioncenter**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job status for a Solution Center plan, you must enter **getjobstatus.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

For PowerShell

To get the job status by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-130) Getting the Job Status

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SolutionCenter class to create an instance of the Solution Center CLI.
3	Invoke **getJobStatus** method, $cli.getJobStatus("XX20100322154700") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.

10.10.19.3 Getting the Job Report

To get the job report for the Design Manager job, see the followings.

For Command Line

Please execute the command below to get the job report for Solution Center.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd -**enablessl** false **-docavemodule** solutioncenter **-o** download-report **-jobid** XX20100322154700 **-saveto** c:\report.zip

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The module which you want to run. For the Solution Center, you need to **solutioncenter**.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the job report, you must enter **downloadreport.**
- *-jobid* : The job ID of which you want to get the job status.
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the report.

For PowerShell

To get the job report for the Solution Center job by PowerShell, please follow the steps below.

(10-131) Getting the Job Report

Step	Action
1	Load the DocAveCLILibrary.dll.
2	Use DocAveCLILibrary.SolutionCenter class to create an instance of the Solution Center CLI.
3	Invoke **downloadReport** method, $cli.downloadReport("XX20100322154700", "c:\report.zip") • *XX20100322154700* : The job ID of which you want to get the job report. • *c:\report.zip* : The location where you want to save the report.

10.10.20 Batch Mode for Migration CLI

The Migration modules support running CLI on batch mode.

Getting A Blank CSV Configuration File

Execute the command below to get a blank CSV configuration file.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Schedule-related settings cannot be configured in the CSV configuration file. After modifying the configuration file, select *Save As* > *Other Formats*, and then select CSV (Comma delimited) (*.csv) in Save as type: to save it as a standard CSV file.

***Note:** Do not edit the CSV configuration file while running the commands.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 **-user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** migrationmodule **-o** getbulkmodecfg **-saveto** "d:\my config.csv"

...\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe -**docavemanager** 127.0.0.1 -**port** 12011 -**user** admin -**password** admin -**enablessl** false -**docavemodule** * -**o** getbulkmodecfg -**saveto** c:\config.csv

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service. It can be found in the DocAve Manager Configuration tool.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve,The user used to log in DocAve. Domain users must be specified asin the following format: domain\username.
- *-password* : The password of the user specified above.
- *-enablessl* : Specify whether to enable SSL Communication. Go to DocAve Agent Configuration tool to check the status of this option and make sure the value you entered is the same as that in the DocAve Agent Configuration tool.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module whichwhere you want to runget the configuration file.You can only specify one module here.
  filemigration represents File System Migration.
  eroommigration represents eRoom Migration.
  sp07to10migration represents SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration.
  ermmigration represents ERM Migration.
  livelinkmigration represents Livelink Migration.
  sp03to10migration represents SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration.
  sp03to07migration represents SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migration.
  lotusnotesmigration represents Lotus Notes Migration.
  lotusnotesquickplace represents Lotus Notes QuickPlace Migration.
  emcdocumentummigration represents EMC Documentum Migration.
  epfmigration represents Exchange Public Folder Migration.
- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the configuration file, you must enter **getbulkmodecfg** represents to get the configuration file..
- *-saveto* : tThe location where you want to save the configuration file.

GettingConfiguring the ConfigurationCSV Configuration File

The configuration file contains two parts: global settings and detail settings.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Global settings contains the common settings. Every detailed setting will refer to the global settings by default. User can also override the global setting by inputting an individual setting in the Detail settings part.

Detail settings are used to configure every source and destination. You can override global settings using an individual setting in this part.

Refer to the sections below to configure the CSV configuration file for each kind of migration.

File System Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-132) Global Settings for File System Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Mapping Setup in GUI. Please input an existing mapping profile name, or input default for using default mapping.
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Filter in GUI. Please input an existing filter name, or input none for not using filter.
Metadata Source	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Metadata Source in GUI. 1 - File System 2 - Custom Metadata File

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Start Excel Generation	Boolean	Required	CreatePlans	If you specify the Metadata Source as Custom Metadata File, this option specifies whether to generate the excel file after creating the plan or not. Please input false or true.
Collapse Folder Structure	Boolean	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Collapse Folder Structure in GUI. Please input false or true.
Do not create top level folder on destination	Boolean	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Do not create top level folder on destination in GUI. Please input false or true.
Generate only one excel file	Boolean	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Generate only one excel file in GUI. Please input false or true.
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Email Notification in GUI. Please input an existing email notification profile name, or input none for not using email notification.
Global Security For Folder	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security For Folder in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Default 1 - Restore no securities 2 - Restore all securities
Global Security For File	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security For File in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Default 1 - Restore no securities 2 - Restore all securities

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Equivalent of Migration Type in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental
Migration Option	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Equivalent of Migration Option in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Overwrite 2 - Append 3 - New Version
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Description for all the migration jobs.

***Note:**

1. Do not make any structural change to the configuration file.
2. This operation may take a long time, customer can use Ctrl+C to terminate the process when it is still running. But, the committed modifications will not be rolled back.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-133) Detailed Settings for File System Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating and running plans. Enter the source agent name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Global Security For Folder	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security For Folder in GUI. You can enter the following number for corre-sponding option.0 - Default 1 - Restore no securities 2 - Restore all securities
Global Security For File	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security For File in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Default 1 - Restore no securities 2 - Restore all securities
Source Device	String	Required	CreatePlans	The source device name.
Folder	String	Required	CreatePlans	The folder(that you wish to migrate) under the specified device.
File	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The file(that you wish to migrate) under the folder.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http:// sp2010:9001/
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Metadata Source	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a Metadata Source for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Start Excel Generation	Boolean	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a value for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Collapse Folder Structure	Boolean	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Collapse Folder Structure in GUI. Enter Ture/ False here.
Do not create top level folder on destination	Boolean	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Do not create top level folder on destination in GUI. Please input false or true.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Generate only one excel file	Boolean	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Generate only one excel file in GUI. Please input false or true.
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Email Notification in GUI. Please input an existing email notification profile name, or input none for not using email notification.
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

For eRoom Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-134) Configuration File forGlobal Settings for eRoom Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Mapping Setup in GUI. Please input an existing mapping profile name, or input none for not using mapping.
Common Profile	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Common Profile in GUI. Please input an existing common configuration file name, or input default for using a default common configuration file.
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Filter in GUI. Please input an existing filter name, or input none for not using a filter.
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Email Notification in GUI. Please input an existing email notification profile name, or input none for not using email notification.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Global Security	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Tree Select 1 - Not Restore Any Security 2 - Restore All Security 3 - Only Restore Security
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Equivalent of Migration Type in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental
Migration Option	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Equivalent of Migration Option in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Overwrite 2 - Append 3 - Overwrite by Modified Time
Mapping Option	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Equivalent of Mapping Option in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 1 – Standard Migration 2 - Create Metadata 3 - Migration With Metadata File
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Description for all the migration jobs.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

***Note:**

1. If specified destination does not exist, it will be created accordingly.
2. Do not make any structural change to the configuration file.
3. This operation may take a long time, customer can use Ctrl+C to terminate the process when it is still running. But, the committed modifications will not be rolled back.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-135) Detailed Settings for eRoom Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating and running plans. Enter the source agent name.
Global Security	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Tree Select 1 - Not Restore Any Security 2 - Restore All Securitiy 3 - Only Restore Security
eRoom URL	String	Required	CreatePlans	URL of the eRoom object to be migrated. The URL format is: http://eRoomServer/[Object_ID]. If a folder URL is specified, all the lists, documents and sub folders within the specified folder will be migrated.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http://sp2010:9001/

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Destination Site Collection Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the site collection.
Content Database	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will be created in the specified content database.
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the user specified here as its administrator.
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Site Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the site.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List Content Type	String	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Content Type in GUI. Leave this field blank if not specified.
Destination List Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a list in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the list. Enter the template name according to the GUI.
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Common Profile	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Email Notification in GUI. Please input an existing email notification profile name, or input none for not using email notification.
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Mapping Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a mapping option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

For SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-136) Global Settings for SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Description	String	Required	CreatePlans	Enter none if there is no description.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name you configured in the SharePoint 2007 to 2010 > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a mapping setup.
Exclude Empty Lists or Libraries	Boolean	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Exclude empty lists or libraries in GUI. Enter True/False here.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
DocAve Archived Data	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	There are nine options you can configure for the archived data. 0 - Do Not Migrate 1 - Migrate links to content only 2 - Migrate the original content(From Archiver) 3 - Migrate the original content(From Extender) 4 - Migrate the original content(From Connector) 5 - Migrate the original content(From Archiver and Extender) 6 - Migrate the original content(From Archiver and Connector) 7 - Migrate the original content(From Extender and Connector) 8 - Migrate the original content(From Archiver, Extender and Connector)
Workflow	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	There are three options you can configure for the workflow. 0 - Do not migrate 1 - Migrate definition 2 - Migrate definition and state
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Language Mapping	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a language mapping name you configured in Data Management > Language Mapping in DocAve GUI.Enter none if you do not want to use a language mapping.
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration type. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental
Migration Options	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are three options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Append 2 - Overwrite
Include detailed job report for all items in this plan	Boolean	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options representing whether to include the detailed job report or not. True represents to include the detailed job reports and False represents to not include the detailed job reports.
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-137) Detailed Settings for SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating and running plans. Enter the source agent name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http:// sp2007:9001/
Source Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site collection URL you want to choose in the following format: http://sp2007:9001 or http://sp2007/sites/site001 Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Source Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Choose the site you want to migrate. If you want to migrate a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate another site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/ siteA_007 Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Source List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name you want to migrate in the following format: Shared Docs. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name you want to migrate in the following format: Shared Docs. If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the sub folders in the following format: folder/subfolder01/ subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Language Mapping	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a language mapping name which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http:// sp2010:9001/
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Content Database	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the content database name where to create the site collection in the destination.
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a user as the site collection administrator when you want to create a new site collection in the destination.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Plan Description	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a plan description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Archived Data	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Select a type to specify how to deal with the archived data for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Include detailed job report for all items in this plan	Boolean	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Specify whether to include the detailed job report for all items or not for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

ERM Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-138) Global Settings for ERM Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name you configured in the eRoom > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a mapping setup.
Common Profile	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name you configured in the eRoom > Settings tab in DocAve GUI.
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the eRoom > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Global Security	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Tree Select 1 - Not Restore Any Security 2 - Restore All Security 3 - Only Restore Security
eRoom Object Separator	String	Required	CreatePlans	Specifies the separator.
Migration Options	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are four options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Overwrite 2 - Append 3 - Overwrite by Modified Time
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-139) Detailed Settings for ERM Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Export Location	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Export Location in GUI. Enter an export location configured in eRoom\Settings.
Global Security	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Specify a global security for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Folder	String	Required	CreatePlans	The ERM folder name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
eRoom	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The eRoom display name.
eRoom Object	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The following eRoom types are defined as eRoom objects: folder, inbox, discussion, database, calendar, project plan, poll. Use the eRoom Object Separator defined in global settings to separate the object and the sub object.
eRoom Item	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The following eRoom types are defined as eRoom items: file, email, topic, event, task, entry, link, note.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating plans and running plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http://sp2010:9001/
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Destination Site Collection Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the site collection.
Content Database	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will be created in the specified content database.
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the user specified here as its administrator.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Site Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the site.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List Content Type	String	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Content Type in GUI. Leave this field blank if not specified.
Destination List Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a list in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the list. Enter the template name according to the GUI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Common Profile	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

Livelink Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-140) Global Settings for Livelink Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Common Profile	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name you configured in the Livelink > Settings tab in DocAve GUI.
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the Livelink > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.
Global Security	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Tree Select 1 - Not Restore Any Security 2 - Restore All Security

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Language Mapping	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a language mapping name you configured in Data Management > Language Mapping in DocAve GUI.Enter none if you do not want to use a language mapping.
Migration Type	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration type. 0- Full 1-Incremental
Migration Options	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are three options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Overwrite 2 - Append
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-141) Detailed Settings for Livelink Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Livelink Connection	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Livelink Connection in GUI. Enter a Livelink Connection profile name configured in Livelink\Settings.
Global Security	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Specify a global security for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Livelink Object	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The following Livelink types are defined as Livelink objects: Appearance, Compound Document, Folder, Channel, Discussion, Poll, Task List, Project. Workspace. Use: as the separator. For example, Enterprise:My Task List:My List
Livelink Item	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The following Livelink types are defined as Livelink items: Document, Text Document, Shortcut, URL, XML DTD, Generation, News, Topic, Milestone, Task.
Language Mapping	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a language mapping name which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans and running plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http://sp2010:9001/
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Destination Site Collection Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the site collection.
Content Database	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will be created in the specified content database.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the user specified here as its administrator.
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Site Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the site.
Migrate Project to Site or as Sub site	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Migration project as subsite 1 - Migration project to site
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List Content Type	String	Optional	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Content Type in GUI. Leave this field blank if not specified.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination List Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a list in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the list. Enter the template name according to the GUI.
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Common Profile	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a Filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

For SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-142) Global Settings for SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name you configured in the SharePoint 2003 to 2010 > Settings tab in DocAve GUI.
Filter Policy	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter policy name you configured in the Data Management > Filter Policy tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter policy.
Exclude Empty Lists or Libraries	Boolean	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Exclude empty lists or libraries in GUI. Enter True/ False here.
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Language Mapping	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a language mapping name you configured in Data Management > Language Mapping in DocAve GUI.Enter none if you do not want to use a language mapping.
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration type. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental
Migration Options	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are three options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Append 2 - Overwrite
Include detailed job report for all items in this plan	Boolean	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options to specify whether to include the detailed job report for all items or not. True represents to include the detailed job reports and False represents to not include the detailed job reports.
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the job description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-143) Detailed Settings for SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating and running plans. Enter the source agent name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http:// sp2007:9001/
Source Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site collection URL you want to choose in the following format: http://sp2007:9001 or http://sp2007/sites/site001 Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Source Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Choose the site you want to migrate. If you want to migrate a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate another site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/ siteA_007 Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Source List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name you want to migrate in the following format: Shared Docs. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name you want to migrate in the following format: Shared Docs. If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the sub folders in the following format: folder/subfolder01/ subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Language Mapping	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a language mapping name which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http:// sp2010:9001/
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Content Database	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the content database name when you want to create a site collection in it in the destination.
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a user as the site collection administrator when you want to create a new site collection in the destination.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaning-ful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the fol-lowing format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Plan Description	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a plan description for a particular plan which will override the con-figuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configu-ration in Global Settings.
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a par-ticular plan which will override the configuration in Global Set-tings.
Filter Policy	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter policy name for a particular plan which will override the con-figuration in Global Settings.
Exclude empty lists or libraries	Boolean	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter true/false for a particular plan which will override the configu-ration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Include detailed job report for all items in this plan	Boolean	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Specify whether to include the detailed job report for all items or not for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

For SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-144) Global Settings for SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name you configured in the SharePoint 2003 to 2007 > Settings tab in DocAve GUI.
Filter Policy	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter policy name you configured in the Data Management > Filter Policy tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter policy.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.
Language Mapping	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a language mapping name you configured in Data Management > Language Mapping in DocAve GUI.Enter none if you do not want to use a language mapping.
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration type. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental
Migration Options	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are three options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Append 2 - Overwrite
Include detailed job report for all items in this plan	Boolean	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options to specify whether to include the detailed job report for all items or not. True represents to include the detailed job reports and False represents to not include the detailed job reports.
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-145) Detailed Settings for SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating and running plans. Enter the source agent name.
Source Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http:// sp2007:9001/
Source Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site collection URL you want to choose in the following format: http://sp2007:9001 or http://sp2007/sites/site001 Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Source Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Choose the site you want to migrate. If you want to migrate a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate another site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/ siteA_007 Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Source List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name you want to migrate in the following format: Shared Docs. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name you want to migrate in the following format: Shared Docs. If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the sub folders in the following format: folder/subfolder01/ subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Language Mapping	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a language mapping name which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http:// sp2010:9001/
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Content Database	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the content database name when you want to create a site collection in the destination.
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a user as the site collection administrator when you want to create a new site collection in the destination.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Plan Description	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a plan description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter Policy	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter policy name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Include detailed job report for all items in this plan	Boolean	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Specify whether to include the detailed job report for all items or not for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Lotus Notes Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-146) Global Settings for Lotus Notes Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name you configured in the Lotus Notes > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter default to use the default mapping setup.
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the Lotus Notes > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
LinkMode	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of LinkMode in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Automatically redirect users to target document 1 - Always show document information page

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.
Default List Template	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Default List Template in GUI.
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration type. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental
Migration Options	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are four options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Overwrite 2 - Append 3 - New Version
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-147) Detailed Settings for Lotus Notes Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating and running plans. Enter the source agent name.
User Profile	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of User Profile in GUI. Enter a user profile configured in Lotus Notes\Settings.
Domino Server	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Select a Domino Server in GUI. Enter the name of the Domino Server here.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
DB File Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Enter the name of the Lotus Notes database. For example, myDB.nsf
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans and running plans. Enter the destination agent name.
DocLinks Location	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of DocLinks Location in GUI. Enter a DocLinks Location configured in Lotus Notes\Settings.
Default List Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a Default List Template for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http://sp2010:9001/
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Content Database	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will be created in the specified content database.
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the user specified here as its administrator.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a list in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the list. Enter the template name according to the GUI.
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
LinkMode	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a LinkMode for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-148) Global Settings for Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name you configured in the Lotus Notes > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter default to use the default mapping setup.
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the Lotus Notes > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.
Default List Template	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Default List Template in GUI.
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration type. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Migration Options	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are four options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Overwrite 2 - Append 3 - New Version
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-149) Detailed Settings for Lotus Notes Quick Place Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Source Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating and running plans. Enter the source agent name.
User Profile	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of User Profile in GUI. Enter a user profile configured in Lotus Notes\Settings.
Quick Place Server	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Select a Quick Place Server in GUI.
Place Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	The name of Quick Place's place.
Room Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	The name of the room under the place.
Default List Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a Default List Template for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http://sp2010:9001/

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Content Data-base	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will be created in the specified content database.
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the user specified here as its administrator.
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the par-ticular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a list in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the list. Enter the template name according to the GUI.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

EMC Documentum Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

(10-150) Global Settings for EMC Documentum Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Common Profile	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name you configured in the EMC Documentum > Settings tab in DocAve GUI.
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the EMC Documentum > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.
Global Security	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Global Security in GUI. You can enter the following number for corresponding option. 0 - Tree Select 1 - Not Restore Any Security 2 - Restore All Security
EMC Object Separator	String	Required	CreatePlans	Specifies the separator.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration type. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental
Migration Option	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are four options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Overwrite 2 - Append
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-151) Detailed Settings for EMC Documentum Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Documentum Connection	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Documentum Connection in GUI. Enter a Documentum Connection profile name configured in EMC Documentum\Settings.
Global Security	Integer	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Specify a global security for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Cabinet	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Cabinet Filter in GUI.
Object Type	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The type of the EMC Documentum data to be migrated. You can enter Folder, Virtual Document, or Snapshot here.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
EMC Object	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The following EMC types are defined as EMC objects: Folder, Virtual Document, Snapshot. Use the EMC Object Separator defined in global settings to separate the object and the sub object.
Document	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The name of the EMC document under the cabinet or folder.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating plans and running plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http://sp2010:9001/
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Destination Site Collection Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the site collection.
Content Database	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will be created in the specified content database.
Site Collection Administrator	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site collection in the destination, it will use the user specified here as its administrator.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination Site Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a site in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the site.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List Template	String	Optional	CreatePlans	If DocAve needs to create a list in the destination, it will use the specified template to create the list. Enter the template name according to the GUI.
Destination Folder	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the folder name in the following format: Shared Docs If you want to select a subfolder of the particular folder, specify the subfolder by using the following format: folder/subfolder01/subfolder02. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).
Common Profile	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

Exchange Public Folder Migration

You can configure the following settings in Global Settings.

(10-152) Global Settings for Exchange Public Folder Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Project Name	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. This name will be used as a prefix of the plan name.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Plan Name Conflicting Policy	Integer	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. If the plan name you specified already exists, a conflict happens, there are two options to handle it. 0 - Skip this plan. 1 - Delete the original plan and create a new one
Common Settings	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name you configured in the Exchange Public Folder > Settings tab in DocAve GUI.
Filter	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a filter name you configured in the Exchange Public Folder > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use a filter.
Mapping Setup	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name you configured in the Exchange Public Folder > Settings tab in DocAve GUI. Enter default to use the default mapping setup.
Email Notification	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name you configured in Reporting > Email Notification in DocAve GUI. Enter none if you do not want to use an email notification.
Exchange Object Separator	String	Required	CreatePlans	Specifies the separator.
Migration Type	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration type. 0 - Full 1 - Incremental

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Migration Option	Integer	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. There are two options for the migration option. 0 - Not Overwrite 1 - Overwrite
Job Description	String	Required	RunPlans	Used for running plans. Enter the description of the plans.

You can configure the following settings in Detailed Settings.

(10-153) Detailed Settings for Exchange Public Folder Migration Configuration File

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Exchange Connection	String	Required	CreatePlans	Equivalent of Exchange Connection in GUI. Enter a Exchange Connection profile name configured in Exchange Public Folder\Settings.
Exchange Object	String	Optional	CreatePlans	The following Exchange types are defined as Exchange objects: folder, task, calendar, contact, infopath form, mail, post, note, journal. Use the Exchange Object Separator defined in Global Settings to separate the object and the sub object.
Destination Agent	String	Required	CreatePlans RunPlans	Used for creating plans and running plans. Enter the destination agent name.
Destination Web Application	String	Required	CreatePlans	Used for creating plans. Enter the Web Application URL in the following format: http://sp2010:9001/

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Destination Site Collection	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the Site Collection URL you want to migrate to in the following format: http://sp2010:9001 or http://sp2010/sites/site001
Destination Site	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the site to which you want to migrate. If you want to migrate to a top level site, enter "." in this field. If you want to migrate to other site, enter the managed path of the site. If you want to migrate to a sub site of the particular site, specify the sub site by using the following format: mysite/siteA/siteA_007. Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Destination List	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter the list name in the following format: Shared Docs Leave this field blank if it is not down to this level.
Custom Plan Name	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a customized plan name for the plan to make the plan meaningful. The plan name will be PorjectName_CustomPlanName. If this field is blank, the plan name will be displayed in the following format: ProjectName_Data_Time(For example, MyProjName_20101207_1023).

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Common Profile	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a common profile name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Filter	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a filter name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Mapping Setup	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter a mapping setup name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Email Notification	String	Optional	CreatePlans	This column is optional and it is used for creating plans. Enter an email notification name for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Type	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration type for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Migration Options	Integer	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter a migration option for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.
Job Description	String	Optional	RunPlans	This column is optional and it is used for running plans. Enter the job description for a particular plan which will override the configuration in Global Settings.

2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

Column Name	Value Type	Input Type	Usage	Description
Plan Name	String	Required when RunPlans	CreatePlans RunPlans	When creating plans, this column is used to record the plan name. When running plans, this column is required and it is used to specify the plan that you want to run.
Job ID	String	Required when DownloadReports	RunPlans DownloadReports	When running plans, this column is used to record the job ID. When downloading job reports, this column is required and it is used to specify the job ID to download the specified job report.
Job Status	String		RunPlans	After runing plans, the job status will be recorded in this column.
Exception Message	String			The error messages will be recorded in this column.

Creating Plans and Run Jobs

To create migration plans and run jobs in bulk, perform the following command.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe -docavemanager 127.0.0.1 -port 12011 -user admin -password admin -enablessl false -docavemodule * -o createplans -configfile c:\config.csv

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service. It can be found in the DocAve Manager Configuration tool.
- *-user* : The user used to login to DocAve. Domain users must be specified in the following format: domain\username.
- *-password* : The password of the user specified above.
- *-enablessl* : Specify whether to enable SSL Communication. Go to DocAve Agent Configuration tool to check the status of this option and make sure the value you entered is the same as that in the DocAve Agent Configuration tool.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module that you want to perform actions on.You can only specify one module here.
  filemigration represents File System Migration.
  eroommigration represents eRoom Migration.
  sp07to10migration represents SharePoint 2007 to 2010 migration.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

ermmigration represents ERM Migration.
livelinkmigration represents Livelink Migration.
sp03to10migration represents SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration.
sp03to07migration represents SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migration.
lotusnotesmigration represents Lotus Notes Migration.
lotusnotesquickplace represents Lotus Notes QuickPlace Migration.
emcdocumentummigration represents EMC Documentum Migration.
epfmigration represents Exchange Public Folder Migration.

- *-o* : The operation you want to perform.
  createplans represents to create plans of the selected module.
  runplans represents to run plans of the selected module.
- *-configfile* : The location where you save the configuration file.

Downloading Job Reports

To download job reports in bulk, execute the following command.

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** 127.0.0.1 **-port** 12011 **-user** admin **-password** admin **-enablessl** false **-docavemodule** * **-o** downloadreports **-jobreportformat** txt **-configfile** c:\config.csv **-saveto** c:\reports

- *–docavemanager* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service. It can be found in the DocAve Manager Configuration tool.
- *–user* : The user which is used to login to DocAve, Domain users must be specified in the following format: domain\username.
- *-password* : The password of the user specified above.
- *-enablessl* : Specify whether to enable SSL Communication. Go to DocAve Agent Configuration tool to check the status of this option and make sure the value you entered is the same as that in the DocAve Agent Configuration tool.
- *-docavemodule* : The migration module where you want to download the job report.You can only specify one module here.
  filemigration represents File System Migration.
  eroommigration represents eRoom Migration.
  sp07to10migration represents SharePoint 2007 to 2010 migration.
  ermmigration represents ERM Migration.
  livelinkmigration represents Livelink Migration.
  sp03to10migration represents SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration.
  sp03to07migration represents SharePoint 2003 to 2007 Migration.
  lotusnotesmigration represents Lotus Notes Migration.
  lotusnotesquickplace represents Lotus Notes QuickPlace Migration.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

emcdocumentummigration represents EMC Documentum Migration.
epfmigration represents Exchange Public Folder Migration.

- *–o* : The operation you want to perform.
  downloadreports represents to download the job report.
- *jobreportformat* : The format of the job reports. There are three formats: **txt, csv, xls**.
- *configfile* : The location where you save the configuration file.
- *saveto* : The location to save the downloaded job reports.

10.10.21 Getting the Template for Creating Plan

To get the template for creating migration plan, see the following.

For Command Line

Execute the following command:

…\AvePoint\DocAve5\Agent\bin\DocAveCLI.exe **-docavemanager** control-host **-port** 12011 -**user** user1 **-password** u1pwd **-docavemodule** migrationmodule -**mode** 0 **-o** getplantemplate **-saveto** c:\plan-template.xml

- *-docavemanger* : The IP address or the host name of the machine which has Control Service installed.
- *-port* : The port number of the Manager Web Service.
- *-user* : The user which is assigned to login to DocAve, Domain users should be input as domain\username
- *-docavemodule* : The DocAve module which you want to run.
  filemigration represents File System Migration
  epfmigration represents Exchange Public Folder Migration
  livelinkmigration represents Livelink Migration
  emcdocumentummigration represents EMC Documentum Migration
  eroommigration represents eRoom Migration
  sp03to10migration represents SharePoint 2003 to 2010 Migration
  sp07to10migration represents SharePoint 2007 to 2010 Migration
  platformbackup represents Platform Backup
  replicator represents Replicator
- *-mode* : the mode of this migration plan. This parameter must be used when getting the template for creating migration plans.
  0 represents the **Agant to Agent Migration**.
  1 represents the **Export to Staging Migration**.
  2 represents the **Import from Staging Migration**.

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.

- *-o* : The operation you want to perform. To get the template, you must enter **get-plantemplate.**
- *-saveto* : The location where you want to save the file.

For PowerShell

To get the template file, please execute

$cli.getPlanTemplate("c:\plan-template.xml")

 2001-2012 AvePoint, Inc. All rights reserved.